



# Official Cert Guide

Learn, prepare, and practice for exam success



# CCDA 640-864

- ▶ Master CCDA 640-864 exam topics
- ▶ Assess your knowledge with chapter-opening quizzes
- ▶ Review key concepts with exam preparation tasks
- ▶ Practice with realistic exam questions on the CD-ROM

**ANTHONY BRUNO, CCIE NO. 2738  
STEVE JORDAN, CCIE NO. 11293**

# **CCDA 640-864**

## **Official Cert Guide**

---

Anthony Bruno, CCIE No. 2738

Steve Jordan, CCIE No. 11293

**Cisco Press**

800 East 96th Street

Indianapolis, IN 46240

# CCDA 640-864 Official Cert Guide

Anthony Bruno, CCIE No. 2738  
Steve Jordan, CCIE No. 11293

Copyright © 2011 Pearson Education, Inc.

Published by:  
Cisco Press  
800 East 96th Street  
Indianapolis, IN 46240 USA

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission from the publisher, except for the inclusion of brief quotations in a review.

First Printing May 2011

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication data is on file.

ISBN-10: 1-58714-257-0

ISBN-13: 978-1-58714-257-4

## Warning and Disclaimer

This book is designed to provide information about the CCDA exam. Every effort has been made to make this book as complete and accurate as possible, but no warranty or fitness is implied.

The information is provided on an "as is" basis. The authors, Cisco Press, and Cisco Systems, Inc. shall have neither liability nor responsibility to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damages arising from the information contained in this book or from the use of the discs or programs that may accompany it.

The opinions expressed in this book belong to the authors and are not necessarily those of Cisco Systems, Inc.

## Feedback Information

At Cisco Press, our goal is to create in-depth technical books of the highest quality and value. Each book is crafted with care and precision, undergoing rigorous development that involves the unique expertise of members of the professional technical community.

Reader feedback is a natural continuation of this process. If you have any comments on how we could improve the quality of this book, or otherwise alter it to better suit your needs, you can contact us through email at [feedback@ciscopress.com](mailto:feedback@ciscopress.com). Please be sure to include the book title and ISBN in your message.

We greatly appreciate your assistance.

## Corporate and Government Sales

Cisco Press offers excellent discounts on this book when ordered in quantity for bulk purchases or special sales. For more information, please contact:

**U.S. Corporate and Government Sales** 1-800-382-3419 [corpsales@pearsontechgroup.com](mailto:corpsales@pearsontechgroup.com)

For sales outside of the U.S., please contact:

**International Sales** 1-317-581-3793 [international@pearsontechgroup.com](mailto:international@pearsontechgroup.com)

## Trademark Acknowledgments

All terms mentioned in this book that are known to be trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Cisco Press or Cisco Systems, Inc. cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this book should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.

**Publisher:** Paul Boger

**Manager, Global Certification:** Erik Ullanderson

**Associate Publisher:** David Dushimer

**Business Operation Manager, Cisco Press:** Anand Sundaram

**Executive Editor:** Brett Bartow

**Technical Editors:** David Morgan and Farai Tafa

**Managing Editor:** Sandra Schroeder

**Copy Editor:** Keith Cline

**Development Editor:** Andrew Cupp

**Book Designer:** Gary Adair

**Senior Project Editor:** Tonya Simpson

**Publishing Coordinator:** Vanessa Evans

**Cover Designer:** Sandra Schroeder

**Composition:** Mark Shirar

**Indexer:** Cheryl Lenser



**Americas Headquarters**  
Cisco Systems, Inc.  
170 West Tasman Drive  
San Jose, CA 95134-1706  
USA  
[www.cisco.com](http://www.cisco.com)  
Tel: 408 526-4000  
800 553-NETS (6387)  
Fax: 408 527-0883

**Asia Pacific Headquarters**  
Cisco Systems, Inc.  
168 Robinson Road  
#28-01 Capital Tower  
Singapore 068912  
[www.cisco.com](http://www.cisco.com)  
Tel: +65 6317 7777  
Fax: +65 6317 7799

**Europe Headquarters**  
Cisco Systems International BV  
Haarlerbergpark  
Haarlerbergweg 13-19  
1101 CH Amsterdam  
The Netherlands  
[www.europe.cisco.com](http://www.europe.cisco.com)  
Tel: +31 0 800 020 0791  
Fax: +31 0 20 357 1100

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses, phone numbers, and fax numbers are listed on the Cisco Website at [www.cisco.com/go/offices](http://www.cisco.com/go/offices).

©2007 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. CCVP the Cisco logo and the Cisco Square Bridge logo are trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc.; Changing the Way We Work, Live, Play, and Learn is a service mark of Cisco Systems, Inc.; and Access Registrar, Aironet, BPX, Catalyst, CCDA, CCDP, CCIE, CCIP, CCNA, CCNP, CCSP, Cisco, the Cisco Certified Internetwork Expert logo, Cisco IOS, Cisco Press, Cisco Systems, Cisco Systems Capital, the Cisco Systems logo, Cisco Unity, Enterprise/Solver, EtherChannel, EtherFast, EtherSwitch, Fast Step, Follow Me Browsing, FormShare, GigaDrive, GigaStack, HomeLink, Internet Quotient, IOS, IP/TV, iQ Expertise, the iQ logo, iQ Net Readiness Scorecard, iQuick Study, LightStream, Linksys, MeetingPlace, MGX, Networking Academy, Network Registrar, Packet, PIX, ProConnect, RateMUX, ScriptShare, SlideCast, SMARTnet, StackWise, The Fastest Way to Increase Your Internet Quotient, and TransPath are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned in this document or Website are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship.

## About the Authors

**Anthony Bruno**, CCIE No. 2738, is a senior principal consultant with BT with more than 20 years of experience in the internetworking field. Previously, he worked for International Network Services, Lucent Technologies, and as a captain in the U.S. Air Force. His other network certifications include CCDP, CCVP, CCSP, Cisco Data Center Network Infrastructure Specialist, Cisco Security Solutions & Design Specialist, JNCIS-ER, Project+, ITILv3 Foundation, and CWNA. He has consulted for many enterprise and service provider customers in the design, implementation, and optimization of large-scale data and IP telephony networks. Anthony leads architecture and design teams in building next-generation networks for his customers. He completed his Master of Science in Electrical Engineering at the University of Missouri–Rolla in 1994 and his Bachelor of Science in Electrical Engineering at the University of Puerto Rico–Mayaguez in 1990. He is also a part-time instructor for the University of Phoenix–Online, teaching networking courses.

**Steve Jordan**, CCIE No. 11293, is a senior consultant with Extropy with more than 15 years of experience in the internetworking field. Previously, he worked for General Datatech in Houston, Texas. His other certifications include VMware VCP4 and Cisco DC specializations in Network Infrastructure, Storage, and Unified Computing Design. He specializes in data center architecture involving network, storage, compute, and virtualization technologies. He has extensive experience with large-scale data center environments and has designed and implemented network solutions in the financial, energy, retail, manufacturing, and telecommunications industries.

Steve was also the coauthor for the previous edition of the *CCDA Exam Certification Guide, Third Edition*.

## About the Technical Reviewers

**David Morgan** is a senior technical consultant, technical trainer, and UC Practice Lead for General DataTech, a Cisco Gold Partner in Dallas, Texas. He has designed, deployed, and supported hundreds of communications systems, with enterprise implementations supporting as many as 120,000+ phones and 2000+ remote sites. He has more than 12 years of general networking experience. He also has experience supporting LAN, WAN, security, and voice technologies and Microsoft server technology, and IBM AS/400 systems. David lives in Arlington, Texas with his wife, Trisha, and two sons.

**Farai Tafa**, CCIE No. 14811, is a senior consultant with British Telecom with ten years of experience in the internetworking field. He holds CCIE certifications in the Routing and Switching and Service Provider tracks. His other certifications include the CCVP, JNCIA, JNCIS, and ITILv3 Foundation certifications. Prior to British Telecom, Farai had the privilege of working for industry powerhouses such as Google, Inc. and Cisco Systems, Inc. Farai has ten years of experience in the design, implementation, and support of enterprise and service provider routing and switching solutions, and Enterprise Cisco IP Telephony and Unified Wireless solutions.

## Dedications

This book is dedicated to my wife, Yvonne Bruno, Ph.D., and to our daughters, Joanne and Dianne. Thanks for all of your support during the development of this book. Joanne, hopefully this book will help me pay for your computer engineering classes at Texas A&M!

—Anthony Bruno

This book is dedicated to my wife of 17 years, Dorin, and my three sons, Blake, Lance, and Miles, for their support during the development of this book. For Blake, Lance, and Miles, we can now play many more games! I also want to dedicate this book to both of my grandmothers, Frances Cross and Anna C. Smith, who recently passed. I miss you both very much!

—Steve Jordan

## Acknowledgments

This book would not have been possible without the efforts of many dedicated people. Thanks to Andrew Cupp, development editor, for his guidance and special attention to detail. Thanks to Tonya Simpson, senior project editor, for her accuracy. Thanks to Brett Bartow, executive editor, for his vision. Thanks to all other Cisco Press team members who worked behind the scenes to make this a better book.

A special thanks my coauthor, Steve Jordan, for contributing five chapters. And a special thanks to the technical reviewers, David Morgan and Farai Tafa. Their technical advice and careful attention to detail made this book accurate.

—Anthony Bruno

This book would not be possible without all the great people who have assisted me. I would first like to thank Anthony Bruno for inviting me to assist him in this endeavor once more. Thanks to Brett Bartow, executive editor, for his guidance and support during the book development. Thanks again to Andrew Cupp, development editor, for supporting my schedule delays and keeping me on track.

Special thanks goes to the technical reviewers of this book, David Morgan and Farai Tafa, who provided wisdom and helped with keeping the book accurate.

Finally, thanks to all the managers and marketing people at Cisco Press who make all these books possible.

—Steve Jordan

# Contents at a Glance

Introduction xxxi

## **Part I General Network Design 3**

- Chapter 1 Network Design Methodology 5
- Chapter 2 Network Structure Models 37

## **Part II LAN and WAN Design 77**

- Chapter 3 Enterprise LAN Design 79
- Chapter 4 Data Center Design 121
- Chapter 5 Wireless LAN Design 153
- Chapter 6 WAN Technologies 199
- Chapter 7 WAN Design 227

## **Part III The Internet Protocol and Routing Protocols 263**

- Chapter 8 Internet Protocol Version 4 265
- Chapter 9 Internet Protocol Version 6 305
- Chapter 10 Routing Protocol Characteristics, RIP, and EIGRP 345
- Chapter 11 OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and IP Multicast 387

## **Part IV Security, Convergence, Network Management 443**

- Chapter 12 Managing Security 445
- Chapter 13 Security Solutions 481
- Chapter 14 Voice and Video Design 515
- Chapter 15 Network Management Protocols 575

## **Part V Comprehensive Scenarios and Final Prep 597**

- Chapter 16 Comprehensive Scenarios 599
- Chapter 17 Final Preparation 613

## **Part VI      Appendixes    621**

Appendix A   Answers to the “Do I Know This Already?” Quizzes  
and Q&A Questions   623

Appendix B   CCDA Exam Updates: Version 1.0   657

Appendix C   OSI Model, TCP/IP Architecture, and Numeric Conversion   661

Glossary   677

Index   690

## **Elements Available on the CD**

Appendix D   Memory Tables

Appendix E   Memory Tables Answer Key

# Contents

Introduction xxxi

**Part I General Network Design 3**

**Chapter 1 Network Design Methodology 5**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz 5

Foundation Topics 8

Cisco Architectures for the Enterprise 8

Borderless Networks Architecture 9

Collaboration Architecture 9

Data Center/Virtualization Architecture 10

Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize Phases 11

Prepare Phase 13

Plan Phase 14

Design Phase 14

Implement Phase 14

Operate Phase 14

Optimize Phase 14

Summary of PPDIOO Phases 14

Design Methodology Under PPDIOO 15

Identifying Customer Design Requirements 15

Characterizing the Existing Network 17

Steps in Gathering Information 17

Network Audit Tools 18

Network Analysis Tools 22

Network Checklist 22

Designing the Network Topology and Solutions 23

Top-Down Approach 23

Pilot and Prototype Tests 24

Design Document 25

References and Recommended Reading 26

Exam Preparation Tasks 27

Review All Key Topics 27

Complete Tables and Lists from Memory 27

Define Key Terms 27

Q&A 28

**Chapter 2 Network Structure Models 37**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	37
Foundation Topics	40
Hierarchical Network Models	40
Benefits of the Hierarchical Model	40
Hierarchical Network Design	41
<i>Core Layer</i>	41
<i>Distribution Layer</i>	42
<i>Access Layer</i>	43
Hierarchical Model Examples	45
Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model	47
Enterprise Campus Module	48
Enterprise Edge Area	50
<i>E-Commerce Module</i>	50
<i>Internet Connectivity Module</i>	51
<i>VPN/Remote Access</i>	52
<i>Enterprise WAN</i>	53
Service Provider Edge Module	54
Remote Modules	55
<i>Enterprise Branch Module</i>	56
<i>Enterprise Data Center Module</i>	56
<i>Enterprise Teleworker Module</i>	56
Borderless Network Services	58
High Availability Network Services	58
Workstation-to-Router Redundancy and LAN	
High Availability Protocols	59
<i>ARP</i>	59
<i>Explicit Configuration</i>	59
<i>RDP</i>	59
<i>RIP</i>	59
<i>HSRP</i>	60
<i>VRRP</i>	61
<i>GLBP</i>	61
Server Redundancy	61
Route Redundancy	62
<i>Load Balancing</i>	62
<i>Increasing Availability</i>	62
Link Media Redundancy	64

References and Recommended Reading	65
Exam Preparation Tasks	66
Review All Key Topics	66
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	66
Define Key Terms	66
Q&A	66

## **Part II        LAN and WAN Design    77**

### **Chapter 3     Enterprise LAN Design    79**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	79
Foundation Topics	82
LAN Media	82
Ethernet Design Rules	83
<i>100-Mbps Fast Ethernet Design Rules</i>	84
Gigabit Ethernet Design Rules	86
<i>1000BASE-LX Long-Wavelength Gigabit Ethernet</i>	86
<i>1000BASE-SX Short-Wavelength Gigabit Ethernet</i>	87
<i>1000BASE-CX Gigabit Ethernet over Coaxial Cable</i>	87
<i>1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet over UTP</i>	87
10 Gigabit Ethernet Design Rules	88
<i>10GE Media Types</i>	88
EtherChannel	89
Comparison of Campus Media	89
LAN Hardware	89
Repeaters	90
Hubs	90
Bridges	91
Switches	91
Routers	92
Layer 3 Switches	93
Campus LAN Design and Best Practices	94
Best Practices for Hierarchical Layers	95
<i>Access Layer Best Practices</i>	96
<i>Distribution Layer Best Practices</i>	96
<i>Core Layer Best Practices</i>	98
Large-Building LANs	101
Enterprise Campus LANs	102
<i>Edge Distribution</i>	103

Medium-Size LANs	103
Small and Remote Site LANs	103
Server Farm Module	104
<i>Server Connectivity Options</i>	105
Enterprise Data Center Infrastructure	105
Campus LAN QoS Considerations	106
Multicast Traffic Considerations	108
<i>CGMP</i>	108
<i>IGMP Snooping</i>	109
References and Recommended Readings	109
Exam Preparation Tasks	110
Review All Key Topics	110
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	110
Define Key Terms	110
Q&A	110
<b>Chapter 4     Data Center Design</b>	<b>121</b>
“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	121
Foundation Topics	124
Enterprise DC Architectures	124
Data Center 3.0 Components	125
Data Center 3.0 Topology Components	127
Challenges in the DC	127
Data Center Facility Aspects	128
Data Center Space	130
Data Center Power	131
Data Center Cooling	132
Data Center Heat	133
Data Center Cabling	133
Enterprise DC Infrastructure	135
Defining the DC Access Layer	136
Defining the DC Aggregation Layer	138
Defining the DC Core Layer	139
Virtualization Overview	141
Challenges	141
Defining Virtualization and Benefits	141
Types of Virtualization	142

Virtualization Technologies	143
VSS	143
VRF	143
vPC	143
Device Contexts	144
Server Virtualization	144
Network Virtualization Design Considerations	144
Access Control	145
Path Isolation	145
Services Edge	145
References and Recommended Readings	145
Exam Preparation Tasks	147
Review All Key Topics	147
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	148
Define Key Terms	148
Q&A	148

## **Chapter 5    Wireless LAN Design    153**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	153
Foundation Topics	155
Wireless LAN Technologies	155
WLAN Standards	155
<i>ISM and UNII Frequencies</i>	156
<i>Summary of WLAN Standards</i>	157
Service Set Identifier	157
WLAN Layer 2 Access Method	157
WLAN Security	157
<i>Unauthorized Access</i>	158
<i>WLAN Security Design Approach</i>	158
<i>IEEE 802.1X-2001 Port-Based Authentication</i>	159
<i>Dynamic WEP Keys and LEAP</i>	159
<i>Controlling WLAN Access to Servers</i>	159
Cisco Unified Wireless Network	160
Cisco UWN Architecture	160
LWAPP	162
CAPWAP	163
<i>Cisco Unified Wireless Network Split-MAC Architecture</i>	163

<i>Local MAC</i>	164
<i>AP Modes</i>	164
<i>LWAPP Discovery of WLC</i>	166
WLAN Authentication	167
<i>Authentication Options</i>	168
WLAN Controller Components	169
<i>WLC Interface Types</i>	169
<i>AP Controller Equipment Scaling</i>	171
Roaming and Mobility Groups	173
<i>Intracontroller Roaming</i>	173
<i>Layer 2 Intercontroller Roaming</i>	173
<i>Layer 3 Intercontroller Roaming</i>	174
<i>Mobility Groups</i>	174
WLAN Design	176
Controller Redundancy Design: Deterministic vs. Dynamic	176
<i>N+1 WLC Redundancy</i>	176
<i>N+N WLC Redundancy</i>	177
<i>N+N+1 WLC Redundancy</i>	177
Radio Management and Radio Groups	178
<i>RF Groups</i>	179
RF Site Survey	179
Using EoIP Tunnels for Guest Services	181
Wireless Mesh for Outdoor Wireless	181
<i>Mesh Design Recommendations</i>	182
Campus Design Considerations	183
Branch Design Considerations	184
<i>Local MAC</i>	184
<i>REAP</i>	184
<i>Hybrid REAP</i>	184
<i>Branch Office Controller Options</i>	185
References and Recommended Readings	186
Exam Preparation Tasks	187
Review All Key Topics	187
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	187
Define Key Terms	187
Q&A	188

**Chapter 6 WAN Technologies 199**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	199
Foundation Topics	202
WAN Overview	202
WAN Defined	202
WAN Connection Modules	203
WAN Transport Technologies	204
ISDN	205
<i>ISDN BRI Service</i>	205
<i>ISDN PRI Service</i>	205
Digital Subscriber Line	206
Cable	206
Wireless	207
Frame Relay	208
Time-Division Multiplexing	209
Metro Ethernet	209
SONET/SDH	209
Multiprotocol Label Switching	211
Dark Fiber	211
Dense Wavelength-Division Multiplexing	212
Ordering WAN Technology and Contracts	212
WAN Design Methodology	213
Response Time	214
Throughput	214
Reliability	215
Bandwidth Considerations	215
WAN Link Categories	216
Optimizing Bandwidth Using QoS	217
<i>Queuing, Traffic Shaping, and Policing</i>	217
<i>Classification</i>	218
<i>Congestion Management</i>	218
<i>Priority Queuing</i>	218
<i>Custom Queuing</i>	218
<i>Weighted Fair Queuing</i>	218
<i>Class-Based Weighted Fair Queuing</i>	218
<i>Low-Latency Queuing</i>	219
<i>Traffic Shaping and Policing</i>	219

<i>Link Efficiency</i>	220
<i>Window Size</i>	220
References and Recommended Readings	220
Exam Preparation Tasks	221
Review All Key Topics	221
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	221
Define Key Terms	221
Q&A	222

## **Chapter 7 WAN Design 227**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	227
Foundation Topics	230
Traditional WAN Technologies	230
Hub-and-Spoke Topology	230
Full-Mesh Topology	231
Partial-Mesh Topology	231
Remote-Access Network Design	232
VPN Network Design	232
Enterprise VPN vs. Service Provider VPN	233
Enterprise VPNs	234
Service Provider Offerings	234
Enterprise Managed VPN: IPsec	234
IPsec Direct Encapsulation	234
Cisco Easy VPN	235
Generic Routing Encapsulation	236
IPsec DMVPN	236
IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interface Design	237
Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol Version 3	237
Service Provider Managed Offerings	237
Metro Ethernet	237
Virtual Private LAN Services	238
MPLS	238
MPLS Layer 3 Design Overview	239
VPN Benefits	239
WAN Backup Design	240
Load-Balancing Guidelines	240
WAN Backup over the Internet	241

Enterprise WAN Architecture	241
Cisco Enterprise MAN/WAN	243
Enterprise WAN/MAN Architecture Comparison	243
Enterprise WAN Components	245
Comparing Hardware and Software	247
Enterprise Branch Architecture	248
Branch Design	248
Enterprise Branch Profiles	248
<i>ISR G2 New Features</i>	249
<i>Small Branch Design</i>	250
<i>Medium Branch Design</i>	250
<i>Large Branch Design</i>	252
Enterprise Teleworker Design	254
ISRs for Teleworkers	254
References and Recommended Readings	255
Exam Preparation Tasks	256
Review All Key Topics	256
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	256
Define Key Terms	257
Q&A	257
<b>Part III</b>	<b>The Internet Protocol and Routing Protocols</b>
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Internet Protocol Version 4</b>
	<b>263</b>
“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	265
Foundation Topics	268
IPv4 Header	268
ToS	271
IPv4 Fragmentation	274
IPv4 Addressing	275
IPv4 Address Classes	276
<i>Class A Addresses</i>	277
<i>Class B Addresses</i>	277
<i>Class C Addresses</i>	277
<i>Class D Addresses</i>	277
<i>Class E Addresses</i>	278
IPv4 Address Types	278
IPv4 Private Addresses	279

NAT	279
Private and Public IP Address and NAT Guidelines	280
IPv4 Address Subnets	282
Mask Nomenclature	283
IP Address Subnet Design	283
Determining the Network Portion of an IP Address	285
Variable-Length Subnet Masks	286
<i>VLSM Address Assignment: Example 1</i>	286
<i>Loopback Addresses</i>	288
<i>IP Telephony Networks</i>	288
<i>VLSM Address Assignment: Example 2</i>	289
Address Assignment and Name Resolution	290
Recommended Practices of IP Address Assignment	290
BOOTP	291
DHCP	291
DNS	292
ARP	295
References and Recommended Readings	296
Exam Preparation Tasks	297
Review All Key Topics	297
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	297
Define Key Terms	297
Q&A	298
<b>Chapter 9    Internet Protocol Version 6    305</b>	
“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	305
Foundation Topics	308
Introduction to IPv6	308
IPv6 Header	309
IPv6 Address Representation	311
IPv4-Compatible IPv6 Addresses	312
IPv6 Prefix Representation	312
IPv6 Address Scope Types and Address Allocations	313
IPv6 Address Allocations	313
IPv6 Unicast Address	314
<i>Global Unicast Addresses</i>	314
<i>Link-Local Addresses</i>	315
<i>Unique Local IPv6 Address</i>	315

<i>Global Aggregatable IPv6 Address</i>	316
<i>IPv4-Compatible IPv6 Address</i>	316
IPv6 Anycast Addresses	316
IPv6 Multicast Addresses	317
IPv6 Mechanisms	320
ICMPv6	320
IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Protocol	320
IPv6 Name Resolution	321
Path MTU Discovery	322
IPv6 Address-Assignment Strategies	322
<i>Link-Local Address (Stateless Autoconfiguration)</i>	322
<i>Autoconfiguration of Globally Unique IP address</i>	323
<i>DHCPv6</i>	324
IPv6 Security	324
IPv6 Routing Protocols	325
RIPng	325
EIGRP for IPv6	325
OSPFv3	325
IS-IS for IPv6	325
BGP4 Multiprotocol Extensions (MP-BGP) for IPv6	326
IPv4 to IPv6 Transition Mechanisms and	
Deployment Models	326
Dual-Stack Mechanism	326
IPv6 over IPv4 Tunnels	326
Protocol Translation Mechanisms	328
IPv6 Deployment Models	329
<i>Dual-Stack Model</i>	329
<i>Hybrid Model</i>	330
<i>Service Block Model</i>	330
<i>IPv6 Deployment Model Comparison</i>	332
IPv6 Comparison with IPv4	333
References and Recommended Readings	334
Exam Preparation Tasks	336
Review All Key Topics	336
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	337
Define Key Terms	337
Q&A	337

**Chapter 10 Routing Protocol Characteristics, RIP, and EIGRP 345**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	345
Foundation Topics	348
Routing Protocol Characteristics	348
Static Versus Dynamic Route Assignment	348
Interior Versus Exterior Routing Protocols	350
Distance-Vector Routing Protocols	351
<i>EIGRP</i>	351
Link-State Routing Protocols	352
Distance-Vector Routing Protocols Versus Link-State Protocols	352
Hierarchical Versus Flat Routing Protocols	353
Classless Versus Classful Routing Protocols	353
IPv4 Versus IPv6 Routing Protocols	354
Administrative Distance	355
Routing Protocol Metrics and Loop Prevention	356
Hop Count	356
Bandwidth	357
Cost	358
Load	358
Delay	359
Reliability	359
Maximum Transmission Unit	360
Routing Loop-Prevention Schemes	360
<i>Split Horizon</i>	360
<i>Poison Reverse</i>	361
<i>Counting to Infinity</i>	361
Triggered Updates	361
Summarization	361
RIPv2 and RIPng	362
Authentication	362
<i>MD5 Authentication</i>	362
RIPv2 Routing Database	362
RIPv2 Message Format	363
RIPv2 Timers	364
RIPv2 Design	364
RIPv2 Summary	364
RIPng	365

<i>RIPng Timers</i>	365
<i>Authentication</i>	365
<i>RIPng Message Format</i>	365
<i>RIPng Design</i>	366
<i>RIPng Summary</i>	366
EIGRP	367
EIGRP Components	367
<i>Protocol-Dependent Modules</i>	368
<i>Neighbor Discovery and Recovery</i>	368
<i>RTP</i>	368
<i>DUAL</i>	368
EIGRP Timers	369
EIGRP Metrics	370
EIGRP Packet Types	371
EIGRP Design	372
EIGRP for IPv4 Summary	373
EIGRP for IPv6 (EIGRPv6) Networks	373
<i>EIGRP for IPv6 Design</i>	374
<i>EIGRP for IPv6 Summary</i>	374
References and Recommended Readings	375
Exam Preparation Tasks	377
Review All Key Topics	377
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	377
Define Key Terms	377
Q&A	377
<b>Chapter 11 OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and IP Multicast</b>	<b>387</b>
“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	387
Foundation Topics	391
OSPFv2	391
OSPFv2 Metric	391
OSPFv2 Adjacencies and Hello Timers	392
OSPFv2 Areas	393
OSPF Router Types	394
OSPF DRs	395
LSA Types	396
<i>Autonomous System External Path Types</i>	397

OSPF Stub Area Types	397
<i>Stub Areas</i>	397
<i>Totally Stubby Areas</i>	398
<i>NSSAs</i>	398
Virtual Links	399
OSPFv2 Router Authentication	399
OSPFv2 Summary	399
OSPFv3	400
OSPFv3 Changes from OSPFv2	400
OSPFv3 Areas and Router Types	401
OSPFv3 LSAs	401
OSPFv3 Summary	404
BGP	404
BGP Neighbors	405
<i>eBGP</i>	406
<i>iBGP</i>	406
Route Reflectors	407
Confederations	409
BGP Administrative Distance	409
BGP Attributes, Weight, and the BGP Decision Process	409
<i>BGP Path Attributes</i>	410
<i>Next-Hop Attribute</i>	411
<i>Local Preference Attribute</i>	411
<i>Origin Attribute</i>	411
<i>Autonomous System Path Attribute</i>	412
<i>MED Attribute</i>	412
<i>Community Attribute</i>	413
<i>Atomic Aggregate and Aggregator Attributes</i>	413
<i>Weight</i>	414
<i>BGP Decision Process</i>	414
BGP Summary	415
Route Manipulation	416
PBR	416
Route Summarization	416
Route Redistribution	419
<i>Default Metric</i>	420
<i>OSPF Redistribution</i>	421

Route Filtering	421	
Routing Protocols on the Hierarchical Network Infrastructure	422	
IP Multicast Review	423	
Multicast Addresses	423	
Layer 3-to-Layer 2 Mapping	424	
IGMP	425	
<i>IGMPv1</i>	425	
<i>IGMPv2</i>	425	
<i>IGMPv3</i>	426	
<i>CGMP</i>	426	
<i>IGMP Snooping</i>	427	
Sparse Versus Dense Multicast	427	
Multicast Source and Shared Trees	428	
PIM	428	
<i>PIM-SM</i>	429	
<i>PIM DR</i>	429	
<i>Auto-RP</i>	429	
<i>PIMv2 Bootstrap Router</i>	430	
DVMRP	430	
IPv6 Multicast Addresses	430	
References and Recommended Readings	431	
Exam Preparation Tasks	433	
Review All Key Topics	433	
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	433	
Define Key Terms	433	
Q&A	434	
<b>Part IV</b>	<b>Security, Convergence, Network Management</b>	<b>443</b>
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Managing Security</b>	<b>445</b>
“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	445	
Foundation Topics	448	
Network Security Overview	448	
Security Legislation	448	
Security Threats	450	
<i>Reconnaissance and Port Scanning</i>	450	
<i>Vulnerability Scanners</i>	451	
<i>Unauthorized Access</i>	452	

Security Risks	453
<i>Targets</i>	453
<i>Loss of Availability</i>	454
<i>Integrity Violations and Confidentiality Breaches</i>	455
Security Policy and Process	456
Security Policy Defined	457
Basic Approach of a Security Policy	458
Purpose of Security Policies	458
Security Policy Components	459
Risk Assessment	459
Risk Index	460
Continuous Security	461
Integrating Security Mechanisms into Network Design	462
Trust and Identity Management	462
Trust	463
<i>Domains of Trust</i>	463
Identity	464
<i>Passwords</i>	464
<i>Tokens</i>	464
<i>Certificates</i>	465
Access Control	466
Secure Connectivity	466
Encryption Fundamentals	466
Encryption Keys	467
VPN Protocols	467
Transmission Confidentiality	469
Data Integrity	469
Threat Defense	470
Physical Security	470
Infrastructure Protection	471
Security Management Solutions	472
References and Recommended Readings	473
Exam Preparation Tasks	474
Review All Key Topics	474
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	474
Define Key Terms	475
Q&A	475

**Chapter 13 Security Solutions 481**

- “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz 481
- Foundation Topics 484
- Cisco SAFE Architecture 484
  - Network Security Platforms 485
  - Cisco Security Control Framework 486
- Trust and Identity Technologies 486
  - Firewall ACLs 487
  - Cisco NAC Appliance 488
  - Cisco Identity-Based Network Services 489
  - Identity and Access Control Deployments 489
- Detecting and Mitigating Threats 490
  - Threat Detection and Mitigation Technologies 491
  - Threat-Detection and Threat-Mitigation Solutions 492
  - Cisco IronPort ESA 493
  - Cisco IronPort WSA 494
- Security Management Applications 495
  - Security Platform Solutions 495
  - Security Management Network 496
- Integrating Security into Network Devices 497
  - IOS Security 498
  - ISR G2 Security Hardware Options 499
  - Cisco Security Appliances 499
  - Intrusion Prevention 500
  - Catalyst 6500 Service Modules 500
  - Endpoint Security 502
- Securing the Enterprise 502
  - Implementing Security in the Campus 502
  - Implementing Security in the Data Center 503
  - Implementing Security in the Enterprise Edge and WAN 504
- References and Recommended Readings 507
- Exam Preparation Tasks 508
  - Review All Key Topics 508
  - Complete Tables and Lists from Memory 508
  - Define Key Terms 509
  - Q&A 509

**Chapter 14 Voice and Video Design 515**

“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	515
Foundation Topics	518
Traditional Voice Architectures	518
PBX and PSTN Switches	518
Local Loop and Trunks	519
Ports	520
Major Analog and Digital Signaling Types	521
<i>Loop-Start Signaling</i>	522
<i>Ground-Start Signaling</i>	522
<i>E&amp;M Signaling</i>	523
<i>CAS and CCS Signaling</i>	524
PSTN Numbering Plan	526
Other PSTN Services	527
<i>Centrex Services</i>	528
<i>Voice Mail</i>	528
<i>Database Services</i>	528
IVR	528
ACD	528
Voice Engineering Terminology	528
<i>Grade of Service</i>	528
<i>Erlangs</i>	528
<i>Centum Call Second</i>	529
<i>Busy Hour</i>	529
<i>Busy-Hour Traffic</i>	529
<i>Blocking Probability</i>	530
<i>Call Detail Records</i>	530
Converged Multiservice Networks	530
VoIP	531
IPT Components	532
<i>Design Goals of IP Telephony</i>	534
IPT Deployment Models	535
<i>Single-Site Deployment</i>	535
<i>Multisite WAN with Centralized Call Processing Model</i>	536
<i>Multisite WAN with Distributed Call Processing Model</i>	536
<i>Unified CallManager Express Deployments</i>	537
Video Deployment Considerations	537
Codecs	539

<i>Analog-to-Digital Signal Conversion</i>	540
<i>Codec Standards</i>	540
VoIP Control and Transport Protocols	541
<i>DHCP, DNS, and TFTP</i>	542
<i>SCCP</i>	542
<i>RTP and RTCP</i>	543
<i>MGCP</i>	544
<i>H.323</i>	544
<i>H.264</i>	547
<i>SIP</i>	548
IPT Design	549
Bandwidth	550
VAD	550
Calculating Voice Bandwidth	551
Delay Components in VoIP Networks	552
Packet Loss	555
Echo Cancellation	555
QoS and Bandwidth Mechanisms for VoIP and Video Networks	555
<i>cRTP</i>	556
<i>IEEE 802.1P</i>	556
<i>Resource Reservation Protocol</i>	557
<i>LFI</i>	557
<i>LLQ</i>	557
<i>Auto QoS</i>	559
IPT Design Recommendations	560
<i>Service Class Recommendations</i>	561
References and Recommended Readings	562
Exam Preparation Tasks	564
Review All Key Topics	564
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	564
Define Key Terms	565
Q&A	565
<b>Chapter 15 Network Management Protocols</b>	<b>575</b>
“Do I Know This Already?” Quiz	575
Foundation Topics	578
Simple Network Management Protocol	579
SNMP Components	579
MIB	580

SNMP Message Versions	581
<i>SNMPv1</i>	581
<i>SNMPv2</i>	582
<i>SNMPv3</i>	582
Other Network Management Technologies	583
RMON	583
<i>RMON2</i>	584
NetFlow	585
<i>NetFlow Compared to RMON and SNMP</i>	586
CDP	587
Syslog	588
References and Recommended Reading	589
Exam Preparation Tasks	591
Review All Key Topics	591
Complete Tables and Lists from Memory	591
Define Key Terms	591
Q&A	592

**Part V        Comprehensive Scenarios and Final Prep    597**

**Chapter 16    Comprehensive Scenarios    599**

Scenario One: Pearland Hospital	599
Scenario One Questions	600
Scenario One Answers	601
Scenario Two: Big Oil and Gas	604
Scenario Two Questions	604
Scenario Two Answers	605
Scenario Three: Beauty Things Store	606
Scenario Three Questions	607
Scenario Three Answers	608
Scenario Four: Falcon Communications	608
Scenario Four Questions	609
Scenario Four Answers	609

**Chapter 17    Final Preparation    613**

Tools for Final Preparation	613
Pearson Cert Practice Test Engine and Questions on the CD	613
Install the Software from the CD	614
Activate and Download the Practice Exam	614

Activating Other Exams	615
Premium Edition	615
The Cisco Learning Network	615
Memory Tables	615
Chapter-Ending Review Tools	616
Suggested Plan for Final Review/Study	616
Subnetting Practice	616
Using the Exam Engine	617
Summary	618
<b>Part VI      Appendixes</b>	<b>621</b>
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Answers to the “Do I Know This Already?” Quizzes and Q&amp;A Questions</b>
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>CCDA Exam Updates: Version 1.0</b>
<b>Appendix C</b>	<b>OSI Model, TCP/IP Architecture, and Numeric Conversion</b>
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>677</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>690</b>

## **Elements Available on the CD**

<b>Appendix D</b>	<b>Memory Tables</b>
<b>Appendix E</b>	<b>Memory Tables Answer Key</b>

## Command Syntax Conventions

The conventions used to present command syntax in this book are the same conventions used in the IOS Command Reference. The Command Reference describes these conventions as follows:

- **Bold** indicates commands and keywords that are entered literally as shown. In actual configuration examples and output (not general command syntax), bold indicates commands that are manually input by the user (such as a **show** command).
- Italic indicates arguments for which you supply actual values.
- Vertical bars (|) separate alternative, mutually exclusive elements.
- Square brackets ([ ]) indicate an optional element.
- Braces ({ }) indicate a required choice.
- Braces within brackets ({{ }}) indicate a required choice within an optional element.

## Introduction

So, you have worked on Cisco devices for a while, designing networks for your customers, and now you want to get certified? There are several good reasons to do so. The Cisco certification program allows network analysts and engineers to demonstrate their competence in different areas and levels of networking. The prestige and respect that come with a Cisco certification will definitely help you in your career. Your clients, peers, and superiors will recognize you as an expert in networking.

Cisco Certified Design Associate (CCDA) is the associate-level certification that represents knowledge of the design of Cisco internetwork infrastructure. The CCDA demonstrates skills required to design routed and switched networks, LANs, and WANs. The CCDA also has knowledge of campus designs, data centers, network security, IP telephony, and wireless LANs.

Although it is not required, Cisco suggests taking the DESGN 2.1 course before you take the CCDA exam. For more information about the various levels of certification, career tracks, and Cisco exams, go to the Cisco Certifications page at [www.cisco.com/web/learning/le3/learning\\_career\\_certifications\\_and\\_learning\\_paths\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/web/learning/le3/learning_career_certifications_and_learning_paths_home.html)

Our goal with this book is to help you pass the 640-864 CCDA exam. This is done by assessment on and coverage of all the exam topics published by Cisco. Reviewing tables and practicing test questions will help you practice your knowledge on all subject areas.

## About the 640-864 CCDA Exam

The CCDA exam measures your ability to design networks that meet certain requirements for performance, security, capacity, and scalability. The exam focuses on small- to medium-sized networks. The candidate should have at least one year of experience in the design of small- to medium-sized networks using Cisco products. A CCDA candidate should understand internetworking technologies, including, Cisco's enterprise network architecture, IPv4 subnets, IPv6 addressing and protocols, routing, switching, WAN technologies, LAN protocols, security, IP telephony, and network management. The new exam adds topics such as borderless networks, data centers design, and updates on IPv6, voice and video design, wireless LANs, WAN technologies, and security.

The test to obtain CCDA certification is called Designing for Cisco Internetwork Solutions (DESGN) Exam #640-864. It is a computer-based test that has 65 questions and a 90-minute time limit. Because all exam information is managed by Cisco Systems and is therefore subject to change, candidates should continually monitor the Cisco Systems site for course and exam updates at [www.cisco.com/web/learning/le3/learning\\_career\\_certifications\\_and\\_learning\\_paths\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/web/learning/le3/learning_career_certifications_and_learning_paths_home.html).

You can take the exam at Pearson VUE testing centers. You can register with VUE at [www.vue.com/cisco/](http://www.vue.com/cisco/). The CCDA certification is valid for three years. To recertify, you can pass a current CCDA test, pass a CCIE exam, or pass any 642 or Cisco Specialist exam.

## 640-864 CCDA Exam Topics

Table I-1 lists the topics of the 640-864 CCDA exam and indicates the part in the book where they are covered.

**Table I-1** 640-864 CCDA Exam Topics

Exam Topic	Part
<b>Describe the Methodology Used to Design a Network</b>	
Describe developing business trends	I
Identify network requirements to support the organization	I
Describe the tools/process to characterize an existing network	I
Describe the top down approach to network design	I
Describe network management protocols and features	IV
<b>Describe Network Structure and Modularity</b>	
Describe the network hierarchy	I
Describe the modular approach in network design	I
Describe network architecture for the enterprise	II
<b>Design Basic Enterprise Campus Networks</b>	
Describe Campus Design considerations	II
Design the enterprise campus network	II
Design the enterprise data center	II
Describe enterprise network virtualization tools	II
<b>Design Enterprise Edge and Remote Network Modules</b>	
Describe the enterprise edge, branch, and teleworker design characteristics	II
Describe physical and logical WAN connectivity	II
Design the branch office WAN solutions	II
Describe access network solutions for a remote worker	II
Design the WAN to support selected redundancy methodologies	II
Identify design considerations for a remote data center	II
<b>Design IP Addressing and Routing Protocols</b>	
Describe IPv4 addressing	III
Describe IPv6 addressing	III
<b>Identify Routing Protocol Considerations in an Enterprise Network</b>	
Design a routing protocol deployment	III

---

<b>Design Network Services</b>	
Describe the security life cycle	IV
Identify Cisco technologies to mitigate security vulnerabilities	IV
Select appropriate Cisco security solutions and deployment placement	IV
Describe high-level voice and video architectures	IV
Identify the design considerations for voice/video services	IV
Describe Cisco Unified Wireless network architectures and features	II
Design wireless network using controllers	II

---

## About the CCDA 640-864 Official Cert Guide

This book maps to the topic areas of the 640-864 CCDA exam and uses a number of features to help you understand the topics and prepare for the exam.

### Objectives and Methods

This book uses several key methodologies to help you discover the exam topics on which you need more review, to help you fully understand and remember those details, and to help you prove to yourself that you have retained your knowledge of those topics. So, this book does not try to help you pass the exams only by memorization, but by truly learning and understanding the topics. This book is designed to help you pass the CCDA exam by using the following methods:

- Helping you discover which exam topics you have not mastered
- Providing explanations and information to fill in your knowledge gaps
- Supplying exercises that enhance your ability to recall and deduce the answers to test questions
- Providing practice exercises on the topics and the testing process via test questions on the CD

### Book Features

To help you customize your study time using this book, the core chapters have several features that help you make the best use of your time:

- **“Do I Know This Already?” quiz:** Each chapter begins with a quiz that helps you determine how much time you need to spend studying that chapter.
- **Foundation Topics:** These are the core sections of each chapter. They explain the concepts for the topics in that chapter.

- **Exam Preparation Tasks:** After the “Foundation Topics” section of each chapter, the “Exam Preparation Tasks” section lists a series of study activities that you should do at the end of the chapter. Each chapter includes the activities that make the most sense for studying the topics in that chapter:
  - **Review All the Key Topics:** The Key Topic icon appears next to the most important items in the “Foundation Topics” section of the chapter. The Review All the Key Topics activity lists the key topics from the chapter, along with their page numbers. Although the contents of the entire chapter could be on the exam, you should definitely know the information listed in each key topic, so you should review these.
  - **Complete the Tables and Lists from Memory:** To help you memorize some lists of facts, many of the more important lists and tables from the chapter are included in a document on the CD. This document lists only partial information, allowing you to complete the table or list.
  - **Define Key Terms:** Although the exam may be unlikely to ask a question such as “Define this term,” the CCDA exams do require that you learn and know a lot of networking terminology. This section lists the most important terms from the chapter, asking you to write a short definition and compare your answer to the glossary at the end of the book.
- **CD-based practice exam:** The companion CD contains the Pearson Cert Practice Test engine that allows you to take practice exam questions. Use these to prepare with a sample exam and to pinpoint topics where you need more study.

## How This Book Is Organized

This book contains 16 core chapters—Chapters 1 through 16. Chapter 17 includes some preparation tips and suggestions for how to approach the exam. Each core chapter covers a subset of the topics on the CCDA exam. The core chapters are organized into parts. They cover the following topics:

### Part I: General Network Design

- **Chapter 1: Network Design Methodology** covers Cisco architectures for the enterprise network, the Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize (PPDIOO) methodology, and the process of completing a network design.
- **Chapter 2: Network Structure Models** covers hierarchical network models, the Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, and high-availability network services.

### Part II: LAN and WAN Design

- **Chapter 3: Enterprise LAN Design** covers LAN media, campus LAN design and models, and best practices for campus networks.
- **Chapter 4: Data Center Design** covers enterprise data center design fundamentals, technology trends, data center challenges, and virtualization technologies.

- **Chapter 5: Wireless LAN Design** covers technologies and design options used for wireless LANs.
- **Chapter 6: WAN Technologies** examines technologies, design methodologies, and requirements for the enterprise WANs.
- **Chapter 7: WAN Design** covers WAN design for the Enterprise WAN and enterprise branch, including remote-access and virtual private network (VPN) architectures.

### Part III: The Internet Protocol and Routing Protocols

- **Chapter 8: Internet Protocol Version 4** covers the header, addressing, subnet design, and protocols used by IPv4.
- **Chapter 9: Internet Protocol Version 6** covers the header, addressing, design, and protocols used by IPv6.
- **Chapter 10: Routing Protocol Characteristics, RIP, and EIGRP** covers routing protocol characteristics, metrics, RIPv2, and Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP).
- **Chapter 11: OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and IP Multicast** covers Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) Protocol, Border Gateway Protocol (BGP), route summarization, route redistribution, route filtering, and IP multicast.

### Part IV: Security, Convergence, Network Management

- **Chapter 12: Managing Security** examines security management, security policy, threats, risks, security compliance, and trust and identity management.
- **Chapter 13: Security Solutions** covers Cisco SAFE architecture, security technologies, and design options for securing the enterprise.
- **Chapter 14: Voice and Video Design** reviews traditional voice architectures, integrated multiservice networks, Cisco's IPT architecture, video deployment considerations, and IPT design.
- **Chapter 15: Network Management Protocols** covers Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Remote Monitor (RMON), NetFlow, Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), and syslog.

### Part V: Comprehensive Scenarios and Final Prep

- **Chapter 16: Comprehensive Scenarios** provides network case studies for further comprehensive study.
- **Chapter 17: Final Preparation** identifies tools for final exam preparation and helps you develop an effective study plan. It contains tips on how to best use the CD material to study.

### Part VI: Appendixes

- **Appendix A: Answers to “Do I Know This Already?” Quizzes and Q&A Questions**

- **Appendix B: CCDA Exam Updates:** Version 1.0 provides instructions for finding updates to the exam and this book when and if they occur.
- **Appendix C: OSI Model, TCP/IP Architecture, and Numeric Conversion** reviews the Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model to give you a better understanding of internetworking. It reviews the TCP/IP architecture and also reviews the techniques to convert between decimal, binary, and hexadecimal numbers. Although there might not be a specific question on the exam about converting a binary number to decimal, you need to know how to do so to do problems on the test.
- **Appendix D: Memory Tables** (a CD-only appendix) contains the key tables and lists from each chapter, with some of the contents removed. You can print this appendix and, as a memory exercise, complete the tables and lists. The goal is to help you memorize facts that can be useful on the exams. This appendix is available in PDF format on the CD; it is not in the printed book.
- **Appendix E: Memory Tables Answer Key** (a CD-only appendix) contains the answer key for the memory tables in Appendix D. This appendix is available in PDF format on the CD; it is not in the printed book.

*This page intentionally left blank*

### **CCDA exam topics covered in this part:**

- Describe developing business trends
- Identify network requirements to support the organization
- Describe the tools/process to characterize an existing network
- Describe the top-down approach to network design
- Describe the network hierarchy
- Describe the modular approach in network design
- Describe network architecture for the enterprise

# **Part I: General Network Design**

---

**Chapter 1: Network Design Methodology**

**Chapter 2: Network Structure Models**



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Cisco Architectures for the Enterprise
- Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize Phases
- Identifying Customer Requirements
- Characterizing the Existing Network
- Designing the Network Topology and Solutions

# Network Design Methodology

---

Networks can become complex and difficult to manage. Network architectures and design methodologies help you manage the complexities of networks. This chapter provides an overview of Cisco’s architectures for the enterprise and the Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize (PPDIOO) network life cycle. This chapter also describes the six network life cycle phases and steps in design methodology.

## “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 1-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 1-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Cisco Architectures for the Enterprise	1, 2, 3, 4
Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize Phases	5, 6
Identifying Customer Requirements	9, 10
Characterizing the Existing Network	7
Designing the Network Topology and Solutions	8

- 1.** Which are the three Cisco network architectures for the enterprise?
  - a.** Hierarchical
  - b.** Borderless
  - c.** Integrated
  - d.** Data center/virtualization
  - e.** OSI model
  - f.** Collaboration
- 2.** Which technology forces affect decisions for the enterprise network?
  - a.** Removal of borders
  - b.** Virtualization
  - c.** Growth of applications
  - d.** 10GigEthernet
  - e.** Regulation
  - f.** ROI
  - g.** Competitiveness
- 3.** Network resiliency and control occurs in which layer of the borderless network architecture?
  - a.** Policy and Control
  - b.** Borderless Network Services
  - c.** Borderless User Services
  - d.** Connection Management
- 4.** Presence occurs in which collaboration architecture layer?
  - a.** Communication and Collaboration
  - b.** Collaboration Services
  - c.** Infrastructure
  - d.** Media Services
- 5.** Which of the following is the correct order of the six phases of PPDIOO?
  - a.** Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, Optimize
  - b.** Plan, Prepare, Design, Implement, Operate, Optimize
  - c.** Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Optimize, Operate
  - d.** Plan, Prepare, Design, Implement, Optimize, Operate

- 6.** The PPDIOO design methodology includes which steps? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Identify customer requirements.
  - b.** Design the network topology.
  - c.** Characterize the network.
  - d.** Optimize the network.
  - e.** Operate the network.
  - f.** Implement the network.
  - g.** Prepare and plan.
- 7.** What are the three primary sources of information in a network audit?
- a.** CIO, network manager, network engineer
  - b.** Network manager, management software, CDP
  - c.** Network discovery, CDP, SNMP
  - d.** Existing documentation, management software, new management tools
- 8.** Which design solution states that a design must start from the application layer and finish in the physical layer?
- a.** OSI model
  - b.** PPDIOO
  - c.** Hierarchical architecture
  - d.** Top-down
- 9.** Budget and personnel limitations are examples of what?
- a.** Organization requirements
  - b.** Organization constraints
  - c.** Technical goals
  - d.** Technical constraints
- 10.** Improving network response time and reliability are examples of what?
- a.** Organization requirements
  - b.** Organization constraints
  - c.** Technical goals
  - d.** Technical constraints

## Foundation Topics

With the complexities of networks, it is necessary to use architectures and methodologies in network design to support business goals. The Cisco Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize (PPDIOO) network life cycle defines a continuous cycle of phases in a network's life. Each phase includes key steps in successful network planning, design, implementation, and operation. The top-down design approach to network design adapts the network infrastructure to the network applications' needs.

## Cisco Architectures for the Enterprise

With the constant evolution of networks, Cisco keeps updating its enterprise architectures and frameworks. Business drivers can affect network architecture and technology forces that affect business.

Business forces affecting decisions for the enterprise network include the following:



- **Return on investment:** Companies expect a return (be it cost savings or increased productivity) on its investments of network infrastructure. The solutions need to use technology to work within a business solution.
- **Regulation:** Companies need to meet industry regulations; for example, the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) for the health insurance industry and Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS) for the credit card industry.
- **Competitiveness:** To maintain a competitive edge, companies need to use technology to make them more competitive than other businesses.

The technology forces affecting decisions for the enterprise network are

- **Removal of borders:** Traditional network boundaries have been removed. Access to network resources need to be enabled from branch offices, teleworkers, home offices, mobile devices, customers, and partner networks.
- **Virtualization:** Allows for the maximization of efficiencies through the reduction of hardware, power consumption, heating and cooling costs, facilities space, and management effort. Virtualization and its benefits are a key goal for almost all organization. It has gained popularity by industry leaders such as VMware.
- **Growth of applications:** Customers continue to ask for new products, service offerings, improved customer service, greater security, and customization flexibility—all at a lower cost.

IT optimization areas are divided into three groups:

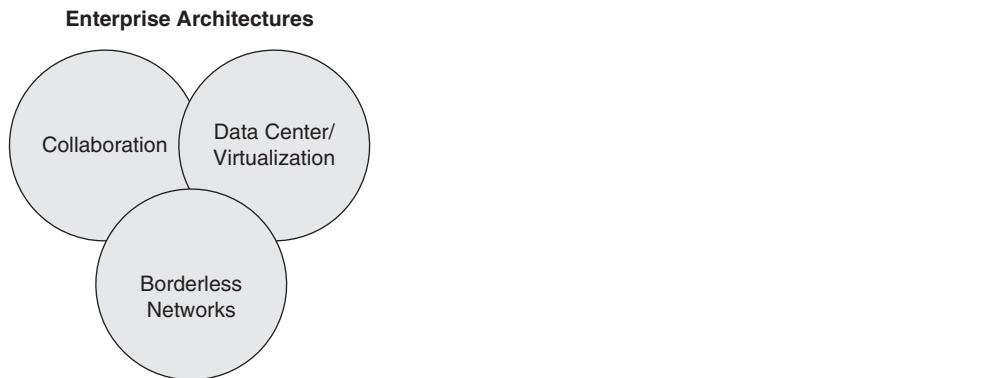
- Data center
- Network
- Applications

Each group has its own experts, budget, and challenges.

Cisco has created an interwoven framework to create three architectures for each group that provides for optimization at an individual level and the integration with other areas:

- Borderless networks architecture
- Collaboration architecture
- Data center/virtualization architecture

These three architectures are shown in Figure 1-1 and are covered in more detail in the following sections.



**Figure 1-1 Cisco Enterprise Architectures**

### Borderless Networks Architecture

Cisco Borderless Network Architecture is a next-generation solution that enables connectivity to anyone and anything, anywhere, and at any time. The connectivity needs to be secure, reliable, and seamless. The borderless architecture optimizes both business and network performance.

As shown in Figure 1-2, the Cisco borderless network architecture blueprint consists of four major blocks:

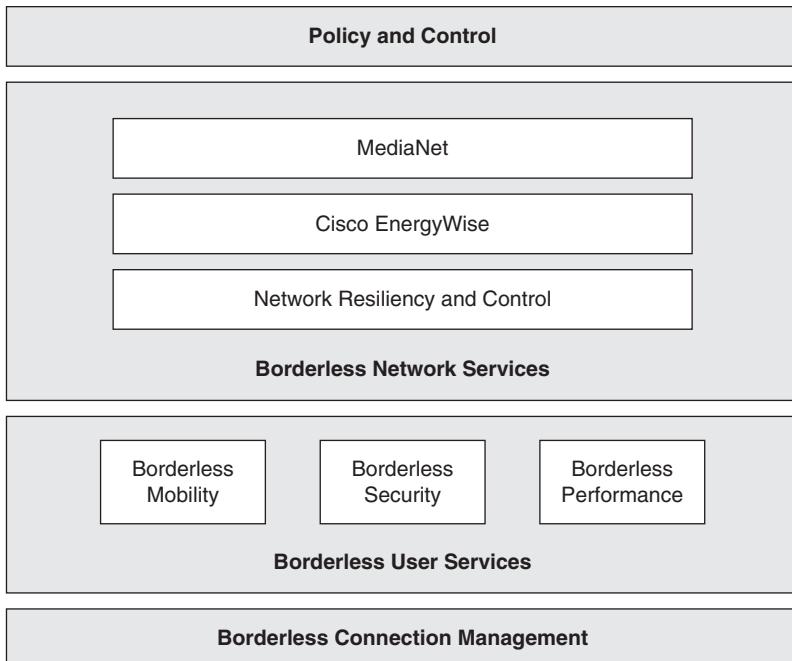
- **Policy and Control:** Policies are applied to all users and devices across the architecture.
- **Network Services:** These services include resiliency and control. Cisco EnergyWise and Medianet provide capabilities to borderless networks.
- **User Services:** These services include mobility, performance, and security.
- **Connection Management:** This block delivers secure access anytime and anywhere, regardless of how the network is accessed.

### Collaboration Architecture

Cisco's collaboration architecture is composed of three layers:

- **Communication and Collaboration Applications:** This layer contains conference applications, and TelePresence.

- **Collaboration Services:** This layer contains services that support the collaboration applications: presence, location, session management, contact management, client frameworks, tagging, and policy and security management.
- **Infrastructure:** This layer is responsible for allowing collaboration anytime, from anywhere, on any device. It includes virtual machines, the network, and storage.



**Figure 1-2** *Borderless Architecture*

### Data Center/Virtualization Architecture

Cisco's data center/virtualization architecture is built upon Cisco Data Center 3.0. It comprises a comprehensive set of virtualization technologies and services that bring the network, computing, storage, and virtualization platforms together. Figure 1-3 shows the architecture framework for data centers.

Data center architecture and design is covered in Chapter 4, “Data Center Design.”

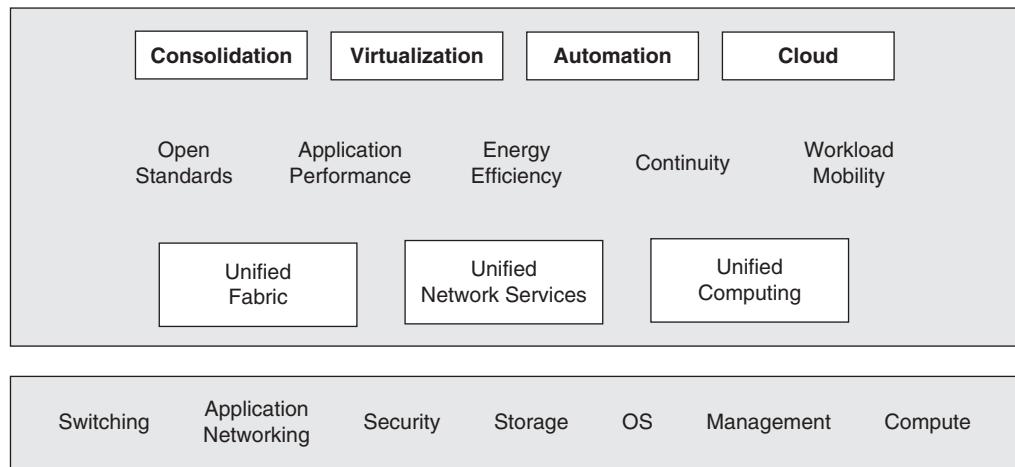
Table 1-2 lists the benefits of Cisco network architectures.

**Table 1-2** *Benefits of Cisco Network Architectures*

Benefit	Description
Functionality	Supports organizational requirements
Scalability	Supports growth and expansion of organizational tasks
Availability	Provides services reliability, anywhere and anytime

**Table 1-2 Benefits of Cisco Network Architectures**

<b>Benefit</b>	<b>Description</b>
Performance	Provides responsiveness, throughput, and utilization on a per-application basis
Manageability	Provides control, performance monitoring, and fault detection
Efficiency	Provides network services and infrastructure with a reasonable operational costs and appropriate capital investment

**Figure 1-3 Data Center Architecture Framework**

## Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize Phases

Cisco has formalized a network's life cycle into six phases: Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize. These phases are collectively known as PPDIOO. The PPDIOO life cycle provides four main benefits:

- It lowers the total cost of ownership by validating technology requirements and planning for infrastructure changes and resource requirements.
- It increases network availability by producing a sound network design and validating the network operation.
- It improves business agility by establishing business requirements and technology strategies.
- It speeds access to applications and services by improving availability, reliability, security, scalability, and performance.



These benefits are realized by the actions listed in Tables 1-3 through 1-6.

**Table 1-3 Actions That Lower the Cost of Ownership**

**Actions That Lower the Cost of Ownership**

- 
- Identifying and validating technology requirements
  - Planning for infrastructure changes and resource requirements
  - Developing a sound network design aligned with technical requirements and business goals
  - Accelerating successful implementation
  - Improving the efficiency of the network and the staff that supports it
  - Reducing operating expenses by improving the efficiency of operation processes and tools
- 

**Table 1-4 Actions That Increase Network Availability**

**Actions That Increase Network Availability**

- 
- Assessing the state of the network and its ability to support the proposed design
  - Specifying the correct set of hardware and software releases and keeping them current
  - Producing a sound operations design and validating network operation
  - Staging and testing the proposed system before deployment
  - Improving staff skills
  - Proactively monitoring the system and assessing availability trends and alerts
  - Proactively identifying security breaches and defining remediation plans
- 

**Table 1-5 Actions That Improve Business Agility**

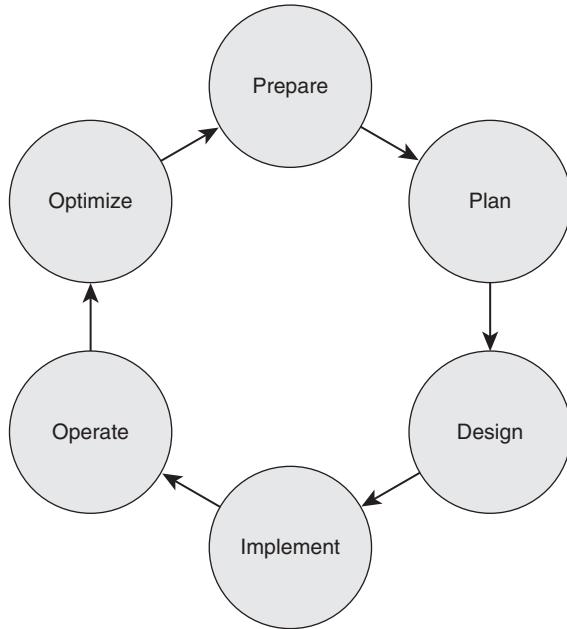
**Actions That Improve Business Agility**

- 
- Establishing business requirements and technology strategies
  - Readying sites to support the system that will be implemented
  - Integrating technical requirements and business goals into a detailed design and demonstrating that the network is functioning as specified
  - Expertly installing, configuring, and integrating system components
  - Continually enhancing performance
-

**Table 1-6 Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services**

<b>Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services</b>
Accessing and improving operational preparedness to support current and planned network technologies and services
Improving service delivery efficiency and effectiveness by increasing availability, resource capacity, and performance
Improving the availability, reliability, and stability, of the network and the applications that run on it
Managing and resolving problems that affect the system and keeping software applications current

Figure 1-4 shows the PPDIOO network life cycle.

**Figure 1-4 Cisco PPDIOO Network Life Cycle**

The following sections discuss the PPDIOO phases in detail.

### Prepare Phase

The Prepare phase establishes organization and business requirements, develops a network strategy, and proposes a high-level conceptual architecture to support the strategy. Technical activities include establishing a financial justification for a network strategy.

## Plan Phase

The Plan phase identifies the network requirements based on goals, facilities, and user needs. This phase characterizes sites and assesses the network, performs a gap analysis against best-practice architectures, and looks at the operational environment. A project plan is developed to manage the tasks, responsible parties, milestones, and resources to do the design and implementation. The project plan aligns with the scope, cost, and resource parameters established with the original business requirements. This project plan is followed (and updated) during all phases of the cycle.

## Design Phase

The network design is developed based on the technical and business requirements obtained from the previous phases. The network design specification is a comprehensive detailed design that meets current business and technical requirements. It provides high availability, reliability, security, scalability, and performance. The design includes network diagrams and an equipment list. The project plan is updated with more granular information for implementation. After the Design phase is approved, the Implement phase begins.

## Implement Phase

New equipment is installed and configured, according to design specifications, in the Implement phase. New devices replace or augment the existing infrastructure. The project plan is followed during this phase. Planned network changes should be communicated in change control meetings, with necessary approvals to proceed. Each step in the implementation should include a description, detailed implementation guidelines, estimated time to implement, rollback steps in case of a failure, and any additional reference information. As changes are implemented they are also tested before moving to the Operate phase.

## Operate Phase

The Operate phase maintains the network's day-to-day operational health. Operations include managing and monitoring network components, routing maintenance, managing upgrades, managing performance, and identifying and correcting network faults. This phase is the design's final test. During operation, network management stations should monitor the network's general health and generate traps when certain thresholds are reached. Fault detection, correction, and performance monitoring events provide initial data for the optimize phase.

## Optimize Phase

The Optimize phase involves proactive network management by identifying and resolving issues before they affect the network. The Optimize phase may create a modified network design if too many network problems arise, to improve performance issues, or to resolve application issues. The requirement for a modified network design leads to the network life cycle beginning.

## Summary of PPDIOO Phases

Table 1-7 summarizes the PPDI<sub>O</sub>O phases.

**Table 1-7 PPDIOO Network Life Cycle Phases**

<b>PPDIOO Phase</b>	<b>Description</b>
Prepare	Establishes organization and business requirements, develops a network strategy, and proposes a high-level architecture
Plan	Identifies the network requirements by characterizing and assessing the network, performing a gap analysis
Design	Provides high availability, reliability, security, scalability, and performance
Implement	Installation and configuration of new equipment
Operate	Day-to-day network operations
Optimize	Proactive network management; modifications to the design

### Design Methodology Under PPDIOO

The following sections focus on a design methodology for the first three phases of the PPDIOO methodology. This design methodology has three steps:

- Step 1.** Identifying customer network requirements
- Step 2.** Characterizing the existing network
- Step 3.** Designing the network topology and solutions

In Step 1, decision makers identify requirements, and a conceptual architecture is proposed. This step occurs in the PPDIOO Prepare phase.

In Step 2, the network is assessed, and a gap analysis is performed to determine the infrastructure necessary to meet the requirements. The network is assessed on function, performance, and quality. This step occurs in the PPDIOO Plan phase.

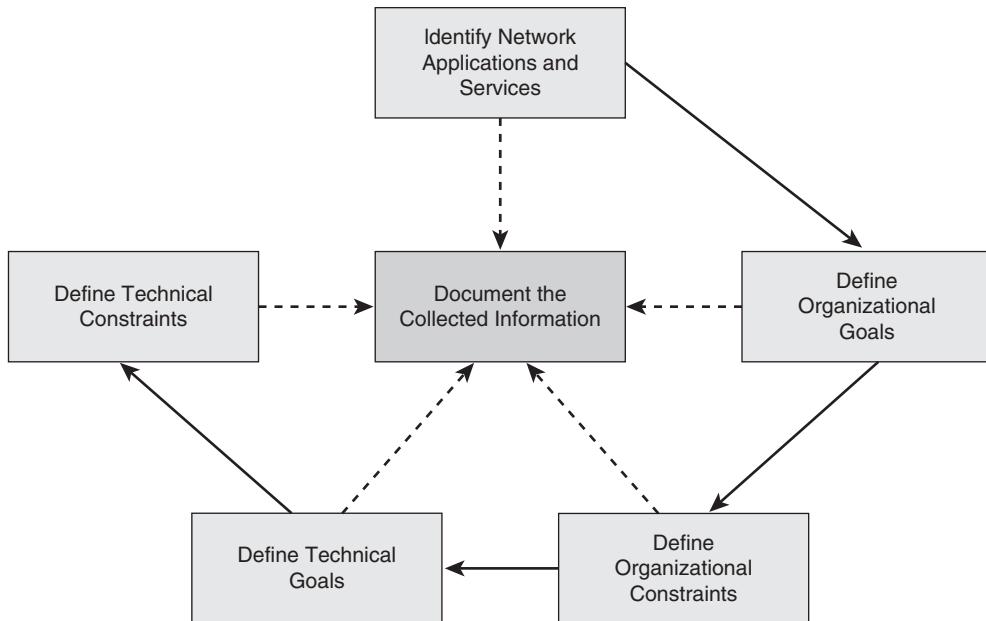
In Step 3, the network topology is designed to meet the requirements and close the network gaps identified in the previous steps. A detailed design document is prepared during this phase. Design solutions include network infrastructure, Voice over IP (VoIP), content networking, and intelligent network services. This set occurs in the PPDIOO Design phase.

## Identifying Customer Design Requirements

To obtain customer requirements, you need to not only talk to network engineers, but also talk to business unit personnel and company managers. Networks are designed to support applications; you want to determine the network services that you need to support.

As shown in Figure 1-5, the steps to identify customer requirements are as follows:

- Step 1.** Identify network applications and services.
- Step 2.** Define the organizational goals.
- Step 3.** Define the possible organizational constraints.
- Step 4.** Define the technical goals.
- Step 5.** Define the possible technical constraints.



**Figure 1-5 Identifying Customer Requirements**

After you complete these steps, you then analyze the data and develop a network design.

You need to identify current and planned applications and determine the importance of each application. Is email as important as customer support? Is IP telephony being deployed? High-availability and high-bandwidth applications need to be identified for the design to accommodate their network requirements. A table identifying applications should list the following:

- **Planned application types:** Such as email, collaboration, voice, web browsing, file sharing, database
- **Concrete applications:** Such as Outlook, MeetingPlace
- **Business importance:** Labeled as critical, important, or unimportant
- **Comment:** Any additional information critical to the design of the network

Planned infrastructure services should also be gathered. Network services include security, quality of service (QoS), network management, high availability, unified communications, mobility, and virtualization.

For organizational goals, you should identify whether the company's goal is to improve customer support, add new customer services, increase competitiveness, or reduce costs. It might be a combination of these goals, with some of them being more important than others. Some organizational goals are as follows:

- Increase competitiveness
- Reduce costs

- Improve customer support
- Add new customer services

Organizational constraints include budget, personnel, policy, and schedule. The company might limit you to a certain budget or timeframe. The organization might require the project to be completed in an unreasonable timeframe. It might have limited personnel to support the assessment and design efforts, or it might have policy limitations to use certain protocols.

Technical goals support the organization's objectives and the supported applications. Technical goals include the following:

- Improve the network's response-time throughput
- Decrease network failures and downtime (high availability)
- Simplify network management
- Improve network security
- Improve reliability of mission-critical applications
- Modernize outdated technologies (technology refresh)
- Improve the network's scalability

Network design might be constrained by parameters that limit the solution. Legacy applications might still exist that must be supported going forward, and these applications might require a legacy protocol that may limit a design. Technical constraints include the following:

- Existing wiring does not support new technology.
- Bandwidth might not support new applications.
- The network must support existing legacy equipment.
- Legacy applications must be supported (application compatibility).

## Characterizing the Existing Network

Characterizing the network is Step 2 of the design methodology. In this section, you learn to identify a network's major features, tools to analyze existing network traffic, and tools for auditing and monitoring network traffic.

### Steps in Gathering Information

When arriving at a site that has an existing network, you need to obtain all the existing documentation. Sometimes no documented information exists. You should be prepared to use tools to obtain information and get access to log in to the network devices to obtain information. Here are the steps for gathering information:



- Step 1.** Identify all existing organization information and documentation.
- Step 2.** Perform a network audit that adds detail to the description of the network.
- Step 3.** Use traffic analysis information to augment information on applications and protocols used.

When gathering exiting documentation, you look for site information such as site names, site addresses, site contacts, site hours of operation, and building and room access. Network infrastructure information includes locations and types of servers and network devices, data center and closet locations, LAN wiring, WAN technologies and circuit speeds, and power used. Logical network information includes IP addressing, routing protocols, network management, and security access lists used. You need to find out whether voice or video is being used on the network.

## Network Audit Tools

When performing a network audit, you have three primary sources of information:

- Existing documentation
- Existing network management software tools
- New network auditing tools

After gathering the existing documentation, you must obtain access to the existing management software. The client may already have CiscoWorks tools from which you can obtain hardware models and components and software versions. You can also obtain the existing router and switch configurations.

The network audit should provide the following information:

- Network device list
- Hardware models
- Software versions
- Configuration of network devices
- Auditing tools output information
- Interface speeds
- Link, CPU, and memory utilization
- WAN technology types and carrier information

In small network, you might be able to obtain the required information via a manual assessment. For larger network, a manual assessment might be too time-consuming. Network assessment tools include the following:

- **Manual assessment**
  - Manual commands: Review of device configuration and operation though the use of `show`
  - Scripting tools

- Existing management and auditing tools
  - CiscoWorks: Maps the network and collects network topology, hardware and software versions, and configurations
  - NetFlow: Provides a view of network traffic flows on a specific network interface.
  - Network-Based Application Recognition (NBAR): Intelligent classification engine.
  - Third-party tools: Such as AirMagnet Survey PRO, BVS Yellowjacket, Redcell Engineering, Netcordia NEtMRI, Netformix, NetQoS, and Pari Networks Assessment Tool
- Additional tools with emphasis on VoIP, wireless, and security
  - AirMagnet Analyzer Pro
  - Ekahau Site Survey
  - LANguard Network Security scanner
  - NetIQ Vivinet Assessor
  - neteXpose DNA
  - Cisco Operations Manager
  - Stats Manager
  - Service Statistics Manager
  - ClarusIPC
  - Prognosis

When performing manual auditing on network devices, you can use the following commands to obtain information:

- **show tech-support**
- **show processes cpu** (provides the average CPU utilization information)
- **show version**
- **show processes memory**
- **show log**
- **show interface**
- **show policy-map interface**
- **show running-config** (provides the full router or switch configuration)

Example 1-1 shows the output of a **show version** command. This command shows the operating system version, the router type, the amount of flash and RAM memory, the router uptime, and interface types.

**Example 1-1 show version Command**

```
R2>show version
Cisco IOS Software, 7200 Software (C7200-K91P-M), Version 12.2(25)S9, RELEASE SO
FTWARE (fc1)
Technical Support: http://www.cisco.com/techsupport
Copyright 1986-2006 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Tue 28-Mar-06 23:12 by alnguyen

ROM: ROMMON Emulation Microcode
BOOTLDR: 7200 Software (C7200-K91P-M), Version 12.2(25)S9, RELEASE SOFTWARE (fc1
)

R2 uptime is 5 minutes
System returned to ROM by unknown reload cause - suspect boot_data[BOOT_COUNT] 0
x0, BOOT_COUNT 0, BOOTDATA 19
System image file is "tftp://255.255.255.255/unknown"
```

This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption. Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.

A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at:  
<http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html>

If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to  
[export@cisco.com](mailto:export@cisco.com).

Cisco 7206VXR (NPE400) processor (revision A) with 147456K/16384K bytes of memory.  
Processor board ID 4294967295  
R7000 CPU at 150Mhz, Implementation 39, Rev 2.1, 256KB L2 Cache  
6 slot VXR midplane, Version 2.1

Last reset from power-on

PCI bus mb0\_mb1 (Slots 0, 1, 3 and 5) has a capacity of 600 bandwidth points.  
Current configuration on bus mb0\_mb1 has a total of 200 bandwidth points.  
This configuration is within the PCI bus capacity and is supported.

PCI bus mb2 (Slots 2, 4, 6) has a capacity of 600 bandwidth points. Current configuration on bus mb2 has a total of 0 bandwidth points. This configuration is within the PCI bus capacity and is supported.

Please refer to the following document "Cisco 7200 Series Port Adaptor Hardware Configuration Guidelines" on CCO <[www.cisco.com](http://www.cisco.com)>, for c7200 bandwidth points oversubscription/usage guidelines.

1 FastEthernet interface  
8 Serial interfaces  
125K bytes of NVRAM.

65536K bytes of ATA PCMCIA card at slot 0 (Sector size 512 bytes).  
8192K bytes of Flash internal SIMM (Sector size 256K).  
Configuration register is 0x2102

NetFlow provides extremely granular and accurate traffic measurements and a high-level collection of aggregated traffic. The output of NetFlow information is displayed via the `show ip cache flow` command on routers. Table 1-8 shows a description of the fields for NetFlow output.

**Table 1-8** *NetFlow Output Description*

Field	Description
Bytes	Number of bytes of memory that are used by the NetFlow cache
Active	Number of active flows
Inactive	Number of flow buffers that are allocated in the NetFlow cache
Added	Number of flows that have been created since the start of the summary
Exporting flows	IP address and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port number of the workstation to which flows are exported
Flows exported	Total number of flows export and the total number of UDP datagrams
Protocol	IP protocol and well-known port number
Total flows	Number of flows for this protocol since the last time that statistics were cleared
Flows/sec	Average number of flows this protocol per second
Packets/flow	Average number of packets per flow per second
Bytes/pkt	Average number of bytes for this protocol
Packets/sec	Average number of packets for this protocol per second

## Network Analysis Tools

To obtain application-level information, the IP packet needs to be further inspected. Cisco devices or dedicated hardware or software analyzers capture packets or use Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to gather specific information. Network analysis tools include the following:

- **Netformx DesignXpert Enterprise:** An integrated desktop tool for discovery, design, configuration, quoting and proposing integrated communications network solutions.
- **CNS NetFlow Collector Engine:** Cisco hardware that gathers every flow in a network segment.
- **Cisco Embedded Resource Manager (ERM):** Allows for granular monitoring on a task basis within the Cisco IOS software. It monitors the internal system resource utilization for specific resources, such as the buffer, memory, and CPU.
- **Third-party tools:** Such as Sniffer, AirMagnet WiFi Analyzer, BVS Yellowjacket 802.11, NetIQ Vivinet Assessor, Netcordia NetMRI, and SolarWinds Orion.

## Network Checklist

The following network checklist can be used to determine a network's health status:

- New segments should use switched and not use dated hub/shared technology.
- No WAN links are saturated (no more than 70 percent sustained network utilization).
- The response time is generally less than 100ms (one-tenth of a second); more commonly, less than 2ms in a LAN.
- No segments have more than 20 percent broadcasts or multicast traffic. Broadcasts are sent to all hosts in a network and should be limited. Multicast traffic is sent to a group of hosts but should also be controlled and limited to only those hosts registered to receive it.
- No segments have more than one cyclic redundancy check (CRC) error per million bytes of data.
- On the Ethernet segments, less than 0.1 percent of the packets result in collisions.
- A CPU utilization at or more than 75 percent for a 5-minute interval likely suggests network problems. Normal CPU utilization should be much lower during normal periods.
- The number of output queue drops has not exceeded 100 in an hour on any Cisco router.
- The number of input queue drops has not exceeded 50 in an hour on any Cisco router.
- The number of buffer misses has not exceeded 25 in an hour on any Cisco router.
- The number of ignored packets has not exceeded 10 in an hour on any interface on a Cisco router.

- QoS should be enabled on network devices to allow for prioritization of time-sensitive or bandwidth-sensitive applications.

Table 1-9 summarizes areas in characterizing the network.

**Table 1-9 Characterizing the Network**

Characteristic	Description
Steps in gathering information	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Obtain existing information and documentation</li> <li>2. Network audit</li> <li>3. Traffic analysis</li> </ol>
Primary sources of network audit information	<p>Existing documentation</p> <p>Existing network management software</p> <p>New network management tools</p>

## Designing the Network Topology and Solutions

This section describes the top-down approach for network design, reviews pilot and prototype test networks, and describes the components of the design document. As part of the Design phase of the PPDIOO methodology, a top-down approach is used that begins with the organization's requirements before looking at technologies. Network designs are tested using a pilot or prototype network before moving into the Implement phase.



### Top-Down Approach

Top-down design just means starting your design from the top layer of the OSI model and working your way down. Top-down design adapts the network and physical infrastructure to the network application's needs. With a top-down approach, network devices and technologies are not selected until the applications' requirements are analyzed. To complete a top-down design, the following is accomplished:

- Analysis of application and organization requirements
- Design from the top of the OSI reference model
  - Define requirements for upper layers (Application, Presentation, Session)
  - Specify infrastructure for lower OSI layers (transport, network, data link, physical)
- Gather additional data on the network

Figure 1-6 shows a top-down structure design process. The design process begins with the applications and moves down to the network. Logical subdivisions are then incorporated with specifics.

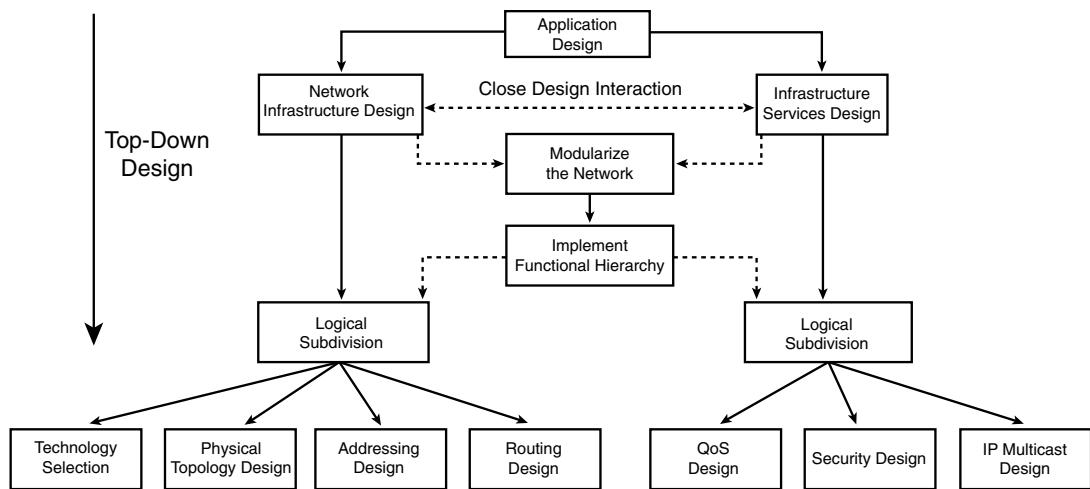
**Figure 1-6** Top-Down Design Process

Table 1-10 compares the top-down approach to the bottom-up approach to network design.

**Table 1-10** Top-Down Design Compared to Bottom-Up Design

Design Approach	Benefits	Disadvantages
Top-down	Incorporates the organization's requirements. Provides the big picture. The design meets current and future requirements.	More time-consuming.
Bottom-up	The design is based on previous experience and allows for a quick solution.	May result in inappropriate design. Organizational requirements are not included.

### Pilot and Prototype Tests

As soon as the design is complete and before the full implementation, it is a best practice to test the new solution. This testing can be done in one of two ways: prototype or pilot.

A prototype network is a subset of the full design, tested in an isolated environment. The prototype does not connect to the existing network. The benefit of using a prototype is that it allows testing of the network design before it is deployed before affecting a production network. When implementing a new technology such as IPsec, you might want to implement a prototype test before deploying it to the operational network.

A pilot site is an actual “live” location that serves as a test site before the solution is deployed to all locations in an enterprise. A pilot allows real-world problems to be discovered before deploying a network design solution to the rest of the internetwork.

With both a prototype and a pilot, successful testing leads to proving the design and moving forward with implementation. A failure leads to correcting the design and repeating the tests to correct any deficiencies.

## Design Document

The design document describes the business requirements; old network architecture; network requirements; and design, plan, and configuration information for the new network. The network architects and analysts use it to document the new network changes, and it serves as documentation for the enterprise. The design document should include the following sections:

- **Introduction** describes the project’s purpose and the reasons for the network design.
- **Design Requirements** lists the organization’s requirements, constraints, and goals.
- **Existing Network Infrastructure** includes logical (Layer 3) topology diagrams; physical topology diagrams; audit results; network health analysis; routing protocols; a summary of applications; a list of network routers, switches, and other devices; configurations; and a description of issues.
- **Design** contains the specific design information, such as logical and physical topology, IP addressing, routing protocols, and security configurations.
- **Proof of Concept** results from live pilot or prototype testing.
- **Implementation Plan** includes the detailed steps for the network staff to implement the new installation and changes.
- **Appendices** contains list of exiting network devices, configurations, and additional information used in the design of the network.

Table 1-11 summarizes the contents of the design document.

**Table 1-11 Sections of the Design Document**

Section	Description
Introduction	Purpose and goals of the network design
Design Requirements	Organization requirements and constraints
Existing Network Infrastructure	Contains diagrams, hardware and software versions, and existing configurations
Design	New logical topology, design, and IP addressing
Proof of Concept	Results from pilot or prototype
Implementation Plan	Detailed steps for implementation
Appendices	Supporting information

The implementation of a network consists of several phases. The each step should contain the following information:

- Description of the step
- Reference to the design document
- Detailed implementation guidelines
- Detailed rollback guidelines
- Estimated time to implement

## References and Recommended Reading

Cisco Design Zone. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns742/networking\\_solutions\\_program\\_category\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns742/networking_solutions_program_category_home.html).

Design Zone for Borderless Networks. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1063/networking\\_solutions\\_program\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1063/networking_solutions_program_home.html).

Design Zone for Collaboration. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1062/networking\\_solutions\\_program\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1062/networking_solutions_program_home.html).

Design One for Data Center. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns743/networking\\_solutions\\_program\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns743/networking_solutions_program_home.html)

Cisco Data Center. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns224/architecture.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns224/architecture.html).

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topics icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 1-12 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 1-12** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
List	Forces affecting decisions for the enterprise network	8
List	PPDIOO life cycle four main benefits	11
List	Steps in gathering information	18
Summary	Describes the top-down approach to network design	23

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

PPDIOO, NBAR, NetFlow, policy control, virtualization

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** List the PPDIOO phases in order.
- 2.** Which business forces affect decisions for the enterprise network?
  - a.** Removal of borders
  - b.** Virtualization
  - c.** Growth of applications
  - d.** 10GigEthernet
  - e.** Regulation
  - f.** ROI
  - g.** Competitiveness
- 3.** Which design methodology step is important for identifying organizational goals?
  - a.** Identify customer requirements
  - b.** Characterize the existing network
  - c.** Design the network topology and solution
  - d.** Examine the architecture
  - e.** Validate the design
  - f.** Obtain the ROI
- 4.** What needs to be obtained prior to designing the network?
  - a.** Expected ROI
  - b.** Organizational and technical goals
  - c.** Technical constraints
  - d.** Bill of materials
  - e.** Existing and new network applications
- 5.** Match each PPDIOO phase with its description.
  - i. Implement
  - ii. Optimize
  - iii. Design
  - iv. Prepare
  - v. Operate
  - vi. Plan

- a. Establish requirements
  - b. Gap analysis
  - c. Provides high-availability design
  - d. Installation and configuration
  - e. Day to day
  - f. Proactive management
- 6. Which borderless architecture provides mobility?
  - a. Policy
  - b. Network services
  - c. User services
  - d. Connection management
  - e. Control services
- 7. Which are the three steps in PPDOO *design* methodology?
  - a. Reviewing the project cost
  - b. Designing the network topology and solution
  - c. Characterizing the network
  - d. Identifying customer requirements.
  - e. Validating the design
- 8. Match each infrastructure service with its description.
  - i. Identity
  - ii. Mobility
  - iii. Storage
  - iv. Compute
  - v. Security
  - vi. Voice/collaboration
  - a. Access from a remote location
  - b. Improved computational resources
  - c. Unified messaging
  - d. AAA, NAC
  - e. Storage of critical data
  - f. Secure communications

- 9.** A company location is used to test a new VoIP solution. What is this type of test called?
- a.** Prototype
  - b.** Pilot
  - c.** Implementation
  - d.** New
- 10.** An isolated network is created to test a new design. What is this type of test called?
- a.** Prototype
  - b.** Pilot
  - c.** Implementation
  - d.** New
- 11.** NBAR, NetFlow, and EtherPeek are examples of what?
- a.** Network audit tools
  - b.** Network analysis tools
  - c.** SNMP tools
  - d.** Trending tools
- 12.** Monitoring commands, CiscoWorks, and WhatsUP are examples of what?
- a.** Network audit tools
  - b.** Network analysis tools
  - c.** SNMP tools
  - d.** Trending tools
- 13.** Which of the following are technical constraints? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Existing wiring
  - b.** Existing network circuit bandwidth
  - c.** Improving the LAN's scalability
  - d.** Adding redundancy
- 14.** Which of the following are technical goals? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Existing wiring
  - b.** Existing network circuit bandwidth
  - c.** Improving the LAN's scalability
  - d.** Adding redundancy

**15.** Which of the following are organizational goals? (Select all that apply.)

- a.** Improving customer support
- b.** Budget has been established
- c.** Increasing competitiveness
- d.** Completion in three months
- e.** Reducing operational costs
- f.** Network personnel are busy

**16.** Which of the following are organizational constraints? (Select all that apply.)

- a.** Improving customer support
- b.** Budget has been established
- c.** Increasing competitiveness
- d.** Completion in three months
- e.** Reducing operational costs
- f.** Network personnel are busy

**17.** What components are included in the design document? (Select four.)

- a.** IP addressing scheme
- b.** Implementation plan
- c.** List of Layer 2 devices
- d.** Design requirements
- e.** Selected routing protocols
- f.** List of Layer 1 devices

**18.** Match each design document section with its description.

- i. Introduction
- ii. Design requirements
- iii. Existing Network Infrastructure
- iv. Design
- v. Proof of Concept
- vi. Implementation Plan
- vii. Appendix

- a.** Detailed steps
  - b.** Current diagram and configuration
  - c.** Organizational requirements
  - d.** Goals
  - e.** Pilot
  - f.** New logical topology
  - g.** Supporting information
- 19.** The network health analysis is based on what information?
- a.** The number of users accessing the Internet
  - b.** The statements made by the CIO
  - c.** Statistics from the existing network
  - d.** The IP addressing scheme
- 20.** While performing a network audit, you encounter a Frame Relay WAN segment running at a sustained rate of 75 percent from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. What do you recommend?
- a.** Nothing. The daily 24-hour average rate is still 45 percent.
  - b.** Change from Frame Relay to MPLS.
  - c.** Increase the provisioned WAN bandwidth.
  - d.** Deny VoIP calls from 9 a.m. to 5 a.m.
- 21.** What information is included in the network audit report? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Network device list
  - b.** IOS versions
  - c.** Router models
  - d.** Interface speeds
  - e.** WAN utilization
- 22.** Which three tasks are part of characterizing the existing network?
- a.** Speaking with the CIO
  - b.** Using traffic analysis
  - c.** Automated auditing of the network using tools
  - d.** Collect information
  - e.** Obtaining organizational chart
  - f.** Defining organizational goals

**23.** Which command provides the average CPU of a Cisco router?

- a.** show cpu
- b.** show processes cpu
- c.** show processes memory
- d.** show cpu utilization
- e.** show cpu average

**24.** Which parameters can be obtained by the use of a traffic analyzer?

- a.** Application importance
- b.** QoS requirements
- c.** Devices using a specific protocol
- d.** IP addresses of devices and TCP/UDP port number
- e.** Average bit rate and packet rate

**25.** Which commands provide information about individual applications, protocols, or flows? (Choose three.)

- a.** show process cpu
- b.** show ip interface
- c.** show ip cache flow
- d.** show ip nbar protocol-discovery
- e.** show process memory
- f.** show interface application

**26.** What is used to create the documentation of the existing network?

- a.** Router show commands
- b.** Network audit, documentation, and traffic analysis tools
- c.** Audit tools
- d.** Existing documentation and input from organization

**27.** What is the sequence for the stages of top-down design?

- 28.** Which are potential scopes for a network design project? (Choose three.)
- a.** Network layer redundancy
  - b.** Campus upgrade
  - c.** Data link layer redundancy
  - d.** Network redesign
  - e.** WAN upgrade
  - f.** Application upgrade
- 29.** A credit card company network is being designed. Secure transactions are emphasized throughout the initial requirements. Redundant links are required to reduce network outages. What is the order of importance of the following design issues?
- a.** IP addressing design
  - b.** Physical topology design
  - c.** Network modules
  - d.** Security design
- 30.** Which types of tools are used during the network design process?
- a.** Network management tools
  - b.** Network trending tools
  - c.** Network modeling tools
  - d.** Network simulation and testing tools
  - e.** Network implementation tools
- 31.** Which four items should be present in the implementation plan?
- a.** Implementation description
  - b.** Estimated time to implement
  - c.** Reference to design document
  - d.** Rollback procedure
  - e.** Estimated cost of implementation
  - f.** Application profiles

- 32.** A new design uses IPsec for the WAN. Which approach should be used to verify the design?
- a.** Live network
  - b.** Pilot network
  - c.** Prototype network
  - d.** Cable network
  - e.** Internet network
- 33.** Which three is included in the design document?
- a.** Design details
  - b.** Design requirements
  - c.** Current cable runs
  - d.** List of Layer 2 devices
  - e.** Implementation plan



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Hierarchical Network Models
- Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model
- High Availability Network Services

## Network Structure Models

---

This chapter reviews the hierarchical network model and introduces Cisco’s Enterprise Architecture model. This architecture model separates network design into more manageable modules. This chapter also addresses the use of device, media, and route redundancy to improve network availability.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The eight-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 2-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 2-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Hierarchical Network Models	1, 3
Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model	2, 5, 6, 7
High Availability Network Services	4, 8

- 1.** In the hierarchical network model, which layer is responsible for fast transport?
  - a.** Network
  - b.** Core
  - c.** Distribution
  - d.** Access
- 2.** Which Enterprise Architecture model component interfaces with the service provider (SP)?
  - a.** Campus infrastructure
  - b.** Access layer
  - c.** Enterprise edge
  - d.** Edge distribution
- 3.** In the hierarchical network model, at which layer do security filtering, address aggregation, and media translation occur?
  - a.** Network
  - b.** Core
  - c.** Distribution
  - d.** Access
- 4.** Which of the following is/are method(s) of workstation-to-router redundancy in the access layer?
  - a.** AppleTalk Address Resolution Protocol (AARP)
  - b.** Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP)
  - c.** Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)
  - d.** Answers B and C
  - e.** Answers A, B, and C
- 5.** The network-management module has tie-ins to which component(s)?
  - a.** Campus infrastructure
  - b.** Server farm
  - c.** Enterprise edge
  - d.** SP edge
  - e.** Answers a and b
  - f.** Answers a, b, and c
  - g.** Answers a, b, c, and d

- 6.** Which of the following is an SP edge module in the Cisco Enterprise Architecture model?
  - a.** Public switched telephone network (PSTN) service
  - b.** Edge distribution
  - c.** Server farm
  - d.** Core layer
  
- 7.** In which module would you place Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM)?
  - a.** Campus core
  - b.** E-commerce
  - c.** Server farm
  - d.** Edge distribution farm
  
- 8.** High availability, port security, and rate limiting are functions of which hierarchical layer?
  - a.** Network
  - b.** Core
  - c.** Distribution
  - d.** Access

## Foundation Topics

With the complexities of network design, the CCDA needs to understand network models used to simplify the design process. The hierarchical network model was one of the first Cisco models that divided the network into core, distribution, and access layers.

The Cisco Enterprise Architecture model provides a functional modular approach to network design. In addition to a hierarchy, modules are used to organize server farms, network management, campus networks, WANs, and the Internet.

### Hierarchical Network Models



Hierarchical models enable you to design internetworks that use specialization of function combined with a hierarchical organization. Such a design simplifies the tasks required to build a network that meets current requirements and can grow to meet future requirements. Hierarchical models use layers to simplify the tasks for internetworking. Each layer can focus on specific functions, allowing you to choose the right systems and features for each layer. Hierarchical models apply to both LAN and WAN design.

#### Benefits of the Hierarchical Model

The benefits of using hierarchical models for your network design include the following:

- Cost savings
- Ease of understanding
- Modular network growth
- Improved fault isolation

After adopting hierarchical design models, many organizations report cost savings because they are no longer trying to do everything in one routing or switching platform. The model's modular nature enables appropriate use of bandwidth within each layer of the hierarchy, reducing the provisioning of bandwidth in advance of actual need.

Keeping each design element simple and functionally focused facilitates ease of understanding, which helps control training and staff costs. You can distribute network monitoring and management reporting systems to the different layers of modular network architectures, which also helps control management costs.

Hierarchical design facilitates changes. In a network design, modularity lets you create design elements that you can replicate as the network grows. As each element in the network design requires change, the cost and complexity of making the upgrade are contained to a small subset of the overall network. In large, flat network architectures, changes tend to impact a large number of systems. Limited mesh topologies within a layer or component, such as the campus core or backbone connecting central sites, retain value even in the hierarchical design models.

Network managers can easily understand the transition points in the network, which helps

identify failure points. It is more difficult to troubleshoot if hierarchical design is not used because the network is not divided into segments.

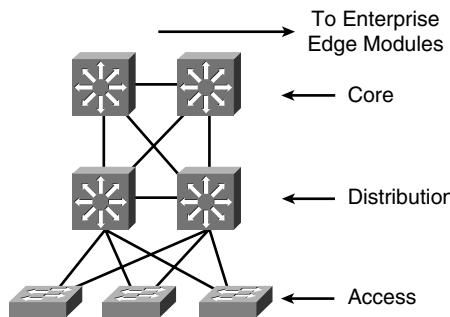
Today's fast-converging protocols were designed for hierarchical topologies. To control the impact of routing-protocol processing and bandwidth consumption, you must use modular hierarchical topologies with protocols designed with these controls in mind, such as the Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) routing protocol.

Hierarchical network design facilitates route summarization. Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) and all other routing protocols benefit greatly from route summarization. Route summarization reduces routing-protocol overhead on links in the network and reduces routing-protocol processing within the routers. It is less possible to provide route summarization if the network is not hierarchical.

## Hierarchical Network Design

As shown in Figure 2-1, a traditional hierarchical LAN design has three layers:

- The core layer provides fast transport between distribution switches within the enterprise campus.
- The distribution layer provides policy-based connectivity.
- The access layer provides workgroup and user access to the network.



**Figure 2-1** Hierarchical Network Design Has Three Layers: Core, Distribution, and Access

Each layer provides necessary functionality to the enterprise campus network. You do not need to implement the layers as distinct physical entities. You can implement each layer in one or more devices or as cooperating interface components sharing a common chassis. Smaller networks can “collapse” multiple layers to a single device with only an implied hierarchy. Maintaining an explicit awareness of hierarchy is useful as the network grows.

### Core Layer

The core layer is the network's high-speed switching backbone that is crucial to corporate characteristics:

- Fast transport
- High reliability
- Redundancy
- Fault tolerance
- Low latency and good manageability
- Avoidance of CPU-intensive packet manipulation caused by security, inspection, quality of service (QoS) classification, or other processes
- Limited and consistent diameter
- QoS

When a network uses routers, the number of router hops from edge to edge is called the diameter. As noted, it is considered good practice to design for a consistent diameter within a hierarchical network. The trip from any end station to another end station across the backbone should have the same number of hops. The distance from any end station to a server on the backbone should also be consistent.

Limiting the internetwork's diameter provides predictable performance and ease of troubleshooting. You can add distribution layer routers and client LANs to the hierarchical model without increasing the core layer's diameter. Use of a block implementation isolates existing end stations from most effects of network growth.

## Distribution Layer

The network's distribution layer is the isolation point between the network's access and core layers. The distribution layer can have many roles, including implementing the following functions:

- Policy-based connectivity (for example, ensuring that traffic sent from a particular network is forwarded out one interface while all other traffic is forwarded out another interface)
- Redundancy and load balancing
- Aggregation of LAN wiring closets
- Aggregation of WAN connections
- QoS
- Security filtering
- Address or area aggregation or summarization
- Departmental or workgroup access
- Broadcast or multicast domain definition
- Routing between virtual LANs (VLAN)
- Media translations (for example, between Ethernet and Token Ring)

- Redistribution between routing domains (for example, between two different routing protocols)
- Demarcation between static and dynamic routing protocols

You can use several Cisco IOS Software features to implement policy at the distribution layer:

- Filtering by source or destination address
- Filtering on input or output ports
- Hiding internal network numbers by route filtering
- Static routing
- QoS mechanisms, such as priority-based queuing

The distribution layer provides aggregation of routes providing route summarization to the core. In the campus LANs, the distribution layer provides routing between VLANs that also apply security and QoS policies.

### Access Layer

The access layer provides user access to local segments on the network. The access layer is characterized by switched LAN segments in a campus environment. Microsegmentation using LAN switches provides high bandwidth to workgroups by reducing the number of devices on Ethernet segments. Functions of the access layer include the following:

- Layer 2 switching
- High availability
- Port security
- Broadcast suppression
- QoS classification and marking and trust boundaries
- Rate limiting/policing
- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) inspection
- Virtual access control lists (VACL)
- Spanning tree
- Trust classification
- Power over Ethernet (PoE) and auxiliary VLANs for VoIP
- Auxiliary VLANs

You implement high availability models at the access layer. The section, “Network Availability,” covers availability models. The LAN switch in the access layer can control access to the port and limit the rate at which traffic is sent to and from the port. You can access lists.

Other chapters of this book cover the other functions in the list.

For small office/home office (SOHO) environments, the entire hierarchy collapses to interfaces on a single device. Remote access to the central corporate network is through traditional WAN technologies such as ISDN, Frame Relay, and leased lines. You can implement features such as dial-on-demand routing (DDR) and static routing to control costs. Remote access can include virtual private network (VPN) technology.

Table 2-2 summarizes the hierarchical layers.

**Table 2-2 Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model**

Hierarchical Layer	Description
Core	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fast transport</li> <li>High reliability</li> <li>Redundancy</li> <li>Fault tolerance</li> <li>Low latency and good manageability</li> <li>Avoidance of slow packet manipulation caused by filters or other processes</li> <li>Limited and consistent diameter</li> <li>QoS</li> </ul>
Distribution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Policy-based connectivity</li> <li>Redundancy and load balancing</li> <li>Aggregation of LAN wiring closets</li> <li>Aggregation of WAN connections</li> <li>QoS</li> <li>Security filtering</li> <li>Address or area aggregation or summarization</li> <li>Departmental or workgroup access</li> <li>Broadcast or multicast domain definition</li> <li>Routing between VLANs</li> <li>Media translations (for example, between Ethernet and Token Ring)</li> <li>Redistribution between routing domains (for example, between two different routing protocols)</li> <li>Demarcation between static and dynamic routing protocols</li> </ul>

**Table 2-2 Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model**

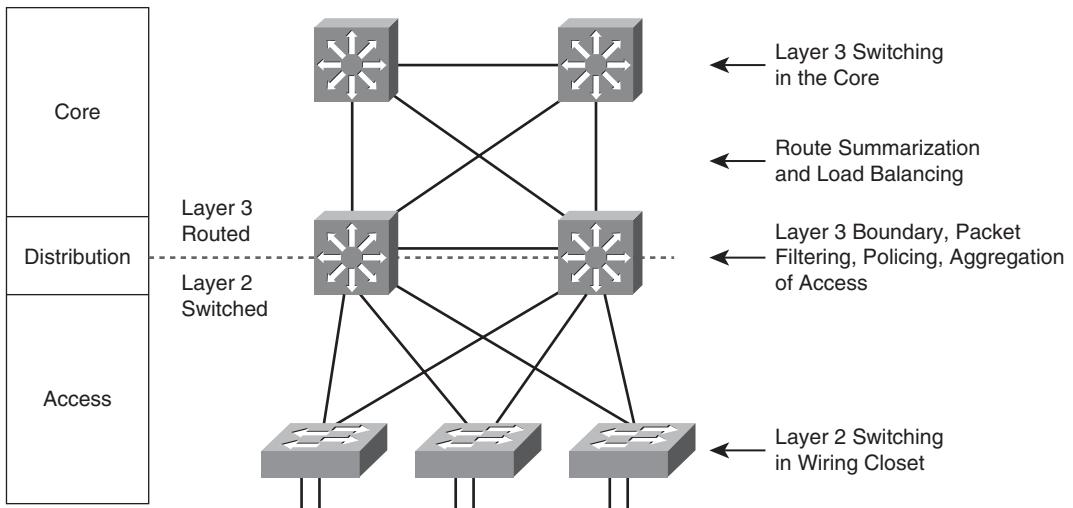
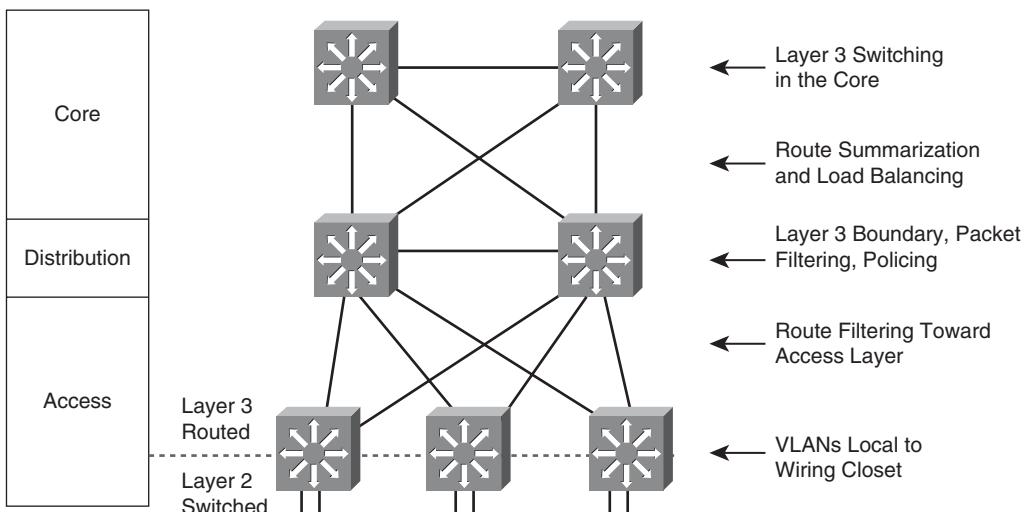
<b>Hierarchical Layer</b>	<b>Description</b>
Access	Layer 2 switching High availability Port security Broadcast suppression QoS Rate limiting ARP inspection VACLs Spanning tree Trust classification PoE and auxiliary VLANs for VoIP

### Hierarchical Model Examples

You can implement the hierarchical model by using a traditional switched campus design or routed campus network. Figure 2-2 is an example of a switched hierarchical design in the enterprise campus. In this design, the core provides high-speed transport between the distribution layers. The building distribution layer provides redundancy and allows policies to be applied to the building access layer. Layer 3 links between the core and distribution switches are recommended to allow the routing protocol to take care of load balancing and fast route redundancy in the event of a link failure. The distribution layer is the boundary between the Layer 2 domains and the Layer 3 routed network. Inter-VLAN communications are routed in the distribution layer. Route summarization is configured on interfaces toward the core layer. The drawback with this design is that Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) allows only one of the redundant links between the access switch and the distribution switch to be active. If the event of a failure, the second link becomes active, but at no point does load balancing occur.

Figure 2-3 shows examples of a routed hierarchical design. In this design, the Layer 3 boundary is pushed toward the access layer. Layer 3 switching occurs in access, distribution, and core layers. Route filtering is configured on interfaces toward the access layer. Route summarization is configured on interfaces toward the core layer. The benefit of this design is that load balancing occurs from the access layer since the links to the distribution switches are routed.

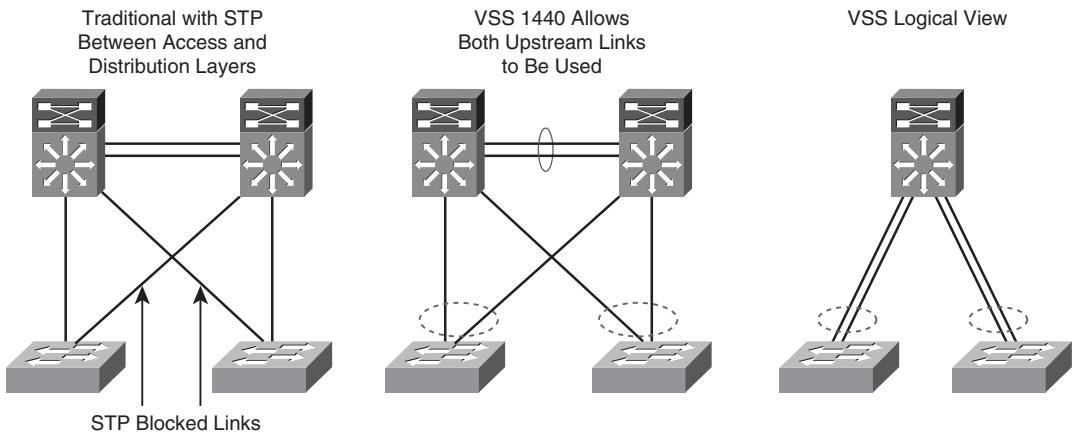
Another solution for providing redundancy between the access and distribution switching is the Virtual Switching System (VSS). VSS solves the STP looping problem by converting the distribution switching pair into a logical single switch. It removes STP, and negates the need for Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP), Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), or Gateway Load Balancing Protocol (GLBP).

**Figure 2-2** Switched Hierarchical Design**Figure 2-3** Routed Hierarchical Design

With VSS, the physical topology changes as each access switch has a single upstream distribution switch versus having two upstream distribution switches. VSS is configured only on Cisco 6500 switches using the VSS Supervisor 720-10G. As shown in Figure 2-4, the two switches are connected via a 10GE link called virtual switch link (VSL), which makes them seem as a single switch. The key benefits of VSS include

- Layer 3 switching can be used toward the access layer, enhancing nonstop communication.
- Scales system bandwidth up to 1.44 Tbps.

- Simplified management of a single configuration of the VSS distribution switch.
- Better return on investment (ROI) via increased bandwidth between the access layer and the distribution layer.
- Uses existing Catalyst 6500 switches; no new chassis are needed.



**Figure 2-4** VSS

## Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model

The Cisco Enterprise Architecture model facilitates the design of larger, more scalable networks.

As networks become more sophisticated, it is necessary to use a more modular approach to design than just WAN and LAN core, distribution, and access layers. The architecture divides the network into functional network areas and modules. These areas and modules of the Cisco Enterprise Architecture are

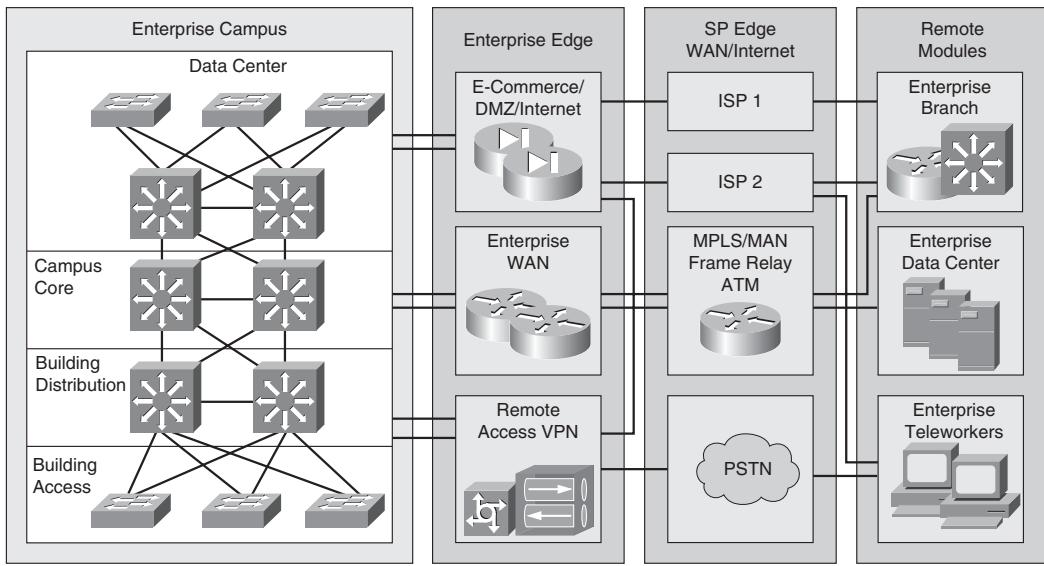
- Enterprise campus area
- Enterprise data center module
- Enterprise branch module
- Enterprise teleworker module

The Cisco Enterprise Architecture model maintains the concept of distribution and access components connecting users, WAN services, and server farms through a high-speed campus backbone. The modular approach in design should be a guide to the network architect. In smaller networks, the layers can collapse into a single layer, even a single device, but the functions remain.

Figure 2-5 shows the Cisco Enterprise Architecture model. The enterprise campus area

e-commerce, VPN, and WAN modules that connect the enterprise to the service provider's facilities. The SP edge area provides Internet, public switched telephone network (PSTN), and WAN services to the enterprise.

### Key Topic



**Figure 2-5 Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model**

The network management servers reside in the campus infrastructure but have tie-ins to all the components in the enterprise network for monitoring and management.

The enterprise edge connects to the edge-distribution module of the enterprise campus. In small and medium sites, the edge distribution can collapse into the campus backbone component. It provides connectivity to outbound services that are further described in later sections.

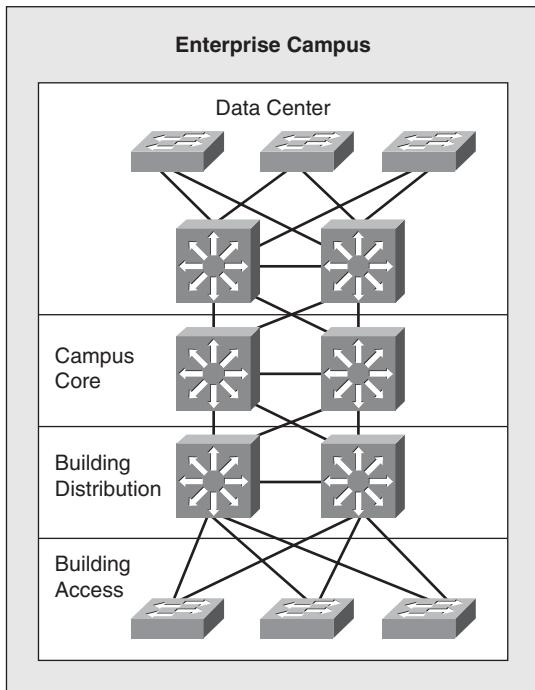
### Enterprise Campus Module

The enterprise campus consists of the following submodules:

- Campus core
- Building distribution
- Building access
- Server farm/data center

Figure 2-6 shows the Enterprise Campus model. The campus infrastructure consists of the campus core, building distribution, and building access layers. The campus core provides a

high-speed switched backbone between buildings, to the server farm and towards the enterprise edge. This segment consists of redundant and fast-convergence connectivity. The building distribution layer aggregates all the closet access switches and performs access control, QoS, route redundancy, and load balancing. The building access switches provide VLAN access, PoE for IP phones and wireless access points, broadcast suppression, and spanning tree.



**Figure 2-6** Enterprise Campus Model

The server farm or data center provides high-speed access and high availability (redundancy) to the servers. Enterprise servers such as file and print servers, application servers, email servers, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), and Domain Name System (DNS) servers are placed in the server farm. Cisco Unified CallManager servers are placed in the server farm for IP telephony networks. Network management servers are located in the server farm, but these servers link to each module in the campus to provide network monitoring, logging, trending, and configuration management.

An enterprise campus infrastructure can apply to small, medium, and large locations. In most instances, large campus locations have a three-tier design with a wiring-closet component (building access layer), a building distribution layer, and a campus core layer. Small campus locations likely have a two-tier design with a wiring-closet component (Ethernet

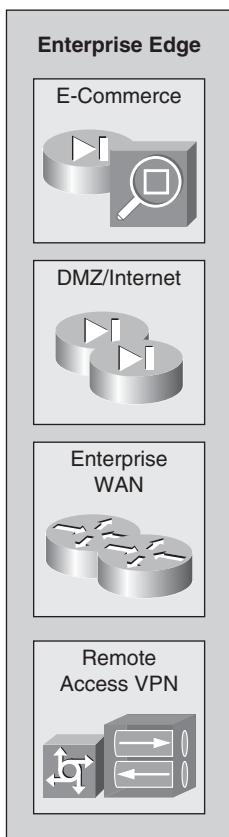
ble to configure distribution functions in a multilayer building access device to maintain

the focus of the campus backbone on fast transport. Medium-sized campus network designs sometimes use a three-tier implementation or a two-tier implementation, depending on the number of ports, service requirements, manageability, performance, and availability required.

## Enterprise Edge Area

As shown in Figure 2-7, the enterprise edge consists of the following submodules:

- E-commerce networks and servers
- Internet connectivity and demilitarized zone (DMZ)
- VPN and remote access
- Enterprise WAN



**Figure 2-7** Enterprise Edge Module

### E-Commerce Module

business services. It uses the high availability designs of the server farm module with the

Internet connectivity of the Internet module. Design techniques are the same as those described for these modules. Devices located in the e-commerce submodule include

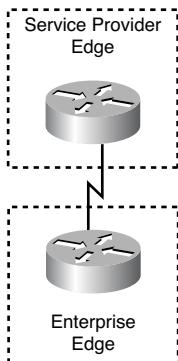
- **Web and application servers:** Primary user interface for e-commerce navigation.
- **Database servers:** Contain the application and transaction information.
- **Firewall and firewall routers:** Govern the communication between users of the system.
- **Network intrusion prevention systems (IPS):** Provide monitoring of key network segments in the module to detect and respond to attacks against the network.
- **Multilayer switch with IPS modules:** Provide traffic transport and integrated security monitoring.

### Internet Connectivity Module

The Internet submodule of the enterprise edge provides services such as public servers, email, and DNS. Connectivity to one or several Internet service providers (ISP) is also provided. Components of this submodule include

- **Firewall and firewall routers:** Provide protection of resources, stateful filtering of traffic, and VPN termination for remote sites and users
- **Internet edge routers:** Provide basic filtering and multilayer connectivity
- **FTP and HTTP servers:** Provide for web applications that interface the enterprise with the world via the public Internet
- **SMTP relay servers:** Act as relays between the Internet and the intranet mail servers.
- **DNS servers:** Serve as authoritative external DNS server for the enterprise and relay internal requests to the Internet

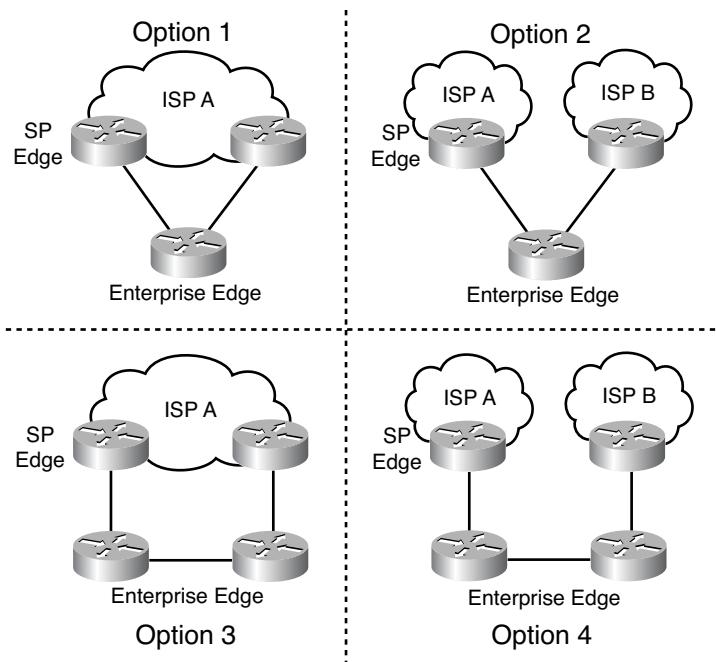
Several models connect the enterprise to the Internet. The simplest form is to have a single circuit between the enterprise and the SP, as shown in Figure 2-8. The drawback is that you have no redundancy or failover if the circuit fails.



**Figure 2-8** Simple Internet Connection

You can use multihoming solutions to provide redundancy or failover for Internet service. Figure 2-9 shows four Internet multihoming options:

- **Option 1:** Single router, dual links to one ISP
- **Option 2:** Single router, dual links to two ISPs
- **Option 3:** Dual routers, dual links to one ISP
- **Option 4:** Dual routers, dual links to two ISPs



**Figure 2-9** *Internet Multihoming Options*

Option 1 provides link redundancy but does not provide ISP and local router redundancy. Option 2 provides link and ISP redundancy but does not provide redundancy for a local router failure. Option 3 provides link and local router redundancy but does not provide for an ISP failure. Option 4 provides for full redundancy of the local router, links, and ISPs.

### VPN/Remote Access

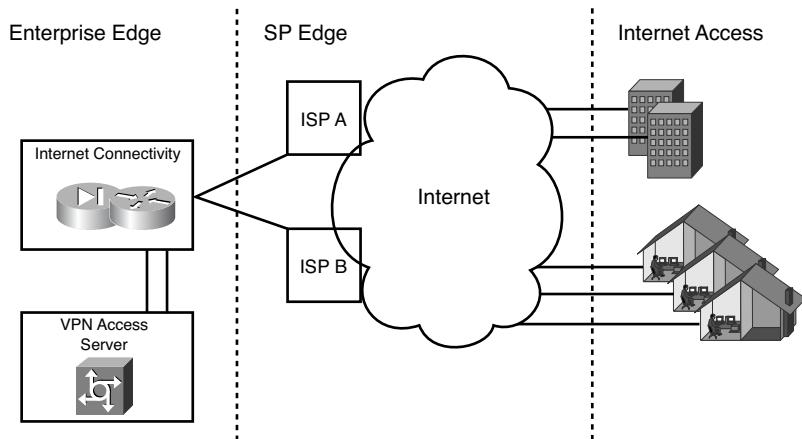
The VPN/remote access module of the enterprise edge provides remote-access termination services, including authentication for remote users and sites. Components of this sub-module include

- **Firewalls:** Provide stateful filtering of traffic, authenticate trusted remote sites, and provide connectivity using IPsec tunnels
- **Dial-in access concentrators:** terminate individual users

- **Cisco Adaptive Security Appliances (ASA):** Terminate IPsec tunnels and authenticate individual remote users, and provide firewall and intrusion prevention services
- **Network intrusion prevention system (IPS) appliances**

If you use a remote-access terminal server, this module connects to the PSTN. Today's networks often prefer VPNs over remote-access terminal servers and dedicated WAN links. VPNs reduce communication expenses by leveraging the infrastructure of SPs. For critical applications, the cost savings might be offset by a reduction in enterprise control and the loss of deterministic service. Remote offices, mobile users, and home offices access the Internet using the local SP with secured IPsec tunnels to the VPN/remote access submodule via the Internet submodule.

Figure 2-10 shows a VPN design. Branch offices obtain local Internet access from an ISP. Teleworkers also obtain local Internet access. VPN software creates secured VPN tunnels to the VPN server that is located in the VPN submodule of the enterprise edge.



**Figure 2-10** VPN Architecture

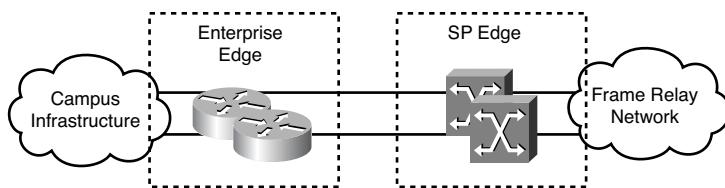
### Enterprise WAN

The enterprise edge of the enterprise WAN includes access to WANs. WAN technologies include the following:

- Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS)
- Metro Ethernet
- Leased lines
- Synchronous Optical Network (SONET) and Synchronous Digital Hierarchy (SDH)
- PPP
- Frame Relay

- ATM
- Cable
- Digital subscriber line (DSL)
- Wireless

Chapter 6, “WAN Technologies,” and Chapter 7, “WAN Design,” cover these WAN technologies. Routers in the enterprise WAN provide WAN access, QoS, routing, redundancy, and access control to the WAN. Of these WAN technologies, MPLS is the most popular WAN technology used today. For MPLS networks, the WAN routers prioritize IP packets based on configured differentiated services code point (DSCP) values to use one of several MPLS QoS levels. Figure 2-11 shows the WAN module connecting to the Frame Relay SP edge. The enterprise edge routers in the WAN module connect to the SP’s Frame Relay switches.



**Figure 2-11 WAN Module**

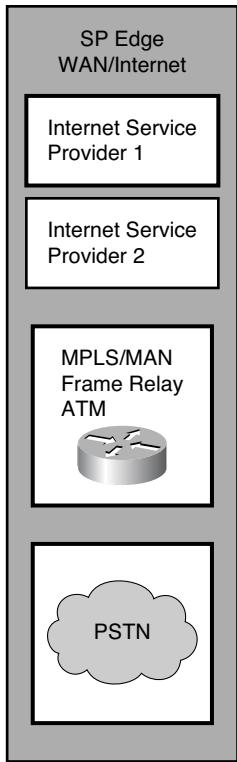
Use the following guidelines when designing the enterprise edge:

- Determine the connection needed to connect the corporate network to the Internet. These connections are assigned to the Internet connectivity module.
- Create the e-commerce module for customers and partners that require Internet access to business and database applications.
- Design the remote access/VPN module for VPN access to the internal network from the Internet. Implement the security policy and configure authentication and authorization parameters.
- Assign the edge sections that have permanent connections to remote branch offices. Assign these to the WAN, metro-area network (MAN), and VPN module.

### Service Provider Edge Module

The SP edge module, shown in Figure 2-12, consists of SP edge services such as the following:

- Internet services
- PSTN services
- WAN services



**Figure 2-12** WAN/Internet SP Edge Module

Enterprises use SPs to acquire network services. ISPs offer enterprises access to the Internet. ISPs can route the enterprise's networks to their network and to upstream and peer Internet providers. Some ISPs can provide Internet services with DSL access. Connectivity with multiple ISPs was described in the section, “Internet Edge.”

For voice services, PSTN providers offer access to the global public voice network. For the enterprise network, the PSTN lets dialup users access the enterprise via analog or cellular wireless technologies. It is also used for WAN backup using ISDN services.

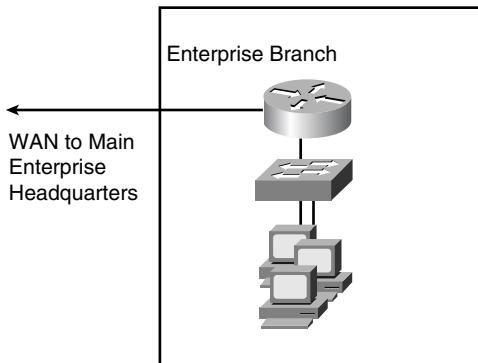
WAN SPs offer MPLS, Frame Relay, ATM, and other WAN services for enterprise site-to-site connectivity with permanent connections. These and other WAN technologies are described in Chapter 6.

### Remote Modules

The remote modules of the Cisco Enterprise Architecture model are the enterprise branch, enterprise data center, and enterprise teleworker modules.

### Enterprise Branch Module

The enterprise branch normally consists of remote offices or sales offices. These branch offices rely on the WAN to use the services and applications provided in the main campus. Infrastructure at the remote site usually consists of a WAN router and a small LAN switch, as shown in Figure 2-13. As an alternative to MPLS, it is common to use site-to-site IPsec VPN technologies to connect to the main campus.



**Figure 2-13 Enterprise Branch Module**

### Enterprise Data Center Module

The enterprise data center uses the network to enhance the server, storage, and application servers. The offsite data center provides disaster recovery and business continuance services for the enterprise. Highly available WAN services are used to connect the enterprise campus to the remote enterprise data center. The data center components include

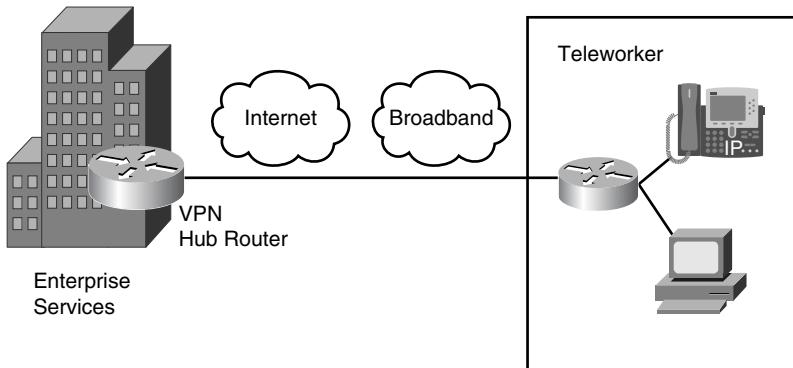
- **Network infrastructure:** Gigabit and 10 Gigabit Ethernet, InfiniBand, optical transport and storage switching
- **Interactive services:** Computer infrastructure services, storage services, security, application optimization
- **DC management:** Cisco Fabric Manager and Cisco VFrame for server and service management

The enterprise data center is covered in detail in Chapter 4, “Data Center Design.”

### Enterprise Teleworker Module

The enterprise teleworker module consists of a small office or a mobile user who needs to access services of the enterprise campus. As shown in Figure 2-14, mobile users connect from their homes, hotels, or other locations using dialup or Internet access lines. VPN

small integrated service routers (ISR) in the VPN solution. IP phone capabilities are also provided in the Cisco Virtual Office solution, providing corporate voice services for mobile users.



**Figure 2-14** Enterprise Teleworker Solution

Table 2-3 summarizes the Cisco Enterprise Architecture.

**Table 2-3** Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model

Enterprise Area or Module	Description
Enterprise campus area	The enterprise campus module includes the building access and building distribution components and the shared campus backbone component or campus core. Edge distribution provides connectivity to the enterprise edge. High availability is implemented in the server farm, and network management monitors the enterprise campus and enterprise edge.
Enterprise edge area	Consists of e-commerce, Internet, VPN/remote access, and WAN modules.
Enterprise WAN module	This module provides MPLS or other WAN technologies.
Enterprise remote branch module	The enterprise branch normally consists of remote offices, small offices, or sales offices. These branch offices rely on the WAN to use the services and applications provided in the main campus.
Enterprise data center module	The enterprise data center consists of using the network to enhance the server, storage, and application servers. The offsite data center provides disaster recovery and business continuity services for the enterprise.

**Table 2-3 Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model**

<b>Enterprise Area or Module</b>	<b>Description</b>
Enterprise teleworker	The enterprise teleworker module supports a small office, mobile users, or home users providing access to corporate systems via VPN tunnels.

## Borderless Network Services

Cisco borderless network architecture is a next-generation solution that enables connectivity to anyone and anything, anywhere, and at any time. The connectivity needs to be secure, reliable, and seamless. The borderless architecture optimizes both business and network performance.

Borderless network services divide into four key pillars of functionality:

- **Mobility:** Cisco Motion delivers anywhere, anytime access to information for wired, wireless, and remote users from any device. It also provides detection, classification, location, and mitigation of sources of wireless interference.
- **Security:** Cisco TrustSec provides a foundation for identity-directed, policy-based access, and one-touch ease of use to strengthen security across distributed networks. Uses Cisco ASA devices, Cisco Virtualization Security, and Cisco AnyConnect, an endpoint/user service. The Cisco SAFE blueprint provides design and implementation guidelines for building secure and reliable network infrastructure. Security designs are covered in Chapter 12, “Managing Security,” and Chapter 13, “Security Solutions.”
- **Application performance:** Application Velocity optimizes the speed and performance of any application by using Wide Area Application Services (WAAS).
- **Voice and video (IP Communication):** Medianet for the Enterprise optimizes multimedia through the automatic endpoints and optimized network configuration. It reduces video deployment time and provides clear and accurate multicast video from wired to wireless networks with Cisco VideoStream technology. Voice and video design are covered in Chapter 14, “Voice and Video Design.”

## High Availability Network Services

This section covers designs for high availability network services in the access layer.



When designing a network topology for a customer who has critical systems, services, or network paths, you should determine the likelihood that these components will fail and design redundancy where necessary. Consider incorporating one of the following types of redundancy into your design:

- Workstation-to-router redundancy in the building access layer
- Server redundancy in the server farm module

- Route redundancy within and between network components
- Link media redundancy in the access layer

The following sections discuss each type of redundancy.

## Workstation-to-Router Redundancy and LAN High Availability Protocols

When a workstation has traffic to send to a station that is not local, the workstation has many possible ways to discover the address of a router on its network segment, including the following:

- ARP
- Explicit configuration
- ICMP Router Discovery Protocol (RDP)
- RIP
- HSRP
- VRRP
- GLBP
- VSS

The following sections cover each of these methods.

### ARP

Some IP workstations send an ARP frame to find a remote station. A router running proxy ARP can respond with its data link layer address. Cisco routers run proxy ARP by default.

### Explicit Configuration

Most IP workstations must be configured with the IP address of a default router, which is sometimes called the default gateway.

In an IP environment, the most common method for a workstation to find a server is via explicit configuration (a default router). If the workstation's default router becomes unavailable, you must reconfigure the workstation with the address of a different router. Some IP stacks enable you to configure multiple default routers, but many other IP implementations support only one default router.

### RDP

RFC 1256 specifies an extension to Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) that allows an IP workstation and router to run RDP to let the workstation learn a router's address.

### RIP

An IP workstation can run RIP to learn about routers, although this is not common prac-

Usually in these implementations, the workstation is a UNIX system running the routed or gated UNIX process.

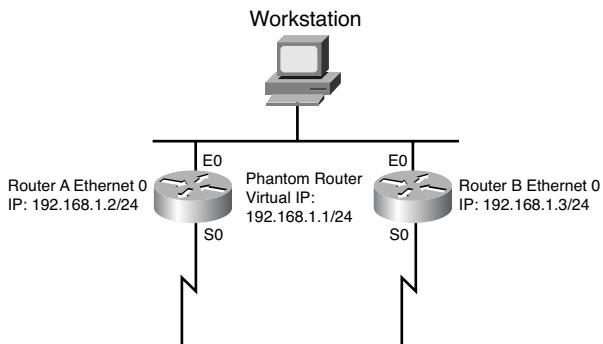
## HSRP

The Cisco HSRP provides a way for IP workstations that support only one default router to keep communicating on the internetwork even if their default router becomes unavailable. HSRP works by creating a virtual router that has its own IP and MAC addresses. The workstations use this virtual IP address as their default router.

HSRP routers on a LAN communicate among themselves to designate two routers as active and standby. The active router sends periodic hello messages. The other HSRP routers listen for the hello messages. If the active router fails and the other HSRP routers stop receiving hello messages, the standby router takes over and becomes the active router. Because the new active router assumes both the phantom's IP and MAC addresses, end nodes see no change. They continue to send packets to the phantom router's MAC address, and the new active router delivers those packets.

HSRP also works for proxy ARP. When an active HSRP router receives an ARP request for a node that is not on the local LAN, the router replies with the phantom router's MAC address instead of its own. If the router that originally sent the ARP reply later loses its connection, the new active router can still deliver the traffic.

Figure 2-15 shows a sample implementation of HSRP.



**Figure 2-15** HSRP: The Phantom Router Represents the Real Routers

In Figure 2-15, the following sequence occurs:

1. The workstation is configured to use the phantom router (192.168.1.1) as its default router.
2. Upon booting, the routers elect Router A as the HSRP active router. The active router does the work for the HSRP phantom. Router B is the HSRP standby router.
3. [Partially visible, likely continues from previous list item]

4. If Router A goes offline, Router B takes over as the active router, continuing the delivery of the workstation's packets. The change is transparent to the workstation.

## VRRP

VRRP is a router redundancy protocol defined in RFC 3768. RFC 5768 defined VRRPv3 for both IPv4 and IPv6 networks. VRRP is based on Cisco's HSRP, but is not compatible. VRRP specifies an election protocol that dynamically assigns responsibility for a virtual router to one of the VRRP routers on a LAN. The VRRP router controlling the IP addresses associated with a virtual router is called the master, and forwards packets sent to these IP addresses. The election process provides dynamic fail over in the forwarding responsibility should the master become unavailable. This allows any of the virtual router IP addresses on the LAN to be used as the default first hop router by end hosts. The virtual router backup assumes the forwarding responsibility for the virtual router should the master fail.

## GLBP

GLBP protects data traffic from a failed router or circuit, such as HSRP, while allowing packet load sharing between a group of redundant routers. The difference in GLBP from HSRP is that it provides for load balancing between the redundant routers. It load balances by using a single virtual IP address and multiple virtual MAC addresses. Each host is configured with the same virtual IP address, and all routers in the virtual router group participate in forwarding packets. GLBP members communicate between each other through hello messages sent every three seconds to the multicast address 224.0.0.102, User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port 3222. GLBP benefits include

- **Load sharing:** GLBP can be configured in a way that traffic from LAN clients can be shared by multiple routers.
- **Multiple virtual routers:** GLBP supports up to 1024 virtual routers (GLBP groups) on each physical interface of a router.
- **Preemption:** GLBP enables you to preempt an active virtual gateway with a higher-priority backup.
- **Authentication:** Simple text password authentication is supported.

## Server Redundancy

Some environments need fully redundant (mirrored) file and application servers. For example, in a brokerage firm where traders must access data to buy and sell stocks, two or more redundant servers can replicate the data. Also, you can deploy Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) servers in clusters for redundancy. The servers should be on different networks and use redundant power supplies. To provide high availability in the server farm module, you have the following options:

- **Single attachment:** mechanisms (HSRP, GLBP) to dynamically find alternate router.

- **Dual attachment:** This solution increases availability by using redundancy network interface cards (NIC).
- **Fast EtherChannel (FEC) and Gigabit EtherChannel (GEC) port bundles**

### Route Redundancy

Designing redundant routes has two purposes: balancing loads and increasing availability.

### Load Balancing

Most IP routing protocols can balance loads across parallel links that have equal cost. Use the **maximum-paths** command to change the number of links that the router will balance over for IP; the default is four, and the maximum is six. To support load balancing, keep the bandwidth consistent within a layer of the hierarchical model so that all paths have the same cost. (Cisco Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol [EIGRP] is an exception because it can load balance traffic across multiple routes that have different metrics by using a feature called *variance*.)

A hop-based routing protocol does load balancing over unequal-bandwidth paths as long as the hop count is equal. After the slower link becomes saturated, packet loss at the saturated link prevents full utilization of the higher-capacity links; this scenario is called pin-hole congestion. You can avoid pinhole congestion by designing and provisioning equal-bandwidth links within one layer of the hierarchy or by using a routing protocol that takes bandwidth into account.

IP load balancing in a Cisco router depends on which switching mode the router uses. Process switching load balances on a packet-by-packet basis. Fast, autonomous, silicon, optimum, distributed, and NetFlow switching load balance on a destination-by-destination basis because the processor caches information used to encapsulate the packets based on the destination for these types of switching modes.

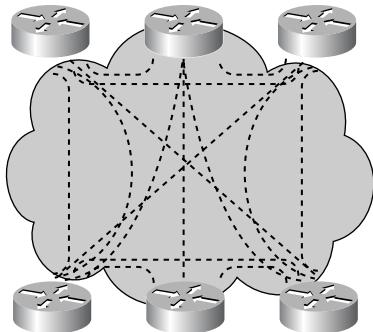
### Increasing Availability

In addition to facilitating load balancing, redundant routes increase network availability.

You should keep bandwidth consistent within a given design component to facilitate load balancing. Another reason to keep bandwidth consistent within a layer of a hierarchy is that routing protocols converge much faster on multiple equal-cost paths to a destination network.

By using redundant, meshed network designs, you can minimize the effect of link failures. Depending on the convergence time of the routing protocols, a single link failure cannot have a catastrophic effect.

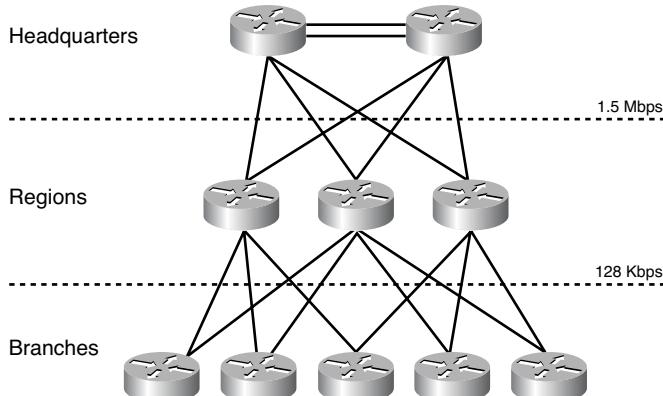
You can design redundant network links to provide a full mesh or a well-connected partial mesh. In a full-mesh network, every router has a link to every other router, as shown in Figure 2-16. A full-mesh network provides complete redundancy and also provides good performance because there is just a single-hop delay between any two sites. The number of links in a full mesh is  $n(n - 1)/2$ , where  $n$  is the number of routers. Each router is connected with links to at least two other routing devices in the network.



**Figure 2-16 Full-Mesh Network: Every Router Has a Link to Every Other Router in the Network**

A full-mesh network can be expensive to implement in WANs because of the required number of links. In addition, groups of routers that broadcast routing updates or service advertisements have practical limits to scaling. As the number of routing peers increases, the amount of bandwidth and CPU resources devoted to processing broadcasts increases.

A suggested guideline is to keep broadcast traffic at less than 20 percent of the bandwidth of each link; this amount limits the number of peer routers that can exchange routing tables or service advertisements. When designing for link bandwidth, reserve 80 percent of it for data, voice, and video traffic so that the rest can be used for routing and other link traffic. When planning redundancy, follow guidelines for simple, hierarchical design. Figure 2-17 illustrates a classic hierarchical and redundant enterprise design that uses a partial-mesh rather than a full-mesh topology. For LAN designs, links between the access and distribution layer can be Fast Ethernet, with links to the core at Gigabit Ethernet speeds.



**Figure 2-17 Partial-Mesh Design with Redundancy**

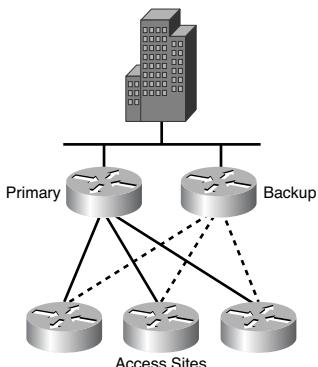
## Link Media Redundancy

In mission-critical applications, it is often necessary to provide redundant media.

In switched networks, switches can have redundant links to each other. This redundancy is good because it minimizes downtime, but it can result in broadcasts continuously circling the network, which is called a *broadcast storm*. Because Cisco switches implement the IEEE 802.1d spanning-tree algorithm, you can avoid this looping in Spanning Tree Protocol (STP). The spanning-tree algorithm guarantees that only one path is active between two network stations. The algorithm permits redundant paths that are automatically activated when the active path experiences problems.

STP has a design limitation of only allowing one of the redundant paths to be active. VSS can be used with Catalyst 6500 switches to overcome this limitation.

Because WAN links are often critical pieces of the internetwork, WAN environments often deploy redundant media. As shown in Figure 2-18, you can provision backup links so that they become active when a primary link goes down or becomes congested.



**Figure 2-18** *Backup Links Can Provide Redundancy*

Often, backup links use a different technology. For example, a leased line can be in parallel with a backup dialup line or ISDN circuit. However, it is more common to use DSL lines as backup in today's networks. By using floating static routes, you can specify that the backup route have a higher administrative distance (used by Cisco routers to select routing information) so that it is not normally used unless the primary route goes down. This design is less available than the partial mesh presented previously. Typically, on-demand backup links reduce WAN charges.

**Note:** When provisioning backup links, learn as much as possible about the physical circuit routing. Different carriers sometimes use the same facilities, meaning that your backup path might be susceptible to the same failures as your primary path. Do some investigative work to ensure that your backup really is acting as a backup.

Cisco supports Multilink Point-to-Point Protocol (MPPP), which is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard for ISDN B-channel (or asynchronous serial interface) aggregation. It bonds multiple WAN links into a single logical channel. MPPP is defined in RFC 1990. MPPP does not specify how a router should accomplish the decision-making process to bring up extra channels. Instead, it seeks to ensure that packets arrive in sequence at the receiving router. Then, the data is encapsulated within PPP and the datagram is given a sequence number. At the receiving router, PPP uses this sequence number to re-create the original data stream. Multiple channels appear as one logical link to upper-layer protocols. For Frame Relay networks, FRF.16.1 Multilink Frame Relay is used to perform the similar function.

Table 2-4 summarizes the four main redundancy models.

**Table 2-4 Redundancy Models**

Redundancy Type	Description
Workstation to router redundancy	Use of HSRP, VRRP, and VSS
Server redundancy	Uses dual-attached NICs, FEC, or GEC port bundles
Route redundancy	Provides load balancing and high availability
Link redundancy	Use of multiple WAN links that provide primary and secondary failover for higher availability

## References and Recommended Reading

Cisco Enterprise Teleworker Solution. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns430/networking\\_solutions\\_packages\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns430/networking_solutions_packages_list.html).

Enterprise Architectures. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns517/networking\\_solutions\\_market\\_segment\\_solutions\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns517/networking_solutions_market_segment_solutions_home.html).

Cisco Enterprise Solutions Portal. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/networking\\_solutions\\_large\\_enterprise\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/networking_solutions_large_enterprise_home.html).

Borderless Networks Solutions. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1016/index.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1016/index.html).

Borderless Networks Architecture. [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1015/architecture.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns1015/architecture.html).

Cisco TrustSec. [www.cisco.com/en/US/solutions/collateral/ns170/ns896/ns1051/at\\_a\\_glance\\_c45-577269.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/solutions/collateral/ns170/ns896/ns1051/at_a_glance_c45-577269.pdf).

Medianet at a Glance. [www.cisco.com/web/solutions/medianet/docs/C45-511997-00medialnet\\_aag120308.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/web/solutions/medianet/docs/C45-511997-00medialnet_aag120308.pdf).

Application Performance white paper. [www.cisco.com/en/US/solutions/ns1015/lippis\\_white\\_paper\\_application\\_velocity.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/solutions/ns1015/lippis_white_paper_application_velocity.pdf)

RFC 3758. Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP).

RFC 1990. The PPP Multilink Protocol (MP).

[ps9336/prod\\_qas0900aec806ed74b.html](http://ps9336/prod_qas0900aec806ed74b.html).

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topics icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 2-5 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 2-5** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Summary	Hierarchical Network models	40
Figure 2-5	Cisco Enterprise Architecture model	48
Summary	High availability network services	58

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

core layer, distribution layer, access layer, VLAN, PoE, ARP, VSS, enterprise campus module, enterprise edge, enterprise WAN module, enterprise remote branch module, enterprise data center module, enterprise teleworker module, HSRP, VRRP, GLBP

### Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

1. True or false: The core layer of the hierarchical model does security filtering and media translation.
2. True or false: The access layer provides high availability and port security.

3. You add Communications Manager to the network as part of a Voice over IP (VoIP) solution. In which submodule of the Enterprise Architecture model should you place Communications Manager?
4. True or false: HSRP provides router redundancy.
5. Which enterprise edge submodule connects to an ISP?
6. List the six modules of the Cisco Enterprise Architecture model for network design.
7. True or false: In the Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, the network management submodule does not manage the SP edge.
8. True or false: You can implement a full-mesh network to increase redundancy and reduce a WAN's costs.
9. How many links are required for a full mesh of six sites?
10. List and describe four options for multihoming to the SP between the Enterprise Edge and the SP Edge. Which option provides the most redundancy?
11. To what enterprise edge submodule does the SP Edge Internet submodule connect?
12. What are four benefits of hierarchical network design?
13. In an IP telephony network, in which submodule or layer are the IP phones and CUCM servers located?
14. Match the redundant model with its description:
  - i. Workstation-router redundancy
  - ii. Server redundancy
  - iii. Route redundancy
  - iv. Media redundancy
    - a. Cheap when implemented in the LAN and critical for the WAN
    - b. Provides load balancing
    - c. Host has multiple gateways
    - d. Data is replicated
15. True or false: Small to medium campus networks must always implement three layers of hierarchical design.
16. How many full-mesh links do you need for a network with ten routers?
17. Which layer provides routing between VLANs and security filtering?
  - a. Access layer
  - b. Distribution layer
  - c. Enterprise edge
  - d. WAN module

- 18.** List the four modules of the enterprise edge area.
- 19.** List the three submodules of the SP edge.
- 20.** List the components of the Internet edge.
- 21.** Which submodule contains firewalls, VPN concentrators, and ASAs?
  - a.** WAN
  - b.** VPN/remote access
  - c.** Internet
  - d.** Server farm
- 22.** Which of the following describe the access layer? (Select two.)
  - a.** High-speed data transport
  - b.** Applies network policies
  - c.** Performs network aggregation
  - d.** Concentrates user access
  - e.** Provides PoE
  - f.** Avoids data manipulation
- 23.** Which of the following describe the distribution layer? (Select two.)
  - a.** High-speed data transport
  - b.** Applies network policies
  - c.** Performs network aggregation
  - d.** Concentrates user access
  - e.** Provides PoE
  - f.** Avoids data manipulation
- 24.** Which of the following describe the core layer? (Select two.)
  - a.** High-speed data transport
  - b.** Applies network policies
  - c.** Performs network aggregation
  - d.** Concentrates user access
  - e.** Provides PoE
  - f.** Avoids data manipulation

**25.** Which campus submodule connects to the enterprise edge module?

- a.** SP edge
- b.** WAN submodule
- c.** Building distribution
- d.** Campus core
- e.** Enterprise branch
- f.** Enterprise data center

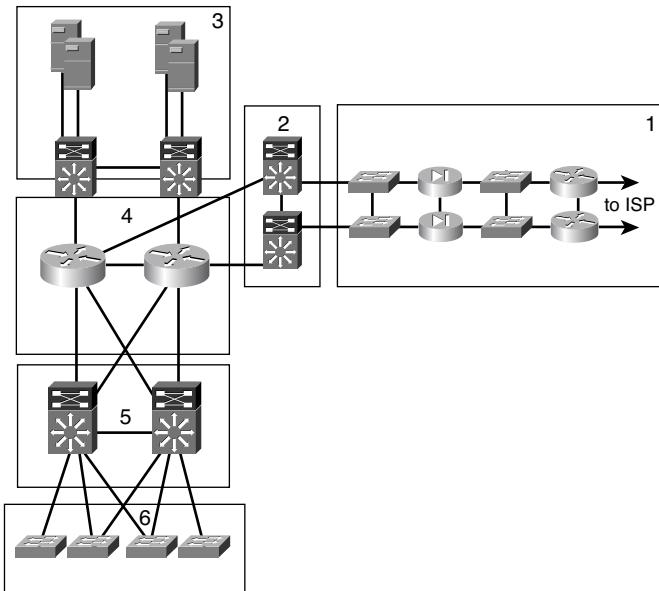
**26.** Which remote module connects to the enterprise via the Internet or WAN submodules and contains a small LAN switch for users?

- a.** SP edge
- b.** WAN submodule
- c.** Building distribution
- d.** Campus core
- e.** Enterprise branch
- f.** Enterprise data center

**27.** Which three types of servers are placed in the e-commerce submodule?

- a.** Web
- b.** Application
- c.** Database
- d.** Intranet
- e.** Internet
- f.** Public share

Use Figure 2-19 to answer questions 28–33.



**Figure 2-19** Scenario for Questions 28–33

- 28.** Which is the campus core layer?
- 29.** Which is the enterprise edge?
- 30.** Which is the campus access layer?
- 31.** Which is the enterprise edge distribution?
- 32.** Which is the campus distribution layer?
- 33.** Which is the campus data center?
- 34.** Which solution supports the enterprise teleworker?
  - a.** IP telephony
  - b.** Enterprise campus
  - c.** Cisco virtual office
  - d.** SP edge
  - e.** Hierarchical design
  - f.** Data Center 3.0

**35.** Which are two benefits of using a modular approach?

- a.** Simplifies the network design
- b.** Reduces the amount of network traffic on the network
- c.** Often reduces the cost and complexity of the network
- d.** Makes the network simple by using full mesh topologies

**36.** Which three modules provide infrastructure for remote users? (Select three.)

- a.** Teleworker module
- b.** WAN module
- c.** Enterprise branch module
- d.** Campus module
- e.** Enterprise data center
- f.** Core, distribution, access layers

**37.** Which are borderless networks infrastructure services? (Select three.)

- a.** IP telephony
- b.** Security
- c.** QoS
- d.** SP edge
- e.** High availability
- f.** Routing

**38.** Which module contains devices that supports AAA and stores passwords?

- a.** WAN module
- b.** VPN module
- c.** Server farm module
- d.** Internet connectivity module
- e.** SP edge
- f.** TACACS

**39.** Which topology is best used for connectivity in the building distribution layer?

- a.** Full mesh
- b.** Partial mesh
- c.** Hub and spoke
- d.** Dual ring
- e.** EthernetChannel

**40.** What are two ways that wireless access points are used? (Choose two.)

- a.** Function as a hub for wireless end devices
- b.** Connect to the enterprise network
- c.** Function as a Layer 3 switch for wireless end devices
- d.** Provide physical connectivity for wireless end devices
- e.** Filter out interference from microwave devices

**41.** In which ways does application network services helps resolve application issues?

- a.** It can compress, cache, and optimize content.
- b.** Optimizes web streams which can reduce latency and offload the web server.
- c.** Multiple data centers increases productivity.
- d.** Improves application response times by using faster servers.

**42.** Which are key features of the distribution layer?

- a.** Aggregates access layer switches
- b.** Provides a routing boundary between access and core layers
- c.** Provides connectivity to end devices
- d.** Provides fast switching
- e.** Provides transport to the enterprise edge
- f.** Provides VPN termination

**43.** Which Cisco solution allows a pair of switches to act as a single logical switch?

- a.** HSRP
- b.** VSS
- c.** STP
- d.** GLB

**44.** Which module or layer connects the server layer to the enterprise edge?

- a.** Campus distribution layer
- b.** Campus data center access layer
- c.** Campus core layer
- d.** Campus MAN module
- e.** WAN module
- f.** Internet connectivity module

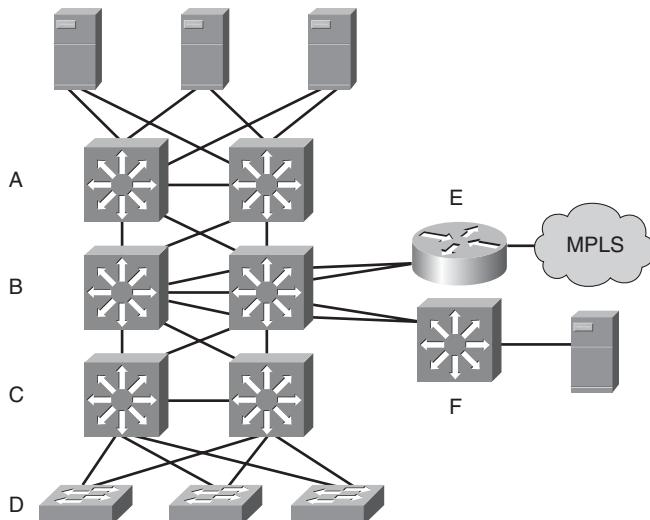
**45.** Which server type is used in the Internet connectivity module?

- a. Corporate
- b. Private
- c. Public
- d. Internal
- e. Database
- f. Application

**46.** Which server types are used in the e-commerce module for users running applications and storing data? (Select three.)

- a. Corporate
- b. Private
- c. Public
- d. Internet
- e. Database
- f. Application
- g. Web

**47.** Based on Figure 2-20, and assuming that devices may be in more than one layer, list which devices are in each layer.



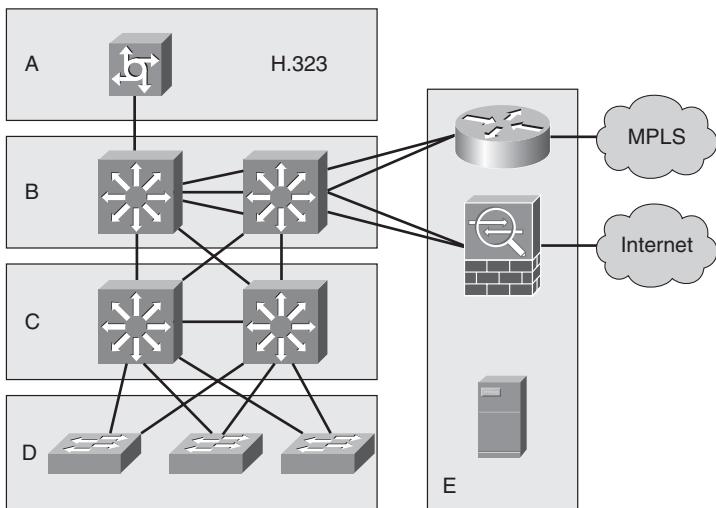
**Figure 2-20** Question 47

Access layer:

Distribution layer:

Core:

Use Figure 2-21 to answer questions 48–50.



**Figure 2-21** Scenario for Questions 48–50

- 48.** Which section(s) belong to the core layer?
- 49.** Which section(s) belong to the distribution layer?
- 50.** Which section(s) belong to the access layer?

*This page intentionally left blank*

### **CCDA exam topics covered in this part:**

- Describe network architecture for the enterprise
- Describe campus design considerations
- Design the enterprise campus network
- Design the enterprise data center
- Describe enterprise network virtualization tools
- Describe the enterprise edge, branch, and teleworker design characteristics
- Describe physical and logical WAN connectivity
- Design the branch office WAN solutions
- Describe access network solutions for a remote worker
- Design the WAN to support selected redundancy methodologies
- Identify design considerations for a remote data center
- Describe Cisco Unified wireless network architectures and features
- Design wireless network using controllers

# **Part II: LAN and WAN Design**

---

**Chapter 3: Enterprise LAN Design**

**Chapter 4: Data Center Design**

**Chapter 5: Wireless LAN Design**

**Chapter 6: WAN Technologies**

**Chapter 7: WAN Design**



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- LAN Media
- LAN Hardware
- Campus LAN Design and Best Practices

## Enterprise LAN Design

---

This chapter covers the design of campus local-area networks (LAN). It reviews LAN media, components, and design models. The section “LAN Media” reviews the design characteristics of different Ethernet media technologies.

This chapter covers how you apply Layer 2 switches, Layer 3 switches, and routers in the design of LANs. It reviews several design models for large building, campus, and remote LANs.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The eight-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 3-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 3-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

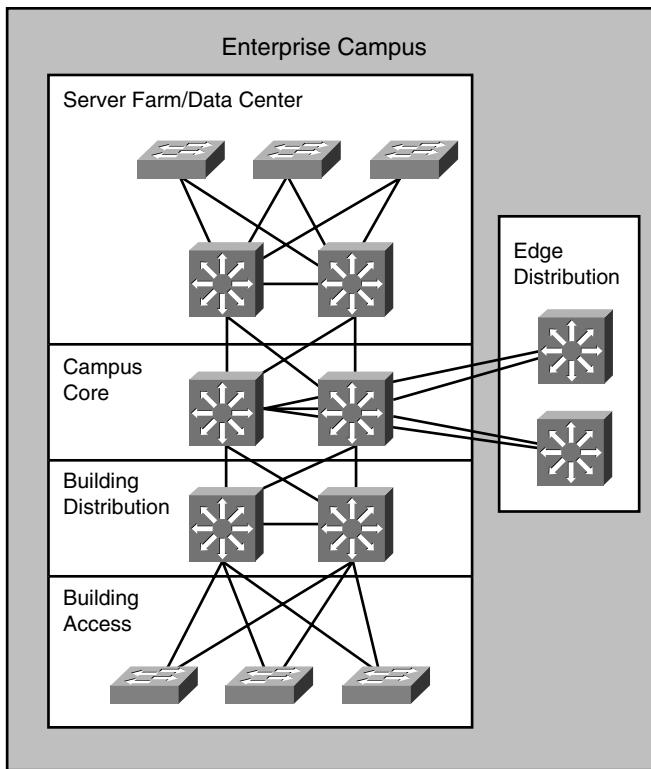
Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
LAN Media	2
LAN Hardware	1, 3, 5, 8
Campus LAN Design and Best Practices	4, 6, 7

- 1.** What device filters broadcasts?
  - a.** Layer 2 switch
  - b.** Hub
  - c.** Layer 3 switch
  - d.** Router
  - e.** A and C
  - f.** C and D
  - g.** A, C, and D
  
- 2.** What is the maximum segment distance for Fast Ethernet over unshielded twisted-pair (UTP)?
  - a.** 100 feet
  - b.** 500 feet
  - c.** 100 meters
  - d.** 285 feet
  
- 3.** What device limits the collision domain?
  - a.** Layer 2 switch
  - b.** Hub
  - c.** Layer 3 switch
  - d.** Router
  - e.** A and C
  - f.** C and D
  - g.** A, C, and D
  
- 4.** The summarization of routes is a best practice at which layer?
  - a.** Access layer
  - b.** Distribution layer
  - c.** Core layer
  - d.** WAN layer

5. What type of LAN switches are preferred in the campus backbone of an enterprise network?
  - a. Layer 2 switches
  - b. Layer 3 switches
  - c. Layer 3 hubs
  - d. Hubs
6. Two workstations are located on separate VLANs. They exchange data directly. What type of application is this?
  - a. Client/server
  - b. Client-peer
  - c. Peer-peer
  - d. Client-enterprise
7. Which type of cable is the best solution in terms of cost for connecting an access switch to the distribution layer requiring 140 meters?
  - a. UTP
  - b. Copper
  - c. Multimode fiber
  - d. Single-mode fiber
8. Why is switching preferred over shared segments?
  - a. Shared segments provide a collision domain for each host.
  - b. Switched segments provide a collision domain for each host.
  - c. Shared segments provide a broadcast domain for each host.
  - d. Switched segments provide a broadcast domain for each host.

## Foundation Topics

This chapter covers the design of LANs. It reviews LAN media, components, and design models. Figure 3-1 shows the Enterprise Campus section of the Enterprise Composite Network model. Enterprise LANs have a campus backbone and one or more instances of building-distribution and building-access layers, with server farms and an enterprise edge to the WAN or Internet.



**Figure 3-1** Enterprise Campus

## LAN Media

This section identifies some of the constraints you should consider when provisioning various LAN media types. It covers the physical specifications of Ethernet, Fast Ethernet, and Gigabit Ethernet.

You must also understand the design constraints of wireless LANs in the campus network. Specifications for wireless LANs are covered in Chapter 5, “Wireless LAN Design.”

## Ethernet Design Rules

Ethernet is the underlying basis for the technologies most widely used in LANs. In the 1980s and early 1990s, most networks used 10-Mbps Ethernet, defined initially by Digital, Intel, and Xerox (DIX Ethernet Version II) and later by the IEEE 802.3 working group. The IEEE 802.3-2002 standard contains physical specifications for Ethernet technologies through 10 Gbps.

Table 3-2 describes the physical Ethernet specifications up to 100 Mbps. It provides scalability information that you can use when provisioning IEEE 802.3 networks. Of these specifications, 10BASE-5 and 10BASE-2 are no longer used but are included for completeness, and Fast Ethernet is preferred over 10BASE-T Ethernet.

**Table 3-2 Scalability Constraints for IEEE 802.3**

Specification	10BASE-5	10BASE-2	10BASE-T	100BASE-T
Physical topology	Bus	Bus	Star	Star
Maximum segment length (in meters)	500	185	100 from hub to station.	100 from hub to station.
Maximum number of attachments per segment	100	30	2 (hub and station or hub-hub).	2 (hub and station or hub-hub).
Maximum collision domain	2500 meters (m) of five segments and four repeaters. Only three segments can be populated.	2500 m of five segments and four repeaters. Only three segments can be populated.	2500 m of five segments and four repeaters. Only three segments can be populated.	See the details in the section “100-Mbps Fast Ethernet Design Rules,” later in this chapter.

The most significant design rule for Ethernet is that the round-trip propagation delay in one collision domain must not exceed 512-bit times. This is a requirement for collision detection to work correctly. This rule means that the maximum round-trip delay for a 10-Mbps Ethernet network is 51.2 microseconds. The maximum round-trip delay for a 100-Mbps Ethernet network is only 5.12 microseconds because the bit time on a 100-Mbps Ethernet network is 0.01 microseconds, as opposed to 0.1 microseconds on a 10-Mbps Ethernet network. Networks that are built outside of the specifications for segment distances cause larger propagation delays and should be avoided.

## 100-Mbps Fast Ethernet Design Rules

IEEE introduced the IEEE 802.3u-1995 standard to provide Ethernet speeds of 100 Mbps over UTP and fiber cabling. The 100BASE-T standard is similar to 10-Mbps Ethernet in that it uses carrier sense multiple access collision detect (CSMA/CD); runs on Category (CAT) 3, 4, and 5 UTP cable; and preserves the frame formats. Connectivity still uses hubs, repeaters, bridges, and switches.

100-Mbps Ethernet, or Fast Ethernet, topologies present some distinct constraints on the network design because of their speed. The combined latency due to cable lengths and repeaters must conform to the specifications for the network to work properly. This section discusses these issues and provides sample calculations.

The overriding design rule for 100-Mbps Ethernet networks is that the round-trip collision delay must not exceed 512-bit times. However, the bit time on a 100-Mbps Ethernet network is 0.01 microseconds, as opposed to 0.1 microseconds on a 10-Mbps Ethernet network. Therefore, the maximum round-trip delay for a 100-Mbps Ethernet network is 5.12 microseconds, as opposed to the more lenient 51.2 microseconds in a 10-Mbps Ethernet network.

The following are specifications for Fast Ethernet, each of which is described in the following sections:

- 100BASE-TX
- 100BASE-T4
- 100BASE-FX

**100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet** The 100BASE-TX specification uses CAT 5 UTP wiring. Like 10BASE-T, Fast Ethernet uses only two pairs of the four-pair UTP wiring. If CAT 5 cabling is already in place, upgrading to Fast Ethernet requires only a hub or switch and network interface card (NIC) upgrades. Because of the low cost, most of today's installations use switches. The specifications are as follows:

- Transmission over CAT 5 UTP wire
- RJ-45 connector (the same as in 10BASE-T)
- Punchdown blocks in the wiring closet must be CAT 5 certified
- 4B5B coding

**100BASE-T4 Fast Ethernet** The 100BASE-T4 specification was developed to support UTP wiring at the CAT 3 level. This specification takes advantage of higher-speed

Ethernet without recabling to CAT 5 UTP. This implementation is not widely deployed. The specifications are as follows:

- Transmission over CAT 3, 4, or 5 UTP wiring.
- Three pairs are used for transmission, and the fourth pair is used for collision detection.
- No separate transmit and receive pairs are present, so full-duplex operation is not possible.
- 8B6T coding.

**100BASE-FX Fast Ethernet** The 100BASE-FX specification for fiber is as follows:

- It operates over two strands of multimode or single-mode fiber cabling.
- It can transmit over greater distances than copper media.
- It uses media interface connector (MIC), Stab and Twist (ST), or Stab and Click (SC) fiber connectors defined for FDDI and 10BASE-FX networks.
- 4B5B coding.

**100BASE-T Repeaters** To make 100-Mbps Ethernet work, distance limitations are much more severe than those required for 10-Mbps Ethernet. Repeater networks have no five-hub rule; Fast Ethernet is limited to two repeaters. The general rule is that 100-Mbps Ethernet has a maximum diameter of 205 meters (m) with UTP cabling, whereas 10-Mbps Ethernet has a maximum diameter of 500 m with 10BASE-T and 2500 m with 10BASE5. Most networks today use switches rather than repeaters, which limits the length of 10BASE-T and 100BASE-TX to 100 m between the switch and host.

The distance limitation imposed depends on the type of repeater.

The IEEE 100BASE-T specification defines two types of repeaters: Class I and Class II. Class I repeaters have a latency (delay) of 0.7 microseconds or less. Only one repeater hop is allowed. Class II repeaters have a latency of 0.46 microseconds or less. One or two repeater hops are allowed.

Table 3-3 shows the maximum size of collision domains, depending on the type of repeater.

**Table 3-3 Maximum Size of Collision Domains for 100BASE-T**

Repeater Type	Copper	Mixed Copper and Multimode Fiber	Multimode Fiber
DTE-DTE (or switch-switch)	100 m	Not applicable	412 m (2000 if full duplex)
One Class I repeater	200 m	260 m	272 m
One Class II repeater	200 m	308 m	320 m
Two Class II repeaters	205 m	216 m	228 m

Again, for switched networks, the maximum distance between the switch and the host is 100 m.

### Gigabit Ethernet Design Rules

Gigabit Ethernet was first specified by two standards: IEEE 802.3z-1998 and 802.3ab-1999. The IEEE 802.3z standard specifies the operation of Gigabit Ethernet over fiber and coaxial cable and introduces the Gigabit Media-Independent Interface (GMII). These standards are superseded by the latest revision of all the 802.3 standards included in IEEE 802.3-2002.

The IEEE 802.3ab standard specified the operation of Gigabit Ethernet over CAT 5 UTP. Gigabit Ethernet still retains the frame formats and frame sizes, and it still uses CSMA/CD. As with Ethernet and Fast Ethernet, full-duplex operation is possible. Differences appear in the encoding; Gigabit Ethernet uses 8B10B coding with simple nonreturn to zero (NRZ). Because of the 20 percent overhead, pulses run at 1250 MHz to achieve a 1000 Mbps throughput.

Table 3-4 gives an overview of Gigabit Ethernet scalability constraints.

**Table 3-4 Gigabit Ethernet Scalability Constraints**

Type	Speed	Maximum Segment Length	Encoding	Media
1000BASE-T	1000 Mbps	100 m	Five-level	CAT 5 UTP
1000BASE-LX (long wavelength)	1000 Mbps	550 m	8B10B	Single-mode/multi-mode fiber
1000BASE-SX (short wavelength)	1000 Mbps	62.5 micrometers: 220 m 50 micrometers: 500 m	8B10B	Multimode fiber
1000BASE-CX	1000 Mbps	25 m	8B10B	Shielded balanced copper

The following are the physical specifications for Gigabit Ethernet, each of which is described in the following sections:

- 1000BASE-LX
- 1000BASE-SX
- 1000BASE-CX
- 1000BASE-T

### 1000BASE-LX Long-Wavelength Gigabit Ethernet

IEEE 1000BASE-LX uses long-wavelength optics over a pair of fiber strands. The specifications are as follows:

- Uses long wave (1300 nanometers [nm]).
- Use on multimode or single-mode fiber.

- Maximum lengths for multimode fiber are
  - 62.5-micrometer fiber: 440 m
  - 50-micrometer fiber: 550 m
- Maximum length for single-mode fiber (9 micrometers) is 5 km.
- Uses 8B10B encoding with simple NRZ.

### 1000BASE-SX Short-Wavelength Gigabit Ethernet

IEEE 1000BASE-SX uses short-wavelength optics over a pair of multimode fiber strands. The specifications are as follows:

- Uses short wave (850 nm)
- Use on multimode fiber
- Maximum lengths:
  - 62.5-micrometer fiber: 260 m
  - 50-micrometer fiber: 550 m
- Uses 8B10B encoding with simple NRZ

### 1000BASE-CX Gigabit Ethernet over Coaxial Cable

IEEE 1000BASE-CX standard is for short copper runs between servers. The specification is as follows:

- Used on short-run copper
- Runs over a pair of 150-ohm balanced coaxial cables (twinax)
- Maximum length 25 m
- Mainly for server connections
- Uses 8B10B encoding with simple NRZ

### 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet over UTP

The IEEE standard for 1000-Mbps Ethernet over CAT 5 UTP was IEEE 802.3ab; it was approved in June 1999. It is now included in IEEE 802.3-2002. This standard uses the four pairs in the cable. (100BASE-TX and 10BASE-T Ethernet use only two pairs.) The specifications are as follows:

- CAT 5, four-pair UTP.
- Maximum length 100 m.
- Encoding defined is a five-level coding scheme.
- 1 byte is sent over the four pairs at 1250 MHz.

## 10 Gigabit Ethernet Design Rules

The IEEE 802.3ae supplement to the 802.3 standard, published in August 2002, specifies the standard for 10 Gigabit Ethernet (10GE). It is defined for full-duplex operation over optical media, UTP, and copper. The IEEE 802.3an standard provides the specifications for running 10GE over UTP cabling. Hubs or repeaters cannot be used because they operate in half-duplex mode. It allows the use of Ethernet frames over distances typically encountered in metropolitan-area networks (MAN) and wide-area networks (WAN). Other uses include data centers, corporate backbones, and server farms.

### 10GE Media Types

10GE has seven physical media specifications based on different fiber types and encoding. Multimode fiber (MMF) and single-mode fiber (SMF) are used. Table 3-5 describes the different 10GE media types.

**Table 3-5** 10GE Media Types

10GE Media Type	Wavelength/Fiber (Short or Long)/UTP/Copper	Distance	Other Description
10GBASE-SR	Short-wavelength MMF	To 300 m	Uses 66B encoding
10GBASE-SW	Short-wavelength MMF	To 300 m	Uses the WAN interface sublayer (WIS)
10GBASE-LR	Long-wavelength SMF	To 10 km	Uses 66B encoding for dark fiber use
10GBASE-LW	Long-wavelength SMF	To 10 km	Uses WIS
10GBASE-ER	Extra-long-wavelength SMF	To 40 km	Uses 66B encoding for dark fiber use
10GBASE-EW	Extra-long-wavelength SNMP	To 40 km	Uses WIS
10GBASE-LX4	Uses division multiplexing for both MMF and SMF	To 10 km	Uses 8B/10B encoding
10GBASE-CX4	4 pairs of twinax copper	15 m	IEEE 802.3ak
10GBASE-T	CAT6a UTP	100 m	IEEE 802.3an

Short-wavelength multimode fiber is 850 nm. Long-wavelength is 1310 nm, and extra-long-wavelength is 1550 nm. The WIS is used to interoperate with Synchronous Optical Network (SONET) STS-192c transmission format.

## EtherChannel

The Cisco EtherChannel implementations provide a method to increase the bandwidth between two systems by bundling Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, or 10GE links. When bundling Fast Ethernet links, use Fast EtherChannel. Gigabit EtherChannel bundles Gigabit Ethernet links. EtherChannel port bundles enable you to group multiple ports into a single logical transmission path between the switch and a router, host, or another switch. EtherChannels provide increased bandwidth, load sharing, and redundancy. If a link fails in the bundle, the other links take on the traffic load. You can configure EtherChannel bundles as trunk links.

Depending on your hardware, you can form an EtherChannel with up to eight compatibly configured ports on the switch. The participating ports must have the same speed and duplex mode and belong to the same VLAN.

## Comparison of Campus Media

As noted previously, several media types are used for campus networks. Table 3-6 provides a summary comparison of them. Wireless LAN (WLAN) is included here for completeness. WLAN technologies are covered in Chapter 5.

**Table 3-6** Campus Transmission Media Comparison

Specification	Copper/UTP	Multimode Fiber	Single-Mode Fiber	Wireless LAN
Bandwidth	Up to 10 Gbps	Up to 10 Gbps	Up to 10 Gbps	Up to 300 Mbps
Distance	Up to 100 m Up to 550 m (GE) Up to 300 m	Up to 2 km (FE) Up to 100 m (GE) Up to 80 km (10GE)	Up to 80 km (FE) Up to 100 m (GE) Up to 80 km (10GE)	Up to 500 m at 1 Mbps
Price	Inexpensive	Moderate	Moderate to expensive	Moderate



## LAN Hardware

This section covers the hardware devices and how to apply them to LAN design. You place devices in the LAN depending on their roles and capabilities. LAN devices are categorized based on how they operate in the Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) model. This section covers the following devices:

- Repeaters
- Hubs
- Bridges

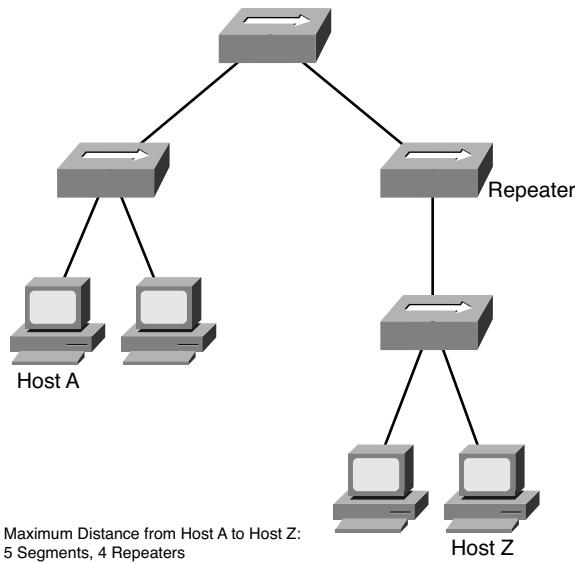


- Switches
- Routers
- Layer 3 switches

## Repeaters

*Repeaters* are the basic unit in networks that connect separate segments. Repeaters take incoming frames, regenerate the preamble, amplify the signals, and send the frame out all other interfaces. Repeaters operate at the physical layer of the OSI model. Because repeaters are unaware of packets or frame formats, they do not control broadcasts or collision domains. Repeaters are said to be protocol-transparent because they are unaware of upper-layer protocols such as IP, Internetwork Packet Exchange (IPX), and so on.

One basic rule of using Ethernet repeaters is the 5-4-3 Rule, shown in Figure 3-2. The maximum path between two stations on the network should not be more than five segments, with four repeaters between those segments, and no more than three populated segments. Repeaters introduce a small amount of latency, or delay, when propagating the frames. A transmitting device must be able to detect a collision with another device within the specified time after the delay introduced by the cable segments and repeaters is factored in. The 512-bit time specification also governs segment lengths.



**Figure 3-2** Repeater 5-4-3 Rule

## Hubs

With the increasing density of LANs in the late 1980s and early 1990s, *hubs* were introduced to concentrate thinnet and 10BASE-T networks in the wiring closet. Traditional

hubs operate on the physical layer of the OSI model and perform the same functions as basic repeaters. The difference is that hubs have more ports than basic repeaters.

## Bridges

*Bridges* connect separate segments of a network. They differ from repeaters in that bridges are intelligent devices that operate in the data link layer of the OSI model. Bridges control the collision domains on the network. Bridges also learn the MAC layer addresses of each node on each segment and on which interface they are located. For any incoming frame, bridges forward the frame only if the destination MAC address is on another port or if the bridge is unaware of its location. The latter is called *flooding*. Bridges filter any incoming frames with destination MAC addresses that are on the same segment from where the frame arrives; they do not forward these frames.

Bridges are store-and-forward devices. They store the entire frame and verify the cyclic redundancy check (CRC) before forwarding. If the bridges detect a CRC error, they discard the frame. Bridges are protocol transparent; they are unaware of the upper-layer protocols such as IP, IPX, and AppleTalk. Bridges are designed to flood all unknown and broadcast traffic.

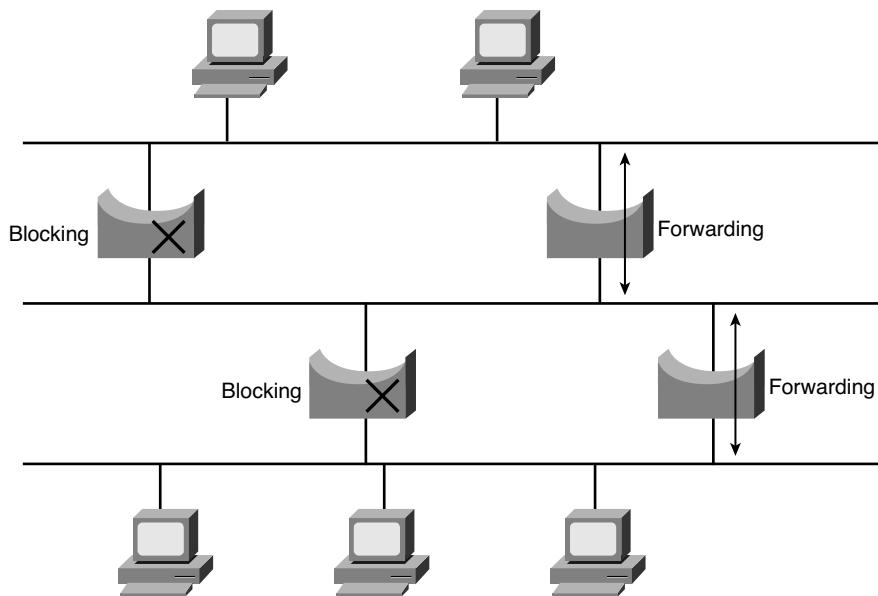
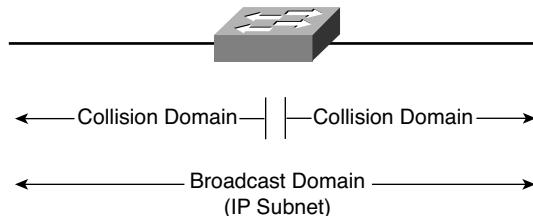
Bridges implement Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) to build a loop-free network topology. Bridges communicate with each other, exchanging information such as priority and bridge interface MAC addresses. They select a root bridge and then implement STP. Some interfaces are in a blocking state, whereas other bridges have interfaces in forwarding mode. Figure 3-3 shows a network with bridges. STP has no load sharing or dual paths, as there is in routing. STP provides recovery of bridge failure by changing blocked interfaces to a forwarding state if a primary link fails. Although DEC and IBM versions are available, the IEEE 802.1d standard is the STP most commonly used.

STP elects a *root bridge* as the tree's root. It places all ports that are not needed to reach the root bridge in blocking mode. The selection of the root bridge is based on the lowest numerical bridge priority. The bridge priority ranges from 0 to 65,535. If all bridges have the same bridge priority, the bridge with the lowest MAC address becomes the root. The concatenation of the bridge priority and the MAC address is the bridge identification (BID). Physical changes to the network force spanning-tree recalculation.

## Switches

Switches use specialized integrated circuits to reduce the latency common to regular bridges. Switches are the evolution of bridges. Some switches can run in cut-through mode, where the switch does not wait for the entire frame to enter its buffer; instead, it begins to forward the frame as soon as it finishes reading the destination MAC address. Cut-through operation increases the probability that frames with errors are propagated on the network, because it forwards the frame before the entire frame is buffered and checked for errors. Because of these problems, most switches today perform store-and-forward operation as bridges do. As shown in Figure 3-4, switches are exactly the same as bridges with respect to collision-domain and broadcast-domain characteristics. Each port

broadcast domain. Assignment to different VLANs changes that behavior.

**Figure 3-3** Spanning Tree Protocol**Figure 3-4** Switches Control Collision Domains

Switches have characteristics similar to bridges; however, they have more ports and run faster. Switches keep a table of MAC addresses per port, and they implement STP.

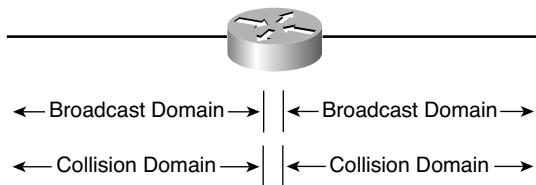
Switches are data link layer devices. They are transparent to protocols operating at the network layer and above. Each port on a switch is a separate collision domain but is part of the same broadcast domain. Switches do not control broadcasts on the network.

The use of LAN switches instead of bridges or hubs is nearly universal. Switches are preferred over shared technology because they provide full bandwidth in each direction when configured in duplex mode. All the devices on a hub share the bandwidth in a single collision domain. Switches can also use VLANs to provide more segmentation. The “LAN Design Types and Models” section discusses VLANs.

## Routers

Routers make forwarding decisions based on network layer addresses. When an Ethernet

Layer 3 IP address and adds a new Layer 2 address at the egress interface. In addition to controlling collision domains, routers bound data link layer broadcast domains. Each interface of a router is a separate broadcast domain. Routers do not forward data link layer broadcasts. IP defines network layer broadcast domains with a subnet and mask. Routers are aware of the network protocol, which means they can forward packets of routed protocols, such as IP and IPX. Figure 3-5 shows a router; each interface is a broadcast and a collision domain.



**Figure 3-5** Routers Control Broadcast and Collision Domains

Routers exchange information about destination networks using one of several routing protocols. Routers use routing protocols to build a list of destination networks and to identify the best routes to reach those destinations. The following are examples of routing protocols:

- Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP)
- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)
- Routing Information Protocol (RIP)
- Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)

Chapters 10 and 11 cover routing protocols in further detail. Routers translate data-link protocols. They are the preferred method of forwarding packets between networks of differing media, such as Ethernet to Token Ring or Ethernet to serial. They also provide methods to filter traffic based on the network layer address, route redundancy, load balancing, hierarchical addressing, and multicast routing.

### Layer 3 Switches

LAN switches that can run routing protocols are *Layer 3 switches*. These switches can run routing protocols and communicate with neighboring routers. They are also referred to as multilayer switches. Layer 3 switches have LAN technology interfaces that perform network layer packet forwarding. The use of switching technologies at the network layer greatly accelerates packet forwarding between connected LANs, including VLANs. You can use the router capacity you save to implement other features, such as security filtering and intrusion detection.

Layer 3 switches perform the functions of both data link layer switches and network layer

domains (subnets). As with routers, a routing protocol provides network information to other network layer devices (subnets), and a routing protocol provides network information to other Layer 3 switches and routers.

Table 3-7 summarizes LAN devices for review.

**Table 3-7 LAN Device Comparison**

Device	OSI Layer	Is Domain Protocol Transparent or Protocol Aware?	Boundary	What It Understands
Repeater	Layer 1: physical	Transparent	Amplify signal	Bits
Hub	Layer 1: physical	Transparent	Amplify signal	Bits
Bridge	Layer 2: data link	Transparent	Collision domain	Frames
Switch	Layer 2: data link	Transparent	Collision domain	Frames
Router	Layer 3: network	Aware	Broadcast domain	Packets
Layer 3 switch	Layer 3: network	Aware	Broadcast domain	Packets

## Campus LAN Design and Best Practices

LANs can be classified as large-building LANs, campus LANs, or small and remote LANs. The large-building LAN typically contains a major data center with high-speed access and floor communications closets; the large-building LAN is usually the headquarters in larger companies. Campus LANs provide connectivity between buildings on a campus. Redundancy is usually a requirement in large-building and campus LAN deployments. Small and remote LANs provide connectivity to remote offices with a relatively small number of nodes.

Campus design factors include the following categories:

- **Network application characteristics:** Different application types
- **Infrastructure device characteristics:** Layer 2 and Layer 3 switching, hierarchy
- **Environmental characteristics:** Geography, wiring, distance, space, power, number of nodes

Applications are defined by the business, and the network must be able to support them. Applications may require high bandwidth or be time sensitive. The infrastructure devices influence the design. Decisions on switched or routed architectures and port limitations

or fiber media may be influenced by the environmental or distance requirements. The following sections show some sample LAN types. Table 3-8 summarizes the different application types.

**Table 3-8 Application Types**

Application Type	Description
Peer to peer	Includes instant messaging, file sharing, IP phone calls, and video-conferencing.
Client-local servers	Servers are located in the same segment as the clients or close by, normally on the same LAN. With 80/20 workgroup rule, 80% of traffic is local, 20% not local.
Client/server farms	Mail, server, file, and database servers. Access is fast, reliable, and controlled.
Client-enterprise edge servers	External servers such as Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), web, public servers, and e-commerce.

There is a wide range of network requirements for applications depending on the application types. Networks today are switched and not shared. Server farms require high-capacity links to the servers and redundant connections on the network to provide high availability. Costs are lower for peer-to-peer applications and become higher for applications that traverse the network with high redundancy. Table 3-9 summarizes network requirements for applications.

**Table 3-9 Network Requirements for Application Types**

Requirement	Peer to Peer	Client-Local Servers	Client/Server Farm	Client-Enterprise Edge Services
Connectivity type	Switched	Switched	Switched	Switched
Throughput required	Medium to high	Medium	High	Medium
Availability	Low to high	Medium	High	High
Network costs	Low to medium	Medium	High	Medium

### Best Practices for Hierarchical Layers

Each layer of the hierarchical architecture contains special considerations. The following sections describe best practices for each of the three layers of the hierarchical architecture: access, distribution, and core.



## Access Layer Best Practices

When designing the building access layer, you must consider the number of users or ports required to size up the LAN switch. Connectivity speed for each host should also be considered. Hosts might be connected using various technologies such as Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, or port channels. The planned VLANs enter into the design.

Performance in the access layer is also important. Redundancy and QoS features should be considered.

The following are recommended best practices for the building access layer:

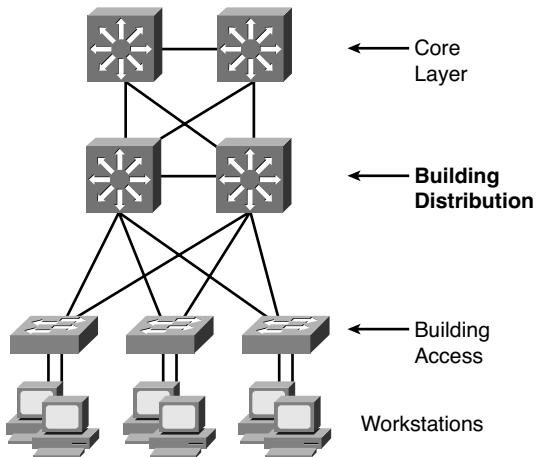
- Limit VLANs to a single closet when possible to provide the most deterministic and highly available topology.
- Use Rapid Per-VLAN Spanning Tree Plus (RPVST+) if STP is required. It provides the faster convergence than traditional 802.1d default timers.
- Set trunks to ON and ON with no-negotiate.
- Manually prune unused VLANs to avoid broadcast propagation (commonly done on the distribution switch).
- Use VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) Transparent mode, because there is little need for a common VLAN database in hierarchical networks.
- Disable trunking on host ports, because it is not necessary. Doing so provides more security and speeds up PortFast.
- Consider implementing routing in the access layer to provide fast convergence and Layer 3 load balancing.
- Use the `switchport host` commands on server and end-user ports to enable PortFast and disable channeling on these ports.
- Use Cisco STP Toolkit, which provides
  - **PortFast:** Bypass listening-learning phase for access ports
  - **Loop Guard:** Prevents alternate or root port from becoming designated in absence of bridge protocol data units (BPDU)
  - **Root Guard:** Prevents external switches from becoming root
  - **BPDU Guard:** Disables PortFast-enabled port if a BPDU is received

## Distribution Layer Best Practices

As shown in Figure 3-6, the distribution layer aggregates all closet switches and connects to the core layer. Design considerations for the distribution layer include providing wire-speed performance on all ports, link redundancy, and infrastructure services.

The distribution layer should not be limited on performance. Links to the core must be

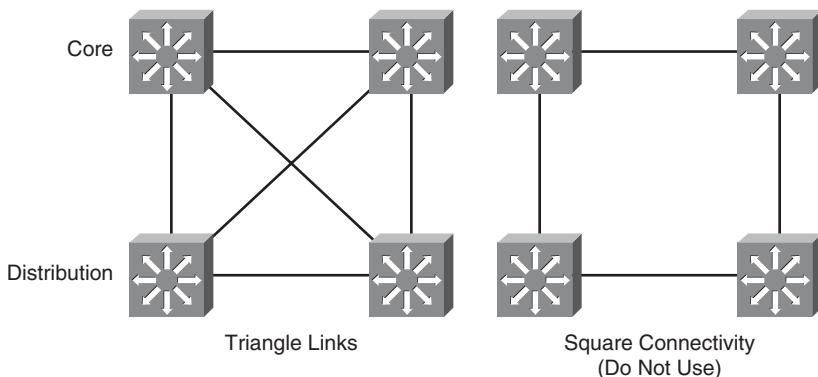
the core layer allow for high availability in the event of a link failure. Infrastructure services include quality of service (QoS) configuration, security, and policy enforcement. Access lists are configured in the distribution layer.



**Figure 3-6** Distribution Layer

The following are recommended best practices at the distribution layer:

- Use first-hop redundancy protocols. Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) or Gateway Load Balancing Protocol (GLBP) should be used if you implement Layer 2 links between the Layer 2 access switches and the distribution layer.
- Use Layer 3 routing protocols between the distribution and core switches to allow for fast convergence and load balancing.
- Only peer on links that you intend to use as transit.
- Build Layer 3 triangles, not squares, as shown in bold in Figure 3-7.

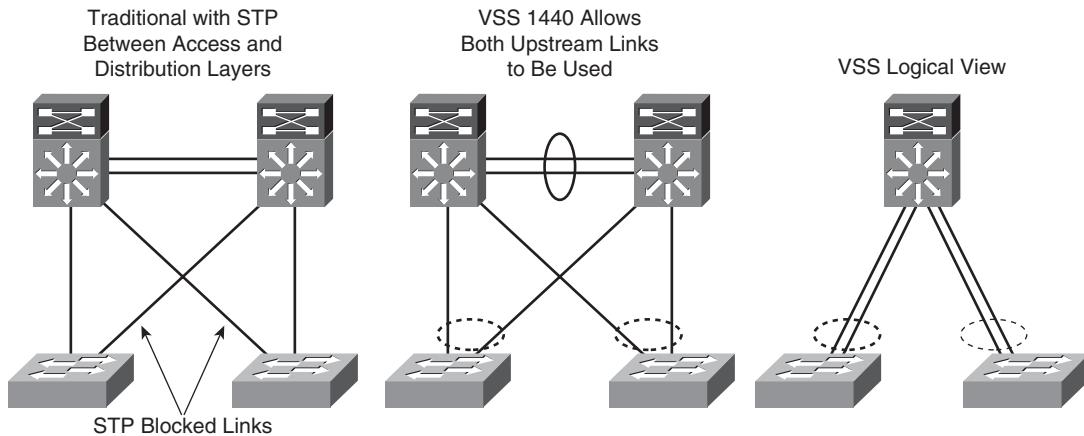


**Figure 3-7** Layer 3 Triangles

- Use the distribution switches to connect Layer 2 VLANs that span multiple access layer switches.
- Summarize routes from the distribution to the core of the network to reduce routing overhead.
- Use Virtual Switching System (VSS) as an option described in the following paragraph to eliminate the use of STP and the need for HSRP.

VSS solves the STP unused blocked links problem by converting the distribution switching pair into a logical single switch. With VSS, the physical topology changes as each access switch has a single upstream distribution switch versus having two upstream distribution switches. VSS is configured only on Cisco 6500 switches using the VSS Supervisor 720-10G. As shown in Figure 3-8, the two switches are connected via 10GE links called virtual switch links (VSL), which makes them seem as a single switch. The key benefits of VSS include

- Layer 3 switching can be used toward the access layer.
- Simplified management of a single configuration of the VSS distribution switch.
- Better return on investment (ROI) via increased bandwidth between the access layer and the distribution layer.

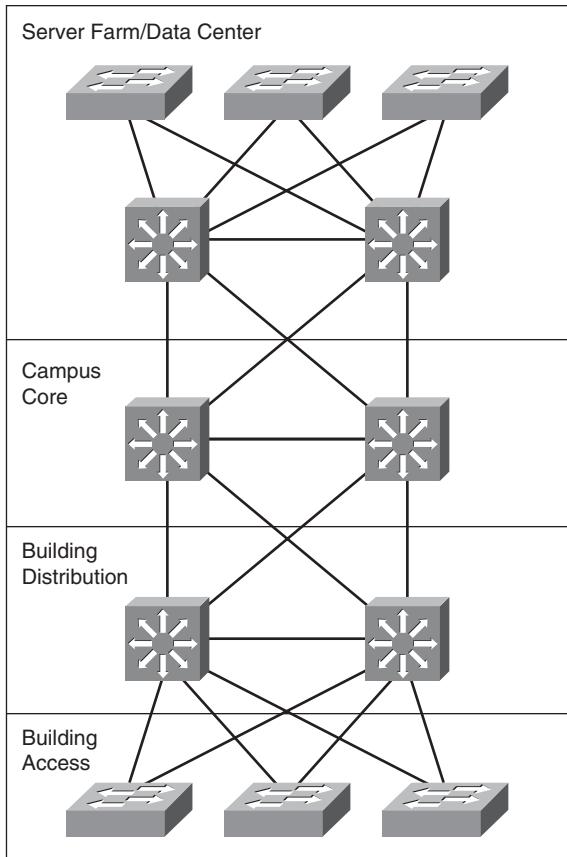


**Figure 3-8** Virtual Switching System

### Core Layer Best Practices

Depending on the network's size, a core layer might or might not be needed. For larger networks, building distribution switches are aggregated to the core. This is called a collapsed core. This provides high-speed connectivity to the server farm / data center and to the enterprise edge (to the WAN and the Internet).

Figure 3-9 shows the criticality of the core switches. The core must provide high-speed must support gigabit speeds and data and voice integration.



**Figure 3-9 Core Switches**

The following are best practices for the campus core:

- Reduce the switch peering by using redundant triangle connections between switches.
- Use routing that provides a topology with no Layer 2 loops, which are seen in Layer 2 links using STP.
- Use Layer 3 switches on the core that provide intelligent services that Layer 2 switches do not support.
- Use two equal-cost paths to every destination network.

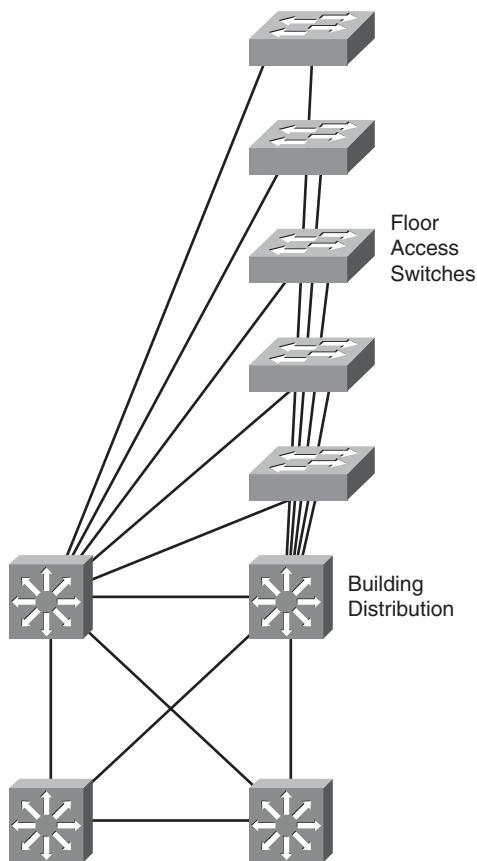
Table 3-10 summarizes campus layer best practices.

**Table 3-10** *Campus Layer Design Best Practices*

<b>Campus Layer</b>	<b>Best Practices</b>
Access layer	<p>Limit VLANs to a single closet when possible to provide the most deterministic and highly available topology.</p> <p>Use RPVST+ if STP is required. It provides the best convergence.</p> <p>Set trunks to ON and ON with no-negotiate.</p> <p>Manually prune unused VLANs to avoid broadcast propagation.</p> <p>Use VTP Transparent mode, because there is little need for a common VLAN database in hierarchical networks.</p> <p>Disable trunking on host ports, because it is not necessary. Doing so provides more security and speeds up PortFast.</p> <p>Consider implementing routing in the access layer to provide fast convergence and Layer 3 load balancing.</p> <p>Use Cisco STP Toolkit, which provides PortFast, Loop Guard, Root Guard, and BPDU Guard.</p>
Distribution layer	<p>Use first-hop redundancy protocols. Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) or Gateway Load Balancing Protocol (GLBP) should be used if you implement Layer 2 links between the access and distribution.</p> <p>Use Layer 3 links between the distribution and core switches to allow for fast convergence and load balancing.</p> <p>Build Layer 3 triangles, not squares.</p> <p>Use the distribution switches to connect Layer 2 VLANs that span multiple access layer switches.</p> <p>Summarize routes from the distribution to the core of the network to reduce routing overhead.</p> <p>Use VSS as an option described below to eliminate the use of STP.</p>
Core layer	<p>Reduce the switch peering by using redundant triangle connections between switches.</p> <p>Use routing that provides a topology with no spanning-tree loops.</p> <p>Use Layer 3 switches on the core that provide intelligent services that Layer 2 switches do not support.</p> <p>Use two equal-cost paths to every destination network.</p>

## Large-Building LANs

Large-building LANs are segmented by floors or departments. The building-access component serves one or more departments or floors. The building-distribution component serves one or more building-access components. Campus and building backbone devices connect the data center, building-distribution components, and the enterprise edge-distribution component. The access layer typically uses Layer 2 switches to contain costs, with more expensive Layer 3 switches in the distribution layer to provide policy enforcement. Current best practice is to also deploy multilayer switches in the campus and building backbone. Figure 3-10 shows a typical large-building design.



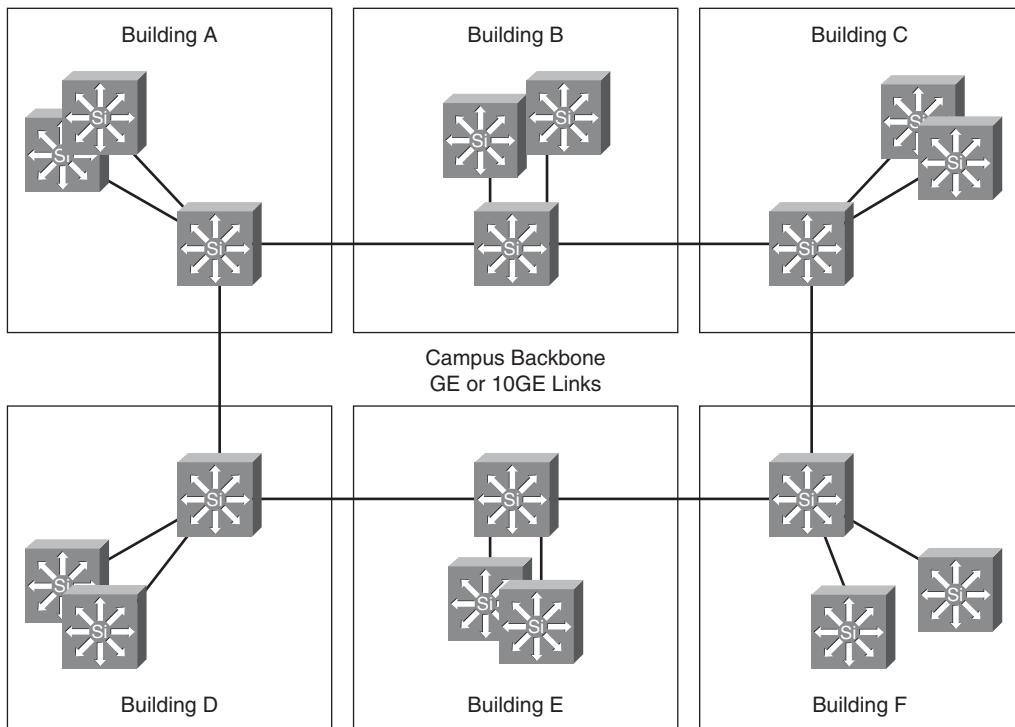
**Figure 3-10** Large-Building LAN Design

Each floor can have more than 200 users. Following a hierarchical model of building access, building distribution, and core, Fast Ethernet nodes can connect to the Layer 2 switches in the communications closet. Fast Ethernet or Gigabit Ethernet uplink ports

applications, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), Domain Name System (DNS), intranet, and other services.

### Enterprise Campus LANs

A campus LAN connects two or more buildings within a local geographic area using a high-bandwidth LAN media backbone. Usually the enterprise owns the medium (copper or fiber). High-speed switching devices minimize latency. In today's networks, Gigabit Ethernet campus backbones are the standard for new installations. In Figure 3-11, Layer 3 switches with Gigabit Ethernet media connect campus buildings.



**Figure 3-11** *Campus LAN*

Ensure that you implement a hierarchical composite design on the campus LAN and that you assign network layer addressing to control broadcasts on the networks. Each building should have addressing assigned in such a way as to maximize address summarization. Apply contiguous subnets to buildings at the bit boundary to apply summarization and ease the design. Campus networks can support high-bandwidth applications such as video conferencing. Remember to use Layer 3 switches with high-switching capabilities in the campus-backbone design. In smaller installations, it might be desirable to collapse the building-distribution component into the campus backbone. An increasingly viable alternative is to provide building access and distribution on a single device selected from among the smaller Layer 3 switches now available.

As shown in the previous sections, each individual module has different requirements. The building access layer is the only layer that uses Layer 2 switching. Both the campus core and the server farm have requirements for high availability, high performance, and a higher cost per port.

Table 3-11 shows network requirements for application types.

**Table 3-11 Network Requirements for Application Types**

Specification	Building Access	Distribution Layer	Campus Core	Server Farm
Technology	Layer 2 and Layer 3 switches	Layer 3 switches	Layer 3 switches	Layer 3 switches
Scalability	High	Medium	Low	Medium
Availability	Medium	Medium	High	High
Performance	Medium	Medium	High	High
Cost per port	Low	Medium	High	High

### Edge Distribution

For large campus LANs, the edge distribution module provides additional security between the campus LAN and the enterprise edge (WAN, Internet, and virtual private networks [VPN]). The edge distribution protects the campus from the following threats:

- **IP spoofing:** The edge distribution switches protect the core from spoofing of IP addresses.
- **Unauthorized access:** Controls access to the network core.
- **Network reconnaissance:** Filtering of network discovery packets to prevent discovery from external networks.
- **Packet sniffers:** The edge distribution separates the edge's broadcast domains from the campus, preventing possible network packet captures.

### Medium-Size LANs

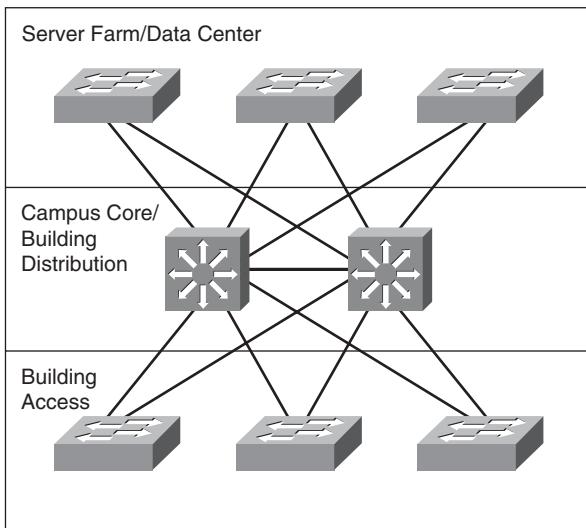
Medium-size LANs contain 200 to 1000 devices. Usually, the distribution and core layers are collapsed in the medium-size network. Access switches are still connected to both distribution/core switches to provide redundancy. Figure 3-12 shows the medium-size campus LAN.

### Small and Remote Site LANs

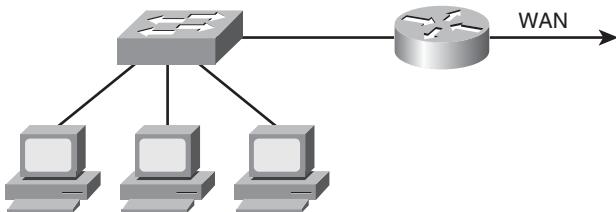
Small and remote sites usually connect to the corporate network via a small router. The LAN service is provided by a small LAN switch. The router filters broadcast to the WAN circuit and forward packets that require services from the corporate network. You can

such as a backup domain controller and DNS; if not, you must configure the router to

forward DHCP broadcasts and other types of services. As the site grows, you need the structure provided by the Enterprise Composite Network model. Figure 3-13 shows a typical architecture of a remote LAN.



**Figure 3-12** Medium-Size Campus LAN



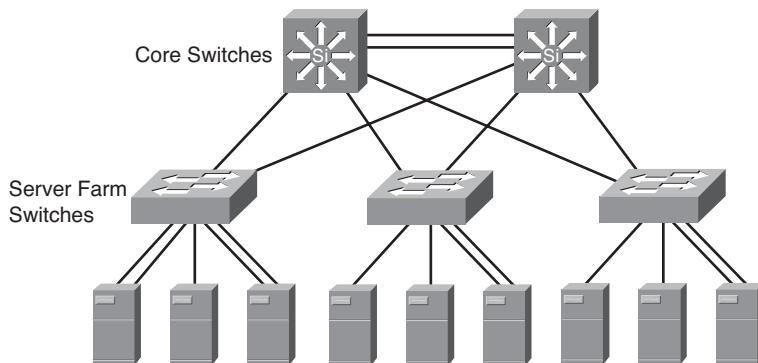
**Figure 3-13** Remote Office LAN

### Server Farm Module

The server farm or data center module provides high-speed access to servers for the campus networks. You can attach servers to switches via Gigabit Ethernet or 10GE. Some campus deployments might need EtherChannel technology to meet traffic requirements. Figure 3-14 shows an example of a server farm module for a small network. Servers are connected via Fast Ethernet or Fast EtherChannel.

The server farm switches connect via redundant uplink ports to the core switches. The largest deployments might find it useful to hierarchically construct service to the data center using access and distribution network devices.

Server distribution switches are used in larger networks. Access control lists and QoS features and to enforce network policies.



**Figure 3-14** *Server Farm*

### Server Connectivity Options

Servers can be connected in three primary ways:

- Single network interface card (NIC)
- Dual NIC EtherChannel
- Dual NIC to separate access switches
- Content switching

Single NIC connected servers contain Fast or Gigabit Ethernet full-duplex speeds with no redundancy. Servers requiring redundancy can be connected with dual NICs using switch EtherChannel or each link connected to separate access switches.

Advanced redundancy solutions use content switches that front end multiple servers. This provides redundancy and load balancing per user request.

### Enterprise Data Center Infrastructure

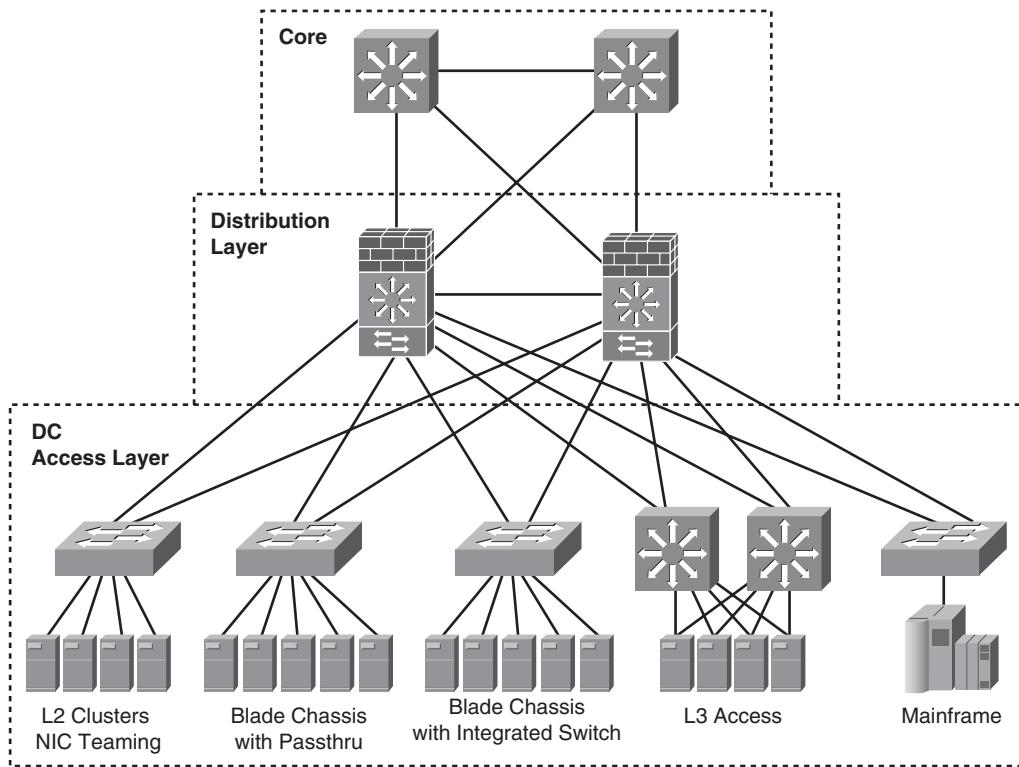
Data centers (DC) contain different types of server technologies, including standalone servers, blade servers, mainframes, clustered servers, and virtual servers.

Figure 3-15 shows the enterprise DC. The DC access layer must provide the port density to support the servers, provide high-performance/low-latency Layer 2 switching, and support dual and single connected servers. The preferred design is to contain Layer 2 to the access layer and Layer 3 on the distribution. Some solutions push Layer 3 links to the access layer. Blade chassis with integrated switches and virtual machines have become a popular solution for DCs. Cisco Data Center 3.0 architecture is the next evolution of the DC. DC architecture is covered in detail in Chapter 4, “Data Center Design.”

The DC aggregation layer (distribution layer) aggregates traffic to the core. Deployed on the aggregation layer are

- Load balancers to provide load balancing to multiple servers
- SSL offloading devices to terminate Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) sessions

- Firewalls to control and filter access
- Intrusion detection devices to detect network attacks



**Figure 3-15** Enterprise Data Center

### Campus LAN QoS Considerations

For the access layer of the campus LAN, you can classify and mark frames or packets to apply quality of service (QoS) policies in the distribution or at the enterprise edge. Classification is a fundamental building block of QoS and involves recognizing and distinguishing between different traffic streams. For example, you distinguish between HTTP/HTTPS, FTP, and VoIP traffic. Without classification, all traffic is treated the same.

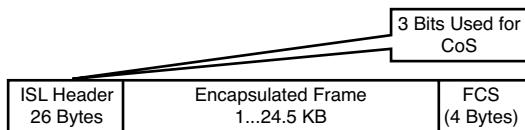
Marking sets certain bits in a packet or frame that has been classified. Marking is also called coloring or tagging. Layer 2 has two methods to mark frames for CoS:

- Inter-Switch Link (ISL)
- IEEE 802.1p/802.1Q

The IEEE 802.1D-1998 standard describes IEEE 802.1p traffic class expediting.

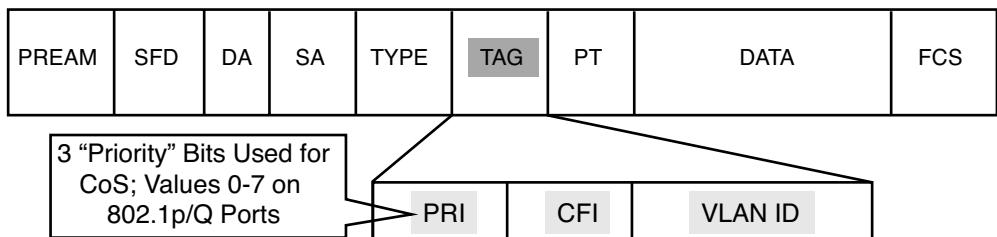
encapsulation method for carrying VLANs over Fast Ethernet or Gigabit Ethernet interfaces.

ISL appends tags to each frame to identify the VLAN it belongs to. As shown in Figure 3-16, the tag is a 30-byte header and CRC trailer that are added around the Fast Ethernet frame. This includes a 26-byte header and 4-byte CRC. The header includes a 15-bit VLAN ID that identifies each VLAN. The user field in the header also includes 3 bits for the class of service (CoS).



**Figure 3-16** ISL Frame

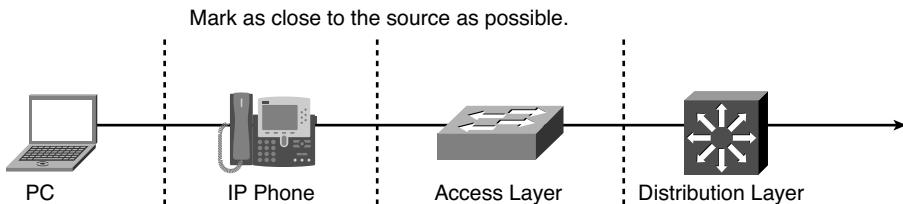
The IEEE 802.1Q standard trunks VLANs over Fast Ethernet and Gigabit Ethernet interfaces, and you can use it in a multivendor environment. IEEE 802.1q uses one instance of STP for each VLAN allowed in the trunk. Like ISL, IEEE 802.1Q uses a tag on each frame with a VLAN identifier. Figure 3-17 shows the IEEE 802.1Q frame. Unlike ISL, 802.1Q uses an internal tag. IEEE 802.1Q also supports the IEEE 802.1p priority standard, which is included in the 802.1D-1998 specification. A 3-bit Priority field is included in the 802.1Q frame for CoS.



**Figure 3-17** IEEE 802.1Q Frame

The preferred location to mark traffic is as close as possible to the source. Figure 3-18 shows a segment of a network with IP phones. Most workstations send packets with CoS or IP precedence bits (ToS) set to 0. If the workstation supports IEEE 802.1Q/p, it can mark packets. VoIP traffic from the phone is sent with a Layer 2 CoS set to 5. The phone also reclassifies data from the PC to a CoS/ToS of 0. With differentiated services code-point (DSCP) at Layer 3, VoIP bearer traffic is set to Expedited Forwarding (EF) (which implies a ToS set to 5), binary value 101110 (hexadecimal 2E). Signaling traffic is set to DSCP AF31.

As shown in Figure 3-18, switch capabilities vary in the access layer. If the switches in this layer are capable, configure them to accept the markings or remap them. The advanced remap the CoS/DSCP values to different markings.



**Figure 3-18** Marking of Frames or Packets

### Multicast Traffic Considerations

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) is the protocol between end workstations and the local Layer 3 switch. IGMP is the protocol used in multicast implementations between the end hosts and the local router. RFC 2236 describes IGMP Version 2 (IGMPv2). RFC 1112 describes the first version of IGMP. IP hosts use IGMP to report their multicast group memberships to routers. IGMP messages use IP protocol number 2. IGMP messages are limited to the local interface and are not routed.

RFC 3376 describes IGMP Version 3 (IGMPv3). IGMPv3 provides the extensions required to support source-specific multicast (SSM). It is designed to be backward compatible with both prior versions of IGMP. All versions of IGMP are covered in Chapter 11, “OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and IP Multicast.”

When campus LANs use multicast media, end hosts that do not participate in multicast groups might get flooded with unwanted traffic. Two solutions are

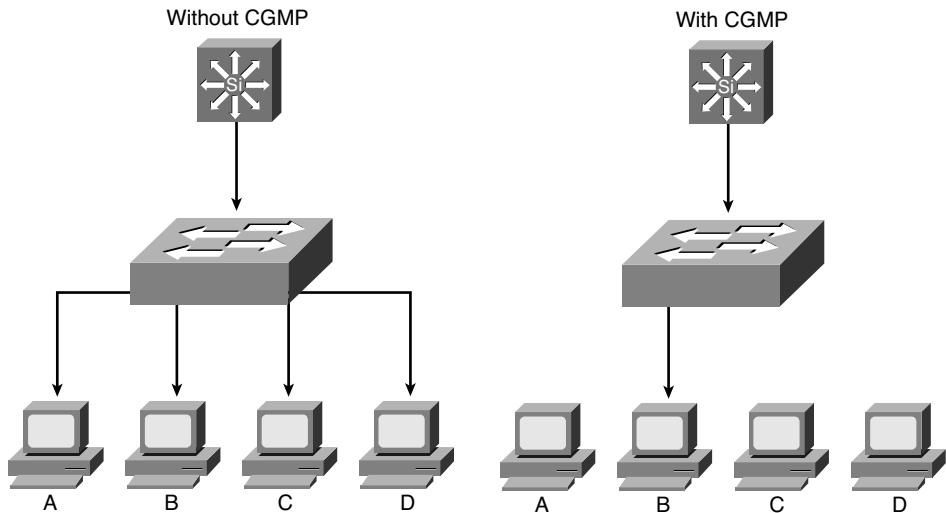
- Cisco Group Management Protocol (CGMP)
- IGMP snooping

#### CGMP

Cisco Group Management Protocol is a Cisco proprietary protocol implemented to control multicast traffic at Layer 2. Because a Layer 2 switch is unaware of Layer 3 IGMP messages, it cannot keep multicast packets from being sent to all ports.

As shown in Figure 3-19, with CGMP, the LAN switch can speak with the IGMP router to find out the MAC addresses of the hosts that want to receive the multicast packets. You must also enable the router to speak CGMP with the LAN switches. With CGMP, switches distribute multicast sessions to the switch ports that have group members.

When a CGMP-enabled router receives an IGMP report, it processes the report and then sends a CGMP message to the switch. The switch can then forward the multicast messages to the port with the host receiving multicast traffic. CGMP Fast-Leave processing allows the switch to detect IGMP Version 2 leave messages sent by hosts on any of the supervisor engine module ports. When the IGMPv2 leave message is sent, the switch can then disable multicast for the port.



**Figure 3-19 CGMP**

### IGMP Snooping

IGMP snooping is another way for switches to control multicast traffic at Layer 2. IGMP snooping has become the preferred solution over CGMP. With IGMP snooping, switches listen to IGMP messages between the hosts and routers. If a host sends an IGMP query message to the router, the switch adds the host to the multicast group and permits that port to receive multicast traffic. The port is removed from multicast traffic if an IGMP leave message is sent from the host to the router. The disadvantage of IGMP snooping is that it must listen to every IGMP control message, which can impact the switch's CPU utilization.

## References and Recommended Readings

10Gigabit Alliance, [www.10gea.org](http://www.10gea.org).

Cisco Data Center Network Architecture and Solutions Overview, [www.cisco.com/en/US/solutions/collateral/ns340/ns517/ns224/ns377/net\\_brochure0900aecd802c9a4f.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/solutions/collateral/ns340/ns517/ns224/ns377/net_brochure0900aecd802c9a4f.pdf)

“CSMA/CD Access Method, IEEE 802.3-2005.” New York, NY: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 2005.

IEEE P802.3ae 10Gb/s Ethernet Task Force, <http://grouper.ieee.org/groups/802/3/ae/index.html>.

“Token-Ring Access Method, IEEE 802.5-1998.” Piscataway, NJ: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 1998.

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 3-12 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 3-12** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Table 3-6	Comparison of copper, UTP, multimode fiber, and single-mode fiber	89
List	Covers LAN devices, such as hubs, switches, and routers	89
Summary	Covers best practices for the access, distribution, and core layers	95

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

CSMA/CD, 100BASE-TX, IEEE 802.3ab, EtherChannel, Layer 3 switches, access layer, distribution layer, core layer

### Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

1. True or false: Layer 2 switches control network broadcasts.
2. What technology can you use to limit multicasts at Layer 2?
3. True or false: Packet marking is also called coloring.
4. True or false: Usually, the distribution and core layers are collapsed in medium-size networks.

5. What are two methods to mark frames to provide CoS?
6. Which of the following is an example of a peer-to-peer application?
  - a. IP phone call
  - b. Client accessing file server
  - c. Web access
  - d. Using a local server on the same segment
7. What primary design factors affect the design of a campus network? (Select three.)
  - a. Environmental characteristics
  - b. Number of file servers
  - c. Infrastructure devices
  - d. Fiber and UTP characteristics
  - e. Network applications
  - f. Windows, Linux, and mainframe operating systems
8. You need to connect a building access switch to the distribution switch. The cable distance is 135 m. What type of cable do you recommend?
  - a. UTP
  - b. Coaxial cable
  - c. Multimode fiber
  - d. Single-mode fiber
9. Which layer of the campus network corresponds to the data center aggregation layer?
  - a. Core layer
  - b. Distribution layer
  - c. Access layer
  - d. Server farm
10. Which of the following is an access layer best practice?
  - a. Reduce switch peering and routing
  - b. Use HSRP and summarize routes
  - c. Disable trunking and use RPVST+
  - d. Offload SSL sessions and use load balancers

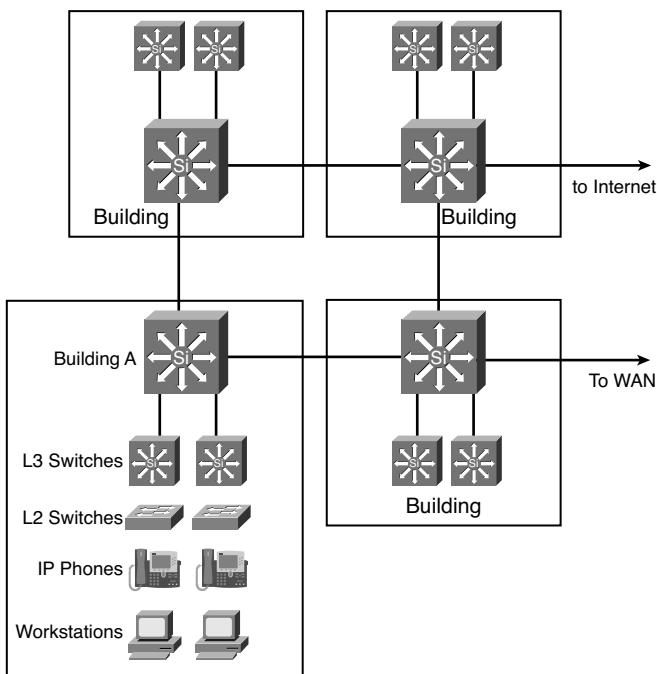
- 11.** Which of the following is a distribution layer best practice?
  - a.** Reduce switch peering and routing
  - b.** Use HSRP and summarize routes
  - c.** Disable trunking and use RPVST+
  - d.** Offload SSL sessions and use load balancers
- 12.** Which of the following is a core layer best practice?
  - a.** Reduce switch peering and routing
  - b.** Use HSRP and summarize routes
  - c.** Disable trunking and use RPVST+
  - d.** Offload SSL sessions and use load balancers
- 13.** Which of the following is a DC aggregation layer best practice?
  - a.** Reduce switch peering and routing
  - b.** Use HSRP and summarize routes
  - c.** Disable trunking and use RPVST+
  - d.** Offload SSL sessions and use load balancers
- 14.** Which of the following are threats to the edge distribution?
  - a.** IP spoofing
  - b.** Network discovery
  - c.** Packet-capture devices
  - d.** All of the above
- 15.** An enterprise network has grown to multiple buildings supporting multiple departments. Clients access servers that are in local and other buildings. The company security assessment has identified policies that need to be applied. What do you recommend?
  - a.** Move all departments to a single building to prevent unauthorized access.
  - b.** Move all servers to one of the LAN client segments.
  - c.** Move all servers to a server farm segment that is separate from client LANs.
  - d.** Move all servers to the building distribution switches.

- 16.** Link redundancy and infrastructure services are design considerations for which layers?
- a. Core layer
  - b. Distribution layer
  - c. Access layer
  - d. All of the above
- 17.** Which of the following are server connectivity methods in the server farm?
- a. Single NIC
  - b. EtherChannel
  - c. Content switch
  - d. All of the above
- 18.** What is the recommended method to connect the distribution switches to the core?
- a. Redundant triangle links
  - b. Redundant cross-connect links
  - c. Redundant Layer 3 squares
  - d. Redundant Layer 2 links
- 19.** A campus network of four buildings is experiencing performance problems. Each building contains 400 to 600 devices, all in one IP subnet. The buildings are connected in a hub-and-spoke configuration back to building 1 using Gigabit Ethernet with multimode fiber. All servers are located in building 1. What do you recommend to improve performance?
- a. Connect all buildings in a ring topology.
  - b. Implement multiple VLANs in each building.
  - c. Move servers to the buildings.
  - d. Use single-mode fiber to make the Gigabit Ethernet links faster.
- 20.** What of the following is true about data link layer broadcasts?
- a. Not controlled by routers
  - b. Not forwarded by routers
  - c. Not forwarded by switches
  - d. Not controlled by VLANs

- 21.** Match each LAN medium with its original physical specification.
- i. Fast Ethernet
  - ii. Gigabit Ethernet
  - iii. WLAN
  - iv. Token Ring
  - v. 10 Gigabit Ethernet
  - a. IEEE 802.3ab
  - b. IEEE 802.11b
  - c. IEEE 802.3u
  - d. IEEE 802.3ae
  - e. IEEE 802.5
- 22.** True or false: Layer 3 switches bound Layer 2 collision and broadcast domains.
- 23.** Match each enterprise campus component with its description.
- i. Campus infrastructure
  - ii. Server farm
  - iii. Edge distribution
  - a. Consists of backbone, building-distribution, and building-access modules
  - b. Connects the campus backbone to the Enterprise Edge
  - c. Provides redundancy access to the servers
- 24.** Match each LAN device type with its description.
- i. Hub
  - ii. Bridge
  - iii. Switch
  - iv. Layer 3 switch
  - v. Router
  - a. Legacy device that connects two data link layer segments
  - b. Network layer device that forwards packets to serial interfaces connected to the WAN
  - c. High-speed device that forwards frames between two or more data link layer segments
  - d. High-speed device that bounds data link layer broadcast domains
  - e. Device that amplifies the signal between connected segments

- 25.** Match each application type with its description.
- i. Peer to peer
  - ii. Client-local server
  - iii. Client/server farm
  - iv. Client-enterprise edge
- a.** Server on the same segment
  - b.** IM
  - c.** Web access
  - d.** Client accesses database server
- 26.** Match each transmission medium with its upper-limit distance.
- i. UTP
  - ii. Wireless
  - iii. Single-mode fiber
  - iv. Multimode fiber
- a.** 2 km
  - b.** 100 m
  - c.** 90 km
  - d.** 500 m
- 27.** True or false: IP phones and LAN switches can reassign a frame's CoS bits.
- 28.** Name two ways to reduce multicast traffic in the access layer.
- 29.** What are two VLAN methods you can use to carry marking CoS on frames?
- 30.** True or false: You can configure both CGMP and IGMP snooping in mixed Cisco switch and non-Cisco router environments.

Use Figure 3-20 to answer questions 31–36.



**Figure 3-20 Enterprise Campus Diagram**

31. What medium do you recommend for the campus LAN backbone?
32. The workstations send frames with the DSCP set to EF. What should the IP phones do so that the network gives preference to VoIP traffic over data traffic?
33. If the Layer 2 switches in Building A cannot look at CoS and ToS fields, where should these fields be inspected for acceptance or reclassification: in the building Layer 3 switches or in the backbone Layer 3 switches?
34. Does the network have redundant access to the WAN?
35. Does the network have redundant access to the Internet?
36. Does Figure 3-20 use recommended devices for networks designed using the Enterprise Architecture model?
37. Which are environmental characteristics? (Select three.)
  - a. Transmission media characteristics
  - b. Application characteristics
  - c. Distribution of network nodes
  - d. Operating system used
  - e. Remote-site connectivity requirements

- 38.** Which network application type is most stringent on the network resources?
- a. Peer to peer
  - b. Client to local server
  - c. Client to server farm
  - d. Client to enterprise edge
- 39.** Why is LAN switching used more than shared LAN technology? (Select two.)
- a. Shared LANs do not consume all available bandwidth.
  - b. Switched LANs offer increased throughput.
  - c. Switched LANs allow two or more ports to communicate simultaneously.
  - d. Switched LANs forward frames to all ports simultaneously.
- 40.** An application used by some users in a department generates significant amounts of bandwidth. Which is a best design choice?
- a. Rewrite the application to reduce bandwidth.
  - b. Use Gigabit Ethernet connections for those users.
  - c. Put the application users into a separate broadcast domain.
  - d. Add several switches and divide the users into the two.
- 41.** Users access servers located on a server VLAN and servers located in departmental VLANs. Users are located in the departmental VLAN. What is the expected traffic flow from users to servers?
- a. Most traffic is local.
  - b. All traffic requires multilayer switching.
  - c. There is no need for multilayer switching.
  - d. Most of the traffic will have to be multilayer switched.
- 42.** Company departments are located across several buildings? These departments use several common servers. Network policy and security are important. Where should servers be placed?
- a. Within all department buildings and duplicate the common servers in each building.
  - b. Connect the common servers to the campus core.
  - c. Use a server farm.
  - d. Connect the servers to the distribution layer.

- 43.** A large company has a campus core. What is the best practice for the core campus network?
- a.** Use triangles.
  - b.** Use squares.
  - c.** Use rectangles.
  - d.** Use point-to-point mesh.
- 44.** A company has five floors. It has Layer 2 switches in each floor with servers. They plan move servers to a new computer room and create a server farm. What should they use?
- a.** Replace all Layer 2 switches with Layer 3 switches.
  - b.** Connect the Layer 2 switches to a Layer 3 switch in the computer room.
  - c.** Connect the Layer 2 switches to a new Layer 2 switch in the computer room.
  - d.** Connect the Layer 2 switches to each other.
- 45.** A Fast Ethernet uplink is running at 80 percent utilization. Business-critical applications are used. What can be used to minimize packet delay and loss?
- a.** Implement QoS with classification and policing in the distribution layer.
  - b.** Add additional VLANs so that the business applications are used on PCs on that VLAN.
  - c.** Perform packet bit rewrite in the distribution switches.
  - d.** Classify users in the access with different priority bits.
- 46.** Which are four best practices used in the access layer?
- a.** Disable trunking in host ports.
  - b.** Limit VLANs to one closet.
  - c.** Use PVST+ as the STP with multilayer switches.
  - d.** Enable trunking on host ports.
  - e.** Use VLAN spanning to speed convergence of STP.
  - f.** Use VTP Server mode in hierarchical networks.
  - g.** Use VTP Transparent mode in hierarchical networks.
  - h.** Use RPVST+ as the STP with multilayer switches.

**47.** Which are three best practices used in the distribution layer?

- a.** Use HSRP or GLBP.
- b.** Provide fast transport.
- c.** Use Layer 3 routing protocols to the core.
- d.** Use Layer 2 routing protocols to the core.
- e.** Summarize routes to the core layer.
- f.** Summarize routes to the access layer.

**48.** Which are four best practices used in the distribution layer?

- a.** Disable trunking in host ports.
- b.** Limit VLANs to one closet.
- c.** Use HSRP.
- d.** Use GLBP.
- e.** Use VLAN spanning to speed convergence of STP.
- f.** Use Layer 3 routing to the core.
- g.** Summarize routes.
- h.** Use RPVST+ as the STP with multilayer switches.

**49.** Which are three best practices used in the core layer?

- a.** Use routing with no Layer 2 loops.
- b.** Limit VLANs to one closet.
- c.** Use HSRP.
- d.** Use GLBP.
- e.** Use Layer 3 switches with fast forwarding.
- f.** Use Layer 3 routing to the core.
- g.** Use two equal-cost paths to every destination network.
- h.** Use RPVST+ as the STP with multilayer switches.



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Enterprise DC Architectures
- Challenges in the DC
- Enterprise DC Infrastructure
- Virtualization Overview
- Virtualization Technologies
- Network Virtualization Design Considerations

## Data Center Design

---

This chapter covers enterprise data center design fundamentals, technology trends, and challenges facing the data center. General data center architecture, components, and design considerations are examined, but detailed data center design is not covered.

This chapter also provides an overview of virtualization, discusses the various virtualization technologies and network virtualization design considerations.

The CCDA candidate can expect plenty of questions related to data center fundamentals, challenges, architecture, and virtualization.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 4-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 4-1** *Do I Know This Already?* Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Enterprise DC Overview	1, 2
Challenges in the DC	3, 4
Enterprise DC Infrastructure	5, 6
Virtualization Overview	7
Virtualization Technologies	8, 9
Network Virtualization Design Considerations	10

- 1.** What are two methods for implementing unified fabric in the data center over 10Gigabit Ethernet?
  - a.** VSS
  - b.** FCoE
  - c.** iSCSI
  - d.** vPC
- 2.** What best describes the characteristics of Data Center 3.0 architecture?
  - a.** Mainframes
  - b.** Consolidation/virtualization/automation
  - c.** Distributed client/server computing
  - d.** Decentralized computing
- 3.** Which of the following data center facility aspects best corresponds with architectural and mechanical specifications?
  - a.** Space, load, and power capacity
  - b.** PCI, SOX, and HIPPA
  - c.** Operating temperature and humidity
  - d.** Site access, fire suppression, and security alarms
- 4.** Which of the following uses the highest percentage of power within the overall data center power budget?
  - a.** Lighting
  - b.** Servers and storage
  - c.** Network devices
  - d.** Data center cooling
- 5.** Which data center architecture layer provides Layer 2/Layer 3 physical port density for servers in the data center?
  - a.** Data center core
  - b.** Data center aggregation
  - c.** Data center access
  - d.** Data center distribution

- 6.** Layer 4 security and application services including server load balancing, Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) offloading, firewalling, and intrusion prevention system (IPS) services are provided by the data center \_\_\_\_\_ layer?
- a.** Access
  - b.** Routed
  - c.** Core
  - d.** Aggregation
- 7.** Virtualization technologies allow a \_\_\_\_\_ device to share its resources by acting as multiple versions of itself?
- a.** Software
  - b.** Virtual
  - c.** Logical
  - d.** Physical
- 8.** Which of the following are examples of logical isolation techniques in which network segments share the same physical infrastructure? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** VRF
  - b.** VLAN
  - c.** VSAN
  - d.** VSS
- 9.** Which of the following are examples of technologies that employ device virtualization or the use of contexts? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** VRF
  - b.** ASA
  - c.** VLAN
  - d.** ACE
- 10.** What involves the creation of independent logical network paths over a shared network infrastructure?
- a.** Access control
  - b.** Services edge
  - c.** Path isolation
  - d.** Device context

---

## Foundation Topics

---

This chapter covers general enterprise data center considerations that you need to master for the CCDA exam. It starts with a discussion of the enterprise data center architecture and how we have evolved from Data Center 1.0 to Data Center 3.0. The section “Data Center 3.0 Components” covers the virtualization technologies and services that unify network, storage, compute, and virtualization platforms. The section “Data Center 3.0 Topology Components” shows how the virtualization technologies integrate with unified computing and the unified fabric.

The “Challenges in the Data Center” section describes the common server deployment challenges present in the data center. Major facility aspect issues involving rack space, power, cooling, and management are covered. Data center cabling is examined along with the data center cable considerations critical to the proper cable plant management.

Following that, the “Enterprise Data Center Infrastructure” section explores the Cisco multilayer architecture that is used for building out enterprise data centers to support blades servers, 1RU (rack unit) servers, and mainframes. Design aspects of the multilayer architecture involving data center access layer, aggregation layer, and core layer design considerations are also covered.

The chapter wraps up with several sections on virtualization. An overview of virtualization is covered along with key drivers that are pushing the adoption of virtualization in the data center. The section “Virtualization Technologies” compares the two main types of virtualization and provides several examples. Then the section “Network Virtualization Design Considerations” covers access control, path isolation, and services edge.

## Enterprise DC Architectures

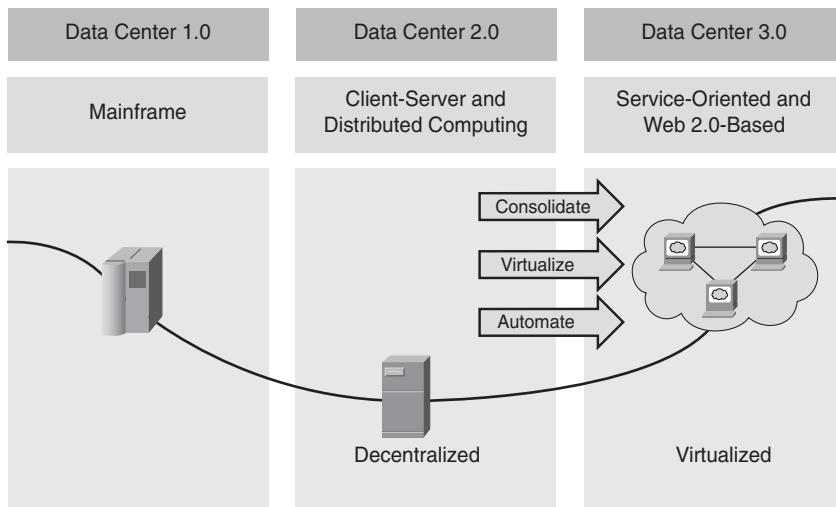
Over the past two decades, we have seen an evolution of data center “architectures”. With Data Center 1.0, data centers were centralized, using mainframes to process and store data. The users of Data Center 1.0 used terminals to access and perform their work on the mainframes. Mainframes are still prevalent in many data centers because of the overall benefits in terms of availability, resiliency, and service level agreements (SLA).

Figure 4-1 illustrates the evolution of data center architectures from Data Center 1.0 to Data Center 3.0.

Data Center 2.0 brought client/server and distributed computing into the mainstream data center. Business applications were installed on servers and were accessed by users with client software on their PCs. Application services were distributed because of high cost of WAN links and application performance. Also, the costs of mainframes were too costly to be used as an alternative for client/server computing.

Currently, we are moving away from Data Center 2.0 and toward Data Center 3.0, where consolidation and virtualization are the key components. The cost of communication equipment is lowering, and there is an increase in computing capacities, which is driving effective when compared to the distributed approach. The newer architecture takes

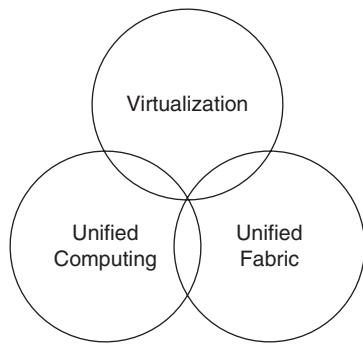
advantage of virtualization, which results in a higher utilization of computing and network resources. In addition, the newer Data Center 3.0 architecture increases the overall return on investment (ROI) and lowers the total cost of ownership (TCO).



**Figure 4-1** Cisco Data Center Architecture Evolution

### Data Center 3.0 Components

Figure 4-2 highlights the Cisco Data Center 3.0 components.



**Figure 4-2** Cisco Data Center 3.0 Architecture Framework

The architectural components of Data Center 3.0 include virtualization technologies and services that unify network, storage, compute, and virtualization platforms. These technologies and network services enable incredible flexibility, visibility, and policy

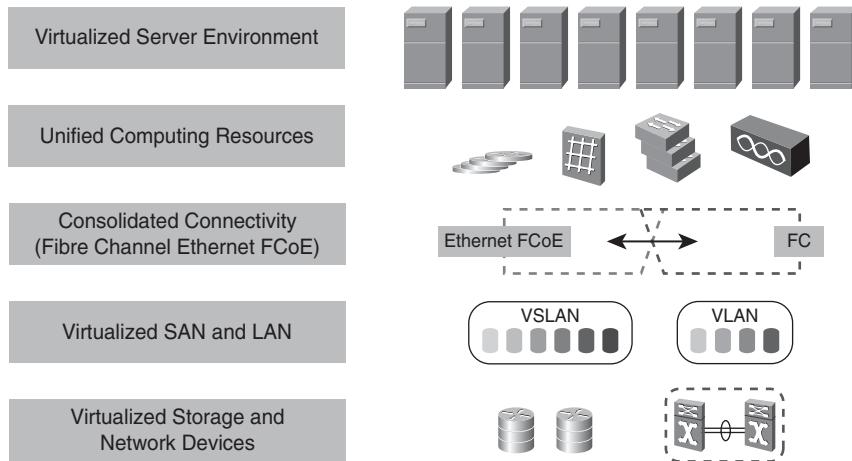


enforcement, which are critical for virtualized data centers. Here are the three main components of Cisco Data Center 3.0 architecture:

- Virtualization
  - Virtual local-area network (VLAN), virtual storage-area network (VSAN), and virtual device contexts (VDC) help to segment the LAN, SAN, and network devices instances.
  - Cisco Nexus 1000V virtual switch for VMware ESX and ESXi help to deliver visibility and policy control for virtual machines (VM).
  - Flexible networking options with support for all server form factors and vendors, including support for blade servers from Cisco, Dell, IBM, and HP with integrated Ethernet and Fibre Channel switches.
- Unified fabric
  - Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) and Internet Small Computer Systems Interface (iSCSI) are two methods for implementing unified fabric in the data center over 10 Gigabit Ethernet networks.
  - FCoE is supported on VMware ESX/ESXi vSphere 4.0 and later.
  - The Cisco Catalyst, Cisco Nexus, and Cisco MDS family of switches all support iSCSI. The Cisco Nexus 5000 support unified fabric lossless operation, which improves the performance of iSCSI traffic using 10 Gigabit Ethernet.
  - The Cisco Nexus family of switches was designed to support unified fabric. Currently, the Cisco Nexus 5000 and the Nexus 4000 supports data center bridging (DCB) and FCoE. However, there are future plans for the Cisco Nexus 7000 series and the Cisco MDS family of switches to support FCoE, as well.
  - Converged network adapters (CNA) run at 10GE and support FCoE. CNAs are available from both Emulex and QLogic. Additionally, a software stack is available for certain 10GE network interfaces from Intel.
- Unified computing
  - Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS) is an innovative next-generation data center platform that converges computing, network, storage, and virtualization together into one system.
  - Integrates lossless 10GE unified network fabric with x86 architecture-based servers.
  - Allows for Cisco Virtual Interface Card to virtualize your network interfaces on your server.
  - Offers Cisco VN-Link virtualization.
  - Supports Extended Memory Technology patented by Cisco.
  - Increases productivity with just-in-time provisioning using service profiles.

## Data Center 3.0 Topology Components

Figure 4-3 shows the Cisco Data Center 3.0 topology.



**Figure 4-3 Cisco Data Center 3.0 Topology**

At the top layer, we have virtual machines which are software entities that have hardware level abstraction capable of running a guest OS on top of a resource scheduler also known as a hypervisor.



Within the unified computing resources, the service profile defines the identity of the server. The identity contains many items such as memory, CPU, network cards, storage information, and boot image.

10 Gigabit Ethernet, FCoE, and Fibre Channel technologies provide the unified fabric and is supported on the Cisco Nexus 5000. FCoE is one of the key technologies that allow native Fibre Channel frames to be used on 10G Ethernet networks.

Virtualization technologies such as VLANs and VSANs provide for virtualized LAN and SAN connectivity by logically segmenting multiple LANs and SANs on the same physical equipment. Each VLAN and VSAN operates independently from one another.

At the lowest layer, we have virtualized hardware where storage devices can be virtualized into storage pools and network devices are virtualized using virtual device contexts (VDC).

## Challenges in the DC

In the data center, server deployments are of great concern along with facilities and network equipment. Here are some of the challenges that must be dealt with when deploying servers:

- Power required
- Physical rack space usage

**Key**

- Limits to scale
- Management (resources, firmware)
- Server security
- Virtualization support
- Management effort required

Server growth is consistently rising which is requiring more power, which is driving the need for energy efficiency for most data center server deployments. Although rack servers are low cost and provide high performance, unfortunately they take up space and consume a lot of energy to operate. Because both rack space and power cost money, efficiency gains need to be considered in these areas.

Blade servers provide similar computing power when compared to rack mount servers, but require less space, power, and cabling. The chassis in most blade servers allows for shared power, Ethernet LAN, and Fibre Channel SAN connections, which reduce the number of cables needed.

With both rack-mounted servers and blade servers, server virtualization software provides for better utilization of hardware resources, which requires less physical hardware to deploy servers, which in turn increases efficiency. Server virtualization also enables server scalability because more rack and cabinet space is available to deploy new ESX hosts running additional virtual machines.

Server management is a key element for deploying servers, and there are solutions available from OEMs such as Integrated Lights Out (ILO) and VMware Infrastructure Client. These products ease the management of larger server deployments and provide for secure remote management capabilities.

## Data Center Facility Aspects

Multiple facility considerations go into the design and planning for a new data center build out.

During the planning sessions, data center architectural and mechanical specifications help define the following:

- How much space will be available
- How much load the floor can support
- The power and cooling capacity that will be available
- The cabling plant that will be needed and how to manage it

The facility also needs to meet certain environmental conditions, and the data center equipment selections process dictates the operating temperatures and humidity levels that need to be maintained in the data center.

Another important consideration is physical security. Because the data center usually stores data that needs to be secured from third parties, access to the site needs to be well controlled. In addition, fire suppression and alarm systems should be in place to protect equipment and data from natural disasters and theft.

Because the data center facilities are limited in capacity, they need to be designed properly to allow for the best use of employee space for today and into the future.

Most companies must now adhere to regulatory compliance, including environmental requirements, and provide disaster recovery in some form to enable business continuity. Data centers need to provide an infrastructure that can recover network communications, data, and applications and provide high availability.

To build a reliable data center that maximizes the investment, the design needs to be considered early in the building development process. It is important to include team members in several area of expertise, including telecommunications, power, architectural, and heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC). Each team member needs to work together to ensure that the designed systems interoperate most effectively. The design of the data center needs to incorporate current requirements and support future growth.

Careful planning and close attention to design guidelines is crucial for the data center build out to be successful. Missing critical aspects of the design can cause the data center to be vulnerable to early obsolescence, which can impact data center availability and lead to a loss of revenue or increased cost to remediate.

Table 4-2 describes a number of data center facility considerations.



**Table 4-2 Summary of Data Center Facility Considerations**

Data Center Facility Considerations	Description
Architectural and mechanical specifications	Space available Load capacity Power and cooling capacity Cabling infrastructure
Environmental conditions	Operating temperature Humidity level
Physical security	Access to the site Fire suppression Security Alarms
Capacity limits	Space for employees
Compliance and regulation	Payment Card Industry (PCI), Sarbanes-Oxley (SOX), and Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)

## Data Center Space

The space that the data center occupies makes up the physical footprint and helps answer many questions, including how to size the overall data center, where to position servers, how to make it flexible for future growth, and how to protect the valuable equipment inside.

The data center space element defines the number of racks for servers and telecommunications equipment that can be installed. The floor loading is affected by the rack weight after the racks are populated with equipment. Careful planning is needed to ensure that the floor loading is sufficient for current and future needs of the data center.

Selecting the proper size of the data center has a great influence on the cost, longevity, and flexibility of the data center. Although estimating the size of the data center is challenging, it is also critically important that it be done correctly.

Several factors need to be considered, including the following:

- The number of employees who will be supporting the data center
- The number of servers and the amount of storage gear and networking equipment that will be needed
- The space needed for non-infrastructure areas:
  - Shipping and receiving
  - Server and network staging
  - Storage rooms, break rooms, and bath rooms
  - Employee office space

Keep in mind that if the data center is undersized it will not sufficiently satisfy compute, storage, and network requirements and will negatively impact productivity and cause additional costs for expansion. On the flip side, a data center that is too spacious is a waste of capital and recurring operational expenses.

Right-size data center facilities consider the placement of infrastructure and equipment; and if properly planned, the data center can grow and support the organization into the future without costly upgrades or relocations.

Here are some other rack and cabinet space considerations to keep in mind:

- Weight of the rack and equipment
- Heat expelled from equipment
- Amount and type of power needed
  - Automatic transfer switch for equipment that has single power supplies
  - Uninterruptible power supplies (UPS)
  - Redundant power distribution units (PDU)
- Loading, which determines what and how many devices can be installed

## Data Center Power

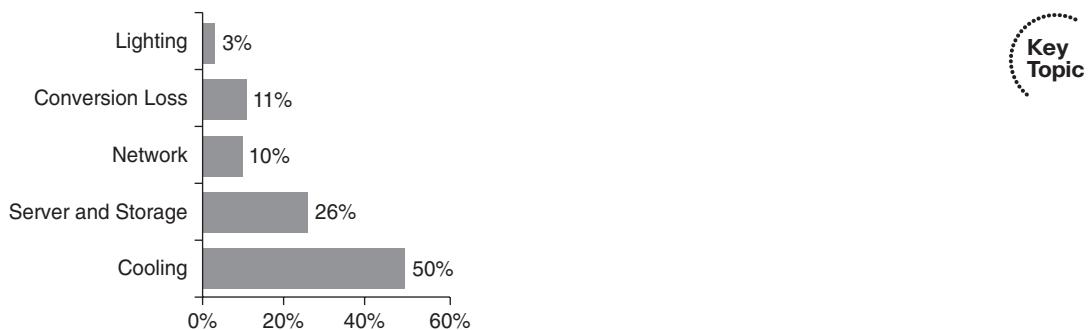
The power in the data center facility is used to power cooling devices, servers, storage equipment, the network, and some lighting equipment. Cooling down the data center requires the most power, next to servers and storage.

Because many variables make up actual power usage, determining power requirements for equipment in the data center can prove difficult. In server environments, the power usage depends on the computing load placed on the server. For example, if the server needs to work harder by processing more data, it has to draw more AC power from the power supply, which in turn creates more heat that needs to be cooled down.

The desired reliability drives the power requirements, which may include multiple power feeds from the power utility, UPS, redundant power circuits, and diesel generators. Depending on the options chosen, various levels of power redundancy can affect both capital and recurring operating expenses. Determining the right amount of power redundancy to meet the requirements takes careful planning to ensure success.

Estimating the power capacity needed involves collecting the requirements for all the current equipment, including the future requirements of the equipment for the data center. The complete power requirements must encompass the UPS, generators, HVAC, lighting, and all the network, server, and storage equipment.

Figure 4-4 shows an example of data center power usage.



**Figure 4-4** Data Center Power Usage Example

The designed power system should include electrical components such as PDUs, circuit breaker panels, electrical conduits, and wiring necessary to support the desired amount of physical redundancy. The power system also needs to provide protection for utility power failures, power surges, and other electrical problems by addressing the power redundancy requirements in the design.

Here are some key points related to data center power:

- Defines the overall power capacity.
- Provides physical electrical infrastructure and addresses redundancy.



- Power is consumed by the following:
  - Cooling
  - Servers
  - Storage
  - Network
  - Conversion and lighting

## Data Center Cooling

Devices in the data center produce variable amounts of heat depending on the device load. Heat overtime decreases the reliability of the data center devices. Cooling is used to control the temperature and humidity of the devices, and it is applied to zones, racks, or individual devices.

Environmental conditions need to be considered and measured by using probes to measure temperature changes, hot spots, and relative humidity.

A major issue with high-density computing is overheating. There are more hot spots, and therefore more heat overall is produced. The increase in heat and humidity threatens equipment life spans. Computing power and memory requirements demand more power and thus generate more heat output. Space-saving servers increase the server density possible in a rack, but keep in mind that density = heat. It might not be a big deal for one chassis at 3 kilowatt (kW), but with five or six servers per rack, the heat output increases to 20 kW. In addition, humidity levels can affect static electricity in the data center. So, it is recommended that relative humidity level be in the range of 40 percent to 55 percent. High levels of static electricity can cause damage to data center equipment.

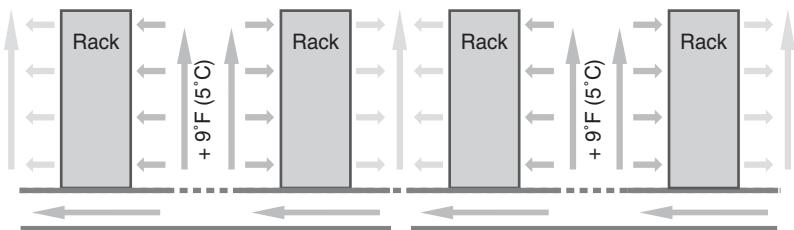
Proper airflow is required to reduce the amount of heat generated by the high-density equipment. Sufficient cooling equipment must be available to produce acceptable temperatures within the data center. The cabinets and racks should be arranged in the data center with an alternating pattern of “cold” and “hot” aisles. The cold aisle should have equipment arranged face to face, and the hot aisle should have equipment arranged back to back. In the cold aisle, there should be perforated floor tiles drawing cold air from the floor into the face of the equipment. This cold air passes through the equipment and flushes out the back into the hot aisle. The hot aisle does not have any perforated tiles, and this design prevents the hot air from mixing with the cold air.

Figure 4-5 illustrates the alternating pattern of cold and hot aisles along with airflow.

For equipment that does not exhaust heat to the rear, here are some other cooling techniques:

- Block unnecessary air escapes to increase airflow.
- Increase the height of the raised floor.
- Spread out equipment into unused racks.
- Use open racks rather than cabinets where security is not a concern.

- Use cabinets with mesh fronts and backs.
- Custom perforated tiles with larger openings.



**Key Topic**

**Figure 4-5 Data Center Cold and Hot Aisles**

**Note:** 1 watt = 3.41214 British thermal units (BTU). Many manufacturers publish kW, kilovolt ampere (kVA), and BTU in their equipment specifications. Sometimes dividing the BTU value by 3.413 does not equal the published wattage. Use the manufacturer information if available, if not this can be a helpful conversion formula to use.

## Data Center Heat

Blade server deployments allow for more efficient use of space for servers, which is good, but there is also an increased amount of heat per server, which requires more cooling to maintain consistent temperatures.

The data center design must address the increased use of high density servers and the heat that they produce. During the data center design, considerations for cooling need to be taken into account for the proper sizing of the servers and the anticipated growth of the servers along with their corresponding heat output.

Here are some cooling solutions to address the increasing heat production:

- Increase the number of HVAC units.
- Increase the airflow through the devices.
- Increase the space between the racks and rows.
- Use alternative cooling technologies, such as water-cooled racks.

## Data Center Cabling

The cabling in the data center is known as the passive infrastructure. Data center teams rely on a structured and well-organized cabling plant. Although the active electronics are crucial for keeping server, storage, and network devices up and running, the physical cabling infrastructure is what ties everything together. The cabling in the data center terminates connections between devices and governs how each device communicates with one another.

Cabling has several key characteristics, such as the physical connector, media type, and cable length. Copper and fiber-optic cables are commonly used today.

Fiber-optic cabling allows for longer distances and is less prone to interference than copper

two main types of optical fiber are single-mode and multi-mode. Copper cabling is widely available, costs less, and generally covers shorter distances (up to 100 meters, about 328 feet). Typical copper cabling found in the data center is CAT 5e/CAT 6 with RJ-45 connectors.

Keep in mind that the emerging 10GBASE-T standard requires CAT6A twisted-pair cabling to support distances up to 100 meters.

It is important for cabling to be easy to maintain, abundant and capable of supporting various media types and requirements for proper data center operations.

Cable management and simplicity is affected by the following:

- Media selection
- Number of connections
- Type of cable termination organizers
- Space for cables on horizontal and vertical cable trays

These considerations must be addressed during the data center facility design (for the server, storage, network, and all the associated technologies that are going to be implemented).

Figure 4-6 shows an example of cabling that is out of control.

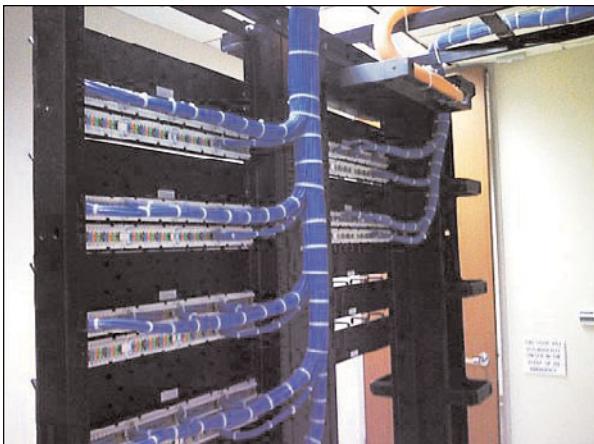


**Figure 4-6 Data Center Cabling the Wrong Way**

Figure 4-7 shows the proper way to manage copper cabling.

The cabling infrastructure needs to avoid the following pitfalls:

- Inadequate cooling due to restricted airflow
- Outages due to accidental disconnect
- Unplanned dependencies resulting in more downtime
- Difficult troubleshooting options



**Figure 4-7 Data Center Cabling the Right Way**

For example, using under-floor cabling techniques, especially with a high number of power and data cables can restrict proper airflow. Another disadvantage with this approach is that cable changes require you to lift floor tiles, which changes the airflow and creates cooling inefficiencies.

One solution is a cable management system above the rack for server connectivity. Cables should be located in the front or rear of the rack to simplify cable connections. In most service provider environments, cabling is located in the front of the rack.

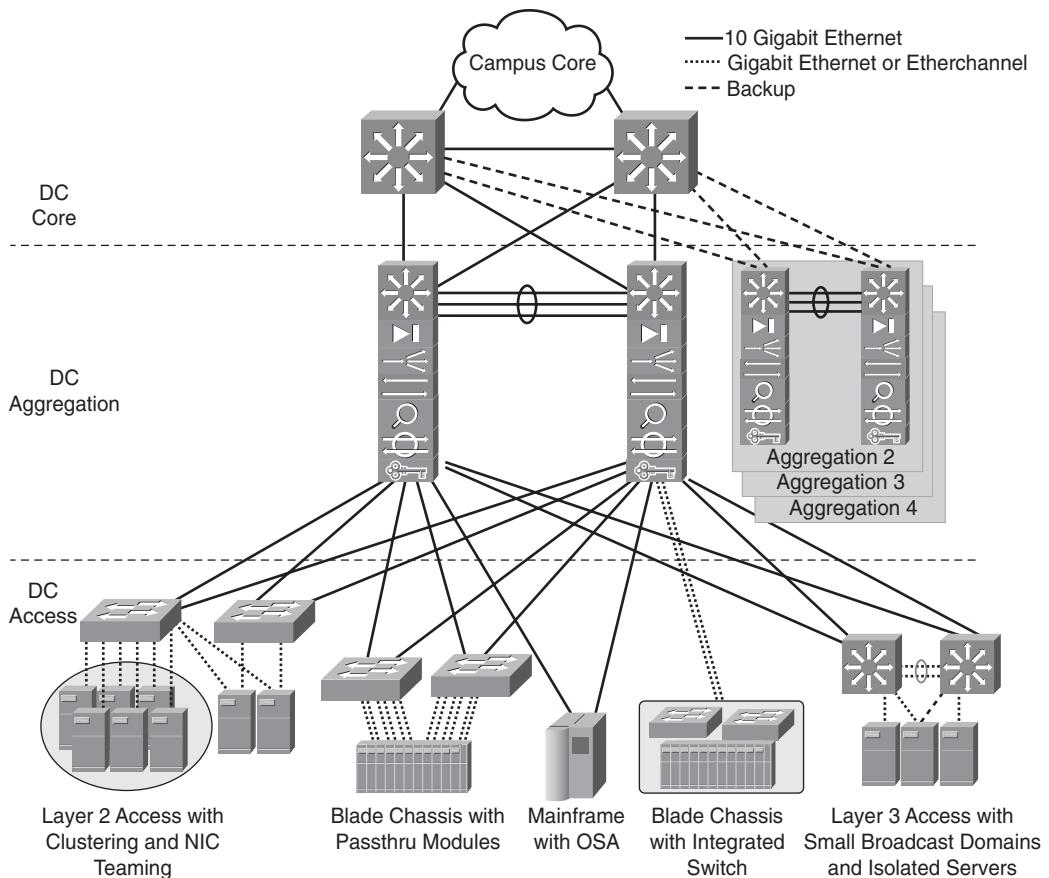
## Enterprise DC Infrastructure

Today's enterprise data center design follows the Cisco multilayer architecture, which includes DC core, DC aggregation, and DC access layers. This multitier model is the most common model used in the enterprise and it supports blade servers, single rack unit (1RU) servers, and mainframes.

Figure 4-8 provides a high-level overview of an enterprise data center infrastructure.

At the edge of the data center infrastructure is the access layer. The data center access layer needs to provide physical port density and both Layer 2 and Layer 3 services for flexible server connectivity options.

The data center aggregation layer ties the DC core and DC access layers together, which provides hierarchy for security and server farm services. Security services such as access control lists (ACL), firewalls, and intrusion prevention systems (IPS) should be implemented in the data center aggregation layer. In addition, server farm services such as content switching, caching, and Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) offloading should be deployed in the data center aggregation. Both the data center aggregation and core layers are commonly implemented in pairs for redundancy, to avoid single points of failure.



**Figure 4-8 Enterprise Data Center Infrastructure Overview**

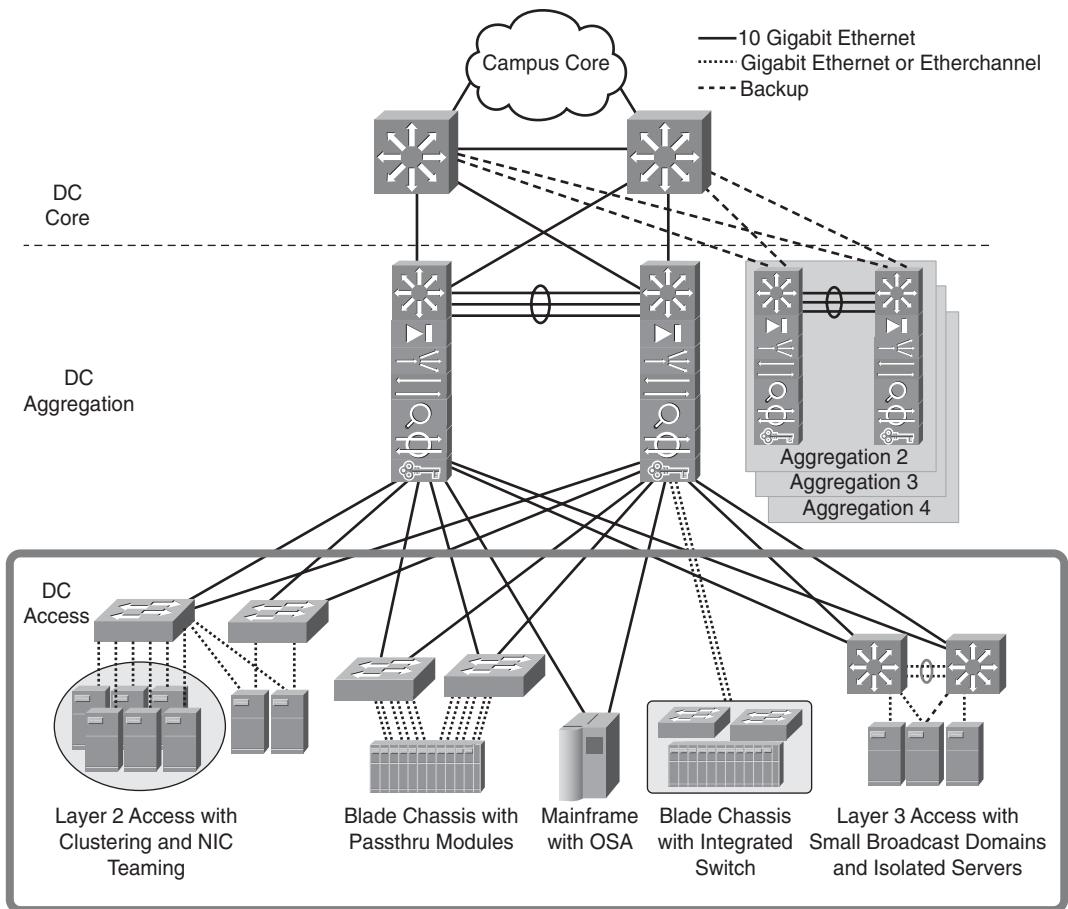
### Defining the DC Access Layer



The data center access layer's main purpose is to provide Layer 2 and Layer 3 physical port density for various servers in the data center. In addition, data center access layer switches provide high-performance, low-latency switching and can support a mix of over-subscription requirements. Both Layer 2 and Layer 3 access (also called routed access) designs are available, but most data center access layers are built using Layer 2 connectivity. The Layer 2 access design uses VLAN trunks upstream, which allows data center aggregation services to be shared across the same VLAN and across multiple switches. Other advantages of Layer 2 access are support for NIC teaming and server clustering that requires network connections to be Layer 2 adjacent or on the same VLAN with one another.

Figure 4-9 highlights the data center access layer in the overall enterprise architecture.

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) manages physical loops that are present in the Layer 2 design. Currently, the recommended STP mode is Rapid per-VLAN Spanning Tree Plus (RPVST+), which ensures a logical loop-free topology and fast convergence.



**Figure 4-9** Data Center Access Layer

New routed access designs aim to contain Layer 2 locally to avoid the use of the STP. With routed access designs, the default gateway function needs to be provided because the access switch becomes the first-hop router in the network.

Designs with both Layer 2 and Layer 3 access provide flexibility for multiple server solutions to be supported, including 1RU servers and modular blade server chassis.

Here are some of the data center access layer benefits:

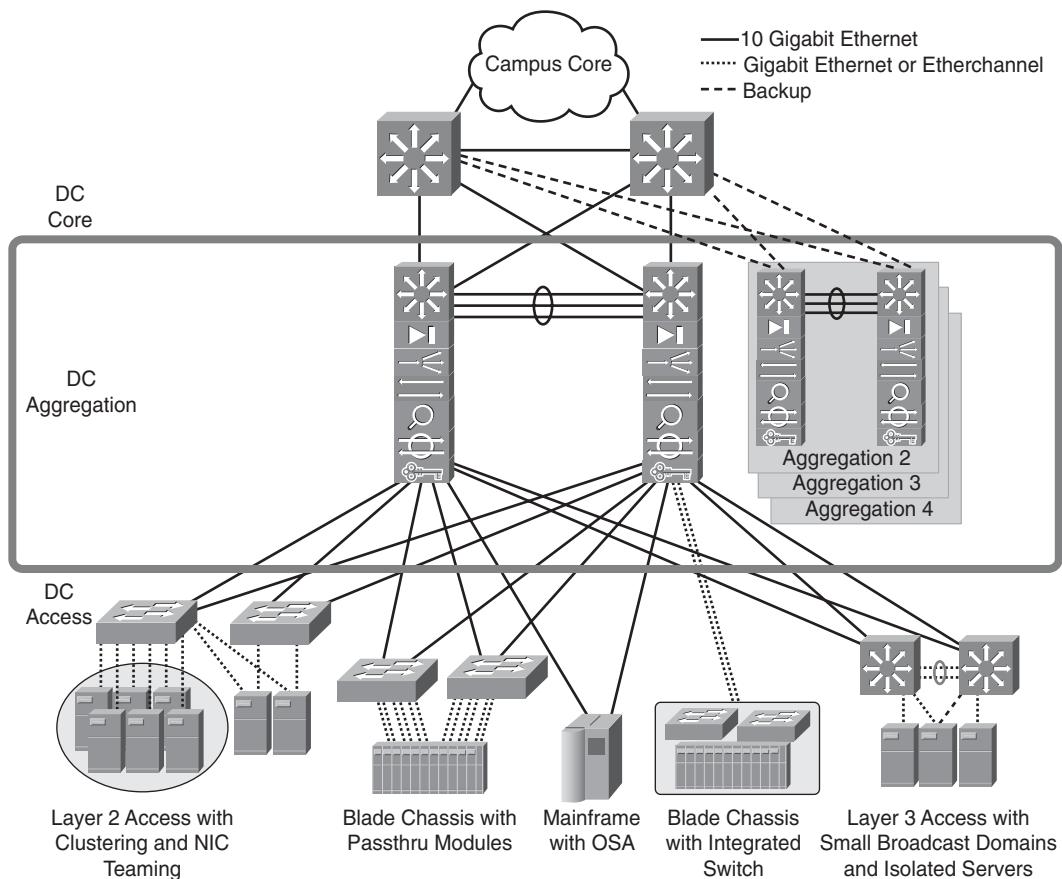
- Provides port density for server farms
- Supports single homed and dual homed servers
- Provides high-performance, low-latency Layer 2 switching
- Supports mix of oversubscription requirements

## Defining the DC Aggregation Layer



The data center aggregation (distribution) layer aggregates Layer 2/Layer 3 links from the access layer and connects using upstream links to the data center core. Layer 3 connectivity is typically implemented between the data center aggregation and the data center core layers. The aggregation layer is a critical point for security and application services. The Layer 4 security and application services in the data center aggregation layer include server load balancing, SSL offloading, firewalling, and IPS services. These services maintain connection and session state for redundancy purposes and are commonly deployed in pairs using Cisco Catalyst 6500 service modules. This design reduces the total cost of ownership (TCO) and eases the management overhead by simplifying the number of devices that must be managed.

The highlighted section in Figure 4-10 illustrates the data center aggregation layer.



**Figure 4-10** Data Center Aggregation Layer

Depending on the requirements of the design, the boundary between Layer 2 and Layer 3 can be in the multilayer switches, firewalls, or content switching devices in the aggregation layer. Multiple aggregation layers can be built out to support separate network environments, such as production, test, and PCI infrastructure, each with its own security zone and application services. First-hop redundancy protocols Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) and Gateway Load Balancing Protocol (GLBP) are commonly used in the aggregation layer. Many aggregation designs include positioning STP primary and secondary root bridges to help control the loop-free topology and support a larger STP processing load.

Here are some of the data center aggregation layer benefits:

- Aggregates traffic from DC access and connects to DC core.
- Supports advanced application and security services.
- Layer 4 services include firewall, server load balancing, SSL offload, and IPS.
- Large STP processing load.
- Highly flexible and scalable.

### Defining the DC Core Layer

The data center core connects the campus core to the data center aggregation layer using high-speed Layer 3 links. The core is a centralized Layer 3 routing layer in which one or more data center aggregation layers connect. The data center networks are summarized, and the core injects the default route into data center aggregation. The data center core also needs to support IP multicast to provide connectivity to the growing use of IP multicast applications.

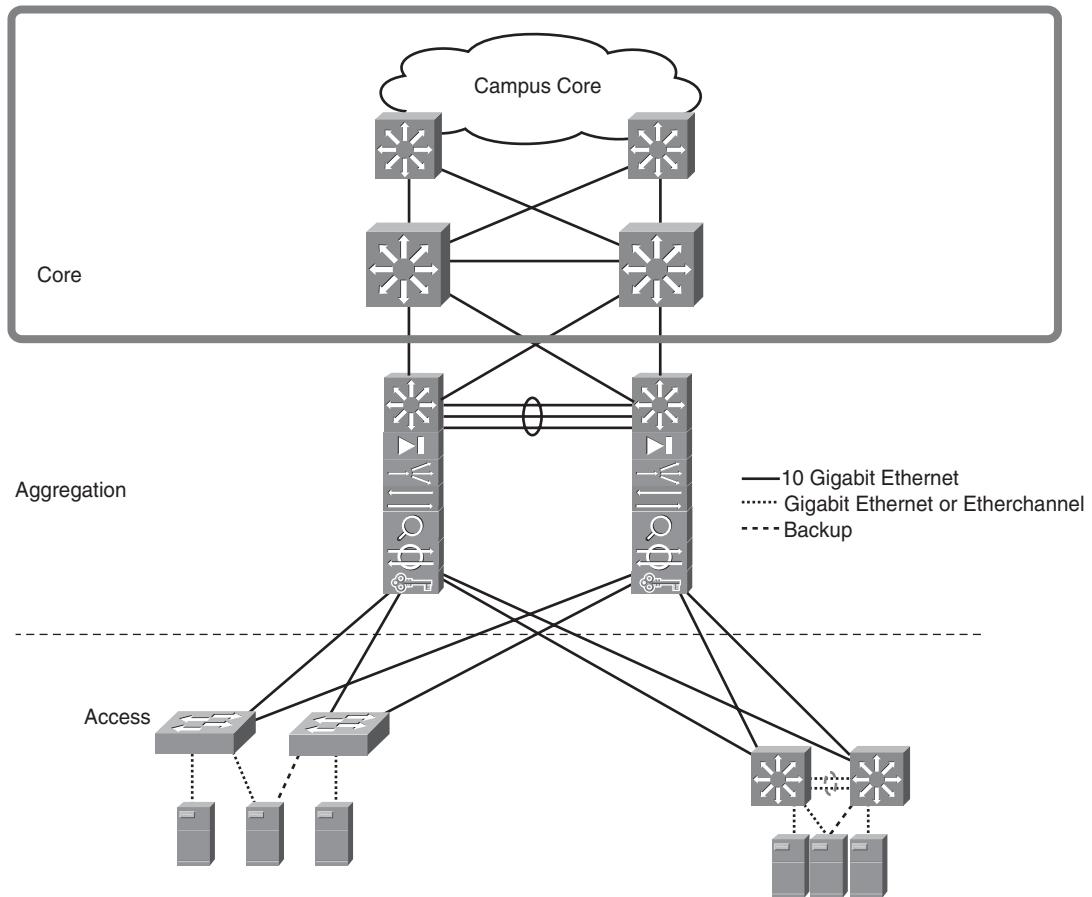


The data center core layer is a best practice component of larger data center networks. Smaller data centers may use a collapsed core design combining the aggregation layer and core layers together. However, if you are building a greenfield data center, it is recommended to implement a data center core in the beginning to avoid network downtime later. Table 4-3 shows some drivers to help you decide whether a data center core is appropriate for your design.

**Table 4-3 Data Center Core Drivers**

Data Center Core Drivers	Description
10 Gigabit Ethernet density	Are there enough 10GE ports to connect campus core to multiple data center aggregation layers?
Administrative domains and policies	Separate cores help to isolate campus distribution from DC aggregation for troubleshooting and quality of service/access control list (QoS/ACL) policies.
Future growth	The impact and downtime from implementing a core at a later date make it worthwhile to install sufficient core layers in the beginning.

The highlighted section in Figure 4-11 illustrates the data center core layer.



**Figure 4-11** Data Center Core Layer

Here are some of the data center core characteristics:

- Low-latency switching
- Distributed forwarding architecture
- 10 Gigabit Ethernet
- Scalable IP multicast support

## Virtualization Overview

As the demand for IT to do more with less while increasing efficiency has risen, virtualization has become a critical component in most enterprise networks. Virtualization technologies allow a physical device to share its resources by acting as multiple versions of itself. Other forms of virtualization can enable multiple physical devices to logically appear as one.

Virtualization is a critical component of the Cisco network architectures for the enterprise data center and is changing the way data centers are architected. The use of virtualization improves network efficiency, provides enhanced flexibility, and reduces operational expenses.

### Challenges

Network designers face many challenges that are driving the need to deploy virtualization technologies in the network. Data centers are growing rapidly, and these challenges directly impact the profitability of the business.

Take a look at some of the key driving forces for virtualization adoption in Table 4-4.



**Table 4-4 Virtualization Key Drivers**

Virtualization Driving Forces	Description
Operational cost	Need to reduce rising cost of powering and cooling devices in the DC while getting more productivity
Reduce the number of physical devices	DC consolidation of assets performing individual tasks
Traffic isolation	Logical, separate user groups secured from other groups on the same network
Increased performance/price ratio	Eliminate underutilized hardware that exhibits poor performance/price ratio

### Defining Virtualization and Benefits

*Virtualization* is an umbrella term used to represent several different technologies. Virtualization technologies share a common theme in their ability to abstract logical elements from hardware (applications or operating systems) or networks (LANs and SANs) and run them in a virtual state. Virtualization brings many benefits, from consolidation to increased efficiency.

Here are some of the common benefits achieved through virtualization techniques:

- Better use of computing resources, higher server densities, and simplified server migrations
- Provides flexibility for ease of management for adds, reassignments, or repurposing resources
- Separation of users groups on the same physical network, enabling traffic isolation
- Ability to provide per-department security policies
- Reduction in power and space required
- Increased uptime and reduced operational costs

## Types of Virtualization

Enterprise networks consist of two main types of virtualization technologies groupings, called network virtualization and device virtualization:

- **Network virtualization** encompasses logical isolated network segments that share the same physical infrastructure. Each segment operates independently and is logically separate from the other segments. Each network segment appears with its own privacy, security, independent set of policies, QoS levels, and independent routing paths.

Here are some examples of network virtualization technologies:

- **VLAN:** Virtual local-area network
- **VSAN:** Virtual storage-area network
- **VRF:** Virtual routing and forwarding
- **VPN:** Virtual private network
- **vPC:** Virtual Port Channel
- **Device virtualization** allows for a single physical device to act like multiple copies of itself. Device virtualization enables many logical devices to run independently of each other on the same physical piece of hardware. The software creates virtual hardware that can function just like the physical network device. Another form of device virtualization entails using multiple physical devices to act as one logical unit.

Here are some examples of device virtualization technologies:

- Server virtualization: Virtual machines (VM)
- Cisco Application Control Engine (ACE) context
- Virtual Switching System (VSS)
- Cisco Adaptive Security Appliance (ASA) firewall context
- Virtual device contexts (VDC)

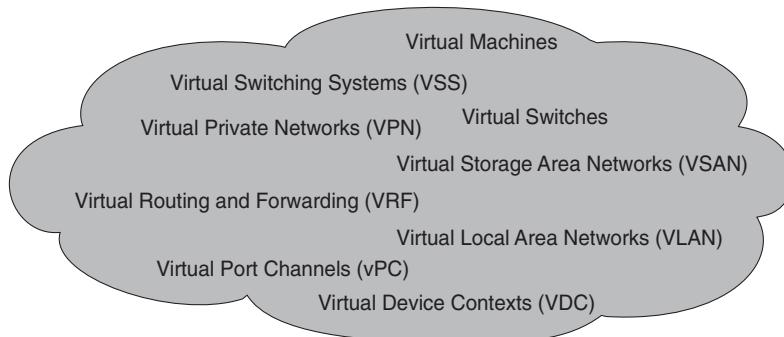


## Virtualization Technologies

Virtualization is built from abstracting logical entities from pooled physical resources. The Cisco network architectures for the enterprise data center contains many forms of network and device virtualization technologies.



Figure 4-12 illustrates the many virtualization technologies in use today.



**Figure 4-12** Data Center Virtualization Technologies

### VSS

Virtual Switching System (VSS) is a network virtualization technology that allows two physical Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switches to act as a single logical virtual switch. The VSS increases operational efficiencies and scales bandwidth up to 1.4 Tb/s. This technology is very similar to StackWise technology used with the Cisco Catalyst 3750 series product line, which enables switches stacked together to operate as one and use a single command-line interface (CLI) for management. However, VSS is limited to two physical chassis connected together.

### VRF

Virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) is a routing virtualization technology that creates multiple logical Layer 3 routing and forwarding instances (route tables) that can function on the same physical router. In Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) VPN environments, the use of VRF technology plays a major role by allowing multiple networks to coexist on the same MPLS network. The routing information is contained inside the VRF and is visible only to routers participating in the same VRF. Because the routing information with VRF is separated, duplicate IP addressing schemes can be used.

### vPC

Virtual Port Channel (vPC) technology works by combining two Cisco Nexus 7000 series switches or two Cisco Nexus 5000 series switches with 10GE links, which are then represented to other switches as a single logical switch for port channeling purposes. With present in the physical topology.

## Device Contexts



Device contexts enable a single physical network device to host multiple virtual network devices. Each device context is an independent configuration with its own policy, network interfaces, and management accounts. The virtualized contexts that run on a single network device operate similarly to standalone network devices. Most of the same features present on the physical device are also supported on the individual device contexts.

The following Cisco network devices support the use of device contexts:

- Cisco Nexus 7000 series switches (VDC)
- Cisco Adaptive Security Appliance (ASA) firewall
- Cisco Catalyst 6500 Firewall Services Module (FWSM)
- Cisco Application Control Engine Appliance
- Cisco Catalyst 6500 Application Control Engine Module
- Cisco Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)

## Server Virtualization

The use of server virtualization has exploded onto the market over the past several years and can be found in most data center environments. Server virtualization is a software technique that abstracts server resources from the hardware to provide flexibility and to optimize the usage of the underlying hardware. As a result, many data center applications are no longer bound to bare-metal hardware resources.

The server virtualized hypervisor provides the foundation for the virtualized environment on the host. The hypervisor controls the hardware and physical resources that can be allocated to virtual machines running on the host. This makes the VMs unaware of the physical hardware, but they can use CPUs, memory, and network infrastructure as shared pools available through the virtualization process.

The following represents several server virtualization vendors and their associated products:

- VMware ESX Server
- Citrix XenServer
- Microsoft Hyper-V

## Network Virtualization Design Considerations

Network solutions are needed to solve the challenges of sharing network resources but keeping users totally separate from one another. Although the users are separate, we still need to ensure that the network is highly available, secure, and can scale along with the business growth. Network virtualization offers solutions to these challenges and provides design considerations around access control, path isolation, and services edge.

## Access Control

Access needs to be controlled to ensure that users and devices are identified and authorized for entry to their assigned network segment. Security at the access layer is critical for protecting the network from threats, both internal and external.

## Path Isolation

Path isolation involves the creation of independent logical network paths over a shared network infrastructure. MPLS VPN is an example of path-isolation technique where devices are mapped to a VRF to access the correct set of network resources. Other segmentation options include VLANs and VSANs, which logically separate LANs and SANs. The main goal when segmenting the network is to improve the scalability, resiliency, and security services as with non-segmented networks.

## Services Edge

The services edge refers to making network services available to the intended users, groups, and devices with an enforced centralized managed policy. Separate groups or devices occasionally need to share information that may be on different VLANs, each with corresponding group policies. For example, traffic from the sales VLAN might need to talk to the engineering VLAN, but it needs to go through the firewall to permit the traffic and might even be tied to certain hours of the day. In such cases, the network should have a central way to manage the policy and control access to the resources. An effective way to address policy enforcement is to use an FWSM in a Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switch providing firewall services for the data center.



Table 4-5 describes network virtualization considerations.

**Table 4-5 Network Virtualization Design Considerations**

Network Virtualization Consideration	Description
Access control	Ensures users and devices are recognized, classified, and authorized for entry to their assigned network segments
Path isolation	Provides independent logical traffic paths over shared network
Services edge	Ensures the right services are accessible the intended users, groups, or devices

## References and Recommended Readings

Module 3 (Designing Basic Campus and Data Center Networks)—Designing for Cisco Internetwork Solution Course (DESGN) 2.1.

Cisco Design Zone for Data Centers, [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns743/networking\\_solutions\\_program\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns743/networking_solutions_program_home.html).

Data Center Design – IP Network Infrastructure, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Data\\_Center/DC\\_3\\_0/DC-3\\_0\\_IPInfra.html#wp1037111](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Data_Center/DC_3_0/DC-3_0_IPInfra.html#wp1037111)

Cisco Data Center Infrastructure 2.5 Design Guide, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Data\\_Center/DC\\_Infra2\\_5/DCInfra\\_2.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Data_Center/DC_Infra2_5/DCInfra_2.html)

Security and Virtualization in the Data Center, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Data\\_Center/DC\\_3\\_0/dc\\_sec\\_design.html#wp1056029](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Data_Center/DC_3_0/dc_sec_design.html#wp1056029)

Examples of Good Cable Management, [www.geekshout.com/media/photos/9-examples-of-good-cable-management-and-1-bad-one/](http://www.geekshout.com/media/photos/9-examples-of-good-cable-management-and-1-bad-one/)

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noticed with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 4-6 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 4-6 Key Topics**

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Data Center 3.0 Components	Virtualization, Unified Fabric, and Unified Computing	126
Data Center 3.0 Topology Components	Virtualized servers, consolidated connectivity, and network devices	127
Challenges in the DC	Power, space, security, and management	127
Data Center Facility Aspects	Architectural and mechanical specifications, environmental conditions, physical security, capacities and compliance	129
Data Center Power	Cooling, server, storage, and network	131
Data Center Cabling	Controls the temperature and humidity of the devices	133
DC Access Layer	Provides Layer 2 and Layer 3 physical port density for devices	136
DC Aggregation Layer	Aggregates L2/L3 links from the access layer and connects using upstream links to the data center core	138
DC Core Layer	Centralized Layer 3 routing layer in which one or more data center aggregation layers connect	139

**Table 4-6 Key Topics**

<b>Key Topic Element</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Page</b>
Challenges	Operational cost, traffic isolation, and increased performance/price ratio	141
Types of Virtualization	Network and device virtualization	142
Virtualization Technologies	VRF, vPC, and VSS	143
Device Contexts	VDC, ASA, and ACE	144
Services Edge	Secure network services available to users and groups with centralized managed policy	145

## Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

## Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

Cisco Nexus 1000V, Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS), Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE), Internet Small Computer Systems Interface (iSCSI), data center space element, power, cabling, data center access, data center aggregation, data center core, virtualization technologies, network virtualization, device virtualization, access control, path isolation, services edge

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

1. Which data center architecture was based on client/server and distributed computing?
  - a. Data Center 1.0
  - b. Data Center 2.0
  - c. Data Center 3.0
  - d. Data Center 4.0

- 2.** What Cisco Nexus switch helps deliver visibility and policy control for virtual machines (VM)?
  - a.** Nexus 7000
  - b.** Nexus 4000
  - c.** Nexus 2000
  - d.** Nexus 1000V
- 3.** Which of the following is a network adapter that can run at 10GE and support Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE)?
  - a.** CNA
  - b.** VN-Link
  - c.** MDS
  - d.** NAS
- 4.** What is an innovative next-generation data center platform that converges computing, network, storage, and virtualization all together into one system? (Select the best answer.)
  - a.** Cisco MDS
  - b.** Cisco Nexus 7000
  - c.** Cisco Nexus 5000
  - d.** Cisco UCS
- 5.** Which of the following Cisco Nexus switches support virtual device contexts using (VDCs)?
  - a.** Cisco Nexus 7000
  - b.** Cisco Nexus 2000
  - c.** Cisco Nexus 5000
  - d.** Cisco Nexus 4000
- 6.** What services option provides an effective way to address firewall policy enforcement in a Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switch?
  - a.** IPS
  - b.** FWSM
  - c.** Nexus 1000V
  - d.** VDCs

- 7.** What has enabled applications to no longer be bound to bare metal hardware resources?
  - a.** Unified fabric
  - b.** Device virtualization
  - c.** Network virtualization
  - d.** Server virtualization
- 8.** Which of the following supports network virtualization technology that allows two physical Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switches to act as a single logical virtual switch?
  - a.** VN-Link technology
  - b.** Unified fabric
  - c.** Virtual Switching System (VSS)
  - d.** Virtual routing and forwarding (VRF)
- 9.** What enables the spanning-tree topology to appear loop-free although multiple redundant paths are present in the physical topology?
  - a.** vPC
  - b.** VRF
  - c.** VSS
  - d.** VDC
- 10.** Which of the following are data center core layer characteristics? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** 10GE
  - b.** High-latency switching
  - c.** Distributed forwarding architecture
  - d.** Service modules
- 11.** Which data center layer provides advanced application and security services and has a large STP processing load?
  - a.** Data center access layer
  - b.** Data center aggregation layer
  - c.** Data center services layer
  - d.** Data center core layer

- 12.** Which of the following are drivers for the data center core layer? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Future growth
  - b.** 10 Gigabit Ethernet density
  - c.** Services edge
  - d.** Administrative domains and policies
- 13.** Benefits such as port density for server farms, high-performance low-latency Layer 2 switching, and a mix of oversubscription requirements belong to which data center layer?
- a.** Core
  - b.** Distribution
  - c.** Access
  - d.** Aggregation
- 14.** Cable management is affected by which of the following? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Alternative cooling technologies
  - b.** Number of connections
  - c.** Media selection
  - d.** Increase in the number of HVAC units
- 15.** Which of the following best describes how “cold” and “hot” aisles should be arranged in the data center?
- a.** Hot and cold aisles facing each other
  - b.** Alternating pattern of cold and hot aisles
  - c.** Nonalternating pattern of hot and cold aisles
  - d.** None of the above
- 16.** Within the unified computing resources, what defines the identity of the server?
- a.** Virtualization
  - b.** Unified fabric
  - c.** Services profile
  - d.** Virtual machines



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Wireless LAN Technologies
- Cisco Unified Wireless Network
- Wireless LAN Design

## Wireless LAN Design

---

Wireless LANs (WLAN) allow users to connect to network resources and services without using cables. With WLANs, users connect to the network in common areas, away from their desk, and in areas that do not easily accommodate the installation of wired cabling, such as outdoors and in designated historical sites. This chapter describes WLAN technologies, design, and Cisco solutions.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The eight-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 5-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 5-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Wireless LAN Technologies	1, 2
Cisco Unified Wireless Network	3, 4, 5
Wireless LAN Design	6, 7, 8

1. What technology provides 54 Mbps of bandwidth using UNII frequencies?
  - a. IEEE 802.11b
  - b. IEEE 802.11g
  - c. IEEE 802.11a
  - d. IEEE 802.11n
  - e. Both C and D
2. What frequency allotment provides 11 channels for unlicensed use for WLANs in North America?

- a. UNII
- b. ISM
- c. Bluetooth
- d. FM

3. What standard is used for control messaging between access points and controllers?

- a. IEEE 802.11
- b. CSMA/CA
- c. IEEE 802.1X
- d. CAPWAP

4. Which WLAN controller interface is used for out-of-band management?

- a. Management interface
- b. Service-port interface
- c. AP manager interface
- d. Virtual interface

5. How many access points are supported by a Cisco Catalyst 3750 with an integrated controller?

- a. 6
- b. 50
- c. 100
- d. 300

6. Which WLAN controller redundancy scheme uses a backup WLC configured as the tertiary WLC in the APs?

- a. N+1
- b. N+N
- c. N+N+1
- d. N+N+B

7. What is the recommended maximum number of data devices associated to a WLAN?

- a. 8
- b. 20
- c. 50
- d. 100

8. Which device of Cisco's Wireless Mesh Networking communicates with the rooftop AP (RAP)?

- a. WLC
- b. WCS
- c. RAP
- d. MAP

---

## Foundation Topics

---

Cisco has developed a strategy to address the increasing wireless demands placed on today's networks. The Cisco Unified Wireless Network (UWN) architecture combines elements of wireless and wired networks to deliver scalable, manageable, and secure WLANs. Lightweight Access Point Protocol (LWAPP) and Control and Provisioning for Wireless Access Point (CAPWAP) allow the placement of lightweight access points (LWAP) that are remotely configured and easily deployable versus them being manually configured on autonomous APs. Cisco provides solutions for client roaming, radio frequency management, and controller designs that make wireless networks scalable. This chapter covers the Cisco UWN architecture and general WLAN technologies and design.

## Wireless LAN Technologies

This section reviews the Institute of Electronics and Electrical Engineers (IEEE) 802.11 WLAN standards, WLAN frequencies, access methods, security, and authentication.

### WLAN Standards

WLAN applications include inside-building access, LAN extension, outside building-to-building communications, public access, and small office/home office (SOHO) communications. The first standard for WLANs was IEEE 802.11, approved by the IEEE in 1997. The current specification is IEEE 802.11-1999, with many amendments thereafter.



IEEE 802.11 implemented WLANs at speeds of 1 Mbps and 2 Mbps using direct sequence spread spectrum (DSSS) and frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) at the physical layer of the Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) model. DSSS divides data into separate sections; each section travels over different frequencies at the same time. FHSS uses a frequency-hopping sequence to send data in bursts. With FHSS, some data transmits at Frequency 1, and then the system hops to Frequency 2 to send more data, and so on, returning to transmit more data at Frequency 1. The interoperability certification for IEEE 802.11 WLANs is wireless fidelity (WiFi). The Wireless Ethernet Compatibility Alliance (WECA) governs the WiFi certification.

In 1999, the 802.11b amendment was introduced, providing an 11-Mbps data rate. It provides speeds of 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps and uses 11 channels of the Industrial, Scientific, and Medical (ISM) frequencies. IEEE 802.11b uses DSSS and is backward compatible with 802.11 systems that use DSSS.

The IEEE approved a second standard in 1999. IEEE 802.11a provides a maximum 54-Mbps data rate but is incompatible with 802.11b. It provides speeds of 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps. IEEE 802.11a uses 13 channels of the Unlicensed National Information Infrastructure (UNII) frequencies and is incompatible with 802.11b and 802.11g. IEEE 802.11a is also known as WiFi5.

ible with 802.11b.

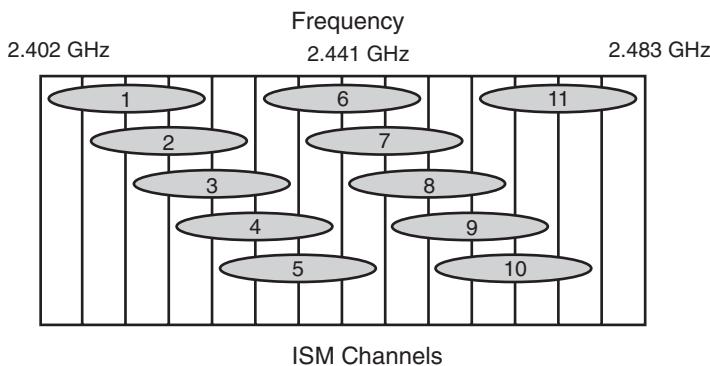
The IEEE 802.11n standard was ratified in 2009. It added multiple-input multiple-output (MIMO) antennas and expected maximum data rate up to 600 Mbps using four spatial streams, each with a 40-MHz width. In addition to DSSS, it uses orthogonal frequency-division multiplexing (OFDM) as a digital carrier modulation method. IEEE 802.11n uses both the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands.

### ISM and UNII Frequencies

ISM frequencies are set aside by ITU-R radio regulations 5.138 and 5.150. In the United States, the Federal Communications Commission (15.247) specifies the ISM bands for unlicensed use. ISM bands are specified in the following ranges:

- 900 MHz to 928 MHz
- 2.4 GHz to 2.5 GHz
- 5.75 GHz to 5.875 GHz

Of these, channels located in the 2.4-GHz range are used for 802.11b and 802.11g. As shown in Figure 5-1, 11 overlapping channels are available for use. Each channel is 22 MHz wide. It is common to use channels 1, 6, and 11 in the same areas because these three channels do not overlap.



**Figure 5-1** ISM 2.4 Channels

The UNII radio bands were specified for use with 802.11a wireless. UNII operates over three ranges:

- **UNII 1:** 5.15 GHz to 5.25 GHz and 5.25 GHz to 5.35 GHz.
- **UNII 2:** 5.47 GHz to 5.725 GHz. This range is used by High Performance Radio LAN (HiperLAN) in Europe.
- **UNII 3:** 5.725 GHz to 5.875 GHz. This range overlaps with ISM.

UNII provides 12 nonoverlapping channels for 802.11a.

## Summary of WLAN Standards

Table 5-2 summarizes WLAN standards, frequencies, and data rates.

**Table 5-2 WLAN Standards Summary**

IEEE Protocol	Standard Release Date	Frequency	Typical Data Rate	Maximum Data Rate
Legacy	1997	ISM	1 Mbps	2 Mbps
802.11a	1999	UNII	25 Mbps	54 Mbps
802.11b	1999	ISM	6.5 Mbps	11 Mbps
802.11g	2003	ISM	25 Mbps	54 Mbps
802.11n	2009	ISM or UNII	200 Mbps	600 Mbps

## Service Set Identifier

WLANs use a service set identifier (SSID) to identify the WLAN’s “network name.” The SSID can be 2 to 32 characters long. All devices in the WLAN must have the same configured SSID to communicate. It is similar to a VLAN identifier in a wired network. The difficulty in large networks is configuring the SSID, frequency, and power settings for hundreds of remotely located access points. Cisco addresses this problem with the Cisco Wireless Control System (WCS). WCS is covered in more detail in the “Cisco UWN Architecture” section.

## WLAN Layer 2 Access Method

The IEEE 802.11 Media Access Control (MAC) layer implements carrier sense multiple access collision avoidance (CSMA/CA) as an access method. With CSMA/CA, each WLAN station listens to see whether a station is transmitting. If no activity is occurring, the station transmits. If activity is occurring, the station uses a random countdown timer. When the timer expires, the station transmits. The difference from wired networks is that in wired networks collisions are detected on the physical wire; hence CSMA/CD (collision detection) is used.

## WLAN Security

WLANs provide an effective solution for hard-to-reach locations and enable mobility to a level that was previously unattainable. However, the reach of wireless beyond physical connections and boundaries presents additional security concerns. Several standards have been developed to address these security concerns. The Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) security protocol, used in the IEEE 802.11b standard, is considered faulty and vulnerable to numerous attacks. The 802.11b protocol is the most commonly deployed wireless protocol, and although WEP’s flawed handling of the encryption key left it vulnerable to attack.

In June 2004, the IEEE 802.11i standard was ratified to provide additional security in WLAN networks. It supersedes WEP security, and introduces the 4-way Handshake and the Group Key Handshake. IEEE 802.11i is also known as WiFi Protected Access 2 (WPA2) and Robust Security Network (RSN). The 802.11i architecture contains the following components:

- 4-Way Handshake and Group Key Handshake. Both use 802.1X for authentication (entailing the use of Extensible Authentication Protocol [EAP] and an authentication server).
- Robust Security Network (RSN) for the establishment and tracking of robust security network associations.
- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) for confidentiality, integrity, and origin authentication.

### Unauthorized Access

A problem that confronts WLANs comes from the fact that wireless signals are not easily controlled or contained. WEP works at the data link layer, sharing the same key for all nodes that communicate. The 802.11 standard was deployed because it allowed bandwidth speed up to 11 Mbps and it is based on DSSS technology. DSSS also enables APs to identify WLAN cards via their MAC addresses. Because traditional physical boundaries do not apply to wireless networks, attackers can gain access using wireless from outside the physical security perimeter. Attackers achieve unauthorized access if the wireless network does not have a mechanism to compare a MAC address on a wireless card to a database that contains a directory with access rights. An individual can roam within an area, and each AP that comes into contact with that card must also rely on a directory. Statically allowing access via a MAC address is also unsecure because MAC addresses can be spoofed.

Some APs can implement MAC address and protocol filtering to enhance security or limit the protocols used over the WLAN. With hundreds of WLAN clients, MAC address filtering is not a scalable solution. Again, attackers can hack MAC address filtering. A user can listen for transmissions, gather a list of MAC addresses, and then use one of those MAC addresses to connect to the AP. This is why additional security protocols such as WEP, WPA, and WPA2 have to be implemented so that the attacker has to attempt to crack the security keys to gain access.

### WLAN Security Design Approach

The WLAN security design approach makes two assumptions, which this chapter describes. The assumptions are that all WLAN devices are connected to a unique IP subnet and that most services available to the wired network are also available to the wireless nodes. Using these two assumptions, the WLAN security designs offer two basic security approaches:

- Use of EAP-Flexible Authentication via Secure Tunneling (EAP-FAST) to secure authentication
- the WLAN to the wired network

Considering WLAN as an alternative access methodology, remember that the services these WLAN users access are often the same as those accessed by the wired users. WLANs potentially open many new attack vectors for hackers, and you should consider the risks before deployment.

To enhance security, you can implement WLANs with IPsec VPN software, use the IEEE 802.1X-2001 port-based access control protocol, and use WPA.

### **IEEE 802.1X-2001 Port-Based Authentication**

IEEE 802.1X-2001 is a port-based authentication standard for LANs. It authenticates a user before allowing access to the network. You can use it on Ethernet, Fast Ethernet, and WLAN networks.

With IEEE 802.1X-2001, client workstations run client software to request access to services. Clients use EAP to communicate with the LAN switch. The LAN switch verifies client information with the authentication server and relays the response to the client. LAN switches use a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) client to communicate with the server. The RADIUS authentication server validates the client's identity and authorizes the client. But note that it does not provide encryption privacy. The server uses RADIUS with EAP extensions to make the authorization.

### **Dynamic WEP Keys and LEAP**

Cisco also offers dynamic per-user, per-session WEP keys to provide additional security over statically configured WEP keys, which are not unique per user. For centralized user-based authentication, Cisco developed LEAP. LEAP uses mutual authentication between the client and the network server and uses IEEE 802.1X for 802.11 authentication messaging. LEAP can be used with the Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) rather than WEP to overcome the weaknesses of WEP. LEAP uses a RADIUS server to manage user information.

LEAP is a combination of 802.1X and EAP. It combines the capability to authenticate to various servers such as RADIUS with forcing the WLAN user to log on to an access point that compares the logon information to RADIUS. This solution is more scalable than MAC address filtering.

Because the WLAN access depends on receiving an address, using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), and the authentication of the user using RADIUS, the WLAN needs constant access to these back-end servers. In addition, LEAP does not support one-time passwords (OTP), so you must use good password-security practices. The password issue and maintenance practice are a basic component of corporate security policy.

### **Controlling WLAN Access to Servers**

In the same way you place Domain Name System (DNS) servers accessible via the Internet on a demilitarized zone (DMZ) segment, you should apply a similar strategy to the RA-DIUS and DHCP servers accessible to the WLAN. These servers should be secondary

Access to this VLAN is filtered. Such placement ensures that any attacks launched on these servers are contained within that segment.

You should control network access to the servers. Consider the WLAN an unsecured segment and apply appropriate segmentation and access lists. Such a step ensures that WLAN access is controlled and directed to only those areas that need it. For example, you might not want to permit WLAN access to management servers and HR servers.

You must also protect these servers against network attack. The criticality of these servers makes them an ideal target for denial-of-service (DoS) attacks. Consider using network based intrusion detection systems (IDS) to detect network attacks against these devices.

## Cisco Unified Wireless Network

This section covers the Cisco Unified Wireless Network (UWN) architecture, Control and Provisioning for Wireless Access Point (CAPWAP), WLAN controller components, roaming, and mobility groups. Cisco UWN components provide scalable WLAN solutions using WLAN controllers to manage LWAPs. The CCDA must understand how these components work with each other, how they scale, and how roaming and mobility groups work.

### Cisco UWN Architecture



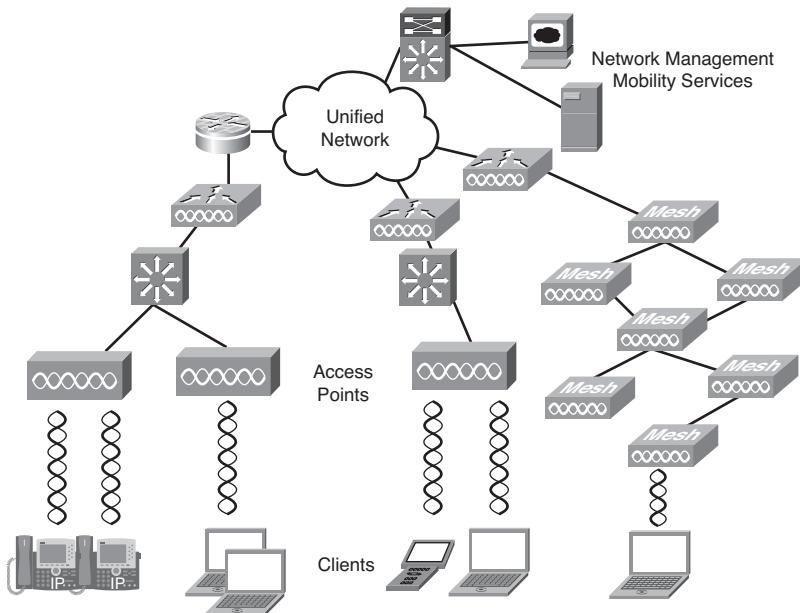
With the explosion of wireless solutions in and out of the enterprise, designers must create solutions that provide mobility and business services while maintaining network security. The Cisco UWN architecture combines elements of wireless and wired networks to deliver scalable, manageable, and secure WLANs. As shown in Figure 5-2, the Cisco UWN architecture is composed of five network elements:

- **Client devices:** These include laptops, workstations, IP phones, PDAs, and manufacturing devices to access the WLAN.
- **Access points:** These devices provide access to the wireless network. APs are placed in strategic locations to minimize interference.
- **Network unification:** The WLAN system should be able to support wireless applications by providing security policies, QoS, intrusion prevention, and radio frequency (RF) management. Cisco WLAN controllers provide this functionality and integration into all major switching and routing platforms.
- **Network management:** The Cisco Wireless Control System (WCS) provides a central management tool that lets you design, control, and monitor wireless networks.
- **Mobility services:** These include guest access, location services, voice services, and threat detection and mitigation.

Cisco UWN provides the following benefits:

- Reduced total cost of ownership (TCO)
- Enhanced visibility and control
- Dynamic RF management

- WLAN security
- Unified wired and wireless network
- Enterprise mobility
- Enhanced productivity and collaboration



**Figure 5-2** Cisco UWN Architecture

Table 5-3 covers Cisco UWN architecture.

**Table 5-3** Cisco UWN Architecture

Cisco UWN Element	Description
Client devices	These include laptops, workstations, IP phones, PDAs, and manufacturing devices to access the WLAN.
Access points	Provide access to the network.
Network unification	The WLAN system should be able to support wireless applications by providing security policies, QoS, intrusion prevention, RF management, and wireless controllers.
Network management	Cisco Wireless Control System (WCS) provides a central management tool that lets you design, control, and monitor wireless networks.
Mobility services	Include guest access, location services, voice services, and threat detection and mitigation.

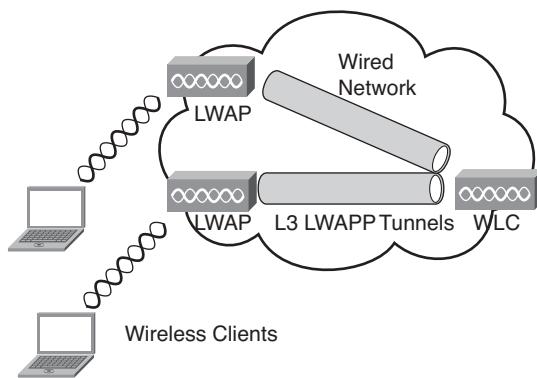
## LWAPP

Lightweight Access Point Protocol (LWAPP) is a draft Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard for control messaging for setup, authentication, and operations between APs and WLAN controllers (WLC).

In the LWAPP RFC draft, LWAPP control messages can be transported at Layer 2 tunnels or Layer 3 tunnels. Layer 2 LWAPP tunnels were the first method developed in which the APs did not require an IP address. The disadvantage of Layer 2 LWAPP was that the WLC needed to be on every subnet on which the AP resides. Layer 2 LWAPP is a deprecated solution for Cisco. Layer 3 LWAPP is the preferred solution. In the configuration, Layer 2 or Layer 3 transport modes can be selected. When set Layer 3, the LWAPP uses IP addresses to communicate with the access points; these IP addresses are collected from a mandatory DHCP server. When set to Layer 2, the LWAPP uses proprietary code to communicate with the access points.

**Note:** Layer 2 LWAPP tunnels use EtherType code 0xBBBB. Layer 3 LWAPP uses UDP ports 12222 and 12223.

As shown in Figure 5-3, Layer 3 LWAPP tunnels are used between the LWAP and the WLC. Messages from the WLC use User Datagram Port (UDP) port 12223 for control and UDP port 12222 for data messages. In this solution, APs require an IP address, but the WLC does not need to reside on the same segment.



**Figure 5-3** Layer 3 LWAPP

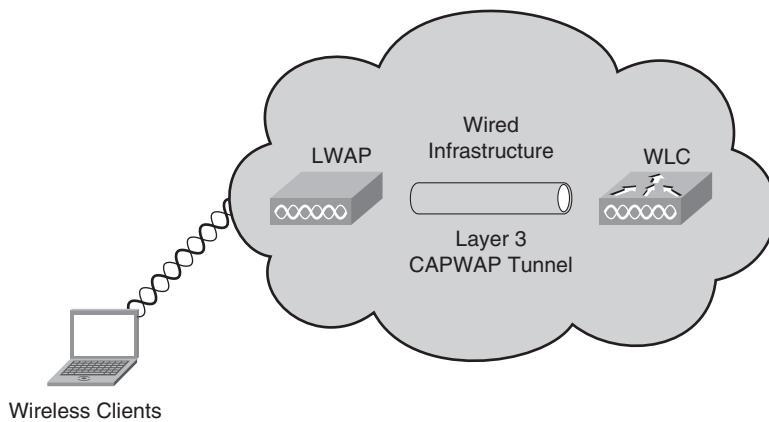


## CAPWAP

Control and Provisioning for Wireless Access Point (CAPWAP) is an IETF standard for control messaging for setup, authentication, and operations between APs and WLCs. In Controller Software 5.2, Cisco LWAPs use CAPWAP communication between the WLC and LWAPs. CAPWAP is similar to LWAPP except for the following differences:

- CAPWAP uses Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) for authentication and encryption to protect traffic between APs and controllers. LWAPP uses AES.
- CAPWAP has a dynamic maximum transmission unit (MTU) discovery mechanism.
- CAPWAP control messages run over UDP 5246.
- CAPWAP data messages use UDP 5247.

CAPWAP uses a Layer 3 tunnel between the LWAP and the WLC. Figure 5-4 shows the architecture. The APs obtain an IP address via DHCP. On the AP side, the control and data messages use an ephemeral UDP port that is derived from a hash between the AP MAC addresses. CAPWAP uses UDP port 5247 for data messages and UDP port 5246 for control messages.



**Figure 5-4 CAPWAP Tunnel**

## Cisco Unified Wireless Network Split-MAC Architecture

With the Cisco UWN split-MAC operation, the control and data messages are split. LWAPs communicate with the WLCs using control messages over the wired network. LWAPP or CAPWAP data messages are encapsulated and forwarded to and from wireless clients. The WLC manages multiple APs, providing configuration information and firmware updates as needed.

LWAP MAC functions are

- **802.11:** Beacons, probe response
- **802.11 Control:** Packet acknowledgment and transmission

- **802.11e:** Frame queuing and packet prioritization
- **802.11i:** MAC layer data encryption/decryption

Controller MAC functions are

- **802.11 MAC Management:** Association requests and actions
- **802.11e Resource Reservation:** To reserve resources for specific applications
- **802.11i:** Authentication and key management

### Local MAC

CAPWAP supports local MAC. Local MAC moves the MAC management from the WLC to the local AP. This allows for termination of client traffic at the wired port of the AP. The functionality is useful for small and remote branch offices, which would not require a WLC.

LWAP MAC functions are

- **802.11:** Beacons, probe response
- **802.11 Control:** Packet acknowledgment and transmission
- **802.11e:** Frame queuing and packet prioritization
- **802.11i:** MAC layer data encryption/decryption
- **802.11 MAC Management:** Association requests and actions

Controller MAC functions are

- **802.11:** Proxy association requests and actions
- **802.11e Resource Reservation:** To reserve resources for specific applications
- **802.11i:** Authentication and key management

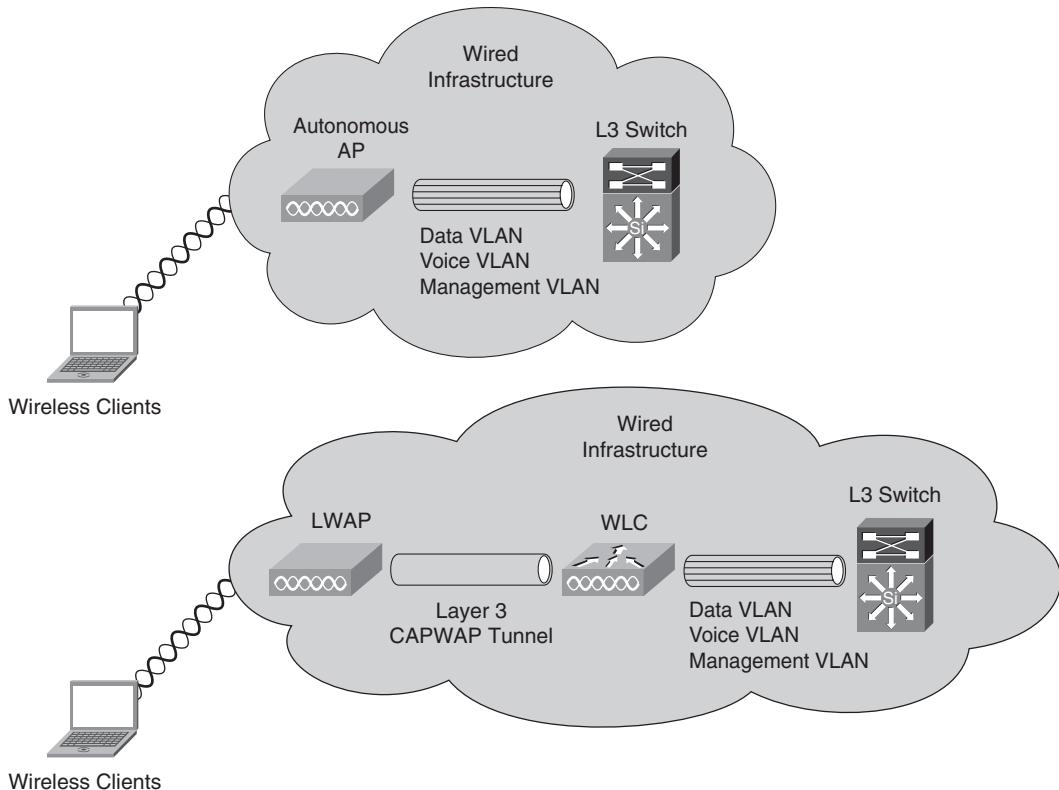
Figure 5-5 shows the difference between an autonomous AP and a CAPWAP using WLC. Autonomous APs act as a 802.1Q translational bridge with a trunk to the LAN switch. In CAPWAP with WLC, the AP uses a CAPWAP tunnel, and the WLC establishes the 802.1Q trunk to the LAN switch.

### AP Modes

APs operate in one of six different modes:

- **Local mode:** This is the default mode of operation. In this mode, every 180 seconds the AP measures noise floor and interference, and scans for IDS events. This scanning activity occurs on unused channels and lasts for 60 milliseconds.
- **Hybrid Remote Edge AP (H-REAP) mode:** This mode enables an LWAP to reside across a WAN link and still be able to communicate with the WLC and provide the supported on Cisco 1130, 1140, 1240AB, and 1250AG series LWAPs.





**Figure 5-5 Autonomous AP Versus CAPWAP AP with WLC**

- **Monitor mode:** Monitor mode is a feature designed to allow specified CAPWAP-enabled APs to exclude themselves from handling data traffic between clients and the infrastructure. They instead act as dedicated sensors for location-based services (LBS), rogue AP detection, and intrusion detection (IDS). When APs are in Monitor mode, they cannot serve clients and continuously cycle through all configured channels, listening to each channel for approximately 60 ms.
- **Rogue detector mode:** LWAPs that operate in Rogue Detector mode to monitor for rogue APs. They do not transmit or contain rogue APs. The idea is that the rogue detector (RD) should be able to see all the VLANs in the network, because rogue APs can be connected to any of the VLANs in the network. (Therefore, we connect it to a trunk port.) The LAN switch sends all the rogue AP/client MAC address lists to the RD. The RD then forwards those to the WLC to compare with the MAC addresses of clients that the WLC APs have heard over the air. If the MAC addresses match, the WLC knows that the rogue AP to which those clients are connected is on the wired network.
- **Sniffer mode:** A CAPWAP that operates in Sniffer mode functions as a sniffer and

strength, packet size, and so on. The Sniffer feature can be enabled only if you run AiroPeek, a third-party network analyzer software that supports decoding of data packets.

- **Bridge mode:** The Bridge mode feature on the Cisco 1130 and 1240 series (typically indoor usage) and 1500 APs (typically outdoor mesh usage) provides cost-effective, high-bandwidth wireless bridging connectivity. Applications supported are point-to-point bridging, point-to-multipoint bridging, point-to-point wireless access with integrated wireless backhaul, and point-to-multipoint wireless access with integrated wireless backhaul.

Table 5-4 summarizes the AP modes.

**Table 5-4 Access Point Modes**

AP Mode	Description
Local mode	The default mode of operation.
H-REAP mode	For remote LWAP management across WAN links.
Monitor mode	The APs exclude themselves from handling data traffic and dedicate themselves to location-based services (LBS).
Rogue Detector mode	Monitors for rogue APs.
Sniffer mode	Captures and forwards all packets of a remote sniffer.
Bridge mode	For point-to-point and point-to-multipoint solutions.

### LWAPP Discovery of WLC

When LWAPs are placed on the network, they first perform DHCP discovery to obtain an IP address. Then Layer 3 LWAPP discovery is attempted. If there is no WLC response, the AP reboots and repeats this process. The Layer 3 LWAPP discovery algorithm is as follows:

1. The AP sends a Layer 3 LWAPP discovery request.
2. All WLCs that receive the discovery request reply with a unicast LWAPP discovery response message.
3. The AP compiles a list of WLCs.
4. The AP selects a WLC based on certain criteria.
5. The AP validates the selected WLC and sends an LWAPP join response. An encryption key is selected, and future messages are encrypted.

Layer 3 discovery requests are sent as listed:

- Local subnet broadcast
- Unicast LWAPP discovery requests to WLC IP addresses advertised by other APs

- To previously stored WLC IP addresses
- To IP addresses learned by DHCP option 43
- To IP addresses learned by DNS resolution of CISCO-LWAPP-CONTROLLER.local-domain

The selected WLC is based on the following:

- Previously configured primary, secondary, or tertiary WLCs
- The WLC configured as the master controller
- The WLC with the most capacity for AP associations

For controllers that have a CAPWAP image, the AP follows the following process:

1. The CAPWAP AP starts the discovery process to find the controller by using a CAPWAP request. The WLC responds with a CAPWAP response.
2. If a CAPWAP response is not received after 60 seconds, the AP starts the discovery process using LWAPP discovery.
3. If the AP cannot find a controller using LWAPP within 60 seconds, it returns to step 1.

WLC selection by a CAPWAP is a design decision. This is configurable in the WLC. The AP selects the WLC to create a CAPWAP tunnel based on the information configured in the WLC. The WLC responses contain controller sysName, controller type, controller AP capacity and load, the master controller status, and the AP manager IP addresses. The AP selects one or several WLCs to send a CAPWAP tunnel request based on Table 5-5. The WLC validates the AP and sends a CAPWAP tunnel response, an encryption key is derived, and future messages are encrypted. The AP then selects one WLC and sends a join request.

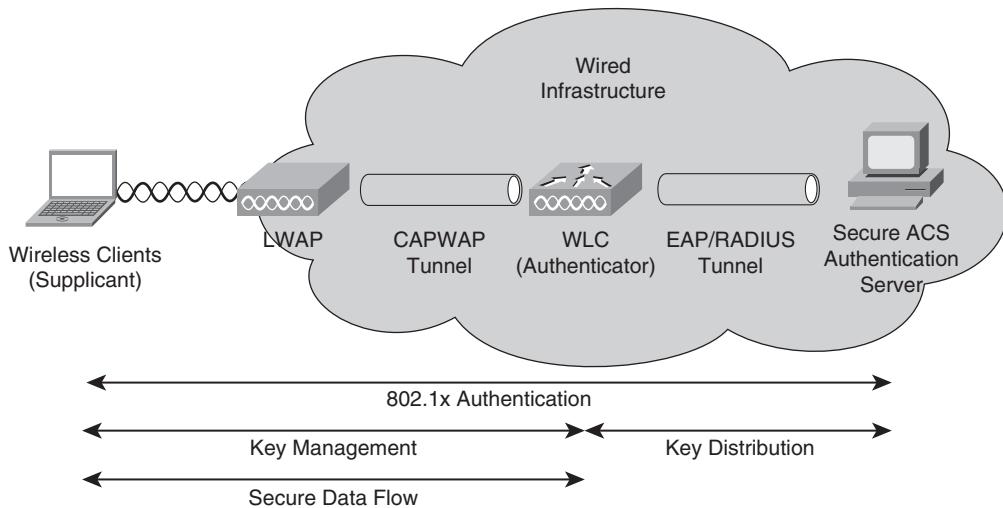
**Table 5-5 WLAN Controller Platforms**

Order	WLC
First	Primary sysName (preconfigured)
Second	Second sysName (preconfigured)
Third	Tertiary sysName (preconfigured)
Fourth	Master controller
Fifth	WLC with greatest capacity for AP associations

### WLAN Authentication

Wireless clients first associate to an AP. Then wireless clients need to authenticate with an authentication server before the AP allows access to services. As shown in Figure 5-6, the

authentication server resides in the wired infrastructure. An EAP/RADIUS tunnel occurs between the WLC and the authentication server. Cisco's Secure Access Control Server (ACS) using EAP is an example of an authentication server.



**Figure 5-6 WLAN Authentication**

### Authentication Options

Wireless clients communicate with the authentication server using EAP. Each EAP type has advantages and disadvantages. Trade-offs exist between the security provided, EAP type manageability, the operating systems supported, the client devices supported, the client software and authentication messaging overhead, certificate requirements, user ease of use, and WLAN infrastructure device support. The following summarizes the authentication options:

- **EAP-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS)** is an IETF open standard that is well-supported among wireless vendors but rarely deployed. It uses Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) to secure communications to the RADIUS authentication server using TLS and digital certificates.
- **Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP)** is a joint proposal by Cisco Systems, Microsoft, and RSA Security as an open standard. PEAP/MSCHAPv2 is the most common version, and it is widely available in products and widely deployed. It is similar in design to EAP-TTLS, requiring only a server-side PKI certificate to create a secure TLS tunnel to protect user authentication. PEAP-GTC allows more generic authentication to a number of databases such as Novell Directory Services (NDS).
- **EAP-Tunneled TLS (EAP-TTLS)** was co-developed by Funk Software and Certicom. It creates a secure tunnel between the client and the authentication server.

- **Cisco Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP)** is an early proprietary EAP method supported in the Cisco Certified Extensions (CCX) program. It is vulnerable to dictionary attacks.
- **EAP-Flexible Authentication via Secure Tunneling (EAP-FAST)** is a proposal by Cisco Systems to fix the weaknesses of LEAP. EAP-FAST uses a Protected Access Credential (PAC), and use of server certificates is optional. EAP-FAST has three phases. Phase 0 is an optional phase in which the PAC can be provisioned manually or dynamically. In Phase 1, the client and the AAA server use the PAC to establish the TLS tunnel. In Phase 2, the client sends user information across the tunnel.

## WLAN Controller Components

The CCDA candidate must understand the three major components of WLCs:

- WLANs
- Interfaces
- Ports



WLANs are identified by unique SSID network names. The LAN is a logical entity. Each WLAN is assigned to an interface in the WLC. Each WLAN is configured with radio policies, quality of service (QoS), and other WLAN parameters.

A WLC interface is a logical connection that maps to a VLAN on the wired network. Each interface is configured with a unique IP address, default gateways, physical ports, VLAN tag, and DHCP server.

Table 5-6 covers WLC components.

**Table 5-6 WLC Components**

WLC Component	Description
WLAN	Identified by a unique SSID and assigned to an interface
Interface	A logical connection that maps to a VLAN in the wired network
Port	A physical connection to the wired LAN

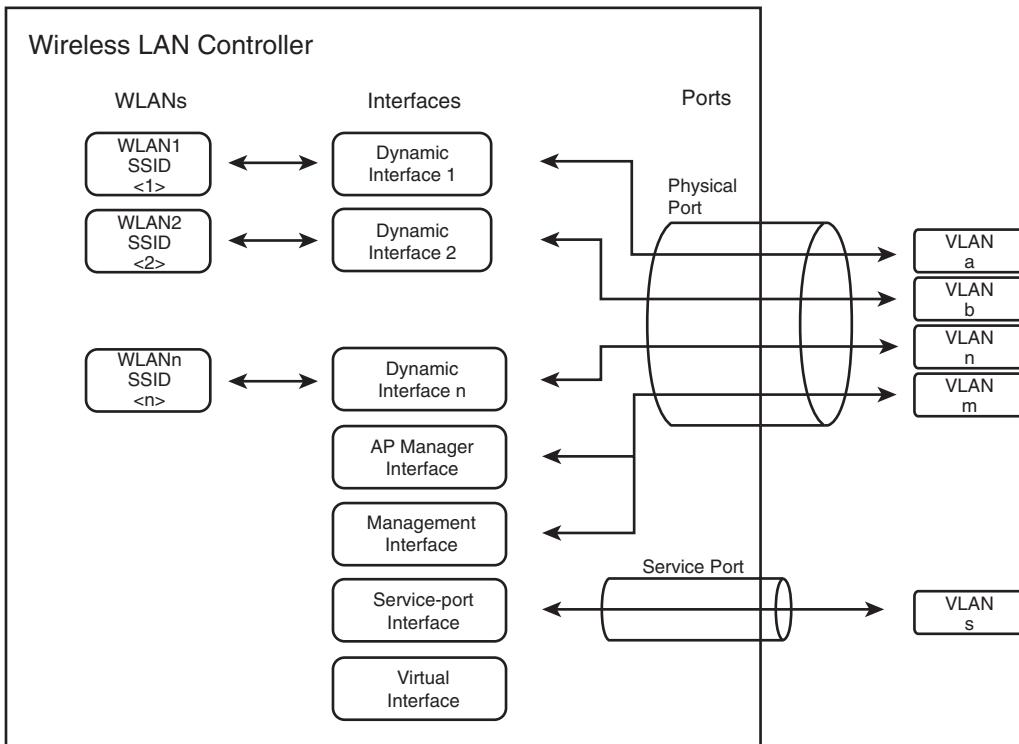
The port is a physical connection to the neighboring switch or router. By default, each port is an IEEE 802.1Q trunk port. There may be multiple ports on a WLC into a single port-channel interface. These ports can be aggregated using link aggregation (LAG). Some WLCs have a service port that is used for out-of-band management. Figure 5-7 shows the WLC components.

### WLC Interface Types

A WLC has five interface types:

- **Management interface** (static, configured at setup, mandatory) is used for in-band

- **Service-port interface** (static, configured at setup, optional) is used for out-of-band management. It is an optional interface that is statically configured.
- **AP manager interface** (static, configured at setup, mandatory except for 5508 WLC) is used for Layer 3 discovery and association. It has the source IP address of the AP that is statically configured.
- **Dynamic interface** (dynamic) is analogous to VLANs and is designated for WLAN client data.
- **Virtual interface** (static, configured at setup, mandatory) is used for Layer 3 security authentication, DHCP relay support, and mobility management.



**Figure 5-7 WLAN Controller Components**

Table 5-7 covers WLC interface types.

**Table 5-7 WLC Interface Types**

<b>WLC Interface Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Management interface	For in-band management
Service-port interface	For out-of-band management
AP manager interface	For Layer 3 discovery and association

**Table 5-7 WLC Interface Types**

<b>WLC Interface Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Dynamic interface	Dedicated to WLAN client data; analogous to VLANs
Virtual interface	For Layer 3 authentication and mobility management

### AP Controller Equipment Scaling

Cisco provides different solutions to support the differing numbers of APs present in enterprise customers. Standalone devices, modules for Integrated Services Routers (ISR), and modules for 6500 switches support numerous APs. Table 5-8 lists the platforms and the number of APs supported.

**Table 5-8 WLAN Controller Platforms**

<b>Platform</b>	<b>Number of Supported Access Points</b>
Cisco 2100 series WLC	25
Cisco WLC for ISRs	25
Catalyst 3750 Integrated WLC	50
Cisco 4400 series WLC	100
Cisco 6500/7600 series WLC module	300
Cisco 5500 series WLC	500

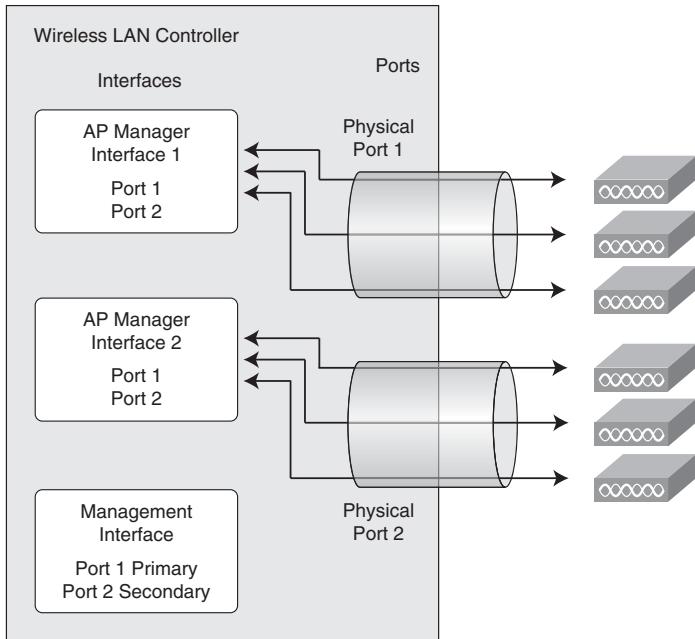
There are two ways to scale beyond the default 48 APs on a Cisco WLC:

- **Use multiple AP interfaces:** This option is only supported on 4400 series controllers.
- **Use link aggregation (LAG):** This option is supported by 5500 and 4400 series controllers and is the default for 3750G Integrated WLC and Catalyst 6500 series WiSM.

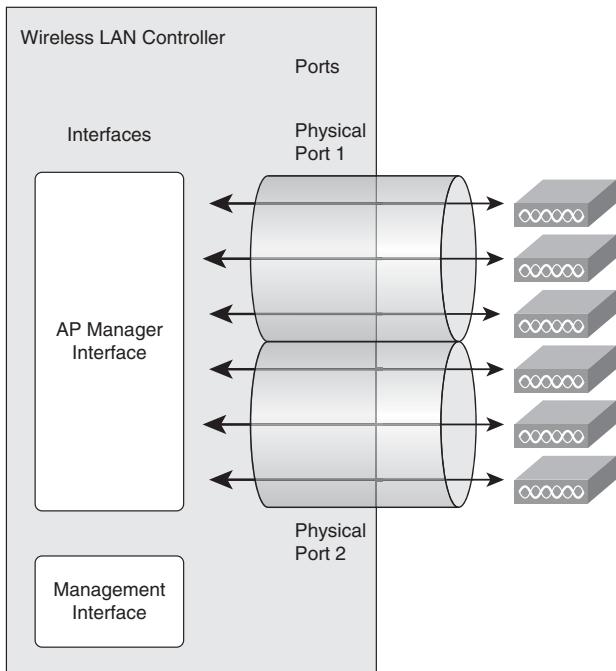
As shown in Figure 5-8, with multiple AP manager interfaces each manager interface is mapped to a physical port. The AP load is distributed dynamically. One advantage with AP manager interfaces is that the WLC can be connected to more than one neighbor device.

Figure 5-9 shows the use of LAG. With LAG, the system dynamically manages port redundancy and load balances APs across an EtherChannel interface transparently. The limit of 48 APs per port does not apply when LAG is enabled. With LAG enabled, the 4402 controller supports up to 50 APs, and the 4404 supports up to 100 APs. LAG is the recommended solution.

One limitation of LAG is that the WLC platforms only support one LAG group per controller. When LAG is enabled, all the physical ports, excluding the services port, are included in the bundle. Therefore, the WLC using LAG cannot be connected to more than one neighbor device.



**Figure 5-8** WLC AP Manager Interface



**Figure 5-9** WLC LAG

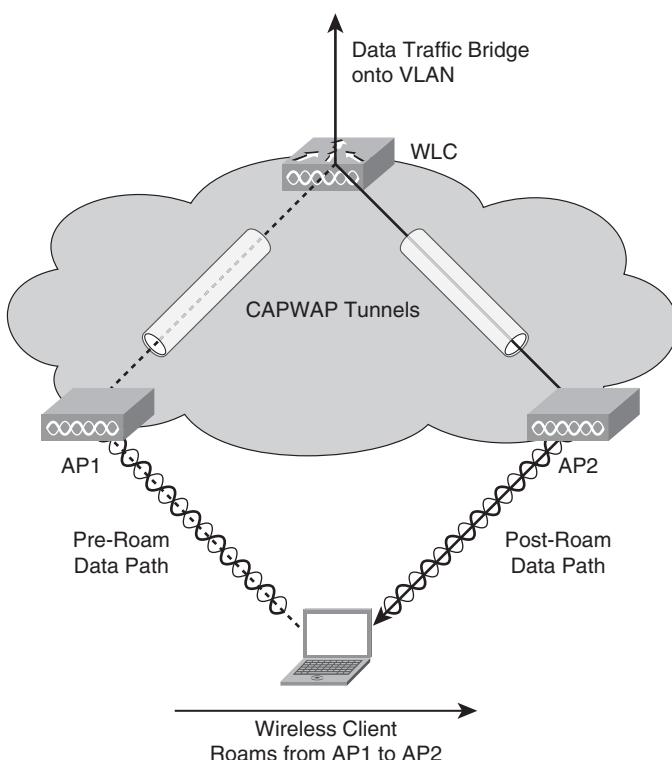


## Roaming and Mobility Groups

The primary reason to have wireless networks is roaming: the ability to access network resources from common areas and in areas where it is difficult to run cabling. End clients might want to move from one location to another. Mobility allows users to access the network from several locations. Roaming occurs when the wireless client changes association from one AP to another. The challenge is to scale the wireless network to allow client roaming that is seamless and secure. Roaming can be intracontroller or intercontroller.

### Intracontroller Roaming

Intracontroller roaming, shown in Figure 5-10, occurs when a client moves association from one AP to another AP that is joined to the same WLC. The WLC updates the client database with the new associated AP and does not change the client's IP address. If required, clients are reauthenticated, and a new security association is established. The client database remains on the same WLC.

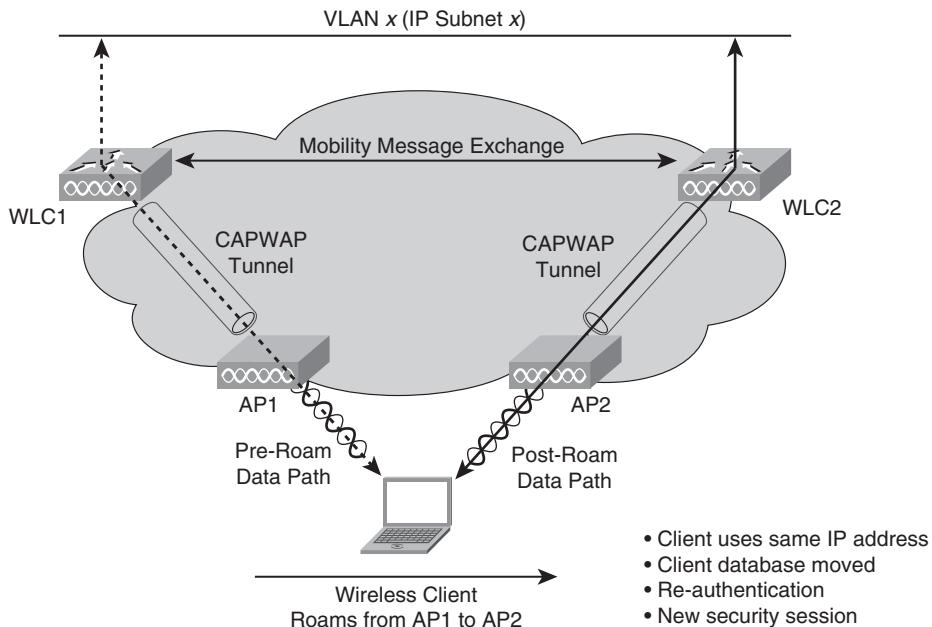


**Figure 5-10** Intracontroller Roaming

### Layer 2 Intercontroller Roaming

Intercontroller roaming occurs when a client moves association from one AP to another

when the client traffic is bridged to the same IP subnet. Figure 5-11 shows Layer 2 intercontroller roaming. Traffic remains of the same IP subnet, and no IP address changes to the client occur. The client database is moved from WLC1 to WLC2. The client is reauthenticated, and a new security session is established.



**Figure 5-11** Layer 2 Intercontroller Roaming

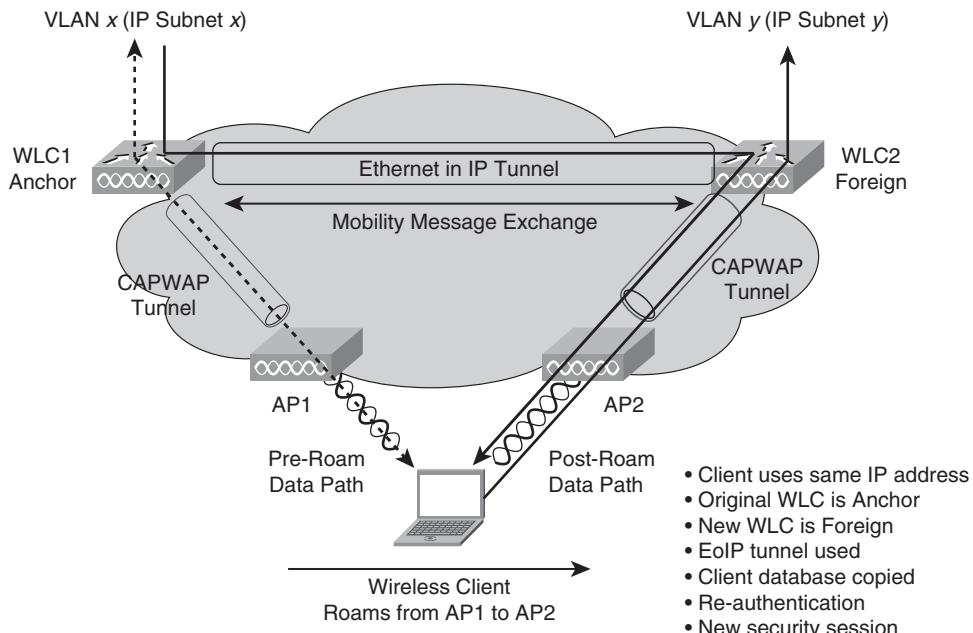
### Layer 3 Intercontroller Roaming

With Layer 3 intercontroller roaming, shown in Figure 5-12, a client moves association from one AP to another AP that is joined to a different WLC that is on a different IP subnet than the first WLC. Then the traffic is bridged onto a different IP subnet. When the client associates to AP2, WLC2 then exchanges mobility messages with WLC1. The original client database is not moved to WLC 2. Instead, WLC1 marks the client with an "Anchor" entry in its database. The database entry is copied to WLC2's database and is marked as a "Foreign" entry. The wireless client maintains its original IP address and is reauthenticated. A new security session is then established.

Client traffic then routes in an asymmetric manner. Traffic from the client is forwarded by the Foreign WLC, but traffic to the client arrives at the Anchor WLC, which forwards it through an Ethernet-in-IP (EtherIP) tunnel to the Foreign WLC. The Foreign WLC forwards the data traffic to the client.

### Mobility Groups

Mobility groups allow controllers to peer with each other to support roaming across con-



**Figure 5-12 Layer 3 Intercontroller Roaming**

When you assign WLCs to mobility groups, the WLCs dynamically exchange mobility messages and data is tunneled via EtherIP between the Anchor and Foreign AP. WLCs should be placed in mobility groups when intercontroller roaming is possible and for controller redundancy.

Mobility groups support up to 24 controllers. The upper limit of APs supported in a mobility group is determined by the number of APs that the controllers support, which varies by controller type. A mobility list is a group of controllers configured on a single controller that specifies members in different mobility groups. Controllers can communicate across mobility groups, and clients can roam between APs in different mobility groups if the controllers are included in each other's mobility lists. Each WLC is configured with a list of the members in the mobility group. Mobility lists can support up to 72 controllers with Release 5.1 or later, up to 48 controllers with Release 5.0.

The WLCs exchange messages using UDP port 16666 for unencrypted messages or UDP port 16667 for encrypted messages. APs learn the IP addresses of other members of the mobility group after the CAPWAP join process.

As an example of the scalability, if 24 Cisco 2100 WLCs (25 APs supported per 2100 WLC) are used,  $24 * 25 = 144$  APs are supported. As another example recall that Cisco 4404-100 series WLCs support 100 APs. If 20 4404-100 WLCs are used,  $20 * 100 = 2000$  APs are supported.

As a best practice, Cisco recommends minimizing intercontroller roaming in the network. controllers. Cisco also states that Layer 2 roaming is more efficient than Layer 3 roaming

because of the asymmetric communication of Layer 3 roaming. Proactive key caching (PKC) or Cisco Compatible Extensions (CCKM) Version 4 is recommended to speed up and secure roaming.

## WLAN Design

This section covers controller redundancy design, radio frequency groups, site survey, and WLAN design considerations.

### Controller Redundancy Design: Deterministic vs. Dynamic



WLCs can be configured for dynamic or deterministic redundancy. For deterministic redundancy, the AP is configured with a primary, secondary, and tertiary controller. This requires more upfront planning but allows better predictability and faster failover times.

Deterministic redundancy is the recommended best practice. N+1, N+N, and N+N+1 are examples of deterministic redundancy. Advantages of deterministic redundancy include

- Predictability
- Network stability
- Flexible and powerful redundancy design options
- Faster failover times
- Fallback option in case of failover

The disadvantage of deterministic controller redundancy is that it requires more upfront planning and configuration.

Dynamic controller redundancy uses CAPWAP to load balance APs across WLCs. CAPWAP populates APs with a backup WLC. This solution works better when WLCs are in a centralized cluster. The disadvantages are longer failover times and unpredictable operation. An example is adjacent APs registering with differing WLCs.

Advantages of Dynamic controller redundancy include

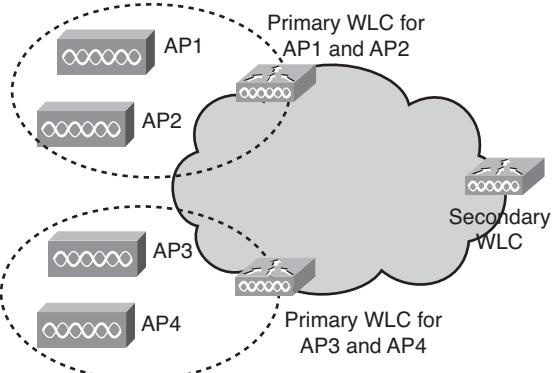
- Easy to deploy and configure
- Access Points dynamically load balance

Disadvantages include longer failover times, unpredictable operation, more intercontroller roaming, and no fallback option in the event of controller failure.

### N+1 WLC Redundancy

With N+1 redundancy, shown in Figure 5-13, a single WLC acts as the backup of multiple WLCs. The backup WLC is configured as the secondary WLC on each AP. One design constraint is that the backup WLC might become oversubscribed if there are too many

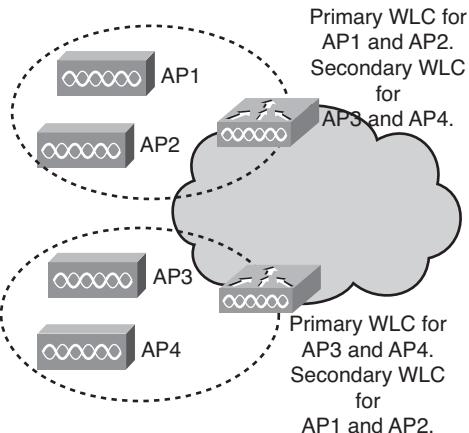
APs and it is normally placed in the data center.



**Figure 5-13** *N+1 Controller Redundancy*

### N+N WLC Redundancy

With N+N redundancy, shown in Figure 5-14, an equal number of controllers back up each other. For example, a pair of WLCs on one floor serves as a backup to a second pair on another floor. The top WLC is primary for AP1 and AP2 and secondary for AP3 and AP4. The bottom WLC is primary for AP3 and AP4 and secondary for AP1 and AP2. There should be enough capacity on each controller to manage a failover situation.

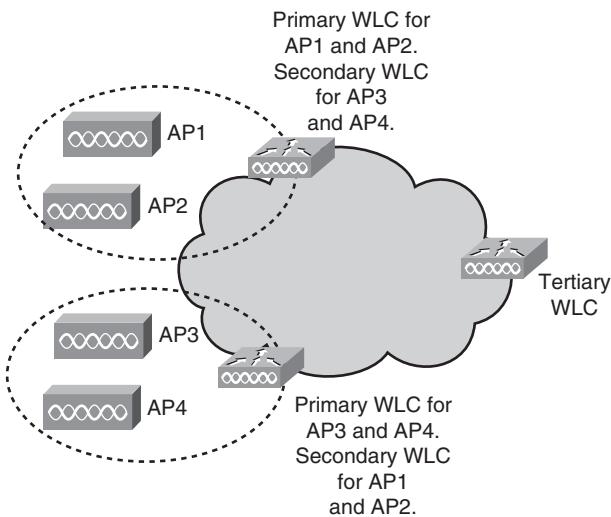


**Figure 5-14** *N+N Controller Redundancy*

### N+N+1 WLC Redundancy

With N+N+1 redundancy, shown in Figure 5-15, an equal number of controllers back up each other (as with N+N), plus a backup WLC is configured as the tertiary WLC for the APs. N+N+1 redundancy functions the same as N+N redundancy plus a tertiary controller

network operations center.



**Figure 5-15** *N+N+1 Controller Redundancy*

Table 5-9 covers WLC redundancy.

**Table 5-9** *WLC Redundancy*

<b>WLC Redundancy</b>	<b>Description</b>
N+1	A single WLC acts as the backup for multiple WLCs. The backup WLC is configured as the secondary on APs.
N+N	An equal number of controllers back up each other.
N+N+1	An equal number of controllers back up each other. The backup WLC is configured as the tertiary on APs.

## Radio Management and Radio Groups

The limit of available channels in the ISM frequencies used by the IEEE 802.11b/g/n standard presents challenges to the network designer. There are three nonoverlapping channels (channels 1, 6, and 11). The recommended best practice is to limit the number of data devices connected to each AP to 20, or no more than 7 concurrent voice over WLAN (VoWLAN) calls using G.711 or 8 concurrent VoWLAN calls using G.729. Additional APs should be added as user population grows to maintain this ratio of data and voice per AP.

Cisco Radio Resource Management (RRM) is a method to manage AP RF channel and power configuration. Cisco WLCs use the RRM algorithm to automatically configure, optimize, and self-heal. Cisco RRM functions are as follows:

- **Radio resource monitoring:**

are sent to the WLC, which can detect rogue APs, clients, and interfering APs.

- **Dynamic channel assignment:** WLCs automatically assign channels to avoid interference.
- **Interference detection and avoidance:** As Cisco LWAPs monitor all channels, interference is detected by a predefined threshold (10 percent by default). Interference can be generated by rogue APs, microwaves, cordless telephones, Bluetooth devices, neighboring WLANs, or other electronic devices.
- **Dynamic transmit power control:** The WLCs automatically adjust power levels.
- **Coverage hole detection and correction:** WLCs may adjust the power output of APs if clients report that a low received signal strength indication (RSSI) level is detected.
- **Client and network load balancing:** Clients can be influenced to associate with certain APs to maintain network balance.

With AP self-healing WLCs use RRM to raise the power levels and adjust the channel selection of neighbor APs to compensate for lost of coverage of a failed AP. APs report a lost neighbor when they no longer receive neighbor messages at -70 dBm.

## RF Groups

An RF group is a cluster of WLC devices that coordinate their RRM calculations. When the WLCs are placed in an RF group, the RRM calculation can scale from a single WLC to multiple floors, buildings, or even the campus. As shown in Figure 5-16, APs send neighbor messages to other APs. If the neighbor message is above -80 dBm, the controllers form an RF group. The WLCs elect an RF group leader to analyze the RF data. The RF group leader exchanges messages with the RF group members using UDP port 12114 for 802.11b/g/n and UDP port 12115 for 802.11a.



RF groups are formed with the following process:

1. APs send out neighbor messages over the air. The message includes an encrypted shared secret that is configured in the WLC and pushed to each AP.
2. APs sharing the same secret are able to validate messages from each other. Neighbor messages need to be over -80dBm to form a RF group.
3. The members in the RF group elect an RF group leader to maintain a “master” power and channel scheme for the RF group. The RF group leader analyzes real-time radio data collected by the system and calculates the master power and channel plan.

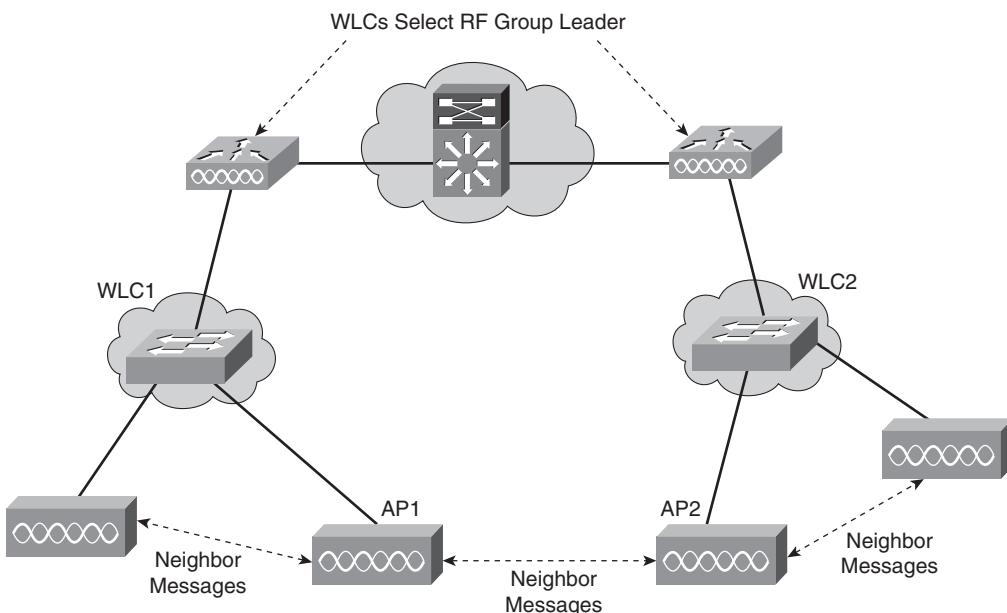
## RF Site Survey

Similar to performing an assessment for a wired network design, RF site surveys are done to determine design parameters for WLANs and customer requirements. RF site surveys help determine the coverage areas and check for RF interference. This helps determine the appropriate placement of wireless APs.

The RF site survey has the following steps:

1. devices to support, sites where wireless devices will be located.

2. Obtain a facility diagram to identify the potential RF obstacles.
3. Visually inspect the facility to look for potential barriers to the propagation of RF signals, such as metal racks, elevator shafts, and stairwells.
4. Identify user areas that may be intensively used, such as conference rooms, and areas that are not heavily used, such as stairwells.
5. Determine preliminary AP locations, which need power, wired network access, cell coverage and overlap, channel selection, mounting locations, and antennas.
6. Perform the actual survey by using an AP to survey the location and received RF strength based on the targeted AP placement. Consider the effects of electrical machinery. Microwave ovens and elevators might distort the radio signal from the APs.
7. Document the findings by recording the target AP locations, log signal readings, and data rates at outer boundaries. Information included in the report includes the following:
  - Detail customer requirements; describe and diagram AP coverage.
  - Parts list, including APs, antennas, accessories, and network components.
  - Describe tools used and methods used for the survey.

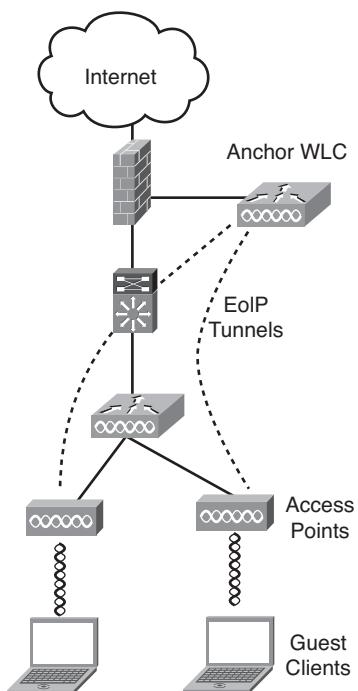


**Figure 5-16** RF Groups

## Using EoIP Tunnels for Guest Services

Basic solutions use separate VLANs for guest and corporate users to segregate guest traffic from corporate traffic. The guest SSID is broadcast, but the corporate SSID is not. All other security parameters are configured. Another solution is to use Ethernet over IP (EoIP) to tunnel the guest traffic from the CAPWAP to an anchor WLC.

As shown in Figure 5-17, EoIP is used to logically segment and transport guest traffic from the edge AP to the anchor WLC. There is no need to define guest VLANs in the internal network, and corporate traffic is still locally bridged. The Ethernet frames from the guest clients are maintained across the CAPWAP and EoIP tunnels.



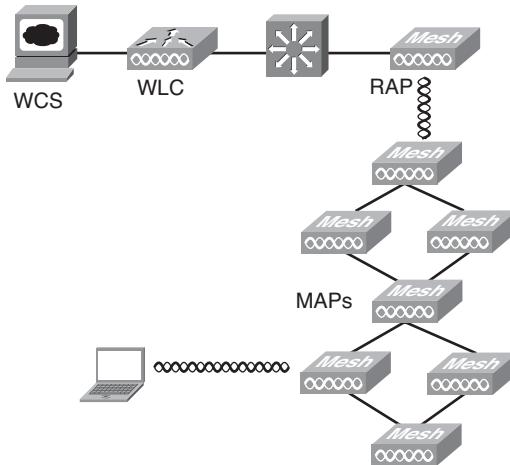
**Figure 5-17 EoIP Tunnels**

## Wireless Mesh for Outdoor Wireless

Traditionally, outdoor wireless solutions have been limited to point-to-point and point-to-multipoint bridging between buildings. With these solutions, each AP is wired to the network. The Cisco wireless mesh networking solution, shown in Figure 5-18, eliminates the need to wire each AP and allows users to roam from one area to another without having to reconnect.

The wireless mesh components are shown in Table 5-10.



**Figure 5-18** Wireless Mesh Components**Table 5-10** Wireless Mesh Components

Wireless Mesh Component	Description
Wireless Control System (WCS)	The wireless mesh SNMP management system allows networkwide configuration and management.
WLAN Controller (WLC)	Links the mesh APs to the wired network and performs all the tasks previously described for a WLC such as management of multiple APs, mitigate radio interference, manage security, and provide Layer 3 mobility.
Rooftop AP (RAP)	Connects the mesh to the wired network and serves as the root. It also communicates with the MAPs. RAPs are typically located on rooftops or towers.
Mesh Access Point (MAP)	Remote APs that provide access to wireless clients. They communicate with the RAP to connect to the wired network. MAPs are typically located on top of a pole, such as a lamppost.

### Mesh Design Recommendations

The following are Cisco recommendations (and considerations) for mesh design:

- There is a < 10-ms latency per hop. Typically 2 ms to 3 ms.
- For outdoor deployment, four or fewer hops are recommended for best performance. A maximum of eight hops is supported.
- For indoor deployment, one hop is supported.
- For best performance, 20 MAP nodes per RAP is recommended. Up to 32 MAPs is supported per RAP.
- Throughput: one hop = 14 Mbps, two hops = 7 Mbps, three hops = 3 Mbps, four hops = 1 Mbps.

## Campus Design Considerations

When designing for the Cisco Unified Wireless Network, you need to be able to determine how many LWAPs to place and how they will be managed with the WLCs. Table 5-11 summarizes campus design considerations.

**Table 5-11 WLAN Design Considerations**

Design Item	Description
Number of APs	The design should have enough APs to provide full RF coverage for wireless clients for all the expected locations in the enterprise. Cisco recommends 20 data devices per AP and 7 G.711 concurrent or 8 G.729 concurrent VoWLAN calls.
Placement of APs	APs are placed in a centralized location of the expected area for which they are to provide access. APs are placed in conference rooms to accommodate peak requirements.
Power for APs	Traditional wall power can be used, but the preferred solution is to use Power over Ethernet (PoE) to power APs and provide wired access.
Number of WLCs	The number of WLCs depends on the selected redundancy model based on the client's requirements. The number of controllers is also dependent on the number of required APs and the number of APs supported by the differing WLC models.
Placement of WLCs	WLCs are placed on secured wiring closets or in the data center. Deterministic redundancy is recommended, and intercontroller roaming should be minimized. WLCs can be placed in a central location or distributed in the campus distribution layer.

Table 5-12 compares indoor AP features for Cisco APs.

**Table 5-12 Supported Features and Specifications for Cisco APs**

Feature	AP 1130	AP 1140	AP 3500i	AP1240	AP1250	AP 1260	AP 3500e
Data uplink	10/100	10/100/ 1000	10/100/ 1000	10/100	10/100/1000	10/100/ 1000	10/100/ 1000
Power requirement	802.3af	802.3af	802.3af	802.3af	E-PoE	802.3af	802.3af
Installation	for car- peted offices	for car- peted offices	for car- peted offices	rugged	rugged	rugged	rugged
Temp range	0 to +40C	0 to +40C	0 to +40C	20 to +55C	20 to +55C	20 to +55C	20 to

**Table 5-12** Supported Features and Specifications for Cisco APs

Feature	AP 1130	AP 1140	AP 3500i	AP1240	AP1250	AP 1260	AP 3500e
Antennas	Internal	Internal	Internal	External	External	External	External
WiFi standards	a/b/g	a/b/g/n	a/b/g/n	a/b/g	a/b/g/n	a/b/g/n	a/b/g/n
DRAM	32 MB	128 MB	128 MB	32 MB	64 MB	128 MB	128 MB
Flash	16 MB	32 MB	32 MB	16 MB	32 MB	32 MB	32 MB

## Branch Design Considerations

For branch networks, you need to consider the number and placement of APs, which depends on the location and expected number of wireless clients at the branch office. It may not be cost-justifiable to place a WLC at each branch office of an enterprise. One requirement is that the round-trip time (RTT) between the AP and the WLC should not exceed 300 ms. For centralized controllers, it is recommended that you use REAP or Hybrid REAP (H-REAP).

### Local MAC

CAPWAP supports local media access control (local MAC), which can be used in branch deployments. Unlike with split-MAC, the AP provides MAC management support for association requests and actions. Local MAC terminates client traffic at the wired port of the AP versus at the WLC. This allows direct local access to branch resources without requiring the data to travel to the WLC at the main office. Local MAC also allows the wireless client to function even if a WAN link failure occurs.

### REAP

REAP is designed to support remote offices by extending LWAPP control timers. With REAP control, traffic is still encapsulated over a LWAPP tunnel and is sent to the WLC. Management control and RF management are done over the WAN. Client data is locally bridged. With REAP, local clients still have local connectivity if the WAN fails.

WLCs support the same number of REAP devices as APs. REAP devices support only Layer 2 security policies, do not support Network Address Translation (NAT), and require a routable IP address.

### Hybrid REAP

H-REAP is an enhancement to REAP that provides additional capabilities such as NAT, more security options, and the ability to control up to three APs remotely. It is the preferred solution for remote or small office APs to connect to the wireless controllers over the WAN.

H-REAP operates in two security modes:

- **Standalone mode:** H-REAP does the client authentication itself when the WLC cannot be reached. In standalone mode, H-REAP supports WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK for client authentication.
- **Connected mode:** The device uses the WLC for client authentication. In connected mode, H-REAP supports WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, VPNs, L2TP, EAP, and web authentication for client authentication.

H-REAP is delay sensitive. The RTT must not exceed 300 ms between the AP and the WLC. And, CAPWAP must be prioritized over other traffic.

### Branch Office Controller Options

For branch offices, Cisco recommends one of four options:

- **Cisco 2100 series:** Supports up to 25 APs.
- **Cisco 4402-12 and 4402-24:** These devices support 12 and 24 APs, respectively.
- **WLC Module in Integrated Services Router (ISR):** Supports up to 25 APs.
- **3750 with WLAN controller:** Depending on the model, this can support 25 or 50 APs.

The following points summarize WLAN design:

- An RF site survey is used to determine a wireless network's RF characteristics and AP placement.
- Guest services are easily supported using EoIP tunnels in the Cisco Unified Wireless Network.
- Outdoor wireless networks are supported using outdoor APs and Cisco wireless mesh networking APs.
- Campus wireless network design provides RF coverage for wireless clients in the campus using LWAPs. The LWAPs are managed by WLCs.
- Branch wireless network design provides RF coverage for wireless clients in the branch. Central management of REAP or H-REAP APs can be supported.
- Each AP should be limited to 20 data devices on a data WLAN.
- For voice over wireless design, it is recommended that a separate SSID be used for voice and that each AP support roughly seven (G.711) to eight (G.729) voice calls over VoWLAN. This is because all devices share bandwidth.

Table 5-13 provides a quick summary of the UDP ports used by wireless protocols.

**Table 5-13** UDP Ports Used by WLAN Protocols

WLAN Protocol	UDP Port
LWAPP control	UDP 12223
LWAPP data	UDP 12222

**Table 5-13** UDP Ports Used by WLAN Protocols

<b>WLAN Protocol</b>	<b>UDP Port</b>
WLC exchange messages (unencrypted)	UDP 16666
WLC exchange messages (encrypted)	UDP 16667
RF group IEEE 802.11b/g	UDP 12114
RF group IEEE 802.11a	UDP 12115
CAPWAP control	UDP 5246
CAPWAP data	UDP 5247

## References and Recommended Readings

Cisco Outdoor Wireless Network Solution, [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns621/networking\\_solutions\\_package.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns621/networking_solutions_package.html).

Cisco Unified Wireless Network, [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns348/ns337/networking\\_solutions\\_package.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns348/ns337/networking_solutions_package.html)

Cisco Wireless Control System, [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6305/index.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6305/index.html).

Enterprise Mobility 3.0 Design Guide, [www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/solution/embly30.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/solution/embly30.pdf).

IEEE Std 802.11g-2003. Amendment to IEEE Std 802.11, 1999 Edition.

Lightweight Access Point FAQ, [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6306/products\\_qanda\\_item09186a00806a4da3.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6306/products_qanda_item09186a00806a4da3.shtml).

Light Weight Access Point Protocol (LWAPP), (draft-ohara-capwap-lwapp-02), <http://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ohara-capwap-lwapp-02>

RFC 5415, Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) Protocol Specification, <http://tools.ietf.org/search/rfc5415>.

RFC 5416, Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) Protocol Binding for IEEE 802.11, <http://tools.ietf.org/search/rfc54156>.

Cisco Wireless LAN Controller FAQ, [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6366/products\\_qanda\\_item09186a008064a991.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6366/products_qanda_item09186a008064a991.shtml)

Cisco Wireless LAN Controller Best Practices, [www.cisco.com/en/US/tech/tk722/tk809/technologies\\_tech\\_note09186a0080810880.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/tech/tk722/tk809/technologies_tech_note09186a0080810880.shtml)

“Wireless LAN MAC and Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications,” IEEE 802.11-1999. Piscataway, New Jersey: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 1999.

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 5-14 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 5-14** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Summary	WLAN standards campus media	155
Summary	Cisco Unified Wireless Network Architecture	160
Summary	CAPWAP	163
List	Access point modes	164
List	WLAN controller components	169
Summary	Roaming and mobility groups	173
Summary	Controller redundancy design	176
Summary	Radio frequency groups	179
Summary	Wireless mesh for outdoor wireless	181

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

AP, CAPWAP, CSMA/CA, DSSS, FHSS, H-REAP, IEEE 802.1x, LAG, LWAPP, MIMO, MAP, N+1 redundancy, N+N redundancy, N+N+1 redundancy, RF groups, RRM, RAP, SSID, split-MAC, WLAN, WLC

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** What is the maximum data rate of IEEE 802.11g?
- 2.** What is the typical data rate of IEEE 802.11n?
- 3.** What are some difficulties with having to manage hundreds of standalone APs?
- 4.** What standard does IEEE 802.11i use for confidentiality, integrity, and authentication?
- 5.** List at least four benefits of Cisco UWN.
- 6.** True or false: With split-MAC, the control and data frames are load-balanced between the LWAP and the WLC.
- 7.** True or false: With split-MAC, the WLC, not the LWAP, is responsible for authentication and key management.
- 8.** What CAPWAP transport mode is the preferred and most scalable?
  - a.** Intra
  - b.** Layer 2
  - c.** Layer 3
  - d.** EoIP
- 9.** What is the preferred intercontroller roaming option?
  - a.** Intra
  - b.** Layer 2
  - c.** Layer 3
  - d.** EoIP
- 10.** What device places user traffic on the appropriate VLAN?
  - a.** Lightweight AP
  - b.** WLAN controller
  - c.** MAP
  - d.** RAP
- 11.** How many access points are supported in a mobility group using Cisco 4400 series WLCs?
  - a.** 144
  - b.** 1200
  - c.** 2400
  - d.** 7200

- 12.** What is the recommended number of data devices an AP can support for best performance?
- a.** About 6
  - b.** 7 to 8
  - c.** 10 to 15
  - d.** About 20
- 13.** What is the recommended number of VoWLAN devices an AP can support for best performance?
- a.** 2 to 3
  - b.** 7 to 8
  - c.** 10 to 15
  - d.** About 20
- 14.** What method is used to manage radio frequency channels and power configuration?
- a.** WLC
  - b.** WCS
  - c.** RRM
  - d.** MAP
- 15.** What is the typical latency per wireless mesh hop in milliseconds?
- a.** 1 to 3
  - b.** 7 to 8
  - c.** 10 to 15
  - d.** About 20
- 16.** What is the recommended maximum RTT between an AP and the WLC?
- a.** 20 ms
  - b.** 50 ms
  - c.** 100 ms
  - d.** 300 ms
- 17.** What is the recommended controller redundancy technique?
- a.** N+1+N
  - b.** Static
  - c.** Dynamic
  - d.** Deterministic

**18.** What is the recommended best practice for guest services?

- a.** Use separate VLANs.
- b.** Use separate routers and access lists.
- c.** Obtain a DSL connection and bridge to the local LAN.
- d.** Use EoIP to isolate traffic to the DMZ.

**19.** What is the recommended best practice for branch WLANs?

- a.** Use H-REAP with centralized controllers.
- b.** Use local-MAP.
- c.** Use wireless mesh design.
- d.** Use EoIP.

**20.** What are two recommended best practices for WLC design?

- a.** Maximize intercontroller roaming.
- b.** Minimize intercontroller roaming.
- c.** Use distributed controller placement.
- d.** Use centralized controller placement.

**21.** How many APs does the Cisco 6500 WLC module support?

- a.** 6
- b.** 50
- c.** 100
- d.** 300

**22.** Match each access point mode with its description:

- i. Local
  - ii. REAP
  - iii. Monitor
  - iv. Rogue detector
  - v. Sniffer
  - vi. Bridge
- a.** For location-based services
  - b.** Captures packets
  - c.** For point-to-point connections
  - d.** Default mode

- e. Management across the WAN
- f. Monitors rogue APs

**23.** Match each WLC interface type with its description.

- i. Management
  - ii. Service port
  - iii. AP manager
  - iv. Dynamic
  - v. Virtual
- a. Authentication and mobility
  - b. Analogous to user VLANs
  - c. Discovery and association
  - d. Out-of-band management
  - e. In-band management

**24.** Match each roaming technique with its client database entry change.

- i. Intracluster roaming
  - ii. Layer 2 intercluster roaming
  - iii. Layer 3 intercluster roaming
- a. The client entry is moved to a new WLC.
  - b. The client entry is updated on the same WLC.
  - c. The client entry is copied to a new WLC.

**25.** Match each UDP port with its protocol.

- i. LWAPP data
  - ii. RF group 802.11b/g
  - iii. WLC encrypted exchange
  - iv. LWAPP control
  - v. WLC unencrypted exchange
  - vi. CAPWAP control
  - vii. CAPWAP data
- a. UDP 12114
  - b. UDP 12222
  - c. UDP 5246

- d.** UDP 5247
- e.** UDP 12223
- f.** UDP 16666
- g.** UDP 16667

**26.** Match each wireless mesh component with its description.

- i.** WCS
  - ii.** WLC
  - iii.** RAP
  - iv.** MAP
- a.** Root of the mesh network
  - b.** Remote APs
  - c.** Networkwide configuration and management
  - d.** Links APs to the wired network

**27.** How many MAP nodes are recommended per rooftop AP?

- a.** 6
- b.** 20
- c.** 500
- d.** 100

**28.** Which of the following shows the correct order of the steps in an RF site survey?

- a.** Define requirements, document findings, perform the survey, determine preliminary AP locations, identify coverage areas.
- b.** Define requirements, perform the survey, determine preliminary AP locations, identify coverage areas, document findings.
- c.** Identify coverage areas, define requirements, determine preliminary AP locations, perform the survey, document findings.
- d.** Define requirements, identify coverage areas, determine preliminary AP locations, perform the survey, document findings.

**29.** What technique performs dynamic channel assignment, power control, and interference detection and avoidance?

- a.** CAPWAP
- b.** RRM
- c.** Mobility
- d.** LEAP

**30.** What are the three nonoverlapping channels of IEEE 802.11b/g?

- a.** Channels A, D, and G
- b.** Channels 1, 6, and 11
- c.** Channels 3, 8, and 11
- d.** Channels A, E, and G

**31.** Which of the following statements is true?

- a.** IEEE 802.11g is backward compatible with 802.11b; 802.11a is not compatible with 802.11b.
- b.** IEEE 802.11a is backward compatible with 802.11b; 802.11g is not compatible with 802.11b.
- c.** IEEE 802.11b is backward compatible with 802.11a; 802.11g is not compatible with 802.11b.
- d.** IEEE 802.11n is backward compatible with 802.11a and 802.11g.

**32.** What is necessary when you use H-LEAP for authentication?

- a.** WLC
- b.** WCS
- c.** RADIUS server
- d.** LWAP

**33.** A LWAP is added to a network. What sequence accurately reflects the process it will use to associate with the WLAN controller?

- a.** First master, secondary, tertiary, greatest AP capacity
- b.** Primary, secondary, tertiary, greatest AP capacity, master
- c.** Primary, secondary, tertiary, master, greatest AP capacity
- d.** Greatest AP capacity, primary, secondary, master

**34.** An LWAP is added to a network that is in a separate IP subnet from the WLAN controller. OTAP has not been enabled. Which two methods can be used by the LWAP to find the WLAN controller?

- a.** DHCP
- b.** Primary, secondary, tertiary, greatest AP capacity, master
- c.** Primary, secondary, tertiary, master, greatest AP capacity
- d.** Greatest AP capacity, primary, secondary, master
- e.** DNS
- f.** Local subnet broadcast

- 35.** Which two of the following statements represent a preferred Wireless LWAPP implementation? (Select two.)
- a.** Use of Layer 2 LWAPP is preferred over Layer 3 LWAPP.
  - b.** Use of Layer 3 LWAPP is preferred over Layer 2 LWAPP.
  - c.** Open ports for Layer 2 LWAPP on EtherType 0xABAB and Layer 3 on TCP 12222 and TCP 12223.
  - d.** Open ports on Layer 2 LWAPP on EtherType 0xBBB and Layer 3 on UDP 12222 and UDP 12223.
  - e.** Open ports on Layer 2 LWAPP on EtherType 0xBABA and Layer 3 on UDP 12222 and TCP 12223.
- 36.** Which two of the following statements represent a preferred split-MAC LWAPP implementation? (Select two.)
- a.** IEEE 802.1Q trunking extends from the wired infrastructure to a WLAN controller. Then the 802.1Q packet is encapsulated in CAPWAP or LWAPP and sent to the access point for transmission over the SSID.
  - b.** Each wireless client authentication type maps to a unique SSID, which in turn maps to a common shared VLAN.
  - c.** 802.1Q trunking extends from the wired infrastructure to the access point for translation into SSIDs.
  - d.** Each wireless client authentication type maps to a unique SSID, which in turn maps to a unique VLAN.
  - e.** 802.1Q trunking extends from the wired infrastructure to a WLAN controller for translation into SSIDs.
- 37.** Which two of these are required for Cisco wireless client mobility deployment?
- a.** Matching security
  - b.** Matching mobility group name
  - c.** Matching RF channel
  - d.** Matching RF group name
  - e.** Matching RF power
  - f.** Assigned master controller

- 38.** Which describe best practice for Cisco outdoor wireless mesh networks? (Select three.)
- a.** RAP implemented with 20 or fewer MAP nodes
  - b.** RAP implemented with 20 to 32 MAP nodes
  - c.** Mesh hop counts of 4 or fewer
  - d.** Mesh hop counts of 8 to 4
  - e.** Client access via 802.11b/g and backhaul with 802.11a
  - f.** Client access via 802.11a and backhaul with 802.11b/g
- 39.** Which describe best practices for Cisco WLAN guest access? (Select two.)
- a.** Guest tunnels have limitations on which wireless controllers can originate the tunnel.
  - b.** Guest tunnels have limitations on which wireless controllers can terminate the tunnel.
  - c.** Dedicated guest VLANs are only extended to the wireless controllers in the network to ensure path isolation.
  - d.** Dedicated guest VLANs are extended throughout the network to the access points for path isolation.
  - e.** Dedicated guest access in the DMZ extends from the origination to the termination controllers without dedicated guest VLANs.
  - f.** Guest tunnels can originate and terminate on any wireless controller platform.
- 40.** How are WLANs identified?
- a.** MAC addresses
  - b.** IP subnet
  - c.** SSID
  - d.** WEP key
  - e.** LAN ports
  - f.** Secure encryption key
- 41.** Which description is correct regarding Wireless solutions that provide higher bandwidth than point-to-multipoint (p2mp) wireless?
- a.** p2p links tend to be slower than p2mp.
  - b.** p2mp wireless connections can provide up to 1.544-Mbps raw bandwidth.
  - c.** p2p wireless connections can provide up to 44-Mbps raw bandwidth.
  - d.** P2mp links tend to be faster than p2mp.

**42.** Which WLAN attributes should be considered during a site survey? (Select two.)

- a.** Channels
- b.** Power
- c.** SSID
- d.** Network name
- e.** Authentication
- f.** Encryption

**43.** Which WLC interfaces are mandatory? (Select all that apply.)

- a.** Management
- b.** AP manager
- c.** Dynamic
- d.** Virtual
- e.** Service port
- f.** Extended

**44.** Which are differences between CAPWAP and LWAPP? (Select three.)

- a.** CAPWAP uses the newer AES. LWAPP uses DTLS.
- b.** CAPWAP uses DTLS. LWAPP uses AES.
- c.** CAPWAP control uses UDP 5246. LWAPP control uses UDP 12223.
- d.** CAPWAP control uses UDP 12223. LWAPP control uses UDP 5246.
- e.** CAPWAP is preferred.
- f.** LWAPP is preferred.

**45.** Which two of these functions of an access point in a split MAC architecture? (choose two)

- a.** 802.1Q encapsulation
- b.** EAP authentication
- c.** MAC layer encryption/decryption
- d.** Process probe response

*This page intentionally left blank*



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- WAN Overview
- WAN Transport Technologies
- WAN Design Methodology

## WAN Technologies

---

This chapter reviews wide-area network technologies. Expect plenty of questions about the selection and use of WAN technologies. The CCDA must understand the various WAN technology options and what makes them different from each other. This chapter also covers WAN design methodologies and how some quality of service (QoS) techniques can make better use of the available bandwidth.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 6-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 6-1** *Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping*

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
WAN Overview	1
WAN Transport Technologies	2–8
WAN Design Methodology	9, 10

- 1.** What are two modules or blocks used in the enterprise edge?
  - a.** Internet and campus core
  - b.** Core and building access
  - c.** Internet connectivity and WAN
  - d.** WAN and building distribution
  
- 2.** What MAN/WAN technology has bandwidth available from 10 Mbps to 1 Gbps?
  - a.** DSL
  - b.** Metro Ethernet
  - c.** TDM
  - d.** Frame Relay
  
- 3.** How much bandwidth does a T1 circuit provide?
  - a.** 155 Mbps
  - b.** 64 kbps
  - c.** 1.544 kbps
  - d.** 1.544 Mbps
  
- 4.** What methodology is used when designing the enterprise edge?
  - a.** Cisco-powered network
  - b.** ISL
  - c.** PPDIOO
  - d.** IEEE
  
- 5.** SONET/SDH technology is what kind of technology?
  - a.** Packet based
  - b.** Cell based
  - c.** Circuit based
  - d.** Segment based
  
- 6.** What technology delivers IP services using labels to forward packets from the source to the destination?
  - a.** ADSL
  - b.** Cable
  - c.** Frame Relay
  - d.** MPLS

7. GSM, GPRS, and UMTS are all part of \_\_\_\_\_ technologies.
- a. Wireless LAN
  - b. Wireless bridging
  - c. Mobile wireless
  - d. SONET/SDH
8. When designing a network for four separate sites, what technology allows a full mesh by using only one link per site rather than point-to-point TDM circuits?
- a. Dark fiber
  - b. Cable
  - c. ISDN
  - d. Frame Relay
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ size specifies the maximum number of frames that are transmitted without receiving an acknowledgment.
- a. Segment
  - b. Access
  - c. TCP
  - d. Window
10. Which of the following adds strict PQ to modular class-based QoS?
- a. LLQ
  - b. FIFO
  - c. CBWFQ
  - d. WFQ

## Foundation Topics

This chapter describes the WAN topics that you need to master for the CCDA exam. These topics include the WAN modules included in the enterprise edge, WAN technologies, WAN technology selection considerations, and WAN design methodologies. In addition, this chapter describes quality of service (QoS) and how it can be used to prioritize network traffic and better utilize the available WAN bandwidth.

### WAN Overview

WANs provide network connectivity for the enterprise edge, remote branch edge locations, and the Internet. Many WAN choices are available, and new ones are continually emerging. When you are selecting WAN transport technologies, it is important to consider factors such as cost, bandwidth, reliability, manageability, and hardware capabilities. In addition, enterprise branch offices can take advantage of cable and digital subscriber line (DSL) technologies for remote virtual private network (VPN) connectivity back to the headquarters or main office.

#### WAN Defined

Wide-area networks (WAN) are communications networks that are used to connect geographically disperse network locations. Generally, WAN services are offered by service providers or telecommunication carriers. WANs can transport data, voice, and video traffic. Service providers charge fees, called tariffs, for providing WAN services or communications to their customers. Sometimes the term *service* is referred to as the WAN communications provided by the carrier.



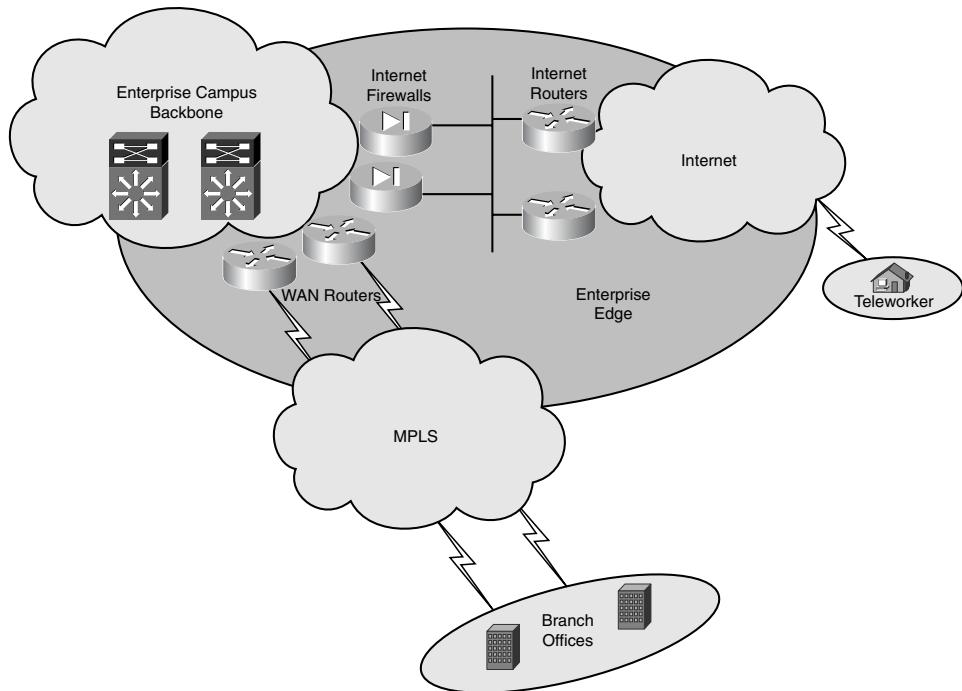
When designing a WAN, you should become familiar with the design's requirements, which typically derive from these two important goals:

- **Service level agreement (SLA):** Defines the availability of the network. Networked applications rely on the underlying network between the client and server to provide its functions. There are multiple levels of application availability that can be part of a negotiated SLA with a service provider. Organizations have to work with the carrier to define what level of service, such as bandwidth, allowed latency, and loss, is acceptable to the organization.
- **Cost and usage:** To select the correct reliable WAN service, you must consider the budget and usage requirements of the WAN service.

There are three key objectives of an effective WAN design:

- The WAN needs to support the goals and policies of the organization.
- The WAN technologies selected needs to meet the current application requirements and provide for growth of the organization in the future.
- The proposed design should stay within the budget that is allocated for the WAN design.

Figure 6-1 shows a typical enterprise edge with Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) and Internet WAN connections.



**Figure 6-1** Enterprise WAN

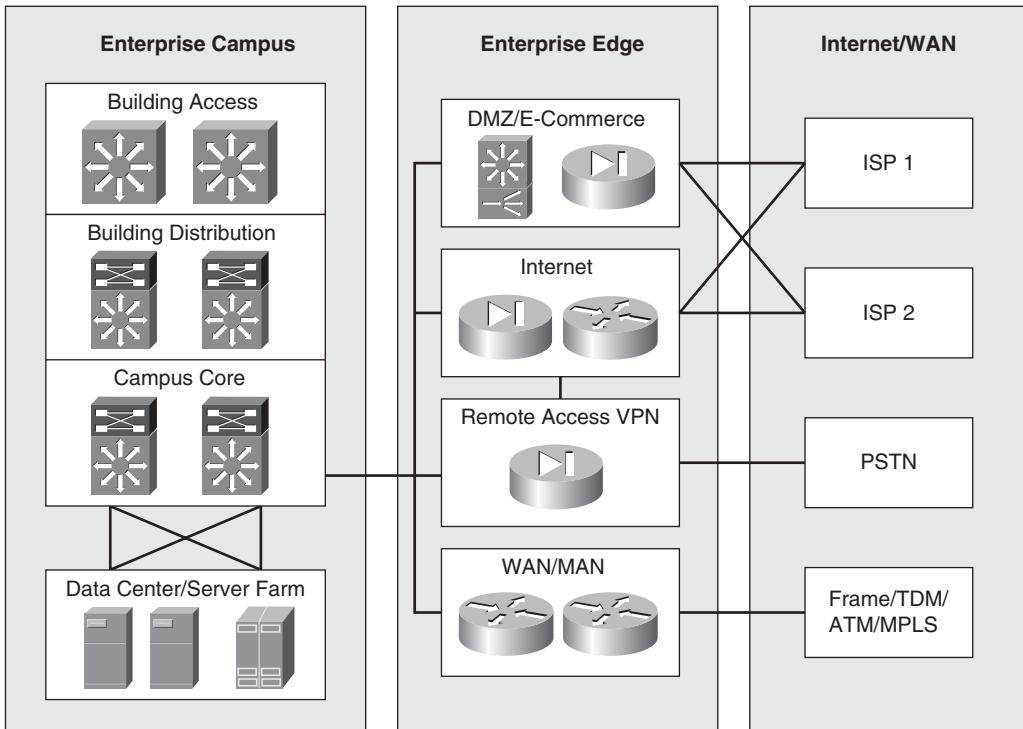
### WAN Connection Modules

The enterprise edge can have multiple WAN interconnections. Common connectivity modules include but are not limited to the Internet, the demilitarized zone (DMZ), and the WAN. Internet service providers (ISP) offer many connectivity options for the Internet and DMZ modules in the enterprise edge. WAN connectivity between an organization's headquarters and remote sites is generally across a service provider network, such as with MPLS WAN. Alternative options for connecting branch offices involve using broadband technologies, such as cable and DSL, coupled with IPsec VPNs over the Internet.

WAN technologies can be point-to-point (P2P) or multipoint such as Frame Relay or MPLS WAN services. Most WAN service providers offer MPLS WAN solutions where the enterprise edge router interacts with service providers at Layer 3. Public WAN connections over the Internet are available ranging from cable/DSL technologies all the way up to multigigabit connectivity options. Typically, these services do not provide any guarantee of network availability, so they are considered a “best effort” service. Frame Relay and MPLS network solutions usually have a much higher degree of reliability and availability.

**Note:** When you are seeking a WAN service, the options can vary depending on the service provider offering, so it is recommended to review options from multiple WAN service providers.

Figure 6-2 illustrates the use of modules, or blocks, in the enterprise edge.



**Figure 6-2** WAN Interconnections

## WAN Transport Technologies

Several factors should be considered when selecting a WAN transport technology. Some WAN options are public Internet based, and some are private WAN based. Geography also plays a key role in what WAN technologies are available in a given area. Major cities have the most WAN transport options, and rural areas are more limited as to the availability of WAN service options.

Table 6-2 examines some WAN technologies and highlights some common factors used to make WAN technology selections. This information also reflects the different characteristics of each WAN technology. However, keep in mind that your service provider offerings limit the WAN technology choices available to you during your selection.

**Table 6-2 WAN Comparison**

<b>WAN Technology</b>	<b>Bandwidth</b>	<b>Reliability</b>	<b>Latency</b>	<b>Cost</b>
ISDN	Low	Medium	Medium	Low
DSL	Low/medium	Low	Medium	Low
Cable	Low/Medium	Low	Medium	Low
Wireless	Low/Medium	Low	Medium	Medium
Frame Relay	Low/Medium	Medium	Low	Medium
TDM	Medium	High	Low	Medium
Metro Ethernet	Medium/high	High	Low	Medium
SONET/SDH	High	High	Low	High
MPLS	High	High	Low	High
Dark fiber	High	High	Low	High
DWDM	High	High	Low	High

The following sections offer more details about each WAN technology covered in Table 6-2.

## ISDN

Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) is an all-digital phone line connection that was standardized in the early 1980s. ISDN allows both voice and data to be transmitted over the digital phone line instead of the analog signals used in dialup connections. ISDN provides greater bandwidth and lower latency compared to dialup analog technology. ISDN comes in two service types: Basic Rate Interface (BRI) and Primary Rate Interface (PRI).

### ISDN BRI Service

ISDN BRI consists of two B channels and one D channel (2B+D). Both of the BRI B channels operate at 64 kbps and carry user data. The D channel handles the signaling and control information and operates at 16 kbps. Another 48 kbps is used for framing and synchronization, for a total bit rate of 192 kbps.

### ISDN PRI Service

ISDN PRI service offers 23 B channels and 1 D channel (23B+D) in both North America and Japan. Each channel (including the D channel) operates at 64 kbps, for a total bit rate of 1.544 Mbps, including overhead. In other parts of the world, such as Europe and Australia, the ISDN PRI service provides 30 B channels and 1 64-kbps D channel.

**Note:** Although ISDN has been around for many years, the industry is moving toward using broadband technologies such as cable, DSL and public wireless with IPsec VPNs. ISDN remains as an effective WAN solution only if broadband is not available.

## Digital Subscriber Line

Digital subscriber line (DSL) is a technology that provides high-speed Internet data services over ordinary copper telephone lines. It achieves this by using frequencies that are not used in normal voice telephone calls.

The term xDSL describes the various competing forms of DSL available today.

ADSL is the most popular DSL technology and is widely available. The key to ADSL is that the downstream bandwidth is asymmetric or higher than the upstream bandwidth. Some limitations include that ADSL can be used only in close proximity to the local DSLAM, typically less than 2 km. The local DSLAM, or digital subscriber line access multiplexer, allows telephone lines to make DSL connections to the Internet. Download speeds usually range from 768 kbps to 9 Mbps, and upload speeds range from 64 kbps to 1.5 Mbps. The customer premises equipment (CPE) refers to a PC along with DSL modem or DSL router that connects back to the network access provider (NAP) DSLAMs.

The ADSL circuit consists of a twisted-pair telephone line that contains their information channels:

- Medium-speed downstream channel
- Low-speed upstream channel
- Basic telephone service channel

DSL splitters are used to separate basic telephone service from the ADSL modem/router to provide service even if the ADSL signaling fails.

Although DSL is primarily used in the residential community, this technology can also be used as a WAN technology for an organization. However, keep in mind that because this is a public network connection over the Internet, it is recommended that this technology be used in conjunction with a firewall/VPN solution back into your corporate enterprise network. The high speeds and relatively low cost make this a popular Internet access WAN technology.

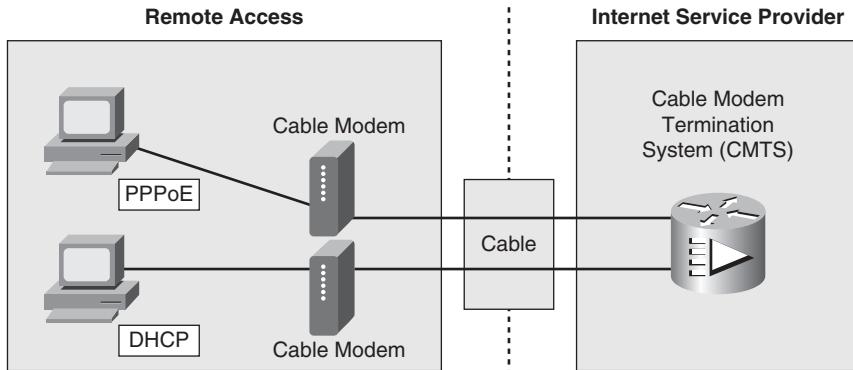
## Cable

Broadband cable is a technology used to transport data using a coaxial cable medium over cable distribution systems. The equipment used on the remote-access side or customer premises is the cable modem, and it connects to the Cable Modem Termination System (CMTS) on the ISP side. The Universal Broadband Router (uBR) or CMTS provides the CMTS services, which forward traffic upstream through the provider's Internet connections.

Cable modems support data, voice, and video TCP/IP traffic. Generally, cable modems are and corporate teleworkers.

The Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications (DOCSIS) protocol defines the cable procedures that the equipment needs to support.

Figure 6-3 illustrates how a cable modem connects to the CMTS. The PC connects to the TCP/IP network using PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE) or Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).



**Figure 6-3 Data over Cable**

## Wireless

Wireless as a technology uses electromagnetic waves to carry the signal between endpoints. Everyday examples of wireless technology include cell phones, wireless LANs, cordless computer equipment, and global positioning systems (GPS).

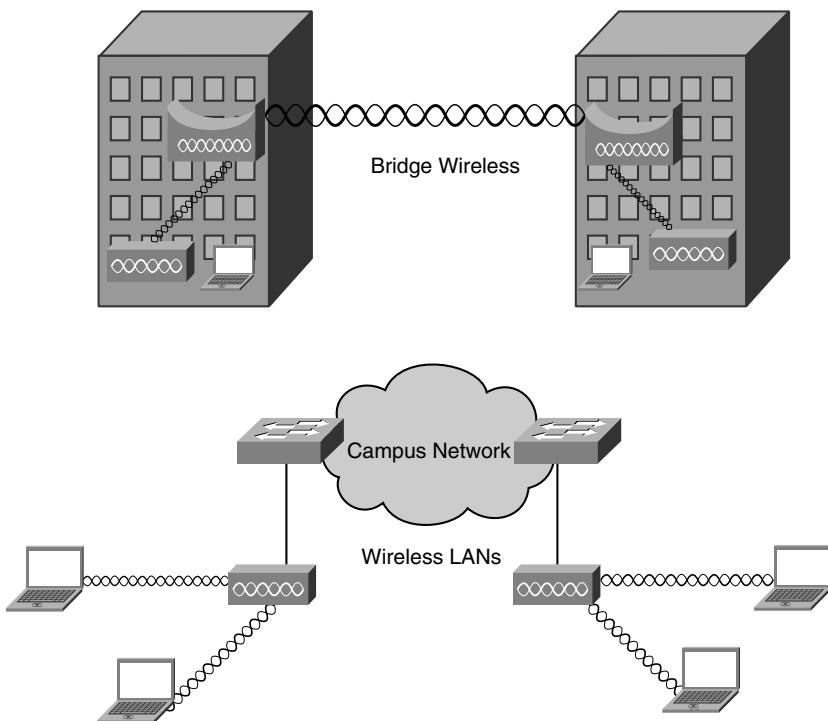
Here are some examples of wireless implementations:

- **Bridge wireless:** Wireless bridges connect two separate wireless networks, typically located in two separate buildings. This technology enables high data rates for use with line-of-sight applications. When interconnecting hard-to-wire sites, temporary networks, or warehouses, a series of wireless bridges can be connected to provide connectivity.
- **Wireless LAN:** WLANs have increased, too, in both residential and business environments to meet the demands of LAN connections over the air. Commonly called IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n or WiFi networks, 802.11n is now available and provides typical data rates of 150 Mbps to 300 Mbps. The growing range of applications includes guest access, voice over wireless, and advanced security and location-based services. A key advantage of WLANs is the ability to save time and money by avoiding costly physical layer wiring installations.
- **Mobile wireless:** Consists of cellular applications and mobile phones. Most wireless technologies, such as the second and third generations, are migrating to more digital

services to take advantage of the higher speeds. Mobile wireless technologies include GSM, GPRS, and UMTS:

- **GSM:** Global System for Mobile Communications. A digital mobile radio standard that uses time-division multiplex access (TDMA) technology in three bands (900, 1800, and 1900 MHz). The data transfer rate is 9600 bps and includes the ability to roam internationally.
- **GPRS:** General Packet Radio Service. Extends the capability of GSM speeds from 64 kbps to 128 kbps.
- **UMTS:** Universal Mobile Telecommunications Service. Also known as 3G broadband. Provides packet-based transmission of digitized voice, video, and data at rates up to 2.0 Mbps. UMTS also provides a set of services available to mobile users, location-independent throughout the world.

Figure 6-4 shows examples of bridge wireless and wireless LANs.



**Figure 6-4** Wireless Implementations

## Frame Relay

Relay is an industry standard networking protocol that uses virtual circuits between

connected devices. The data link layer in Frame Relay establishes connections using a DTE device such as a router and a DCE device such as a frame switch.

Frame Relay circuits between sites can be either permanent virtual circuits (PVC) or switched virtual circuits (SVC). PVCs are used more predominantly because of the connections' permanent nature. SVCs, on the other hand, are temporary connections created for each data transfer session.

A point-to-point PVC between two routers or endpoints uses a data-link connection identifier (DLCI) to identify the local end of the PVC. The DLCI is a locally significant numeric value that can be reused throughout the Frame Relay WAN if necessary.

Frame Relay has been deployed since the late 1980s, but the use of Frame Relay is on the decline because of the popularity of MPLS.

### Time-Division Multiplexing

Time-division multiplexing (TDM) is a type of digital multiplexing in which multiple channels such as data, voice, and video are combined over one communication medium by interleaving pulses representing bits from different channels. Basic DS0 channel bandwidth is defined at 64 kbps. In North America, a DS1 or T1 circuit provides 1.544 Mbps of bandwidth consisting of 24 time slots of 64 kbps each and an 8-kbps channel for control information. In addition, a DS3 or T3 circuit provides 44.736 Mbps of bandwidth. Other parts of the world, such as Europe, follow E1 standards, which allow for 30 channels at 2.048 Mbps of bandwidth. Service providers can guarantee or reserve the bandwidth used on TDM networks. The customers' TDM transmissions are charged for their exclusive access to these circuits. On the other hand, packet-switched networks typically are shared, thereby allowing the service providers more flexibility in managing their networks and the services they offer.

### Metro Ethernet

Metro Ethernet uses well-known “Ethernet” to deliver low-cost and high-speed MAN/WAN connectivity for organizations. Many service providers now offer Metro Ethernet solutions to deliver a wide range of converged network services such as data, voice, and video on the same wire. Metro Ethernet provides enterprise LAN type functionality out in the MAN and WAN, increasing the throughput available for applications. Metro Ethernet bandwidths can range from 10Mbps to 1 Gbps, and even higher in some cases, allowing for support for higher performance and increased QoS requirements. In contrast to the rigid nature of traditional TDM provisioning, Metro Ethernet services are much easier to deploy and scale due to the flexible bandwidth increments. Metro Ethernet technology is appealing to many customers because they are already comfortable using Ethernet throughout their LAN environments.



### SONET/SDH

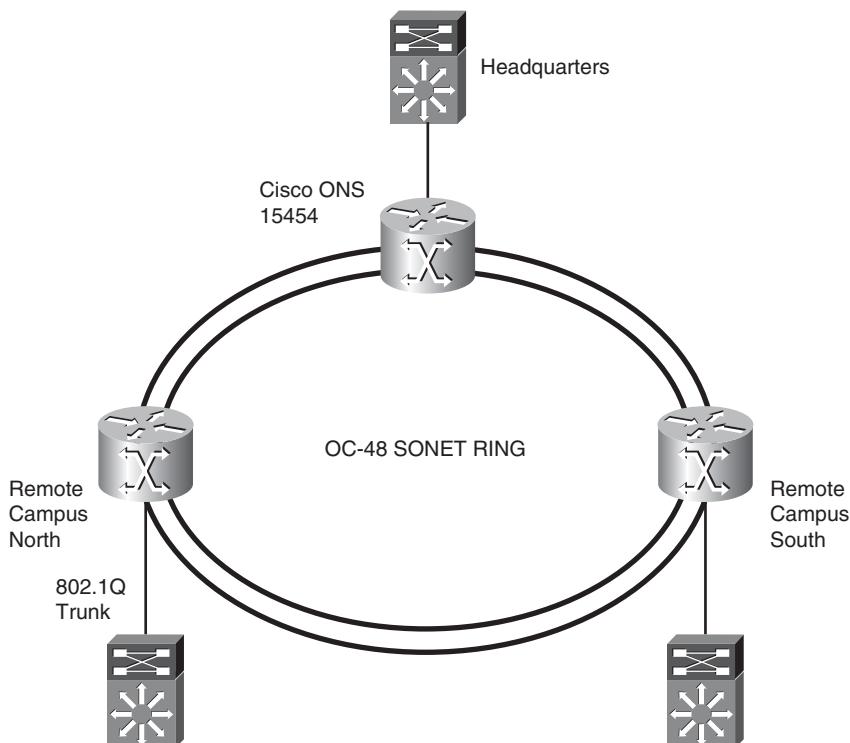
The architecture of SONET/SDH is circuit-based and delivers high-speed services over an specification, and the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) defines SDH.

SONET/SDH guarantees bandwidth and has line rates of 155 Mbps to more than 10 Gbps. Common circuit sizes are OC-3, or 155 Mbps, and OC-12, or 622 Mbps.

SONET/SDH uses a ring topology by connecting sites and providing automatic recovery capabilities and has self-healing mechanisms. SONET/SDH rings support ATM or Packet over SONET (POS) IP encapsulations. The Optical Carrier (OC) rates are the digital bandwidth hierarchies that are part of the SONET/SDH standards. The optical carrier speeds supported are as follows:

- OC-1 = 51.85 Mbps
- OC-3 = 155.52 Mbps
- OC-12 = 622.08 Mbps
- OC-24 = 1.244 Gbps
- OC-48 = 2.488 Gbps
- OC-192 = 9.952 Gbps
- OC-255 = 13.21 Gbps

Figure 6-5 shows an OC-48 SONET ring with connections to three sites that share the ring.



**Figure 6-5** SONET/SDH



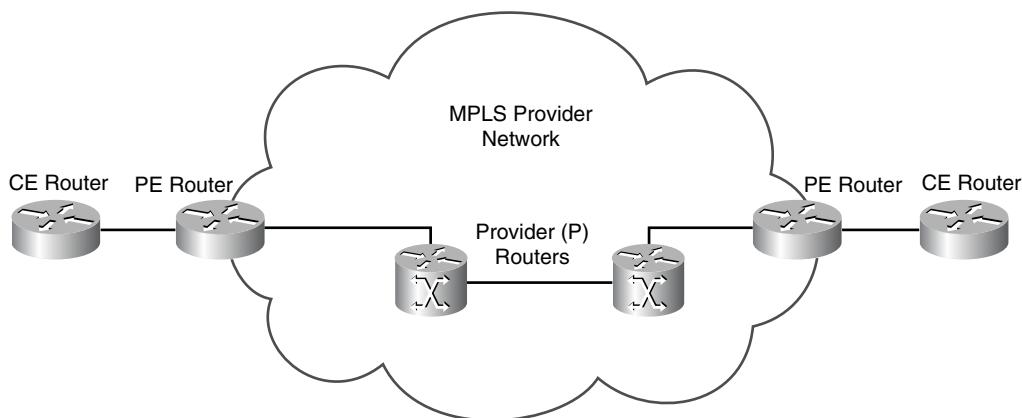
## Multiprotocol Label Switching

MPLS is technology for the delivery of IP services using labels (numbers) to forward packets. In normal routed environments, packets are forwarded hop by hop from the sources to the destination. Each router in the path performs a Layer 3 destination address lookup, rewrites the Layer 2 address, and forwards the packet to the destination. However, MPLS functions by marking packet headers that include label information. As soon as packets are marked with a label, specific paths through the network can be designed to correspond to that distinct label. MPLS labels can be set on parameters such as source addresses, Layer 2 circuit ID, or QoS value. Packets that are destined to the same endpoint with the same requirements can be forwarded based on the labels, without a routing decision at every hop. Typically, the labels correspond to the Layer 3 destination address, which makes MPLS the same as destination-based routing.

MPLS labels can also be used to implement traffic engineering by overriding the routing tables. MPLS packets can run over most Layer 2 technologies, such as ATM, Frame Relay, POS, and Ethernet. The goal of MPLS is to maximize switching using labels and minimize Layer 3 routing.

In MPLS implementations, there are customer edge (CE) and provider edge (PE) routers. The CE router resides at the customer premise and that is typically where internal and external routing information is exchanged. The CE router then connects to the PE router, which is the ingress to the MPLS service provider network. The PE router is in the service provider network.

Figure 6-6 shows an end-to-end MPLS WAN and how the CE routers connect to the PE routers.



**Figure 6-6** MPLS

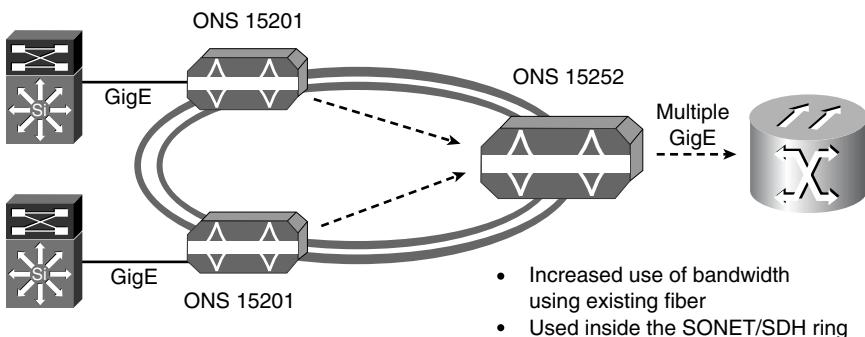
Dark Fiber

regenerators are used in some implementations. The framing for dark fiber is determined by the enterprise, not the provider. The edge devices can use the fiber just like within the enterprise, which allows for greater control of the services provided by the link. Dark fiber is owned by service providers in most cases and can be purchased similarly to leased-line circuits for use in both the MAN and WAN. The reliability of these types of links also needs to be designed by the enterprise and is not provided by the service provider. High availability using dark fiber needs to be designed with multiple links, which differs from SONET/SDH technology that has redundancy built into the architecture.

### Dense Wavelength-Division Multiplexing

Dense wavelength-division multiplexing (DWDM) increases fiber optic's bandwidth capabilities by using different wavelengths of light called channels over the same fiber strand. Each fiber channel is the equivalent to several ( $Nx$ ) Gigabit Ethernet links. It maximizes the use of the installed base of fiber used by service providers and is a critical component of optical networks. DWDM allows for service providers to increase the services offered to customers by adding new bandwidth to existing channels on the same fiber. DWDM lets a variety of devices access the network, including IP routers, ATM switches, and SONET terminals.

Figure 6-7 illustrates the use of DWDM using Cisco ONS devices and a SONET/SDH ring.



**Figure 6-7** DWDM

### Ordering WAN Technology and Contracts

When you order WAN transport technology, early planning is key. It usually takes at least 60 days for the carrier to provision circuits. Generally, the higher a circuit's capacity, the more lead time required to provision. When ordering bandwidth overseas, a lead-time of 60 to 120 days is fairly common.

WAN transport in most cases includes an access circuit charge and, at times, distance-based charges. However, some carriers have eliminated TDM distance-based charges because T1s are readily available from most carriers. Metro Ethernet availability is spotty at best, and the lead times are long. In rare cases, construction is necessary to provide fiber

able WAN technology options from competing carriers.

When ordering Frame Relay and ATM, a combination of access circuit charges, per-PVC charges, and per-bandwidth committed information rate (CIR) charges are customary. CIR is the rate that the provider guarantees it will provide. Some carriers set the CIR to half the circuit's speed, thereby allowing customers to burst two times above the CIR. Frame Relay speeds can be provisioned up to T3 speeds, but typically they are less than 10 Mbps.

MPLS VPNs have been competitive with ATM and Frame Relay rates. Service providers are offering MPLS VPNs with higher bandwidth at lower rates to persuade their customers away from traditional ATM and Frame Relay services. However, other service providers see more value in MPLS VPNs and price them higher than ATM and Frame Relay because of the added benefits of traffic engineering.

When you are selecting a standard carrier package, it takes about a month to contract a WAN circuit. If you want to negotiate a detailed SLA, expect to take another five months or more, including discussions with the service provider's legal department. The bigger the customer, the more influence it has over the SLAs and the contract negotiations.

Contract periods for most WAN services are one to five years. Contracts are usually not written for longer durations because of the new emerging technologies and better offerings from providers. An exception is dark fiber, which is usually contracted for a 20-year term. In this case, you also want to have the right of non-reversion written in the SLA. This means that no matter what happens to the service provider, the fiber is yours for the 20-year period. The process to repair fiber cuts needs to be defined in the SLA.

Tariffed commercial WAN services are available at published rates but are subject to restrictions. However, carriers are moving toward unpublished rates to be more competitive and to offer more options.

## WAN Design Methodology

The PPDIOO methodology should be used when designing enterprise edge networks (PPDIOO) stands for Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize. Some keys to PPDIOO are the processes of analyzing network requirements, characterizing the existing network, and designing the topology:

- **Analyzing the network requirements** includes reviewing the types of applications, the traffic volume, and the traffic patterns in the network.
- **Characterizing the existing network** reviews the technologies used and the locations of hosts, servers, network equipment, and other end nodes.
- **Designing the topology** is based on the availability of technology, the projected traffic patterns, technology performance, constraints, and reliability.



When designing the WAN topology, remember that the design should describe the functions that the enterprise edge modules should perform. The expected service levels provided by each WAN technology should be explained. WAN connections can be

connect two or more sites together.

New network designs should be flexible and adaptable to future technologies and should not limit the customer's options going forward. Voice over IP and video are examples of technologies that network designs should be able to support if the customer decides to move to a converged network. The customer should not have to undergo major hardware and software upgrades to implement these types of technologies. Another important consideration is the design's cost-effectiveness throughout the design and implementation stages. For example, the support and management of the network should be an important factor.

High availability is what most users want for their networked applications. The key components of application availability are response time, throughput, and reliability. Real-time applications such as voice and video are not very tolerant to jitter and delay.

Table 6-3 identifies various application requirements for data, voice, and video traffic.



**Table 6-3 Application Requirements**

	<b>Data File Transfer</b>	<b>Interactive Data Application</b>	<b>Real-Time Voice</b>	<b>Real-Time Video</b>
Response time	Reasonable	Within a second	Round trip less than 250 ms with the delay and low jitter	Minimum delay and jitter
Throughput and packet loss tolerance	High/Med	Low/Low	Low/low	High/medium
Downtime (high reliability has low downtime)	Reasonable	Low	Low	Minimum

### Response Time

Response time measures the time between the client user request and the response from the server host. The end user will accept a certain level of delay in response time and still be satisfied. However, there is a limit to how long the user will wait. This amount of time can be measured and serves as a basis for future application response times. Users perceive the network communication in terms of how quickly the server returns the requested information and how fast the screen updates. Some applications, such as a request for an HTML web page, require short response times. On the other hand, a large FTP transfer might take awhile, but this is generally acceptable.

### Throughput

In network communications, throughput is the measure of data transferred from one host to another in a given amount of time. Bandwidth-intensive applications have more of an

high-throughput applications usually involve some type of file-transfer activity. Because

throughput intensive applications have longer response times, you can usually schedule them when time sensitive traffic volumes are lower, such as after hours.

## Reliability

Reliability is the measure of a given application's availability to its users. Some organizations require rock-solid application reliability, such as five-nines (99.999 percent); this has a higher price than most other applications. For example, financial and security exchange commissions require nearly 100 percent uptime for their applications. These types of networks are built with a high amount of physical and logical redundancy. It is important to ascertain the level of reliability needed for a network that is being designed. Reliability goes further than availability by measuring not only whether the service is there but whether it is performing as it should.

## Bandwidth Considerations

Table 6-4 compares a number of different WAN technologies, along with the speeds and media types associated with them.

**Table 6-4 Physical Bandwidth Comparison**

Bandwidth	Less Than 2 Mbps	2 Mbps to 45 Mbps	45 Mbps to 100 Mbps	100 Mbps to 10 Gbps
Copper	Serial, ISDN, Frame Relay, TDM, ADSL	Frame Relay, Ethernet, ADSL, cable, T3	Fast Ethernet	Gigabit Ethernet, 10 Gigabit Ethernet (10GBASE-CX4)
Fiber	N/A	Ethernet	Fast Ethernet, ATM	Gigabit Ethernet, 10 Gigabit Ethernet, ATM, SONET/SDH, POS, dark fiber
Wireless	802.11b	802.11b, wireless WAN (varies)	802.11a/g	802.11n



The WAN designer must engineer the network with enough bandwidth to support the needs of the users and applications that will use the network. How much bandwidth a network needs depends on the services and applications that will require network bandwidth. For example, VoIP requires more bandwidth than interactive Secure Shell (SSH) traffic. A large number of graphics or CAD drawings require an extensive amount of bandwidth compared to file or print sharing information being transferred on the network. A big driver in increasing demands for more bandwidth is the expanded use of collaboration applications that use video interactively.

When designing bandwidth for the WAN, remember that implementation and recurring costs are always important factors. It is best to begin planning for WAN capacity early. When the link utilization reaches around 50 percent to 60 percent, you should consider increases and closely monitor the capacity at that point. When the link utilization reaches around 75 percent, immediate attention is required to avoid congestion problems and packet loss that will occur when the utilization nears full capacity.

QoS techniques become increasingly important when delay-sensitive traffic such as VoIP is using the limited bandwidth available on the WAN. LAN bandwidth, on the other hand, is generally inexpensive and plentiful; in the age of robust real-time applications, however, QoS can be necessary. To provide connectivity on the LAN, you typically need to be concerned only with hardware and implementation costs.

## WAN Link Categories

When you start to evaluate WAN link characteristics, they generally fall into three broad categories: private, leased, and shared. There are many factors to consider, such as the how the WAN is used, the cost, advantages, and what technologies are available in a given area.

Table 6-5 identifies various WAN link characteristics.



**Table 6-5 WAN Link Characteristics**

	<b>Use</b>	<b>Cost</b>	<b>Advantages</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Private	WAN to connect distant LANs	Owner must buy and configure network.  Expensive to maintain.	High security.  Transmission quality.	Metro Ethernet using dark fiber
Leased	WAN to connect distant LANs	High cost.  Equipment is leased or private.	Provider is responsible for maintenance.  Dedicated bandwidth.	TDM, SONET
Shared	Shared-circuit or packet-switched WAN	Cost is fair.  Bandwidth is leased.  Equipment is leased or private.	Provider is responsible for maintenance.  Shared network for multiple sites.	MPLS or Frame Relay

There are fixed and recurring costs in most WAN environments. Fixed costs include the network equipment, circuit provisioning, and network management tools. The recurring costs include the service provider monthly WAN service fees, maintenance costs of the WAN, and the network operations personnel.

## Optimizing Bandwidth Using QoS

QoS is an effective tool for managing a WAN's available bandwidth. Keep in mind that QoS does not add bandwidth; it only helps you make better use of it. For chronic congestion problems, QoS is not the answer; you need to add more bandwidth. However, by prioritizing traffic, you can make sure that your most critical traffic gets the best treatment and available bandwidth in times of congestion. One popular QoS technique is to classify your traffic based on a protocol type or a matching access control list (ACL) and then give policy treatment to the class. You can define many classes to match or identify your most important traffic classes. The remaining unmatched traffic then uses a default class in which the traffic can be treated as best effort.

## Queuing, Traffic Shaping, and Policing

Cisco has developed many different QoS mechanisms, such as queuing, policing, and traffic shaping, to enable network operators to manage and prioritize the traffic flowing on the network. Applications that are delay sensitive, such as VoIP, require special treatment to ensure proper application functionality. Queuing refers to the buffering process used by routers and switching when they receive traffic faster than can be transmitted. Different queuing mechanisms can be implemented to influence the order in which the different queues are serviced (that is, how different types of traffic are emptied from the queues).

Table 6-6 identifies QoS considerations to optimize bandwidth.

**Table 6-6** QoS Considerations

QoS Category	Description
Classification	Identifies and marks flow and provides priority to certain flows
Congestion management	Mechanism to handle traffic overflow using a queuing algorithm
Link-efficiency mechanisms	Reduce latency and jitter for network traffic on low-speed links
Traffic shaping and policing	Avoids congestion by policing ingress and egress flows



## Classification

For a flow to have priority, it first must be identified and marked. Both of these tasks are referred to as classification. The following technologies are a couple of ways that have features that support classification:

- **Network-Based Application Recognition (NBAR)** is a technology that uses deep packet content inspection to identify network applications. An advantage of NBAR is that it can recognize applications even when they do not use standard network ports. Furthermore, it matches fields at the application layer. Before NBAR, classification was limited to Layer 4 TCP and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port numbers.
- **Committed access rate (CAR)** uses an ACL to set precedence and allows customization of the precedence assignment by user, source or destination IP address, and application type.

## Congestion Management

Two types of output queues are available on routers: the hardware queue and the software queue. The hardware queue uses the strategy of first in, first out (FIFO). The software queue schedules packets first and then places them in the hardware queue. Keep in mind that the software queue is used only during periods of congestion. The software queue uses QoS techniques such as priority queuing, custom queuing, weighted fair queuing, class-based weighted fair queuing, low-latency queuing, and traffic shaping and policing.

### Priority Queuing

Priority queuing (PQ) is a queuing method that establishes four interface output queues that serve different priority levels: high, medium, default, and low. Unfortunately, PQ can starve other queues if too much data is in one queue because higher-priority queues *must* be emptied before lower-priority queues.

### Custom Queuing

Custom queuing (CQ) uses up to 16 individual output queues. Byte size limits are assigned to each queue so that when the limit is reached, it proceeds to the next queue. The network operator can customize these byte size limits. CQ is fairer than PQ because it allows some level of service to all traffic. This queuing method is considering legacy due to the improvements in the queuing methods.

### Weighted Fair Queuing

Weighted fair queuing (WFQ) ensures that traffic is separated into individual flows or sessions without requiring that you define ACLs. WFQ uses two categories to group sessions: high bandwidth and low bandwidth. Low-bandwidth traffic has priority over high-bandwidth traffic. High-bandwidth traffic shares the service according to assigned weight values. WFQ is the default QoS mechanism on interfaces below 2.0 Mbps.

### Class-Based Weighted Fair Queuing

correspond to match criteria, including ACLs, protocols, and input interfaces. Traffic that matches the class criteria belongs to that specific class. Each class has a defined queue that corresponds to an output interface.

After traffic has been matched and belongs to a specific class, you can modify its characteristics, such as assigning bandwidth, maximum queue limit, and weight. During periods of congestion, the bandwidth assigned to the class is the guaranteed bandwidth that is delivered to the class.

One of CBWFQ's key advantages is its modular nature, which makes it extremely flexible for most situations. It is often referred to as MQC or Modular QoS CLI, which is the framework for building QoS policies. Many classes can be defined to separate your network traffic as needed in the MQC.

### Low-Latency Queuing

Low-latency queuing (LLQ) adds a strict priority queue (PQ) to CBWFQ. The strict PQ allows delay-sensitive traffic such as voice to be sent first, before other queues are serviced. That gives voice preferential treatment over the other traffic types. Unlike priority queuing, LLQ provides for a maximum threshold on the PQ to prevent lower priority traffic from being starved by the PQ.

Without LLQ, CBWFQ would not have a priority queue for real-time traffic. The additional classification of other traffic classes is done using the same CBWFQ techniques. LLQ is the standard QoS method for many VoIP networks.

### Traffic Shaping and Policing

Traffic shaping and policing are mechanisms that inspect traffic and take an action based on the traffic's characteristics, such as DSCP or IP precedence bits set in the IP header.

Traffic shaping slows down the rate at which packets are sent out an interface (egress) by matching certain criteria. Traffic shaping uses a token bucket technique to release the packets into the output queue at a preconfigured rate. Traffic shaping helps eliminate potential bottlenecks by throttling back the traffic rate at the source. In enterprise environments, traffic shaping is used to smooth the flow of traffic going out the provider. This is desirable for several reasons. In provider networks, it prevents the provider from dropping traffic that exceeds the contracted rate.

Policing tags or drops traffic depending on the match criteria. Generally, policing is used to set the limit of incoming traffic coming into an interface (ingress) and uses a “leaky bucket mechanism.” Policing is also referred to as committed access rate or CAR. One example of using policing is to give preferential treatment to critical application traffic by elevating to a higher class and reducing best-effort traffic to a lower-priority class.

When you contrast traffic shaping with policing, remember that traffic shaping buffers packets while policing can be configured to drop packets. In addition, policing propagates bursts, but traffic shaping does not.

### Link Efficiency

Within Cisco IOS, several link-efficiency mechanisms are available. Link fragmentation and interleaving (LFI), Multilink PPP (MLP), and Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) header compression provide for more efficient use of available bandwidth.

Table 6-7 describes Cisco IOS link-efficiency mechanisms.



**Table 6-7** *Link-Efficiency Mechanisms*

Mechanisms	Description
Link fragmentation and interleaving (LFI)	Reduces delay and jitter on slower-speed links by breaking up large packet flows and inserting smaller data packets (Telnet, VoIP) in between them.
Multilink PPP (MLP)	Bonds multiple links together between two nodes, which increases the available bandwidth. MLP can be used on analog or digital links and is based on RFC 1990.
Real-Time Transport (RTP) header compression	Provides increased efficiency for applications that take advantage of RTP on slow links. Compresses RTP/UDP/IP headers from 40 bytes down to 2 bytes to 5 bytes.

### Window Size

The window size defines the upper limit of frames that can be transmitted without getting a return acknowledgment. Transport protocols, such as TCP, rely on acknowledgments to provide connection-oriented reliable transport of data segments. For example, if the TCP window size is set to 8192, the source stops sending data after 8192 bytes if no acknowledgment has been received from the destination host. In some cases, the window size might need to be modified because of unacceptable delay for larger WAN links. If the window size is not adjusted to coincide with the delay factor, retransmissions can occur, which affects throughput significantly. It is recommended that you adjust the window size to achieve better connectivity conditions.

## References and Recommended Readings

- Cisco IOS Quality of Service Solutions Configuration Guide Release 12.2, [www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/product/software/ios122/122cgcr/fqos\\_c/index.htm](http://www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/product/software/ios122/122cgcr/fqos_c/index.htm).
- Frame Relay, [www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito\\_doc/frame.htm](http://www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito_doc/frame.htm).
- Integrated Services Digital Network, [www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito\\_doc/isdn.htm](http://www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito_doc/isdn.htm).
- Module 4, “Designing Remote Connectivity,” Designing for Cisco Internetwork Solution Course (DESGN) v2.1.
- RFC 1990, [www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1990.txt](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc1990.txt).

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 6-8 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 6-8 Key Topics**

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
List	WAN design goals	202
Table 6-2	WAN comparison	205
Summary	Metro Ethernet	209
Summary	MPLS	211
List	Keys to PPDIOO	213
Table 6-3	Application requirements	214
Table 6-4	Physical bandwidth comparison	215
Table 6-5	WAN link characteristics	216
Table 6-6	QoS considerations	217
Table 6-7	Link-efficiency mechanisms	220

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

service level agreement, digital subscriber line, broadband cable, wireless, time-division multiplexing, Frame Relay, MPLS, SONET/SDH, DWDM

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** When using PPDIOO design methodology, what should a network designer do after identifying the customer requirements?
  - a.** Design the network topology.
  - b.** Design a test network.
  - c.** Plan the implementation.
  - d.** Characterize the existing network.
- 2.** Which module within the enterprise campus connects to the enterprise edge module?
  - a.** Server module
  - b.** Campus core
  - c.** Building distribution
  - d.** Remote access/VPN module
- 3.** What WAN technology is most cost effective and suitable for the telecommuter?
  - a.** MPLS
  - b.** Dark fiber
  - c.** ISDN
  - d.** DSL
- 4.** What two modules are found in the enterprise edge?
  - a.** Campus core
  - b.** Building access
  - c.** Internet
  - d.** MAN/WAN
- 5.** Which of the following statements best describes window size for good throughput?
  - a.** A large window size reduces the number of acknowledgments.
  - b.** A small window size reduces the number of acknowledgments.
  - c.** A small window size provides better performance.
  - d.** None of the above

6. What is the default queuing mechanism for router interfaces below 2.0 Mbps?
  - a. Traffic shaping
  - b. WFQ
  - c. CBWFQ
  - d. LLQ
7. Which of the following best describes the PPDIOO design methodology? (Select three.)
  - a. Analyze the network requirements.
  - b. Characterize the existing network.
  - c. Implement the network management.
  - d. Design the network topology.
8. Which of the following modules belongs in the enterprise edge?
  - a. Building distribution
  - b. Campus core
  - c. Network management
  - d. DMZ/e-commerce
9. Which network modules connect to ISPs in the enterprise edge? (Select two.)
  - a. Building distribution
  - b. Campus core
  - c. Internet
  - d. DMZ/e-commerce
10. Which enterprise edge network modules connect using the PSTN connectivity?
  - a. Remote-access/VPN
  - b. Campus core
  - c. Building access
  - d. DMZ/e-commerce
11. Which enterprise edge network modules connect using Frame Relay and ATM?
  - a. Remote-access/VPN
  - b. WAN/MAN
  - c. Building distribution
  - d. Server farm

- 12.** During which part of the PPDIOO design methodology does implementation planning occur?
- a.** Analyze the network requirements.
  - b.** Design the topology.
  - c.** Characterize the existing network.
  - d.** None of the above.
- 13.** What functional area provides connectivity between the central site and remote sites?
- a.** DMZ/e-commerce
  - b.** Campus core
  - c.** Building distribution
  - d.** MAN/WAN
- 14.** What WAN technology allows the enterprise to control framing?
- a.** Cable
  - b.** Wireless
  - c.** DWDM
  - d.** Dark fiber
- 15.** Which QoS method uses a strict PQ in addition to modular traffic classes?
- a.** CBWFQ
  - b.** Policing
  - c.** WFQ
  - d.** LLQ
- 16.** A T1 TDM circuit uses how many timeslots?
- 17.** Which wireless implementation is designed to connect two wireless networks in different buildings?
- a.** Mobile wireless
  - b.** GPRS
  - c.** Bridge wireless
  - d.** UMTS
- 18.** What improves the utilization of optical-fiber strands?
- 19.** On the ISP side of a cable provider, cable modems connect to what system?

- 20.** If Frame Relay, ATM, and SONET technologies are used, what enterprise edge network module would they connect to?
- a. WAN/MAN
  - b. VPN/remote access
  - c. Internet
  - d. DMZ/e-commerce
- 21.** What protocol describes data-over-cable procedures that the equipment must support?
- 22.** Into what WAN technology category does ISDN fit?
- a. Cell switched
  - b. UTMS switched
  - c. Circuit switched
  - d. Packet switched
- 23.** What do service providers use to define their service offerings at different levels?
- a. SWAN
  - b. WAN tiers
  - c. WWAN
  - d. SLA
- 24.** When is it appropriate to use various queuing solutions?
- a. WAN has frequent congestion problems.
  - b. WAN occasionally becomes congested.
  - c. WAN is consistently at 50 percent utilized.
  - d. WAN is consistently at 40 percent utilized.



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Traditional WAN Technologies
- Remote-Access Network Design
- VPN Network Design
- Enterprise VPN vs. SP VPN
- WAN Backup Design
- Enterprise WAN Architecture
- Enterprise WAN Components
- Enterprise Branch Architecture
- Enterprise Teleworker Design

## WAN Design

---

This chapter covers wide-area network (WAN) designs for the enterprise WAN and enterprise branch architecture. It starts out by reviewing traditional WAN technologies and network topologies. Remote-access design is examined with an emphasis on virtual private networks (VPN). Next, enterprise VPNs are compared and contrasted with service provider VPNs. Then, this chapter covers WAN architecture, WAN components, and WAN backup design. The chapter wraps up with enterprise branch architecture and enterprise teleworker design.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 7-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 7-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Traditional WAN Technologies	1
Remote-Access Network Design	2
VPN Network Design	3
Enterprise VPN vs. SP VPN	4
WAN Backup Design	5
Enterprise WAN Architecture	6, 7
Enterprise WAN Components	8
Enterprise Branch Architecture	9, 10
Enterprise Teleworker Design	N/A

- 1.** Which of the following are examples of packet- and cell-switched technologies used in the enterprise edge?
  - a.** Frame Relay and ATM
  - b.** ISDN and T1
  - c.** Cable and DSL
  - d.** Analog voice and T1
- 2.** Typical remote-access network requirements include which of the following? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** Best-effort interactive and low-volume traffic patterns
  - b.** Voice and VPN support
  - c.** Connections to the enterprise edge using Layer 2 WAN technologies
  - d.** Server load balancing
- 3.** Which VPN infrastructure is used for business partner connectivity and uses the Internet or a private infrastructure?
  - a.** Access VPN
  - b.** Intranet VPN
  - c.** Extranet VPN
  - d.** Self-deployed MPLS VPN
- 4.** What IPsec technology in the enterprise uses routers along with NHRP and mGRE?
  - a.** IPsec direct encapsulation
  - b.** Easy VPN
  - c.** GET VPN
  - d.** DMVPN
- 5.** What backup option allows for both a backup link and load-sharing capabilities using the available bandwidth?
  - a.** Dial backup
  - b.** Secondary WAN link
  - c.** Shadow PVC
  - d.** IPsec tunnel
- 6.** Which common factor is used for WAN architecture selection that involves eliminating single points of failure to increase uptime and growth?
  - a.** Network segmentation
  - b.** Ease of management
  - c.** Redundancy
  - d.** Support for growth

7. What WAN/MAN architecture is provided by the service provider and has excellent growth support and high availability?
  - a. Private WAN
  - b. ISP service
  - c. SP MPLS/IP VPN
  - d. Private MPLS
8. Which Cisco IOS software family has been designed for low-end to mid-range LAN switching?
  - a. IOS T Releases 12.3, 12.4, 12.3T, and 12.4T
  - b. IOS S Releases 12.2SE and 12.2SG
  - c. IOS XR
  - d. IOS SX
9. When designing enterprise branch architecture, which of the following are common network components? (Select all that apply.)
  - a. Routers supporting WAN edge connectivity
  - b. Switches providing the Ethernet LAN infrastructure
  - c. Network management servers
  - d. IP phones
10. Which branch design supports 50 to 100 users and provides Layer 3 redundancy features?
  - a. Small branch
  - b. Medium branch
  - c. Large branch
  - d. Enterprise teleworker

## Foundation Topics

This chapter covers WAN design topics that you need to master for the CCDA exam. It begins by discussing physical WAN technology and WAN topologies used in the enterprise. Next is a review of remote-access network requirements that are used to design remote-access networks. The chapter goes on to cover the specifics of VPN design and the different connectivity options available for enterprise VPNs and service provider (SP) VPNs.

Next, several backup strategies are explored that are used when designing WANs. Then the chapter reviews the considerations used in developing WAN architectures, including the hardware and software options used when selecting components for network designs. In addition, the design of branch offices is discussed, with a review of several options for designing different sizes of branch offices.

### Traditional WAN Technologies

When selecting a particular WAN technology, you should be familiar with the three major categories that represent traditional WANs:

- **Circuit switched:** Data connections that can be brought up when needed and terminated when finished. Examples include ordinary public switched telephone network (PSTN) phone service, analog modems, and ISDN. Carriers reserve that call path through the network for the duration of the call.
- **Leased lines:** A dedicated connection provided by the SP. These types of connections are point to point and generally more expensive. Time-division multiplexing (TDM)-based leased lines usually use synchronous data transmission.
- **Packet and cell switched:** Connections that use virtual circuits (PVC/SVC) established by the SP. Packet-switched technologies include Frame Relay and cell-switched technologies such as ATM. ATM uses cells and provides support for multiple quality of service (QoS) classes. The virtual circuits are part of the shared ATM/Frame Relay SP backbone network. This gives the SP greater flexibility with its service offerings.

When planning and designing a packet-switched WAN, you should become familiar with some basic WAN topologies. These WAN topologies include hub-and-spoke, partial-mesh, and full-mesh topologies, as shown in Figure 7-1.

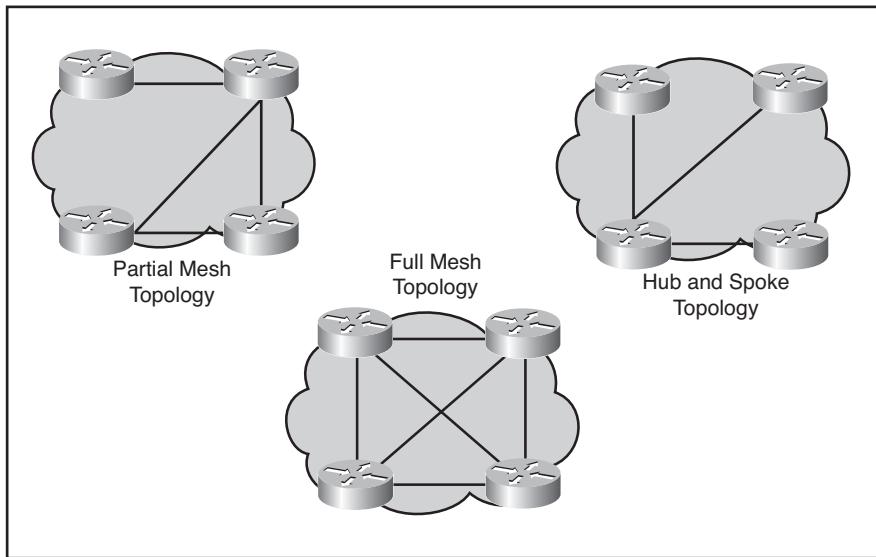
#### Hub-and-Spoke Topology

A star or hub-and-spoke topology provides a hub router with connections to the spoke routers through the WAN cloud. Network communication between the sites flows through the hub router. Significant WAN cost savings, lower circuit counts, and simplified management are benefits of the hub-and-spoke topology. In addition, hub-and-spoke topologies provide WAN hierarchy and can provide high availability through the use of dual routers at the hub site.

sent a single point of failure. The hub-and-spoke topology can also limit the overall



performance when resources are accessed through the central hub router from the spoke routers, such as with spoke-to-spoke network traffic.



**Figure 7-1** WAN Topologies

### Full-Mesh Topology

With full-mesh topologies, each site has a connection to all other sites in the WAN cloud (any-to-any). As the numbers of sites grow, so does the number of spoke connections that are ultimately required. Consequently, the full-mesh topology is not viable in very large networks. However, a key advantage of this topology is that it has plenty of redundancy in the event of network failures. But redundancy implemented with this approach does have a high price associated with it.

Here are some issues inherent with full-mesh topologies:

- Many virtual circuits (VC) are required to maintain the full mesh.
- Issues occur with the amount of broadcast and multicast replication packets for each site.
- Complex configurations are needed.
- High cost.

The number of VCs required for a full mesh can be calculated using the formula  $((N - 1) \times N / 2)$ . For example if you have 4 sites,  $((4 - 1) \times 4 / 2) = 6$  VCs are required.

### Partial-Mesh Topology

not all sites in the cloud are required to be connected to each other. However, some sites

on the WAN cloud have full-mesh characteristics. Partial-mesh topologies can give you more options and flexibility for where to place the high-redundancy VCs based on your specific requirements.

## Remote-Access Network Design

One of the goals of remote-access network design is to provide a unified solution that allows for seamless connectivity as if the users are on the HQ LAN. The primary function of remote access is to provide your users access to internal resources and applications. Because connection requirements drive the technology selection process, it is important that you analyze the application and network requirements in addition to reviewing the available service provider options.

The following summarizes typical remote-access requirements:

- Best-effort interactive and low-volume traffic patterns
- Connections to the enterprise edge using Layer 2 WAN technologies (consider capital and recurring costs)
- Voice and IPsec VPN support



Remote-access network connections are enabled over permanent always-on connections or on-demand connections. Technologies include digital subscriber line (DSL), cable, wireless 802.11 a/b/g/n LAN, and 3G/4G wireless WAN (WWAN). However, these remote-access technologies might or might not be available, so it is best to check the availability for the location in your network design.

## VPN Network Design

VPNs are typically deployed over some kind of shared or public infrastructure. VPNs are similar to tunnels in that they carry traffic over an existing IP infrastructure. VPN technologies use the Internet, ATM/Frame Relay WANs, and point-to-point connected IP infrastructures to transport data from end to end. A disadvantage of using VPNs over public networks is that the connectivity is best effort in nature and troubleshooting is also difficult because you do not have visibility into the service provider's infrastructure.

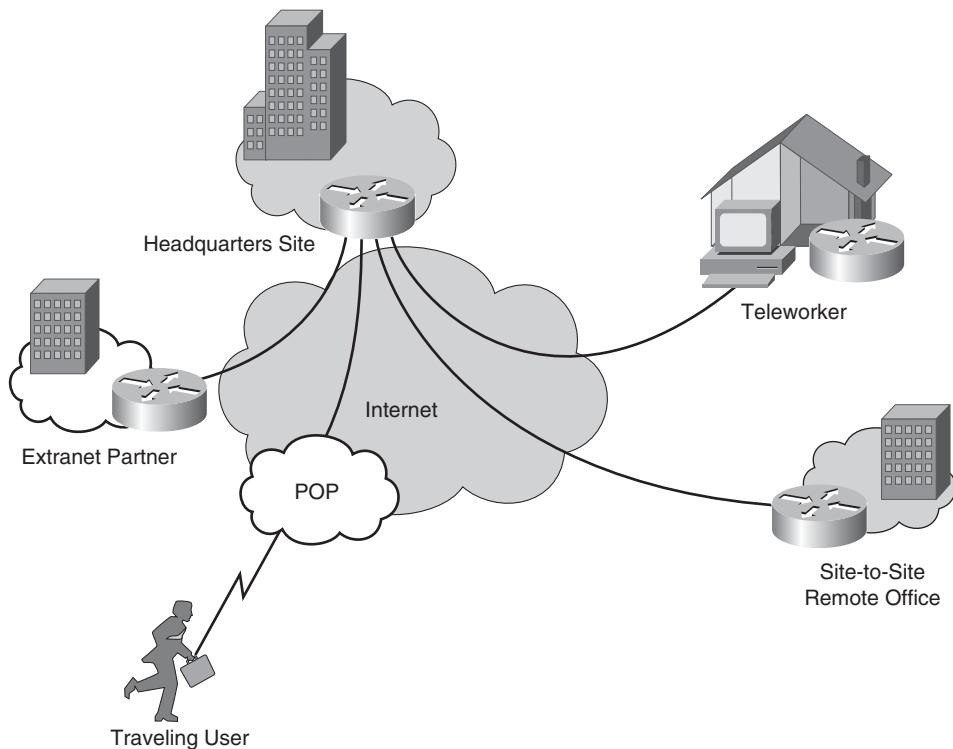
Figure 7-2 shows VPN connectivity options.

The three VPN groups are divided by application:



- **Access VPN:** These types of VPN connections give users connectivity over shared networks such as the Internet to their corporate intranets. Users connect remotely using cable/DSL, wireless LAN, or 3G/4G WWAN. Remote network connectivity into the corporate network over the Internet is typically outsourced to an Internet service provider (ISP), and the VPN clients are usually supported by the internal helpdesk. Two architectural options are used to initiate the VPN connections: client-initiated or network access server (NAS)-initiated VPN connections. Client-initiated VPN connections let users establish IPsec encrypted sessions over the Internet to the corporate VPN terminating device. NAS-initiated VPN connections are where connect to the NAS and then the NAS sets up a VPN tunnel to the corporate

- **Intranet VPN:** Intranet VPNs or site-to-site VPNs connect remote offices to the headend offices. Generally, the remote sites use their Internet connection to establish the VPN connection back to the corporate headend office. But, they can also use a VPN tunnel over an IP backbone provided by the service provider. The main benefits of intranet VPNs are reduced WAN infrastructure, lower WAN tariffs, and reduction in the operational costs.
- **Extranet VPN:** VPN infrastructure for business partner connectivity also uses the Internet or a private infrastructure for network access. Keep in mind that it is important to have secure extranet network policies to restrict the business partners' access. Typically, these types of VPNs terminate in a partner designated firewalled demilitarized zone (DMZ).



**Figure 7-2** VPN Examples

## Enterprise VPN vs. Service Provider VPN

When you need to provide secure remote access using VPNs, you must consider several things. One key consideration is the use of enterprise VPNs or service provider based VPNs. Enterprise VPNs typically require in-house VPN design, implementation, and sup-

Here are some technology options that are available when selecting VPNs.

## Enterprise VPNs

Here is a list of VPNs that can be found in enterprise environments:

- IP Security (IPsec)
- Cisco Easy VPN
- Generic routing encapsulation (GRE)
- Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)
- Virtual tunnel interface (VTI)
- Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol Version 3 (L2TPv3)

## Service Provider Offerings

Here is a list of VPNs that can be found with most SPs:

- Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS)
- Metro Ethernet
- Virtual Private LAN Services (VPLS)

## Enterprise Managed VPN: IPsec

What is IPsec? IPsec is a network layer protocol suite for encrypting IP packets between two hosts and thereby creating a secure “tunnel.” The IETF defined IPsec in RFC 4301. IPsec uses open standards and provides secure communication between peers to ensure data confidentiality, integrity, and authenticity through network layer encryption. IPsec connections are commonly configured between firewalls, VPN appliances, or routers that have IPsec features enabled. IPsec can scale from small to very large networks.

The IPsec protocols include Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP), and two other IPsec IP protocols: Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) and Authentication Header (AH). IPsec uses symmetrical encryption algorithms to provide data protection. These algorithms need a secure method to exchange keys to ensure that the data is protected. Internet Key Exchange (IKE) ISAKMP protocols provide these functions. ESP is used to provide confidentiality, data origin authentication, connectionless integrity, and anti-replay services. AH is used to provide integrity and data origin authentication, usually referred to as just authentication.

In addition, IPsec can secure data from eavesdropping and modification using transforms sets, which give you varying levels of strength for the data protection. IPsec also has several Hash Message Authentication Codes (HMAC) available to provide protection from attacks such as man-in-the-middle, packet-replay, and data-integrity attacks.

### IPsec Direct Encapsulation

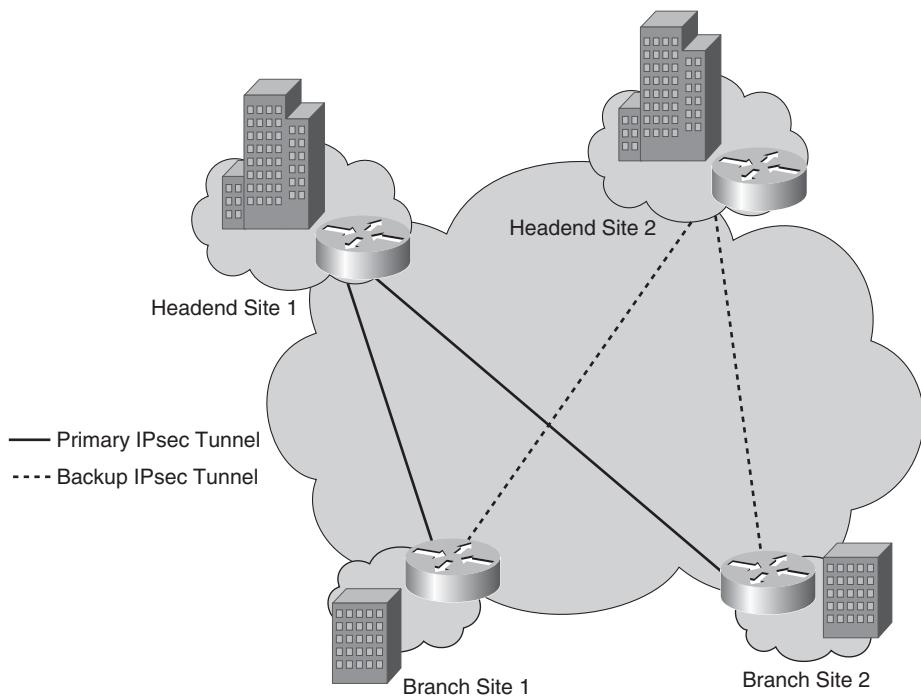
IPsec provides a tunnel mode of operation that enables it to be used as a standalone connection method and is the most fundamental VPN design model. When you are using

The headend IPsec terminating device needs to use static IP addressing, but the remote

IPsec endpoints can use static or dynamic IP addressing. Redundancy can be provided at the headend by using multiple IPsec terminating devices, and each remote IPsec endpoint can be populated with a list of headend endpoints to make connections with.

IPsec packet payloads can be encrypted, and IPsec receivers can authenticate packet origins. Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) can also be used with IPsec. IKE is the protocol used to set up a security association (SA) with IPsec. PKI is an arrangement that provides for third-party verification of identities.

Figure 7-3 shows the topology for IPsec direct encapsulation with multiple headend sites to provide resiliency for the branch offices.



**Figure 7-3 IPsec Direct Encapsulation Example**

### Cisco Easy VPN

Although VPNs provide a high level of authentication and encryption of data between endpoints, it also increases the complexity for the end user to set up and configure. Cisco Easy VPN remote feature reduces the difficulty inherent with setting up VPN endpoints by using the Cisco VPN Client protocol. This allows most of the VPN parameters to be defined at the Cisco Easy VPN Server at the headend site. After the Cisco Easy VPN Server has been configured, a VPN connection can be set up with a simple configuration on the Cisco Easy VPN remote. The remote feature is available on the Cisco 800 series

Routers (ISR).

## Generic Routing Encapsulation

GRE was developed by Cisco to encapsulate a variety of protocols inside IP tunnels. This approach consists of minimal configuration for basic IP VPNs but lacks in both security and scalability. In fact, GRE tunnels do not use any encryption to secure the packets during transport.

Using IPsec with GRE tunnels provides for secure VPN tunnels by encrypting the GRE tunnel. There are many advantages with this approach, such as the support for dynamic IGP routing protocols, non-IP protocols, and IP multicast support. Other advantages include support for QoS policies and deterministic routing metrics for headend IPsec termination points. Because all the primary and backup GRE over IPsec tunnels are preestablished, there is built-in redundancy to support failure scenarios. The IP addressing for the remote sites can have dynamic or static addressing, but the headend site requires static IP addressing. Primary tunnels can be differentiated from backup tunnels by modifying the routing metrics slightly to prefer the one of the other.

## IPsec DMVPN

DMVPN is a Cisco IOS solution for building IPsec + GRE VPNs in a dynamic and scalable manner.

DMVPN relies on two key technologies called NHRP and mGRE:

- Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP) creates a mapping database for all spoke tunnels to real public addresses.
- Multipoint GRE (mGRE) is a single GRE interface, which provides support for multiple GRE, and IPsec tunnels to reduce the complexity and the size of the configuration.

DMVPM supports a reduced configuration framework and supports the following features:

- IP unicast, IP multicast, and dynamic routing protocol support
- Remote spoke routers with dynamic IP addressing
- Spoke routers behind dynamic Network Address Translation (NAT) and hub routers behind static NAT
- Dynamic spoke-to-spoke tunnels for partial scaling or fully meshed VPNs
- Support for all of the GRE tunnel benefits such as QoS, deterministic routing, and redundancy scenarios

Each remote site is connected using a point-to-point (P2P) GRE tunnel interface to a single mGRE headend interface. The headend mGRE interface dynamically accepts new tunnel connections.

Redundancy can be achieved by configuring spokes to terminate to multiple headends at one or more hub locations. IPsec tunnel protection is typically used to map the cryptographic attributes to the tunnel that is originated by the remote peer.

Dead peer detection (DPD) can be used to detect the loss of a peer IPsec connection.

mGRE interfaces.

## IPsec Virtual Tunnel Interface Design

Virtual tunnel interface (VTI) is a new IPsec VPN design option available in Cisco IOS software. VTI has some interesting advantages over previous IPsec design options, including support for dynamic routing protocols and IP multicast without using GRE or mGRE type interfaces. Also, because VTI tunnels are assigned an unique interface, specific tunnel level features such as QoS can be configured for each tunnel separate from other VTI tunnels. The physical topology for VTI designs can be designed the same way as IPsec direct encapsulation using multiple headends and two tunnels from the remote sites, one to each headend.

## Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol Version 3

L2TPv3 provides a high-speed transparent Layer 2 to Layer 2 service over an IP backbone. The signaling in L2TPv3 is responsible for the control plane functions such as authentication, session IDs, and the exchange of configuration parameters. L2TPv3 has support for Frame Relay, Ethernet, IEEE 802.1Q, HDLC, and PPP encapsulation types to be tunneled.

## Service Provider Managed Offerings

### Metro Ethernet

Demand for bandwidth in the metro-area network (MAN) is increasing due to the result of the high throughput requirements of data-intensive applications. Today, many SPs are offering Metro Ethernet services to fulfill the demand; these are based on Ethernet, IP, and optical technologies such as dense wavelength-division multiplexing (DWDM) or coarse wavelength-division multiplexing.

Metro Ethernet services can provide more bandwidth, the ability to upgrade the bandwidth as needed, and higher levels of redundancy through multiple route processors. Because Metro Ethernet can support the higher bandwidth requirements, it is often better suited to support converged network services (for example, voice, video, and data services combined on the same link).

Most service providers are using Ethernet as a method to access their backbone network. Ethernet handoff is becoming common even if the transport is based on SONET/SDH, MPLS, Frame Relay, or the Internet.

Table 7-2 shows the benefits Ethernet handoffs at the customer edge provide.

**Table 7-2 Benefits of Ethernet Handoffs at the Customer Edge**

Benefit	Description
Service-enabling solution	Layering value added services in addition to the network
Flexible architecture	No need for truck roll for increasing port speeds No need for new customer premises equipment (CPE) Evolving existing Frame/ATM services to an IP-based solution

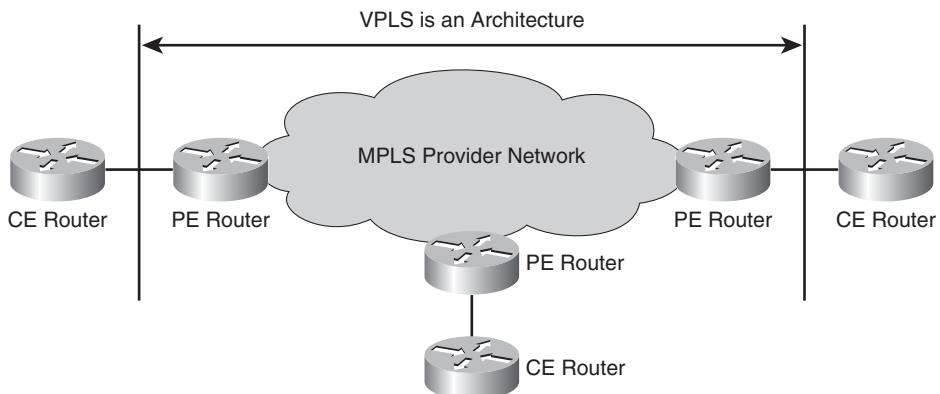
**Table 7-2** Benefits of Ethernet Handoffs at the Customer Edge

Benefit	Description
Seamless enterprise integration	Ease of integration with existing LAN network equipment

### Virtual Private LAN Services

Virtual Private LAN Services (VPLS) defines an architecture that enables Ethernet Multi-point Service (EMS) over an MPLS network. The operation of VPLS allows for connecting L2 domains over IP/MPLS network, which emulates an IEEE Ethernet bridge.

Figure 7-4 depicts a VPLS topology in an MPLS network.

**Figure 7-4** VPLS Topology Example

VPLS is a type of VPN that allows for the connection of multiple sites into a single L2 domain over a managed IP/MPLS network. VPLS presents an Ethernet interface, which simplifies the LAN/WAN demarc for service providers. This enables rapid and flexible service provisioning because the service bandwidth is not tied to the physical interface. All the VPLS services appear to be on the same VLAN regardless of physical location in the WAN.

VPLS uses edge routers that learn L2 domains, bridges them, and replicates them through the VPN. Within the IP/MPLS cloud is a collection of full-mesh connections providing any-to-any connectivity between sites. VPLS supports many of the new applications and services need to be on the same L2 network to function properly. Some services lack network layer addressing or are transparent to the upper-layer protocols.

### MPLS

MPLS is a technology for the delivery of IP services using an efficient encapsulation

used to guarantee bandwidth. MPLS can run on many L2 technologies, including ATM, Frame Relay, PPP, Packet over SONET (POS), and Ethernet.

MPLS is an economical solution that can be easily integrated over any existing infrastructure offering flexibility because MPLS is independent of access technologies. SPs can offer intelligent network services to their customers over a single infrastructure. Each of the SP's customers can have one or more VPNs within the overall MPLS network, called virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instances.

### MPLS Layer 3 Design Overview

MPLS Layer 3 VPNs have the following characteristics:

- The MPLS network distributes labels to each VPN.
- Only labels for other VPN members are distributed.
- Each VPN is automatically provisioned by IP routing.
- Each MPLS network is as secure as Frame Relay connections.
- Encryption can be added to the VPN to provide privacy.
- Only one label for both for QoS and VPN is needed.

MPLS Layer 3 VPNs represent the most popular deployed MPLS technology. MPLS Layer 3 VPNs leverage Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) to distribution VPN-related information. The SP typically manages the BGP routing domain within the MPLS cloud. This can significantly reduce the operational costs and complexities for enterprise environments.

Inside the MPLS cloud, network routes are learned with a dynamic Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) routing protocol such as Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) Protocol, Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP), Border Gateway Protocol (BGP), or with static routes that are manually configured.

MPLS VPNs use labels to specify the VRF and the corresponding VPN destination networks, which prevent the overlapping of addresses between VPNs. With MPLS Layer 3 VPNs, other valued-added services can be layered on such as QoS and traffic engineering. These services might offer enhanced network services such as voice, video, and data, for example. In addition, MPLS TE and Fast Reroute (FRR) features can be used to provide "tight service level agreements (SLA)," including up to five levels of QoS SLAs.

### VPN Benefits

The major benefits of using VPNs are flexibility, cost, and scalability. VPNs are easy to set up and deploy over existing infrastructure in most cases. VPNs enable network access to remote users, remote sites, and extranet business partners. VPNs lower the cost of ownership by reducing the WAN recurring monthly charges and standardizing VPN security policies. The geographic coverage of VPNs is nearly everywhere Internet access is available

cause they can be deployed in a secure consistent manner.

## WAN Backup Design

Redundancy is a critical component of WAN design for the remote site because of the unreliable nature of WAN links, when compared to LANs that they connect. Most enterprise edge solutions require high availability between the primary and remote site. Because WAN links have lower reliability and lack bandwidth, they are good candidates for most WAN backup designs.

Branch offices should have some type of backup strategy in the event of a primary link failure. Backup links can be either dialup, permanent WAN, or Internet-based connections.

WAN backup options are as follows:



- **Dial backup:** ISDN provides backup dialup services in the event of a primary failure of a WAN circuit. The backup link is initiated if a failure occurs with the primary link. The ISDN backup link provides network continuity until the primary link is restored, and then the backup link is terminated such as with floating static route techniques.
- **Secondary WAN link:** Adding a secondary WAN link makes the network more fault tolerant. This solution offers two key advantages:
  - **Backup link:** Provides for network connectivity if the primary link fails. Dynamic or static routing techniques can be used to provide routing consistency during backup events. Application availability can also be increased because of the additional backup link.
  - **Additional bandwidth:** Load sharing allows both links to be used at the same time, increasing the available bandwidth. Load balancing can be achieved over the parallel links using automatic routing protocol techniques.
- **Shadow PVC:** SPs can offer shadow Frame Relay PVCs, which provide additional PVCs for use if needed. The customer is not charged for the PVC if it does not exceed limits set by the provider while the primary PVC is available. If the limit is exceeded, the SP charges the customer accordingly.
- **IPsec tunnel across the Internet:** An IPsec VPN backup link can direct redirect traffic to the corporate headquarters when a network failure has been detected.

### Load-Balancing Guidelines

Load balancing can be implemented per packet or per destination using fast switching. If WAN links are less than 56 kbps, per-packet load balancing is preferred. Fast switching is enabled on WAN links that are faster than 56 kbps, and per-destination load balancing is preferred.

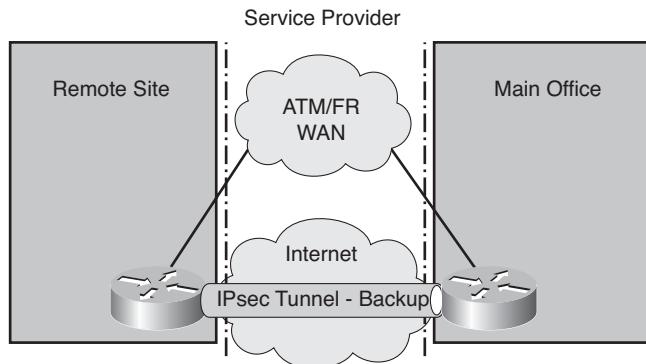
A major disadvantage of using duplicate WAN links is cost. Duplicate WAN links require additional WAN circuits for each location, and more network interfaces are required to terminate the connections. However, the loss of productivity if a site loses network connectivity and becomes isolated can be greater than the cost of the duplicate WAN link.

## WAN Backup over the Internet

Another alternative for WAN backup is to use the Internet as the connectivity transport between sites. However, keep in mind that this type of connection does not support bandwidth guarantees. The enterprise also needs to work closely with the ISP to set up the tunnels and advertise the company's networks internally so that remote offices have reachable IP destinations.

Security is of great importance when you rely on the Internet for network connectivity, so a secure tunnel using IPsec needs to be deployed to protect the data during transport.

Figure 7-5 illustrates connectivity between the headend or central site and a remote site using traditional ATM/Frame Relay connections for the primary WAN link. The IPsec tunnel is a backup tunnel that provides redundancy for the site if the primary WAN link fails.



**Figure 7-5 WAN Backup over the Internet**

IPsec tunnels are configured between the source and destination routers using tunnel interfaces. Packets that are destined for the tunnel have the standard formatted IP header. IP packets that are forwarded across the tunnel need an additional GRE/IPsec header placed on them, as well. As soon as the packets have the required headers, they are placed on the tunnel with a destination address of the tunnel endpoint. After the packets cross the tunnel and arrive on the far end, the GRE/IPsec headers are removed. The packets are then forwarded normally using the original IP packet headers.

## Enterprise WAN Architecture

When selecting an enterprise WAN architecture, you should identify and understand the business and technical requirements. It is important to review sample network designs that could help identify requirements. Here are some common factors that influence decisions for WAN architecture selection:

- **High availability:**

of failure in the design, either by software features or hardware-based resiliency. Redundancy is critical in providing high levels of availability for the enterprise. Some technologies have built-in techniques that enable them to be highly available. For technologies that do not, other techniques can be used, such as using additional WAN circuits or backup power supplies.

- **Support for growth:** Often, enterprises want to provide for growth in their WAN architectures, considering the amount of effort and time required to connect additional sites. High-growth WAN technologies can reduce the amount of effort and cost involved in network expansions. WAN technologies that do not provide growth require significantly more effort, time, and cost to add new branches or remote offices.
- **Operational expenses:** Private line and traditional ATM/Frame Relay tend to have higher recurring expenses than Internet-based IP VPNs. Public networks such as the Internet can be used for WAN services to reduce cost, but there are some trade-offs with reliability and security compared to private or ATM/Frame Relay-type transports. Moreover, public networks make it more difficult to provide advanced technologies such as real-time voice and video.
- **Operational complexity:** The expertise of the technical staff who are required to maintain and support MAN and WAN technologies varies. Most enterprises have the internal IT knowledge to handle most traditional MAN and WAN upgrades without the need for much training. However, some of the advanced technologies usually reserved for SPs may require additional training for the IT staff if the support is brought in-house. Depending on the technology and the design, you have opportunities to reduce the complexity through network management.
- **Cost to implement:** In most cases, the implementation cost is a major concern. During the design process, it is important to evaluate the initial and recurring costs along with the design's benefits. Sometimes an organization can migrate from legacy connectivity to new technology with minimal investment in terms of equipment, time, and resources. In other cases, a network migration can require a low initial cost in terms of equipment and resources but can provide recurring operational savings and greater flexibility over the long term.
- **Network segmentation support:** Segmentation provides for Layer 2/3 logical separations between networks instead of physically separate networks. Advantages include reduced costs associated with equipment, maintenance, and carrier charges. In addition, separate security policies can be implemented per department or by functional area of the network to restrict access as needed.
- **Support for voice and video:** There is an increasing demand for the support of voice over MAN and WAN technologies. Some WAN providers offer Cisco QoS-Certified IP VPNs, which can provide the appropriate levels of QoS needed for voice and video deployments. In cases where Internet or public network connections are used, QoS cannot always be assured. When voice and video are required for small offices, teleworkers, or remote agents, 768-kbps upstream bandwidth or greater is recommended.

## Cisco Enterprise MAN/WAN

The Cisco Enterprise MAN/WAN architecture uses several technologies that work together in a cohesive relationship.

Here is the list of Cisco enterprise MAN/WAN technologies:

- Private WAN (optional encryption)
- Private WAN with self-deployed MPLS
- ISP service (Internet with site-to-site and remote-access VPN)
- SP-managed IP/MPLS VPN
- Cisco Wide Area Application Services (WAAS)

These architectures provide integrated QoS, security, reliability, and ease of management that is required to support enterprise business applications and services. As you can see, these architectures provide a number of alternative technologies to the traditional private WAN and can allow for network growth and reduced monthly carrier charges.

Cisco WAAS is a comprehensive WAN optimization solution that delivers LAN-like performance to applications over the WAN. WAAS can provide accelerated application access to the branch office. The local WAAS appliance can also host local branch IT services for applications that are pushed out to the remote branch office.

## Enterprise WAN/MAN Architecture Comparison

Enterprise WAN/MAN architectures have common characteristics that allow the network designer to compare the advantages and disadvantages of each approach. Table 7-3 compares the characteristics of private WAN, ISP service, SP MPLS/IP VPN, and private MPLS architectures.

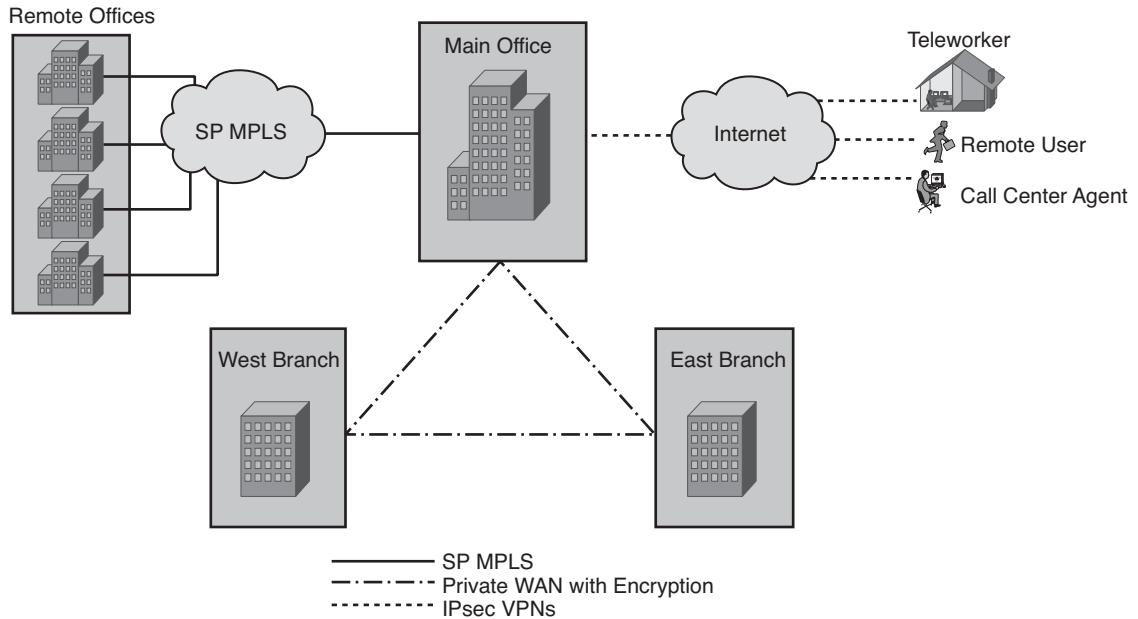
**Table 7-3 WAN/MAN Architecture Comparison**

Characteristic	Private WAN	ISP Service	SP MPLS/IP VPN	Private MPLS
High availability	Excellent	Good	Excellent	Excellent
Growth support	Moderate	Good	Excellent	Excellent
Security	IPsec (optional)	IPsec (mandatory)	IPsec (optional)	IPsec (optional)
Ongoing expenses	High	Low	Moderate to high	Moderate to high
Ease of management	High	Medium	Medium	High
Voice/video support	Excellent	Low	Excellent	Excellent
Effort to migrate from private WAN	Low	Moderate	Moderate	High
Multicast	Good	Good	Good	Excellent

The Cisco enterprise MAN/WAN architectures includes private WAN, ISP service, SP MPLS/IP VPN, and private MPLS:

- **Private WAN** generally consists of Frame Relay, ATM, private lines, and other traditional WAN connections. If security is needed, private WAN connections can be used in conjunction with encryption protocols such as Digital Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and Advanced Encryption Standard (AES). This technology is best suited for an enterprise with moderate growth outlook where some remote or branch offices will need to be connected in the future. Businesses that require secure and reliable connectivity to comply with IT privacy standards can benefit from IPsec encrypted connectivity over the private WAN. Disadvantages of private WANs are that they have high recurring costs from the carriers and they are not the preferred technology for teleworkers and remote call center agents. Some enterprises may use encryption on the network, connecting larger sites and omitting encryption on the smaller remote offices with IP VPNs.
- **ISP service (Internet with site-to-site and remote-access VPN)** uses strong encryption standards such as DES, 3DES, and AES, which make this WAN option more secure than the private WAN. ISP service also provides compliance with many new information security regulations imposed on some industries, such as healthcare and finance. This technology is best suited for basic connectivity over the Internet. However, if you need to support voice and video, consider IPsec VPN solutions that have the desired QoS support needed to meet your network requirements. The cost of this technology is relatively low. It is useful for connecting large numbers of teleworkers, remote contact agents, and small remote offices.
- **SP MPLS/IP VPN** is similar to private WAN technology, but with added scalability and flexibility. MPLS-enabled IP VPNs enable mesh-like behavior or any-to-any branch-type connectivity. SP MPLS networks can support enterprise QoS requirements for voice and video, especially those with high growth potential. SP MPLS features secure and reliable technology with generally lower carrier fees. This makes it a good option for connecting branch offices, teleworkers, and remote call center agents.
- **Private WAN with self-deployed MPLS** enables the network to be segmented into multiple logical segments allowing for multiple VPNs internally. Self-deployed MPLS is usually reserved for large enterprises that are willing to make substantial investments in equipment and training to build out the MPLS network. The IT staff needs to be well trained and comfortable with supporting complex networks.

Figure 7-6 illustrates SP MPLS, private WAN with encryption, and IPsec VPNs WAN architectures.



**Figure 7-6** WAN Architectures

## Enterprise WAN Components

When selecting enterprise edge components, you want to keep several considerations in mind. Here are some factors to examine during the selection process:

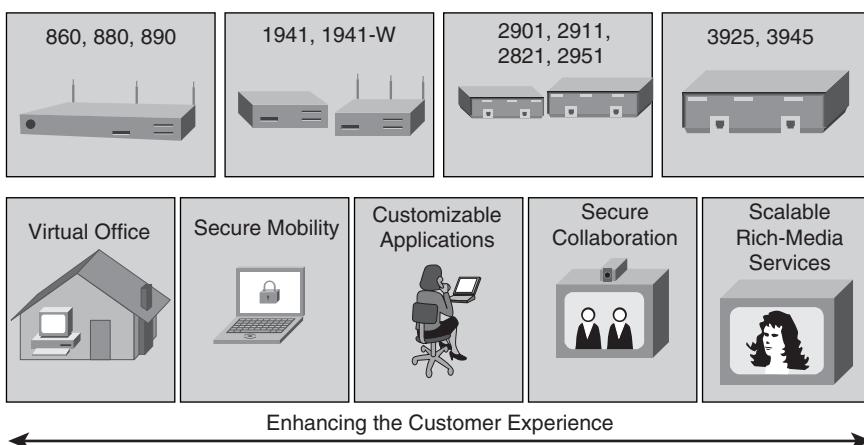
- Hardware selection involves the data-link functions and features offered by the device. Considerations include the following:
  - Port density
  - Types of ports supported
  - Modularity (add-on hardware)
  - Backplane and packet throughput
  - Redundancy (CPU and/or power)
  - Expandability for future use
- Software selection focuses on the network performance and the feature sets included in the software. Here are some factors to consider:
  - Forwarding decisions
  - Technology feature support



- Bandwidth optimization
- Security vulnerabilities
- Software issues

When evaluating hardware, it is recommended to use the latest Cisco product datasheets to research hardware and determine the equipment's capabilities. Remember to consider the port densities and types of ports the device offers. Some other areas to investigate include device modularity, packet throughput, redundancy capabilities, and the device's expandability options. Finally, remember to factor in what power options the hardware supports.

Figure 7-7 shows Cisco ISR G2 hardware options.



**Figure 7-7** Cisco ISR G2 Hardware

Cisco's Integrated Services Routers second generation (ISR G2) are part of the Borderless Networks with the Cisco Network Architectures for the Enterprise. These ISR G2 routers provide the platform for business innovation by meeting the performance requirements for the next generation of WAN and network services. This architecture allows cost-effective delivery of high-definition (HD) collaboration solutions at the branch office and supports the secure transition to the private cloud. Cisco ISR G2 routers enable the business to deploy on-demand services, which reduces the overall cost of ownership.

Here are some key advantages of the ISR G2 routers:

- Delivers next-gen WAN and network service capabilities
- Provides video-based collaboration and rich-media services
- Enables secure transition to cloud and virtualized network services
- Reduced energy consumption and costs to support corporate responsibility

## Comparing Hardware and Software

Table 7-4 compares the Cisco router and switch hardware platforms and their associated software families, releases, and functional descriptions.

**Table 7-4 Cisco Router/Switch Platform and Software Comparison**

Router/Switch Hardware	Software	Description
800, 1800, 2800, 3800, 7200	Cisco IOS T Releases 12.3, 12.4, 12.3T, and 12.4T	Access routing platforms supporting fast and scalable delivery of data for enterprise applications.
800, 1900, 2900, 3900, 7200	Cisco IOS 15.0(1)	Delivers security, voice, and IP services with support for rich-media applications such as HD video and on-demand services
7x00, 10000	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SB	Delivers midrange routing services for the enterprise and SP edge networks.
7600	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SR	Delivers high-end LAN switching for enterprise access, distribution, core, and data center. Also supports Metro Ethernet for the SP edge.
12000, CRS-1	Cisco IOS XR	High availability, providing large scalability and flexibility for the SP core and edge (takes advantage of highly distributed processing capabilities of the Cisco CRS-1 routing systems and the Cisco 12000).
2970, 3560, 3750	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SE	Provides low-end to mid-range LAN switching for enterprise access and distribution deployments.
4500, 4900	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SG	Provides mid-range LAN switching for enterprise access and distribution in the campus. Also supports Metro Ethernet.
6500	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SX	Delivers high-end LAN switching for enterprise access, distribution, core, and data center. Also supports Metro Ethernet for the SP edge.

## Enterprise Branch Architecture

Enterprise branch architectures encompass a wide range of services that customers want to deploy at the edge of the enterprise. These architectures allow for a variety of connection options, and distance typically is not an issue. The services in this architecture give customers new opportunities to increase security, converge their voice and data traffic, improve productivity, and reduce costs.

The Cisco enterprise branch architecture is a flexible and secure framework for extending headend application functionality to the remote site. The Cisco enterprise branch architecture uses the Cisco Network Architectures for the Enterprise framework but applies it to a smaller scale of a branch site.

Common branch network components found within the enterprise framework include

- Routers supporting the WAN edge connectivity
- Switches providing the Ethernet LAN infrastructure
- Security appliances securing the branch devices
- Wireless access points (AP) allowing for roaming mobility
- Call processing providing Unified Communications and video support
- IP phones and PCs for the end-user devices

### Branch Design

It is important to characterize the existing network by gathering requirements to develop a suitable design for the branch.

Here are some questions you should ask:

- How much scalability is expected for (network devices, servers, users)?
- How much scalability is expected?
- What level of high availability or redundancy is required?
- Is a specific server or network protocol support needed?
- Will the network management or support be centralized or distributed?
- Are there any network segmentation restrictions, such as DMZ segments, or internal networks versus external networks?
- Will wireless services be needed, and to what extent?
- What is the estimated budget for the branch design?

### Enterprise Branch Profiles

profiles are not intended to be the only architectures for branch offices but rather a common

set of services that each branch should include. These profiles serve as a basis on which integrated services and application networking are built. The three profiles for the enterprise branch are as follows:

- **Small office:** Up to 50 users (single-tier design)
- **Medium office:** Between 50 and 100 users (dual-tier design)
- **Large office:** Between 100 and 1000 users (three-tier design)

Requirements such as high availability, scalability, and redundancy influence the branch profile selected for a branch office.

To integrate the WAN edge and the LAN infrastructure, an ISR can be used to provide voice, security, and data services. The ISR supports triple-speed interfaces (10/100/1000), high-speed WAN interface cards (HWIC), network modules, and embedded security capabilities.

### ISR G2 New Features

The Cisco ISR second generation (ISR G2) series models of routers builds on the success of the first-generation models, with new features that deliver better performance, a rich set of new service options, and a single universal Cisco IOS software image. A couple of the new innovations include the video-ready branch based on high-density digital signal processors (DSP) and services virtualization, providing cloud extensibility and mission-critical application survivability.

Table 7-5 compares the features of ISR versus ISR G2.

**Table 7-5 ISR Versus ISR G2 Feature Comparison**

	<b>Cisco ISR</b>	<b>Cisco ISR G2</b>
WAN performance	Up to 45 Mbps with services	Up to 350 Mbps with services
Network processor	Single	Multicore with future expandability
Service module performance and capacity	1X and 160 GB storage	Up to 7X with dual core and 1 TB storage
Onboard DSPs	Voice only	Voice- and video-ready DSPs
Switch modules	Fast Ethernet with Power over Ethernet (PoE); based on Catalyst 3750	Fast Ethernet/Gigabit Ethernet with POE+ based on Catalyst 3560E/2950
IOS image	Multiple images	Single universal IOS image
Services delivery	Hardware-coupled	Services on demand
Redundancy	Single motherboard	Field-upgradeable motherboard
Energy efficiency	EnergyWise	Real-time power reporting

## Small Branch Design

The small branch design is recommended for branch offices that do not require hardware redundancy and that have a small user base supporting up to 50 users. This profile consists of an access router providing WAN services and connections for the LAN services. The access router can connect the Layer 2 switch ports in one of three ways:

- Integrated Layer 2 switching using an optional EtherSwitch module that provides 16 to 48 Ethernet ports for client connections. Some modules support PoE.
- External Layer 2 switching using a trunk connection to an access switch that aggregates the Ethernet connections. The access switch can also include PoE to support IP phones and wireless APs.
- Logical EtherChannel interface between the ISR and the access switches using the EtherSwitch module. The access switches can also provide PoE as needed.

The Layer 3 WAN services are based on the WAN and Internet deployment model. A T1 is used for the primary link, and an ADSL secondary link is used for backup. Other network fundamentals are supported, such as EIGRP, floating static routes, and QoS for bandwidth protection.

The ISR can support the default gateway function and other Layer 3 services such as DHCP, NAT, IPsec VPN, and IOS Firewall.

Layer 2 services can be provided by the Cisco ISR using switch modules or the Cisco Catalyst 2960, 3560 or 3750 series-based access switches. It is recommended that you use Rapid Per VLAN Spanning Tree Plus (PVST+) for all Layer 2 branch offices where loops are present. Rapid PVST+ ensures a loop-free topology when multiple Layer 2 connections are used for redundancy purposes.

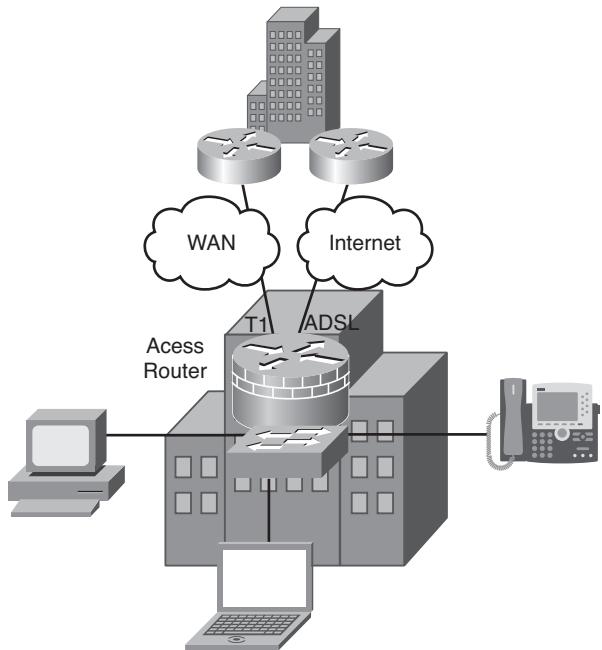
Both the Cisco 2921 and the 2951 ISRs support three integrated 10/100/1000 Ethernet interfaces, which support Layer 3 routing, and one slot for a network module. There are 16, 24, and 48 port Cisco EtherSwitch network modules available.

Figure 7-8 illustrates the small branch design connecting back to the corporate office where the corporate resources are located.

## Medium Branch Design

The medium branch design is recommended for branch offices of 50 to 100 users, which is similar to the small branch but with an additional access router in the WAN edge (slightly larger) allowing for redundancy services. Typically, two 2921 or 2951 routers are used to support the WAN, and separate access switches are used to provide LAN connectivity.





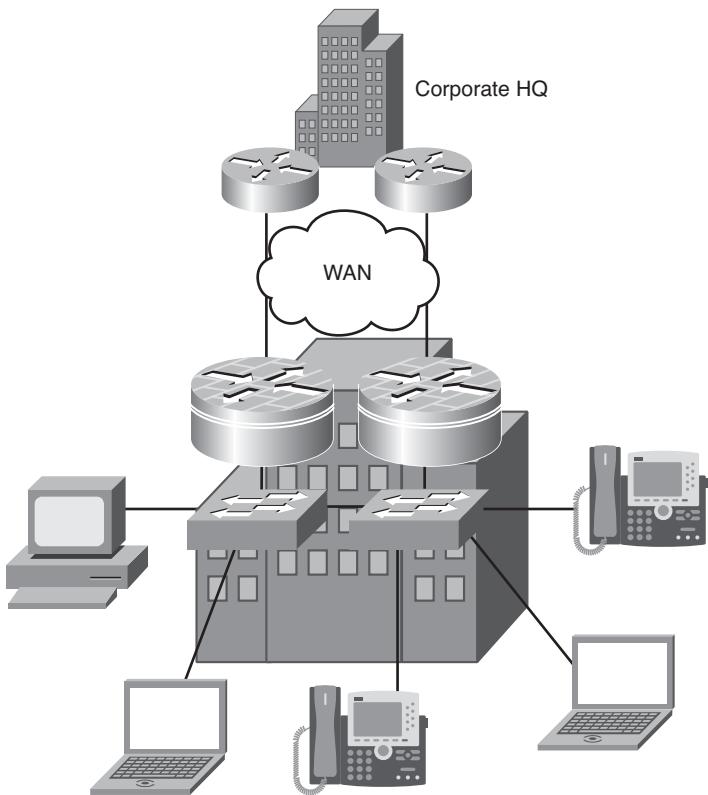
**Figure 7-8 Small Branch Design**

The infrastructure components are dual-access routers, external Layer 2 / Layer 3 switches, laptops, desktops, printers, and IP phones. Dual Frame Relay links provide the private WAN services, which are used to connect back to the corporate offices via both of the access routers.

Layer 3 protocols such as EIGRP are typically deployed. Because there are two routers, Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) or Gateway Load Balancing Protocol (GLBP) can be used to provide redundancy gateway services. QoS can also be used to provide guaranteed bandwidth for VoIP, and policing can be used to restrict certain traffic classes from overwhelming the available bandwidth. Cisco IOS features such as QoS, access control lists (ACL), and RIP routing capabilities are available in the IP Base feature set, but IP unicast routing and multicast routing require the IP Services feature set.

The medium branch design supports using a higher-density external switch or using the EtherSwitch module with the ISR to create trunks to the external access switches. The Cisco Catalyst 3750 series switches have StackWise technology, allowing multiple switches to be connected and managed as one. This also increases the port density available for end-user connections. With Cisco StackWise technology, customers can create a single, 32-Gbps switching unit that can connect up to nine 3750 series switches using a variety of fiber and copper ports, allowing greater flexibility with the connection options.

Figure 7-9 illustrates the medium branch design using dual routers back to the corporate office where the corporate resources are located.



**Figure 7-9** Medium Branch Design

### Large Branch Design

The large branch design is the largest of the branch profiles, supporting between 100 and 1000 users. This design profile is similar to the medium branch design in that it also provides dual access routers in the WAN edge. In addition, dual Adaptive Security Appliances (ASA) are used for stateful firewall filtering, and dual distribution switches provide the multilayer switching component. The WAN services use an MPLS deployment model with dual WAN links into the WAN cloud.



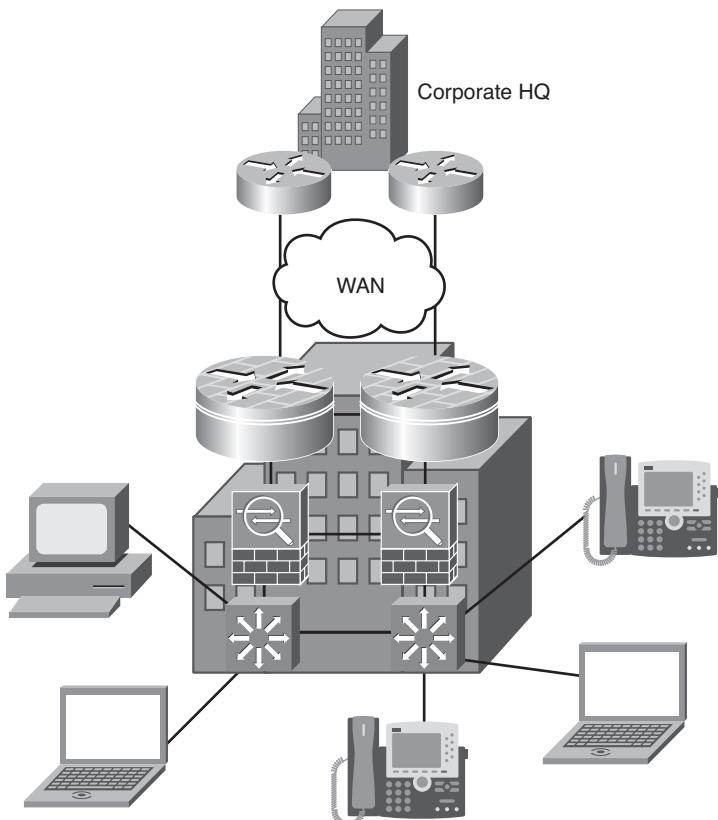
Because there are dual routers, redundant network routing can be achieved through EIGRP load balancing. On the distribution layer switches, first-hop redundancy protocols such as HSRP/GLBP can be used to provide gateway redundancy. The dual ASA configuration allows for redundancy and stateful failover. QoS services such as shaping and policing can be applied to all the routers and switches as required.

To meet the requirements of the larger user base, a distribution layer of multilayer switches is added to aggregate the connected access switches. A multilayer switch provides the additional LAN switching capabilities to meet the port density requirements and allowing flexibility to support additional network devices.

A couple of hardware options for this design are the Cisco Catalyst 3750/3750X with StackWise technology or using a modular approach with a Cisco Catalyst 4500. The Cisco 3750/3750X series of switches provide great port density options and can even provide the redundant power. The Cisco 4500 switch platform is a modular chassis-based switch that not only allows for flexibility by increasing port densities through additional modules but can also provide redundant power internally for the entire chassis when using dual power supplies. All of these switch models have PoE options available for both IEEE 802.3af (PoE) or IEEE 802.3at (PoE+). The Cisco Catalyst 4507 switch also supports dual supervisor capabilities for high-availability types of environments.

If Cisco Catalyst 3560 and 3750/3750X switches are used, additional Layer 2 security features such as dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) inspection, Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP) snooping, and IP Source Guard can be used to provide additional security enhancements.

Figure 7-10 illustrates the large branch design using dual routers, ASAs, and distribution switches.



**Figure 7-10** Large Branch Design

## Enterprise Teleworker Design

At the remote edges of the network is another branch office known as enterprise teleworkers. Cisco developed a solution called Cisco Virtual Office Solution, which was designed with the enterprise teleworker in mind. As organizations continually try to reduce costs and improve employee productivity, working from home is becoming an increasingly popular option for businesses and organizations. This approach allows employees to manage their work schedules more effectively and increase their productivity. This also results in greater job satisfaction and flexibility in the work schedules. The work-from-home teleworker is an extension of the enterprise and serves as the basis for the enterprise teleworker solution.



Enterprise teleworkers need to be differentiated from the occasional remote worker. The full-time enterprise teleworker has more extensive application access and requirements than the occasional remote worker. Occasionally, remote users connect to the corporate network at a hotspot, but generally they do not have the same application demands of an enterprise teleworker. Generally, enterprise teleworkers connect to a local ISP through a cable or DSL connection in their residence.

The Cisco Virtual Office Solution for the Enterprise Teleworker is implemented using the Cisco 800 series ISRs. Each ISR has integrated switch ports that then connect to the user's broadband connection. The solution uses a permanent always-on IPsec VPN tunnel back to the corporate network. This architecture provides for centralized IT security management, corporate-pushed security policies, and integrated identity services. In addition, this solution supports the enterprise teleworker needs through advanced applications such as voice and video. For example, the enterprise teleworker can take advantage of toll bypass, voicemail, and advanced IP phone features not available in the PSTN.

### ISRs for Teleworkers

Cisco 860 and 880 series offers integrated services at broadband speeds for small offices and enterprise teleworkers. Depending on the Cisco 800 series ISR selected, features include support for data, security, and wireless technologies.

Cisco 860 ISRs provide the following:

- Broadband services for small office and teleworkers
- Four-port 10/100 FE switch with VLAN support
- Security: SPI firewall, IPsec VPN (3DES/AES)
- Wireless 802.11g/n access point support
- CON/AUX port or web-based management tools

Cisco 880 ISRs provide the following:

- Broadband services for small office and teleworkers
- WAN diversity, FE, DSL, 3G wireless, and ISDN
- Four-port 10/100 FE switch with VLAN support; two ports allow for PoE
- Security
  - SPI firewall with control for email, IM, and HTTP
  - IPsec VPN (3DES/AES), DMVPN, GET VPN, and Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) VPN
  - IPS (intrusion prevention system; inline deep-packet inspection)
  - Content filtering (category-based reputation rating, keyword/URL blocking)
- Wireless 802.11g/n access point support (unified or autonomous)
- CON/AUX port or web-based management tools

## References and Recommended Readings

Services Ready Large Branch Network System Assurance Guide, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/voice\\_ip\\_comm/cvd/G2srlgbnrt/G2srlgbnrt\\_Book.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/voice_ip_comm/cvd/G2srlgbnrt/G2srlgbnrt_Book.html).

Module 4, “Designing Remote Connectivity,” Designing for Cisco Internetwork Solution Course (DESGN) v2.1.

RFC 4301, Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4301](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4301)

RFC 2406, IP Encapsulating Security Payload, [www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2406.txt](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2406.txt).

RFC 2402, IP Authentication Header, [www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2402.txt](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2402.txt).

What’s New on Cisco ISR G2? [www.cisco.com/assets/prod/rt/isr/whats-new-isrg2.html](http://www.cisco.com/assets/prod/rt/isr/whats-new-isrg2.html).

Cisco Enhanced Power over Ethernet (PoE), [www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/switches/ps5718/ps5023/QA\\_Enhanced\\_Power\\_over\\_Ethernet.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/switches/ps5718/ps5023/QA_Enhanced_Power_over_Ethernet.html).

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 7-6 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 7-6** *Key Topics*

<b>Key Topic Element</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Page</b>
List	The three major categories that represent traditional WANs	230
List	Typical remote-access requirements	232
List	Three VPN groups divided by application	232
List	WAN backup options	240
List	Common factors that influence decisions for WAN architecture selection	241
List	Enterprise edge component considerations	245
List	Three ways access routers can connect the Layer 2 switch ports	250
Summary	Medium branch design	250
Summary	Large branch design	252
Summary	Enterprise teleworker design	254

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

## Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

circuit switched, leased lines, packet and cell switched, hub-and-spoke (or star) topology, partial-mesh topology, full-mesh topology, access VPN, intranet (site-to-site) VPN, extranet VPN, IPsec, MPLS, Virtual Private LAN Services (VPLS), dial backup, secondary WAN link, shadow PVC, small branch design, medium branch design, large branch design

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** What type of WAN technology provides a dedicated connection from the service provider?
  - a.** Circuit-switched data connection
  - b.** Leased lines
  - c.** Packet switched
  - d.** Cell switched
- 2.** What type of topology suffers from a single point of failure?
  - a.** Hub-and-spoke topology
  - b.** Full-mesh topology
  - c.** Partial-mesh topology
  - d.** None of the above
- 3.** What kind of topology requires that each site be connected to every other site in the cloud?
  - a.** Hub-and-spoke topology
  - b.** Full-mesh topology
  - c.** Partial-mesh topology
  - d.** All of the above
- 4.** Which two of the following best describe WAN backup over the Internet deployments?
  - a.** Private WAN
  - b.** Redundancy for primary WAN connection
  - c.** VPLS
  - d.** Best-effort performance

- 5.** Which VPN application gives users connectivity over shared networks?
  - a.** Intranet VPN
  - b.** Extranet VPN
  - c.** Access VPN
  - d.** None of the above
- 6.** What are three types of WAN topologies that can be used with Cisco enterprise architectures in the WAN?
  - a.** Ring
  - b.** Full mesh
  - c.** Partial mesh
  - d.** Hub and spoke
- 7.** The service provider plays an active role in enterprise routing with what kind of VPNs?
  - a.** VPDNs
  - b.** Peer to peer
  - c.** L2TP
  - d.** L2F
- 8.** Which backup option provides an additional virtual circuit for use if needed?
  - a.** Secondary WAN link
  - b.** Shadow PVC
  - c.** Dial backup
  - d.** Load sharing
- 9.** Which WAN backup option uses load sharing in addition to providing backup services?
  - a.** Dial backup
  - b.** Shadow PVC
  - c.** Secondary WAN link
  - d.** ISDN with DDR
- 10.** What of the following best describes the difference between a small branch and a medium branch?
  - a.** Small branches use dual external switches.
  - b.** Medium branches use single ASA firewall.
  - c.** Small branches use single ASA firewall.
  - d.** Medium branches use external L2 switches.

- 11.** How many users are supported in a large branch design?
- a.** Up to 50
  - b.** Between 50 to 100
  - c.** Between 100 to 1000
  - d.** Between 200 to 5000
- 12.** What two methods are used to enable private networks over public networks?
- a.** IPsec
  - b.** PKI
  - c.** GRE
  - d.** PSTN
- 13.** What is not a factor for WAN architecture selection?
- a.** Ease of management
  - b.** Ongoing expenses
  - c.** Spanning-tree inconsistencies
  - d.** High availability
- 14.** Which Layer 3 tunneling technique enables basic IP VPNs without encryption?
- a.** GRE
  - b.** IPsec
  - c.** IPsec
  - d.** IKE
- 15.** Which of the following is not recommended approach for designing WANs?
- a.** Analyze customer requirements
  - b.** Characterize the existing network
  - c.** Design the new WAN
  - d.** Implement new WAN
- 16.** What MAN/WAN architecture uses the Internet with site-to-site VPNs?
- a.** Private WAN
  - b.** ISP service
  - c.** SP MPLS/IP VPN
  - d.** Private WAN with self-deployed MPLS

- 17.** Which WAN backup method does not use the Internet as a transport?
- a.** IPsec tunnel
  - b.** GRE tunnel
  - c.** Shadow PVC
  - d.** GET VPN
- 18.** What branch design uses ASA firewalls? Select all that apply.
- a.** Small branch
  - b.** Medium branch
  - c.** Large branch
  - d.** Secure branch
- 19.** What WAN/MAN architecture is usually reserved for large enterprises that are willing to make substantial investments in equipment and training?
- a.** Private WAN
  - b.** Private WAN with self-deployed MPLS
  - c.** ISP service
  - d.** SP MPLS/IP VPN
- 20.** Match each branch profile design with its description.
- a.** Small branch
  - b.** Medium branch
  - c.** Large branch
  - d.** Enterprise teleworker
    - i. Single access router
    - ii. Cable modem router
    - iii. Pair of access routers
    - iv. Pair of firewalls

*This page intentionally left blank*

**CCDA exam topics covered in this part:**

- Describe IPv4 addressing
- Describe IPv6 addressing
- Identify routing protocol considerations in an enterprise network
- Design a routing protocol deployment

# **Part III: The Internet Protocol and Routing Protocols**

---

**Chapter 8: Internet Protocol Version 4**

**Chapter 9: Internet Protocol Version 6**

**Chapter 10: Routing Protocol Characteristics, RIP, and EIGRP**

**Chapter 11: OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and IP Multicast**



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- IPv4 Header
- IPv4 Addressing
- IP Address Subnets
- Address Assignment and Name Resolution

## Internet Protocol Version 4

---

This chapter reviews Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4) address structures and IPv4 address types. IPv4 is the version of the protocol that the Internet has used since the initial allocation of IPv4 addresses in 1981. The size of the enterprise indicated the address class that was allocated. This chapter covers the IPv4 header to give you an understanding of IPv4 characteristics. The mid-1990s saw the implementation of classless interdomain routing (CIDR), Network Address Translation (NAT), and private address space to prevent the apparent exhaustion of IPv4 address space. Companies implement variable-length subnet masks (VLSM) in their networks to provide intelligent address assignment and summarization. Separate IP subnets are used for IP phones and wireless LANs to segregate this traffic from data traffic. The CCDA needs to understand all these concepts to design IPv4 addressing for a network.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 8-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 8-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
IPv4 Header	4, 10
IPv4 Addressing	1, 5, 9
IPv4 Address Subnets	2, 3, 6, 7
Address Assignment and Name Resolution	8

- 1.** Which of the following addresses is an IPv4 private address?
  - a.** 198.176.1.1
  - b.** 172.31.16.1
  - c.** 191.168.1.1
  - d.** 224.130.1.1
- 2.** How many IP addresses are available for hosts in the subnet 198.10.100.64/27?
  - a.** 14
  - b.** 30
  - c.** 62
  - d.** 126
- 3.** What subnet mask should you use in loopback addresses?
  - a.** 255.255.255.252
  - b.** 255.255.255.254
  - c.** 255.255.255.0
  - d.** 255.255.255.255
- 4.** In what IPv4 field are the precedence bits located?
  - a.** Priority field
  - b.** IP Protocol field
  - c.** Type of Service field
  - d.** IP Options field
- 5.** What type of address is 225.10.1.1?
  - a.** Unicast
  - b.** Multicast
  - c.** Broadcast
  - d.** Anycast
- 6.** Which subnetworks are summarized by the following summary route:  
150.10.192.0/21?
  - a.** 150.10.192.0/24, 150.10.193.0/24
  - b.** 150.10.192.0/22, 150.10.196.0/23, 150.10.197.0/24
  - c.** 150.10.192.0/22, 150.10.199.0/22
  - d.** 150.10.192.0/23, 150.10.194.0/23, 150.10.196.0/23, 150.10.197.0/24,  
150.10.198.0/24

7. What type of network and subnet mask would you use to save address space in a point-to-point WAN link?
  - a. 100.100.10.16/26
  - b. 100.100.10.16/28
  - c. 100.100.10.16/29
  - d. 100.100.10.16/30
8. What is DHCP?
  - a. Dynamic Host Control Protocol
  - b. Dedicated Host Configuration Protocol
  - c. Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
  - d. Predecessor to BOOTP
9. A company needs to use public IP addresses so that four network servers are accessible from the Internet. What technology is used to meet this requirement?
  - a. DNS
  - b. IPsec
  - c. Static NAT
  - d. Dynamic NAT
10. The DS field of DSCP is capable of how many codepoints?
  - a. 8
  - b. 32
  - c. 64
  - d. 128

## Foundation Topics

This chapter reviews IPv4 headers, address classes, and assignment methods.

IP is the network layer protocol in TCP/IP. It contains logical addressing and information for routing packets throughout the internetwork. IP is described in RFC 791, which was prepared for the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) in September 1981.

IP provides for the transmission of blocks of data, called datagrams or packets, from a source to a destination. The sources and destinations are identified by 32-bit IP addresses. The source and destination devices are workstations, servers, printers, and routers. The CCDA candidate must understand IPv4 logical address classes and assignment. The IPv4 protocol also provides for the fragmentation and reassembly of large packets for transport over networks with small maximum transmission units (MTU). The CCDA candidate must have a good understanding of this packet fragmentation and reassembly.

Appendix C, “OSI Model, TCP/IP Architecture, and Numeric Conversion,” provides an overview of the TCP/IP architecture and how it compares with the OSI model. It also reviews binary numbers and numeric conversion (to decimal), which is a skill needed to understand IP addresses and subnetting.

## IPv4 Header

The best way to understand IPv4 is to know the IPv4 header and all its fields. Segments from TCP or the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) are passed on to IP for processing. The IP header is appended to the TCP or UDP segment. The TCP or UDP segment then becomes the IP data. The IPv4 header is 20 bytes in length when it uses no optional fields. The IP header includes the addresses of the sending host and destination host. It also includes the upper-layer protocol, a field for prioritization, and a field for fragmentation. Figure 8-1 shows the IP header format.

0	1	2	3
0	1	2	3
Version	IHL	Type of Service	Total Length
Identification		flags	Fragment Offset
Time to Live	Protocol		Header Checksum
Source Address			
Destination Address			
IP Options Field		Padding	

**Figure 8-1** IP Header

The following is a description of each field in the IP header:

- **Version:** This field is 4 bits in length. It indicates the IP header’s format, based on the

- **IHL (Internet Header Length):** This field is 4 bits in length. It indicates the length of the header in 32-bit words (4 bytes) so that the beginning of the data can be found in the IP header. The minimum value for a valid header (five 32-bit words) is 5 (0101).
- **ToS (Type of Service):** This field is 8 bits in length. Quality of service (QoS) parameters such as IP precedence or DSCP are found in this field. These are explained further in this chapter.
- **Total Length:** This field is 16 bits in length. It represents the length of the datagram or packet in bytes, including the header and data. The maximum length of an IP packet can be  $2^{16} - 1 = 65,535$  bytes. Routers use this field to determine whether fragmentation is necessary by comparing the total length with the outgoing MTU.
- **Identification:** This field is 16 bits in length. It identifies fragments for reassembly.
- **Flags:** This field is 3 bits in length. It indicates whether the packet can be fragmented and whether more fragments follow. Bit 0 is reserved and set to 0. Bit 1 indicates May Fragment (0) or Do Not Fragment (1). Bit 2 indicates Last Fragment (0) or More Fragments to Follow (1).
- **Fragment Offset:** This field is 13 bits in length. It indicates (in bytes) where in the packet this fragment belongs. The first fragment has an offset of 0.
- **Time to Live:** This field is 8 bits in length. It indicates the maximum time the packet is to remain on the network. Each router decrements this field by 1 for loop avoidance. If this field is 0, the packet must be discarded. This scheme permits routers to discard undeliverable packets.
- **Protocol:** This field is 8 bits in length. It indicates the upper-layer protocol. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) is responsible for assigning IP protocol values. Table 8-2 shows some key protocol numbers. You can find a full list at [www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers](http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers).

**Table 8-2** IP Protocol Numbers

Protocol Number	Protocol
1	Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)
2	Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)
6	Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)
17	User Datagram Protocol (UDP)
41	IPv6 encapsulation
50	Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)
51	Authentication Header (AH)
58	ICMPv6
88	

**Table 8-2 IP Protocol Numbers**

<b>Protocol Number</b>	<b>Protocol</b>
89	Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
103	Protocol-Independent Multicast (PIM)
112	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)

- **Header Checksum:** This field is 16 bits in length. The checksum does not include the data portion of the packet in the calculation. The checksum is recomputed and verified at each point the IP header is processed.
- **Source Address:** This field is 32 bits in length. It is the sender's IP address.
- **Destination Address:** This field is 32 bits in length. It is the receiver's IP address.
- **IP Options:** This field is variable in length. The options provide for control functions that are useful in some situations but unnecessary for the most common communications. Specific options are security, loose source routing, strict source routing, record route, and timestamp.
- **Padding:** This field is variable in length. It ensures that the IP header ends on a 32-bit boundary.

Table 8-3 summarizes the fields of the IP header.

**Table 8-3 IPv4 Header Fields**

<b>Field</b>	<b>Length</b>	<b>Description</b>
Version	4 bits	Indicates the IP header's format, based on the version number. Set to 0100 for IPv4.
IHL	4 bits	Length of the header in 32-bit words.
ToS	8 bits	QoS parameters.
Total Length	16 bits	Length of the packet in bytes, including header and data.
Identification	16 bits	Identifies a fragment.
Flags	3 bits	Indicates whether a packet is fragmented and whether more fragments follow.
Fragment Offset	13 bits	Location of the fragment in the total packet.
Time to Live	8 bits	Decrement by 1 by each router. When this is 0, the router discards the packet.
Protocol	8 bits	Indicates the upper-layer protocol.
Header Checksum	16 bits	Checksum of the IP header; does not include the data portion.

**Table 8-3** IPv4 Header Fields

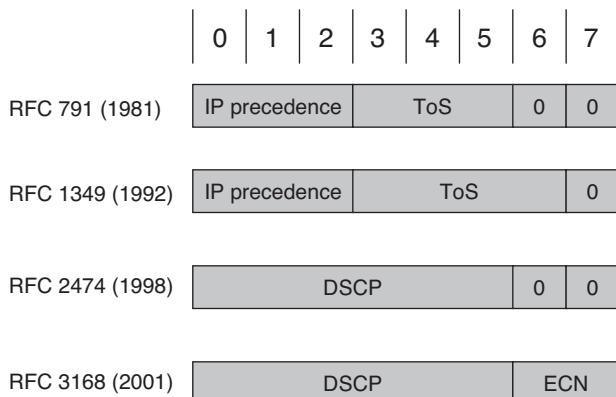
Field	Length	Description
Source Address	32 bits	IP address of the sending host.
Destination Address	32 bits	IP address of the destination host.
IP Options	Variable	Options for security, loose source routing, record route, and timestamp.
Padding	Variable	Added to ensure that the header ends in a 32-bit boundary.

## ToS

The ToS field of the IP header is used to specify QoS parameters. Routers and Layer 3 switches look at the ToS field to apply policies, such as priority, to IP packets based on the markings. An example is a router prioritizing time-sensitive IP packets over regular data traffic like web or email, which are not time-sensitive.



The ToS field has undergone several definitions since RFC 791. Figure 8-2 shows the several formats of the ToS service field based on the evolution of RFCs 791 (1981), 1349 (1992), 2474 (1998), and 3168 (2001). The following paragraphs describe this evolution.

**Figure 8-2** Evolution of the IPv4 ToS Field

The first 3 (leftmost) bits are the IP precedence bits. These bits define values that are used by QoS methods. The precedence bits especially help in marking packets to give them differentiated treatment with different priorities. For example, Voice over IP (VoIP) packets can get preferential treatment over regular data packets. RFC 791 describes the precedence bits as shown in Table 8-4.

**Table 8-4** IP Precedence Bit Values

<b>Decimal</b>	<b>Binary</b>	<b>Description</b>
0	000	Routine
1	001	Priority
2	010	Immediate
3	011	Flash
4	100	Flash override
5	101	Critical
6	110	Internetwork control
7	111	Network control

All default traffic is set with 000 in the precedence bits. Voice traffic is usually set to 101 (critical) to give it priority over normal traffic. Applications such as FTP are assigned a normal priority because it tolerates network latency and packet loss. Packet retransmissions are typically acceptable for normal traffic.

**Note:** It is common to see voice traffic classified as IP precedence 5, video traffic classified as IP precedence 4, and voice and video signaling classified as IP precedence 3. Default traffic remains as IP precedence 0.

RFC 1349 redefined bits 3 and 6 (expanding for ToS bits) to reflect a desired type of service optimization. Table 8-5 shows the ToS field values that indicate service parameters to use for IP packets.

**Table 8-5** ToS Field Values

<b>ToS Bits 3 to 6</b>	<b>Description</b>
0000	Normal service
1000	Minimize delay
0100	Maximize throughput
0010	Maximize reliability
0001	Minimize monetary cost

In 1998, RFC 2474 redefined the ToS octet as the Differentiated Services (DS) field and further specified bits 0 through 5 as the Differentiated Services Codepoint (DSCP) bits to

tion of an Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) field.

The DS field takes the form shown in Figure 8-2. The DS field provides more granular levels of packet classification by using 6 bits for packet marking. DS has  $2^6 = 64$  levels of classification, which is significantly higher than the 8 levels of the IP precedence bits. These 64 levels are called codepoints, and they have been defined to be backward compatible with IP precedence values. RFC 2474 defines three sets of PHBs: Class Selector (CS), Assured Forwarding (AF), and Expedited Forwarding (EF). The CS PHB set is for DSCP values that are compatible with IP precedence bits. The AF PHB set is used for queuing and congestion avoidance. The EF PHB set is used for premium service. The CS per-hop behaviors (PHB), in the form of xxx000, make it backwards compatible with IP precedence.

The network designer uses DSCP to give priority to IP packets using Cisco routers. Routers should be configured to map these codepoints to PHBs with queuing or other bandwidth-management techniques. Table 8-6 compares DSCP and IP precedence values used to assign priority and apply policies to IP packets.

**Table 8-6 DSCP and IP Precedence Values**

IP Precedence		Limitation		DSCP		
Service Type	Decimal	Binary	Class	Decimal	Codepoint	
Routine	0	000	Best effort	0	000xxx	
Priority	1	001	Assured Forwarding (AF) Class 1	8	001xxx	
Immediate	2	010	AF Class 2	16	010xxx	
Flash	3	011	AF Class 3	24	011xxx	
Flash override	4	100	AF Class 4	32	100xxx	
Critical	5	101	Expedited Forwarding (EF)	40	101xxx	
Internetwork control	6	110	Control	48	110xxx	
Network control	7	111	Control	56	111xxx	

RFC 2597 defines recommended values for AF codepoints with low, medium, and high packet-drop precedence. Table 8-7 shows the recommended AF codepoint values.

**Table 8-7 DSCP AF Packet-Drop Precedence Values**

Precedence	AF Class 1	AF Class 2	AF Class 3	AF Class 4
Low drop precedence	001010	010010	011010	100010
Medium drop precedence	001100	010100	011100	100100
High drop precedence	001110	010110	011110	

RFC 2598 defines the EF PHB for low loss, loss latency, and assured bandwidth types of traffic. This is considered a premium service. Traffic such as VoIP is classified as EF. The codepoint for EF is 101110, which corresponds to a DSCP value of 46.

When you are configuring Cisco routers, the following options are preconfigured and summarize the defined values for DSCP. Table 8-8 shows the IP DSCP values predefined in Cisco values.

**Table 8-8 IP DSCP Values**

DSCP Class	Codepoint Value
Default	000000
CS1	001000
AF11	001010
AF12	001100
AF13	001110
CS2	010000
AF21	010010
AF22	010100
AF23	010110
CS3	011000
AF31	011010
AF32	011100
AF33	011110
CS4	100000
AF41	100010
AF42	100100
AF43	100110
CS5	101000
EF	101110
CS6	110000
CS7	111000

## IPv4 Fragmentation

One key characteristic of IPv4 is fragmentation and reassembly. Although the length of an IP packet is 65,535 bytes, most of the common lower-layer protocols not

support such large MTUs. For example, the MTU for Ethernet is approximately 1518 bytes. When the IP layer receives a packet to send, it first queries the outgoing interface to get its MTU. If the packet's size is greater than the interface's MTU, the layer fragments the packet.

When a packet is fragmented, it is not reassembled until it reaches the destination IP layer. The destination IP layer performs the reassembly. Any router in the path can fragment a packet, and any router in the path can fragment a fragmented packet again. Each fragmented packet receives its own IP header and is routed independently from other packets. Routers and Layer 3 switches in the path do not reassemble the fragments. The destination host performs the reassembly and places the fragments in the correct order by looking at the identification and fragment offset fields.

If one or more fragments are lost, the entire packet must be retransmitted. Retransmission is the responsibility of the higher-layer protocol (such as TCP). Also, you can set the Flags field in the IP header to “Do Not Fragment” the packet. If the field indicates Do Not Fragment, the packet is discarded if the outgoing MTU is smaller than the packet.

## IPv4 Addressing

This section covers the IPv4 address classes, private addressing, and NAT. The IPv4 address space was initially divided into five classes. Each IP address class is identified by the initial bits of the address. Classes A, B, and C are unicast IP addresses, meaning that the destination is a single host. IP Class D addresses are multicast addresses, which are sent to multiple hosts. IP Class E addresses are reserved. Private addresses are selected address ranges that are reserved for use by companies in their private networks. These private addresses are not routed in the Internet. NAT translates between private and public addresses.

An IP address is a unique logical number to a network device or interface. An IP address is 32 bits in length. To make the number easier to read, the dotted-decimal format is used. The bits are combined into four 8-bit groups, each converted into decimal numbers (for example, 10.1.1.1). If you are not familiar with binary numbers, Appendix C contains a review of binary and hexadecimal number manipulation.

The following example shows an IP address in binary and decimal formats:

Binary IP address: 01101110 00110010 11110010 00001010

Convert each byte into decimal.

For the first octet:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc}
 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\
 0 & +64 & +32 & +0 & +8 & +4 & +2 & +0 = 110 \\
 \\ 
 01101110 & = 110
 \end{array}$$

For the second octet:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc}
 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
 0 & +0 & +32 & +16 & +0 & +0 & +2 & +0 = 50 \\
 \\ 
 00110010 & = 50
 \end{array}$$

For the third octet:

1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0
128	+64	+32	+16	+0	+0	+2	+0 = 242
$11110010 = 242$							

For the fourth octet:

0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
0	+0	+0	+0	+8	+0	+2	+0 = 10
$00001010 = 10$							

The IP address is 110.50.242.10.

## IPv4 Address Classes

IPv4 addresses have five classes: A, B, C, D, and E. In classful addressing, the most significant bits of the first byte determine the address class of the IP address. Table 8-9 shows the high-order bits of each IP address class.

**Table 8-9** High-Order Bits of IPv4 Address Classes

Address Class	High-Order Bits
A	0xxxxxxx
B	10xxxxxx
C	110xxxxx
D	1110xxxx
E	1111xxxx

\*x can be either 1 or 0, regardless of the address class.

Again, the IPv4 Class A, B, and C addresses are unicast addresses. Unicast addresses represent a single destination. Class D is for multicast addresses. Packets sent to a multicast address are sent to a group of hosts. Class E addresses are reserved for experimental use. IANA allocates the IPv4 address space. IANA delegates regional assignments to Regional Internet Registries (RIR). The five RIRs are

- ARIN (American Registry for Internet Numbers)
- RIPE NCC (Reseaux IP Europeens Network Control Center)
- APNIC (Asia Pacific Network Information Center)
- LACNIC (Latin America and Caribbean Network Information Center)
- AfriNIC (African Network Information Centre)

Updates to the IPv4 address space can be found at [www.iana.org/assignments/ipv4-address-space](http://www.iana.org/assignments/ipv4-address-space).

The following sections discuss each of these classes in detail.

### Class A Addresses

Class A addresses range from 0 (00000000) to 127 (01111111) in the first byte. Network numbers available for assignment to organizations are from 1.0.0.0 to 126.0.0.0. Networks 0 and 127 are reserved. For example, 127.0.0.1 is reserved for local host or host loopback. A packet sent to a local host address is sent to the local machine.

By default, for Class A addresses, the first byte is the network number, and the three remaining bytes are the host number. The format is *N.H.H.H*, where *N* is the network part and *H* is the host part. With 24 bits available, there are  $2^{24} - 2 = 16,777,214$  IP addresses for host assignment per Class A network. We subtract two for the network number (all 0s) and broadcast address (all 1s). A network with this many hosts will surely not work with so many hosts attempting to broadcast on the network. This section discusses subnetting later as a method of defining smaller networks within a larger network address.

### Class B Addresses

Class B addresses range from 128 (10000000) to 191 (10111111) in the first byte. Network numbers assigned to companies or other organizations are from 128.0.0.0 to 191.255.0.0. This section discusses the 16 networks reserved for private use later.

By default, for Class B addresses, the first two bytes are the network number, and the remaining two bytes are the host number. The format is *N.N.H.H*. With 16 bits available, there are  $2^{16} - 2 = 65,534$  IP addresses for host assignment per Class B network. As with Class A addresses, having a segment with more than 65,000 hosts broadcasting will surely not work; you resolve this issue with subnetting.

### Class C Addresses

Class C addresses range from 192 (11000000) to 223 (11011111) in the first byte. Network numbers assigned to companies are from 192.0.0.0 to 223.255.255.0. The format is *N.N.N.H*. With 8 bits available, there are  $2^8 - 2 = 254$  IP addresses for host assignment per Class C network. *H* = 0 is the network number; *H* = 255 is the broadcast address.

### Class D Addresses

Class D addresses range from 224 (11100000) to 239 (11101111) in the first byte. Network numbers assigned to multicast groups range from 224.0.0.1 to 239.255.255.255. These addresses do not have a host or network part. Some multicast addresses are already assigned; for example, 224.0.0.10 is used by routers running EIGRP. You can find a full list of assigned multicast addresses at [www.iana.org/assignments/multicast-addresses](http://www.iana.org/assignments/multicast-addresses).

## Class E Addresses

Class E addresses range from 240 (11110000) to 254 (11111110) in the first byte. These addresses are reserved for experimental networks. Network 255 is reserved for the broadcast address, such as 255.255.255.255. Table 8-10 summarizes the IPv4 address classes. Again, each address class can be uniquely identified in binary by the high-order bits.

**Table 8-10** *IPv4 Address Classes*

Address Class	High-Order Bits	Network Numbers
A	0xxxxxxx	1.0.0.0 to 126.0.0.0*
B	10xxxxxx	128.0.0.0 to 191.255.0.0
C	110xxxxx	192.0.0.0 to 223.255.255.0
D	1110xxxx	224.0.0.1 to 239.255.255.255
E	1111xxxx	240.0.0.0 to 254.255.255.255

\*Networks 0.0.0.0 and 127.0.0.0 are reserved as special-use addresses.

## IPv4 Address Types

IPv4 addresses can also be classified in one of three types:



- Unicast
- Broadcast
- Multicast

Unicast address represent a single interface of a host (PC, router, server). It can be a source or destination IP address. A broadcast address is a destination IP address that is set to all other devices in a given address range, normally it is sent to all devices in the IP subnet. A multicast address is a destination IP address sent to a specific set of hosts. Table 8-11 summarizes IPv4 address types.

**Table 8-11** *IPv4 Address Type*

Description	IPv4 Address Type
The IP address of an interface on a single host. It can be a source or destination address	Unicast
An IP address that reaches all hosts in an address range. It is only a destination address.	Broadcast
An IP address that reaches a group of hosts. It is only a destination address	Multicast

## IPv4 Private Addresses

Some network numbers within the IPv4 address space are reserved for private use. These numbers are not routed on the Internet. Many organizations today use private addresses in their internal networks with NAT to access the Internet. (NAT is covered later in this chapter.) Private addresses are explained in RFC 1918, *Address Allocation for Private Internets*, published in 1996. Private addresses were one of the first steps dealing with the concern that the globally unique IPv4 address space would become exhausted. The availability of private addresses combined with NAT reduces the need for organizations to carefully define subnets to minimize the waste of assigned, public, global IP addresses.



The IP network address space reserved for private internets is 10/8, 172.16/12, and 192.168/16. It includes one Class A network, 16 Class B networks, and 256 Class C networks. Table 8-12 summarizes private address space. Large organizations can use network 10.0.0/8 to assign address space throughout the enterprise. Midsize organizations can use one of the Class B private networks 172.16.0.0/16 through 172.31.0.0/16 for IP addresses. The smaller Class C addresses, which begin with 192.168, support only up to 254 hosts each.

**Table 8-12** *IPv4 Private Address Space*

Class Type	Start Address	End Address
Class A	10.0.0.0	10.255.255.255
Class B	172.16.0.0	172.31.255.255
Class C	192.168.0.0	192.168.255.255

## NAT

NAT devices convert internal IP address space into globally unique IP addresses. NAT was originally specified by RFC 1631; the current specification is RFC 3022. Companies use NAT to translate internal private addresses to public addresses and vice versa.



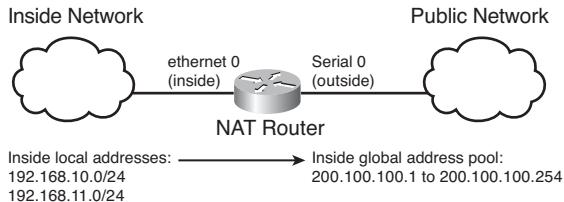
The translation can be from many private addresses to a single public address or from many private addresses to a range of public addresses. When NAT performs many-to-one, the process is called Port Address Translation (PAT) because different port numbers identify translations.

As shown in Figure 8-3, the source addresses for outgoing IP packets are converted to globally unique IP addresses. The conversion can be configured statically, or it can dynamically use a global pool of addresses.

NAT has several forms:

- **Static NAT:** Maps an unregistered or private IP address to a registered IP address; it is configured manually. It is commonly used to assign a network device with internal private IP address a unique public address so that they can be accessed

- **Dynamic NAT:** Dynamically maps an unregistered or private IP address to a registered IP address from a pool (group) of registered addresses. The two subsets of dynamic NAT are overloading and overlapping:
  - **Overloading:** Maps multiple unregistered or private IP addresses to a single registered IP address by using different ports. This is also known as PAT, single-address NAT, or port-level multiplexed NAT.
  - **Overlapping:** Maps registered internal IP addresses to outside registered IP addresses. It can also map external addresses to internal registered addresses.



**Figure 8-3** Network Address Translation

When designing for NAT, you should understand the following terminology:

- **Stub domain:** The internal network that might be using private IP addresses.
- **Public network:** Outside the stub domain, it resides in the Internet. Addresses in the public network can be reached from the Internet.
- **Inside local address:** The real IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the stub domain.
- **Inside global address:** The translated IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the public network.
- **Outside global address:** The real IP address of a device that resides in the Internet, outside the stub domain.
- **Outside local address:** The translated IP address of the device that resides in the Internet. This address is used inside the stub domain.

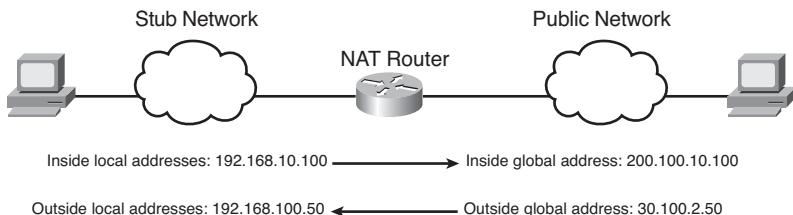
Figure 8-4 illustrates the terms described in the list. The real IP address of the host in the stub network is 192.168.10.100; it is the inside local address. The NAT router translates the inside local address into the inside global address (200.100.10.100). Hosts located in the Internet have their real IP address (outside global address) translated; in the example, 30.100.2.50 is translated into the outside local address of 192.168.100.50.

### Private and Public IP Address and NAT Guidelines

Use public IP addresses on external-facing devices that require connectivity to the Internet and external organizations. Examples include

- 
- E-commerce module

- Remote-access and virtual private network (VPN) module, where public IP addresses are used for selected connections



**Figure 8-4** Terminology Example

- Use private IP addresses throughout the internal enterprise network.
  - Use NAT and PAT as needed to translate between private internal IP addresses to public external addresses.
  - Use one private address to one public address NAT when servers on the internal network need to be visible from the public network. In firewalls, this is a “static” NAT configuration.
  - Use PAT for many private to one public address translation for end systems that need to access the public network.
- Table 8-13 provides examples of where public or private IP addresses should be used in the Cisco network architecture.

**Table 8-13** Public Versus Private IP Addresses

Network Location	Public or Private Address
E-commerce module	Public
Intranet website	Private
External DNS servers	Public
Remote-access/VPN module	Public
Inside global address	Public
Real IP address of WWW server located in internal network	Private

Table 8-14 summarizes NAT concepts.

**Table 8-14** NAT Concepts

Description	NAT Address Type
Commonly used to assign a network device with internal private IP address an unique public address so that they can be accessed from the Internet.	Static NAT

**Table 8-14** NAT Concepts

Description	NAT Address Type
Dynamically maps an unregistered or private IP address to a registered IP address from a pool (group) of registered addresses.	Dynamic NAT
Maps multiple unregistered or private IP addresses to a single registered IP address by using different ports.	PAT
The real IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the stub domain.	Inside local address
The translated IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the public network.	Inside global address
The real IP address of a device that resides in the Internet, outside the stub domain.	Outside Global address
The translated IP address of the device that resides in the Internet. This address is used inside the stub domain.	Outside local address

## IPv4 Address Subnets



Subnetting plays an important part in IPv4 addressing. The subnet mask helps determine the network, subnetwork, and host part of an IP address. The network architect uses subnetting to manipulate the default mask to create subnetworks for LAN and WAN segments. These subnetworks provide enough addresses for LANs of different sizes.

Point-to-point WAN links usually get a subnet mask that allows for only two hosts because only two routers are present in the point-to-point WAN link. You should become familiar with determining subnetwork numbers, broadcast addresses, and host address ranges given an IP address and mask.

Subnet masks are used for Class A, B, and C addresses only. Multicast addresses do not use subnet masks. A subnet mask is a 32-bit number in which bits are set to 1 to identify the network portion of the address, and a 0 is the host part of the address. The mask's bits set to 1 are contiguous on the left portion of the mask; the bits set to 0 are contiguous on the right portion of the mask. Table 8-15 shows the default masks for Class A, B, and C addresses. This section addresses various ways to represent IP subnet masks. Understanding these ways is significant because the representation of a network and its mask can appear differently in Cisco documentation or on the command-line interface.

**Table 8-15** IPv4 Default Network Address Masks

Class	Binary Mask	Dotted-Decimal Mask
A	11111111 00000000 00000000 00000000	255.0.0.0
B	11111111 11111111 00000000 00000000	255.255.0.0
C	11111111 11111111 11111111 00000000	255.255.255.0

## Mask Nomenclature

There are several ways to represent IP subnet masks. The mask can be binary, hexadecimal, dotted decimal, or a prefix “bit mask.” Historically, the most common representation was the dotted-decimal format (255.255.255.0). The prefix bit mask format is now more popular. This format represents the mask by using a slash followed by the number of leading address bits that must be set to 1 for the mask. It is also referred to as classless interdomain routing (CIDR) prefix notation. For example, 255.255.0.0 is represented as /16. Table 8-16 shows most of the mask representations. The /24 mask is common on LAN segments. The /30 mask is common for WAN point-to-point links, and /32 is used for router loopback addresses.

**Table 8-16 Subnet Masks**

Dotted Decimal	Bit Mask	Hexadecimal
255.0.0.0	/8	FF000000
255.192.0.0	/10	FFC00000
255.255.0.0	/16	FFFF0000
255.255.224.0	/19	FFFFE000
255.255.240.0	/20	FFFFFF00
255.255.255.0	/24	FFFFFF00
255.255.255.128	/25	FFFFFF80
255.255.255.192	/26	FFFFFFC0
255.255.255.224	/27	FFFFFFE0
255.255.255.240	/28	FFFFFFF0
255.255.255.248	/29	FFFFFFF8
255.255.255.252	/30	FFFFFFFC
255.255.255.255	/32	FFFFFFFF

## IP Address Subnet Design

The development of an IP address Plan or IP address subnet design is an important concept for the network designer. You should be capable of creating an IP address plan based on many factors:

- Number of locations
- Number of devices per location

- IP addressing requirements for each individual location
  - Number of devices in each communication closet
  - Site requirements: VoIP devices, wireless LAN, video
- Subnet size

The following example shows subnetting for a small company. Suppose the company has 200 hosts and is assigned the Class C network of 195.10.1.0/24. The 200 hosts need to be in six different LANs.

You can subnet the Class C network using a mask of 255.255.255.224. Looking at the mask in binary (11111111 11111111 11111111 11100000), the first 3 bytes are the network part, the first 3 bits of the fourth byte determine the subnets, and the 5 remaining 0 bits are for host addressing.

Table 8-17 shows the subnetworks created with a mask of 255.255.255.224. Using this mask,  $2^n$  subnets are created, where  $n$  is the number of bits taken from the host part for the subnet mask. This example uses 3 bits, so  $2^3 = 8$  subnets. The first column of the table lists the LANs. The second column shows the binary of the fourth byte of the IP address. The third column shows the subnet number, and the fourth and fifth columns show the first host and broadcast address of the subnet.

**Table 8-17 Subnets for Network 195.1.1.0**

LAN	Fourth Byte	Subnet Number	First Host	Broadcast Address
LAN 0	00000000	195.10.1.0	195.10.1.1	195.10.1.31
LAN 1	00100000	195.10.1.32	195.10.1.33	195.10.1.63
LAN 2	01000000	195.10.1.64	195.10.1.65	195.10.1.95
LAN 3	01100000	195.10.1.96	195.10.1.97	195.10.1.127
LAN 4	10000000	195.10.1.128	195.10.1.129	195.10.1.159
LAN 5	10100000	195.10.1.160	195.10.1.161	195.10.1.191
LAN 6	11000000	195.10.1.192	195.10.1.193	195.10.1.223
LAN 7	11100000	195.10.1.224	195.10.1.225	195.10.1.255

Use the formula  $2^n - 2$  to calculate the number of hosts per subnet, where  $n$  is the number of bits for the host portion. The preceding example has 5 bits in the fourth byte for host addresses. With  $n = 5$ ,  $2^5 - 2 = 30$  hosts. For LAN 1, host addresses range from 195.10.1.33 to 195.10.1.62 (30 addresses). The broadcast address for the subnet is 195.10.1.63. Each LAN repeats this pattern with 30 hosts in each subnet.

### Determining the Network Portion of an IP Address

Given an address and mask, you can determine the classful network, the subnetwork, and the subnetwork's broadcast number. You do so with a logical AND operation between the IP address and subnet mask. You obtain the broadcast address by taking the subnet number and making the host portion all 1s. Table 8-18 shows the logical AND operation. Notice that the AND operation is similar to multiplying bit 1 and bit 2; if any 0 is present, the result is 0.

**Table 8-18** AND Logical Operation

Bit 1	Bit 2	AND
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

As an example, take the IP address 150.85.1.70 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.224, as shown in Table 8-19. Notice the 3 bold bits in the subnet mask. These bits extend the default Class C prefix (/24) 3 bits to a mask of /27. As shown in Table 8-19, you perform an AND operation of the IP address with the subnet mask to obtain the subnetwork. You obtain the broadcast number by making all the host bits 1. As shown in bold, the subnet mask reaches 3 bits in the fourth octet. The subnetwork is identified by the five rightmost 0s in the fourth octet, and the broadcast is identified by all 1s in the 5 rightmost bits.

**Table 8-19** Subnetwork of IP Address 150.85.1.70

	Binary First, Second, and Third Octets	Binary Fourth Octet	Dotted-Decimal IP	
IP address	10010110 01010101 00000001	010	00110	150.85.1.70
Subnet mask	11111111 11111111 11111111	<b>111</b>	00000	255.255.255.224
Subnetwork	10010110 01010101 00000001	010	<b>00000</b>	150.85.1.64
	Major network portion		Subnet	Host
Broadcast address	10010110 01010101 00000001	010	<b>11111</b>	150.85.1.95

## Variable-Length Subnet Masks



Variable-length subnet masks (VLSM) divide a network into subnets of various sizes to prevent wasting IP addresses. If a Class C network uses 255.255.255.240 as a subnet mask, 16 subnets are available, each with 14 IP addresses. If a point-to-point link needs only 2 IP addresses, 12 IP addresses are wasted. This problem scales further with Class B and Class A address space. With VLSMs, small LANs can use /28 subnets with 14 hosts, and larger LANs can use /23 or /22 masks with 510 and 1022 hosts, respectively. Point-to-point networks use a /30 mask, which supports two hosts.

There is not one way to subdivide a network, so there is not a single correct way to create subnets. The best practice is to divide large networks into smaller subnets that can be assigned to sites. Further divide each site subnet into smaller subnets for data, VoIP, wireless LAN, and other subnets to be used in site VLANs. Furthermore, WAN and point-to-point links, router, and switch loopback addresses are allocated IP subnets.

### VLSM Address Assignment: Example 1

Let's look at a VLSM IP address assignment example. Take Class B network 130.20.0.0/16 as an example. Using a /20 mask produces 16 subnetworks. Table 8-20 shows the subnetworks. With the /20 subnet mask, the first 4 bits of the third byte determine the subnets.

**Table 8-20** Subnets with the /20 Mask

Third Byte	Subnetwork
00000000	130.20.0.0/20
00010000	130.20.16.0/20
00100000	130.20.32.0/20
00110000	130.20.48.0/20
01000000	130.20.64.0/20
01010000	130.20.80.0/20
01100000	130.20.96.0/20
01110000	130.20.112.0/20
10000000	130.20.128.0/20
10010000	130.20.144.0/20
10100000	130.20.160.0/20
10110000	130.20.176.0/20
11000000	130.20.192.0/20
11010000	130.20.208.0/20
11100000	130.20.224.0/20
11110000	130.20.240.0/20

With fixed-length subnet masks, the network supports only 16 networks. Any LAN or WAN link has to use a /20 subnet. In this scenario, if the sites involved vary in size, this “one network size fits all” solution might be a waste of address space and therefore is inefficient. With VLSMs, you can further subnet the /20 subnets.

For example, take 130.20.64.0/20 and subdivide it to support LANs with about 500 hosts. A /23 mask has 9 bits for hosts, producing  $2^9 - 2 = 510$  IP addresses for hosts. Table 8-21 shows the subnetworks for LANs within a specified subnet.

**Table 8-21** Subnetworks for 130.20.64.0/20

Third Byte	Subnetwork
01000000	130.20.64.0/23
01000010	130.20.66.0/23
01000100	130.20.68.0/23
01000110	130.20.70.0/23
01001000	130.20.72.0/23
01001010	130.20.74.0/23
01001100	130.20.76.0/23
01001110	130.20.78.0/23

With VLSMs, you can further subdivide these subnetworks of subnetworks. Take subnetwork 130.20.76.0/23 and use it for two LANs that have fewer than 250 hosts. It produces subnetworks 130.20.76.0/24 and 130.20.77.0/24. Also, subdivide 130.20.78.0/23 for serial links. Because each point-to-point serial link needs only two IP addresses, use a /30 mask. Table 8-22 shows the subnetworks produced.

**Table 8-22** Serial-Link Subnetworks

Third Byte	Fourth Byte	Subnetwork
01001110	00000000	130.20.78.0/30
01001110	00000100	130.20.78.4/30
01001110	00001000	130.20.78.8/30
01001110	00001100	130.20.78.12/30
...	...	...
01001111	11110100	130.20.79.244/30
01001111	11111000	130.20.79.248/30
01001111	11111100	130.20.79.252/30

Each /30 subnetwork includes the subnetwork number, two IP addresses, and a broadcast address. Table 8-23 shows the bits for 130.20.78.8/30.

**Table 8-23** Addresses Within Subnetwork 110.20.78.8/30

Binary Address	IP Address	Function
10000010 00010100 01001110 00001000	130.20.78.8	Subnetwork
10000010 00010100 01001110 00001001	130.20.78.9	IP address 1
10000010 00010100 01001110 00001010	130.20.78.10	IP address 2
10000010 00010100 01001110 00001011	130.20.78.11	Broadcast address

### Loopback Addresses

You can also reserve a subnet for router loopback addresses. Loopback addresses provide an always-up interface to use for router-management connectivity. The loopback address can also serve as the router ID for some routing protocols. The loopback address is a single IP address with a 32-bit mask. In the previous example, network 130.20.75.0/24 could provide 255 loopback addresses for network devices, starting with 130.20.75.1/32 and ending with 130.20.75.255/32.

### IP Telephony Networks

You should reserve separate subnets for LANs using IP phones. IP phones are normally placed in a VLAN that is in a logical segment separate from that of the user workstations. Separating voice and data on different subnets or VLANs also aids in providing QoS for voice traffic with regard to classifying, queuing, and buffering. This design rule also facilitates troubleshooting.

Table 8-24 shows an example of allocating IP addresses for a small network for a company located within three buildings. Notice that separate VLANs are used for the VoIP devices.

**Table 8-24** IP Address Allocation for VoIP Networks

Building/Floor/Function	VLAN Number	IP Subnet
First-floor data	VLAN 11	172.16.11.0/24
Second-floor data	VLAN 12	172.16.12.0/24
Third-floor data	VLAN 13	172.16.13.0/24
First-floor VoIP	VLAN 111	172.16.111.0/24
Second-floor VoIP	VLAN 112	172.16.112.0/24
Third-floor VoIP	VLAN 113	

## VLSM Address Assignment: Example 2

Because this is an important topic, here is another example of VLSM design. Take network 10.0.0.0/8, which is commonly used by companies in their internal networks because this is private IP address space.

Global companies divide this address space into continental regions for the Americas, Europe/Middle East, Africa, and Asia/Pacific. An example is shown in Table 8-25, where the address space has been divided into four major blocks:

- 10.0.0 to 10.63.0.0 is reserved.
- 10.64.0.0 to 10.127.0.0 for the Americas.
- 10.128.0.0 to 10.191.0.0 for Europe, Middle East, and Africa.
- 10.192.0.0 to 10.254.0.0 for Asia Pacific.

**Table 8-25** Global IP Address Allocation

Region	Network
Reserved	10.0.0.0/10
North America	10.64.0.0/10
South America	10.96.0.0/11 *part of the above
Europe/Middle East	10.128.0.0/10
Africa	10.160.0.0/11 *part of the above
Asia Pacific	10.192.0.0/10

From each of these regions, address blocks can be allocated to company sites. Large sites may require 4, 8, or 16 Class C equivalent (/24) subnets to assign to data, voice, wireless, and management VLANs. Table 8-26 shows an example. The large site is allocated network 10.64.16.0/20. The first four /24 subnets are assigned for data VLANs, the second four /24 subnets are assigned for voice VLANs, and the third four /24 subnets are assigned for wireless LAN VLANs. Other subnets are used for router and switch interfaces, point-to-point links, and network management devices.

**Table 8-26** IP Address Allocation in a Large Site

Function	IP Subnet
Data VLAN 1	10.64.16.0/24
Data VLAN 2	10.64.17.0/24
Data VLAN 3	10.64.18.0/24
Data VLAN 4	10.64.19.0/24
Voice VLAN 1	10.64.20.0/24
Voice VLAN 2	10.64.21.0/24

**Table 8-26** IP Address Allocation in a Large Site

Function	IP Subnet
Voice VLAN 3	10.64.22.0/24
Voice VLAN 4	10.64.23.0/24
Wireless VLAN 1	10.64.24.0/24
Wireless VLAN 2	10.64.25.0/24
Wireless VLAN 3	10.64.26.0/24
Wireless VLAN 4	10.64.27.0/24
Reserved	10.64.28.0/24
Reserved	10.64.29.0/24
Router/switch loopbacks	10.64.30.0/24
P2P links, misc.	10.64.31.0/24

## Address Assignment and Name Resolution

Device network configuration parameters such as IP addresses, subnet masks, default gateways, and DNS server IP addresses can be assigned statically by the administrator or dynamically by DHCP or BOOTP servers. You should statically assign most shared network systems, such as routers and servers, but dynamically assign most client systems like end-user PCs and laptops. This section covers the protocols you use to dynamically assign IP address parameters to a host, which are the Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) and the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). This section also covers Domain Name System (DNS) and Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), which are two significant protocols in IP networks. DNS maps domain names to IP addresses, and ARP resolves IP addresses to MAC addresses. These protocols are important in TCP/IP networks because they simplify the methods of address assignment and resolution.

### Recommended Practices of IP Address Assignment

IP addresses can be assigned statically (manual configuration) or dynamically:

- Use static IP address assignment for network infrastructure devices.
- Use dynamic IP address assignment for end user devices.

Use static IP address assignment for routers, switches, access points, printers, and servers statically. These static IP addresses are assigned in the network infrastructure, data center modules, and in modules of the enterprise edge and WAN. You need to manage and monitor these systems, so you must access them via a stable IP address.

You should dynamically assign end-client workstations to reduce the configuration tasks required to connect these systems to the network. Cisco IP phones and mobile devices are

and how to reach its default gateway as the network is discovered. One of the first methods used to dynamically assign IP addresses was BOOTP. The current method to assign IP addresses is DHCP.

## BOOTP

The basic BOOTP was first defined in RFC 951. It has been updated by RFC 1497 and RFC 1542. It is a protocol that allows a booting host to configure itself by dynamically obtaining its IP address, IP gateway, and other information from a remote server. You can use a single server to centrally manage numerous network hosts without having to configure each host independently.

BOOTP is an application layer protocol that uses UDP/IP for transport. The BOOTP server port is UDP port 67. The client port is UDP port 68. Clients send BOOTP requests to the BOOTP server, and the server responds to UDP port 68 to send messages to the client. The destination IP of the BOOTP requests uses the all-hosts address (255.255.255.255), which the router does not forward. If the BOOTP server is one or more router hops from the subnet, you must configure the local default gateway router to forward the BOOTP requests.

BOOTP requires that you build a “MAC address to IP address” table on the server. You must obtain every device’s MAC address, which is a time-consuming effort. BOOTP has been replaced by the more sophisticated DHCP.

## DHCP

DHCP provides a way to dynamically configure hosts on the network. Based on BOOTP, it is defined in RFC 2131 and adds the capability to reuse network addresses and additional configuration options. DHCP improves on BOOTP by using a “lease” for IP addresses and providing the client with all the IP configuration parameters needed to operate in the network.

DHCP servers allocate network addresses and deliver configuration parameters dynamically to hosts. With DHCP, the computer can obtain its configuration information—IP address, subnet mask, IP default gateway, DNS servers, WINS servers, and so on—when needed. DHCP also includes other optional parameters that you can assign to clients. The configuration information is managed centrally on a DHCP server.

Routers act as relay agents by passing DHCP messages between DHCP clients and servers. Because DHCP is an extension of BOOTP, it uses the message format defined in RFC 951 for BOOTP. It uses the same ports as BOOTP: DHCP servers use UDP port 67, and DHCP clients use UDP port 68. Because of these similarities, the configuration to support DHCP in the routers is the same described for BOOTP.

DHCP has three address allocation mechanisms:

- **Manual:** In manual allocation, DHCP is used to dispatch a preallocated IP address to a specific MAC address.
- **Automatic:**  
The IP address does not expire.



- **Dynamic:** For dynamic allocation, IP addresses are assigned for a limited time or until the host explicitly releases the address. This dynamic-allocation mechanism can reuse the IP address after the lease expires.

An IP address is assigned as follows:

1. The client sends a DHCPDISCOVER message to the local network using a 255.255.255.255 broadcast.
2. BOOTP relay agents (routers) can forward the DHCPDISCOVER message to the DHCP server in another subnet.
3. The server sends a DHCPOFFER message to respond to the client, offering IP address, lease expiration, and other DHCP option information.
4. DHCPREQUEST: The client can request additional options or an extension on its lease of an IP address. This message also confirms that the client is accepting the DHCP offer.
5. The server then sends a DHCPACK (acknowledgment) message that confirms the lease and contains all the pertinent IP configuration parameters.
6. If the server is out of addresses or it determines that the client request is invalid, it sends a DHCPNAK message to the client.

One important note for the CCDA to remember is to place DHCP servers in the Enterprise Campus Data Center/Server Farm module and Enterprise Branch of the Enterprise Campus architecture.

Table 8-27 summarizes DHCP allocation mechanisms.

**Table 8-27** *DHCP Allocation Mechanisms*

Network Location	Address Allocation Mechanism
This mechanism can reuse the IP address after the lease expires.	Dynamic
Dispatches an IP address allocated to a specific MAC address.	Manual
Allocations of IP addresses are permanently assigned to a host.	Automatic

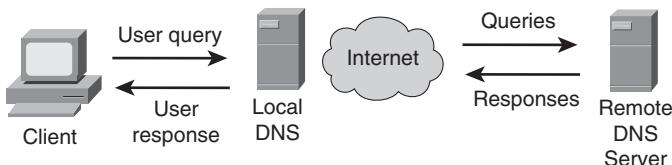
## DNS

The Domain Name System (DNS) is an Internet-based directory system that returns the destination IP addresses given a domain name (such as [www.cisco.com](http://www.cisco.com)). DNS is a distributed database. Separate, independent organizations administer their assigned domain name spaces and can break their domains into a number of subdomains. For example,



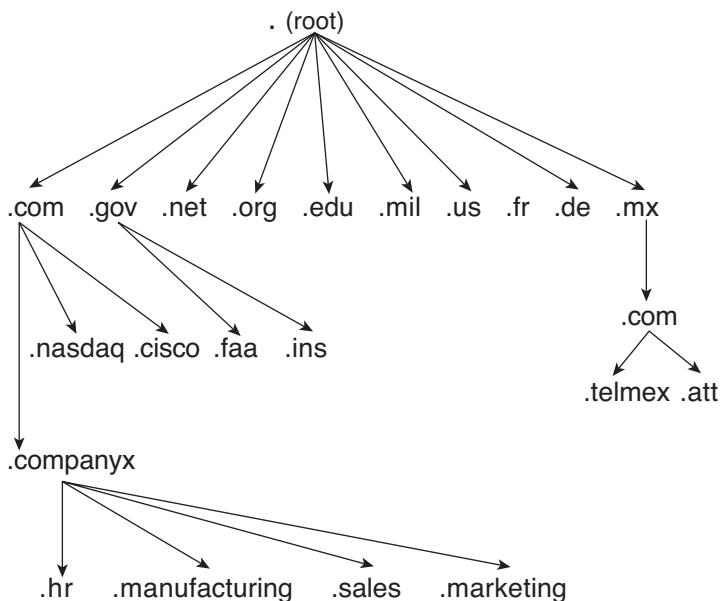
1035. It has also been updated by RFCs 1101, 1122, 1183, 1706, 1876, 1982, 1995, 1996, 2136, 2137, 2181, 2308, 2535, 2782, 2845, 3425 and RFC 3658.

Figure 8-5 shows a simplified view of the DNS process for name resolution. The client device queries its configured DNS server (the resolver) for the IP address of a fully qualified domain name (FQDN; for example, www.cisco.com). The resolver in turn queries the DNS server of the foreign or remote DNS server, which responds with the IP address of www.cisco.com. This response is stored in cache on the resolver so that it can be used for future queries. The resolver provides the response to the client machine, which can then communicate via IP address to the destination.



**Figure 8-5 DNS Name Resolution**

DNS was implemented to overcome the limitations of managing a single text host table. Imagine creating and maintaining text files with the names and IP addresses of all the hosts on the Internet! DNS scales hostname-to-IP address translation by distributing responsibility for the domain name space. DNS follows a reversed tree structure for domain name space, as shown in Figure 8-6. IANA ([www.iana.org](http://www.iana.org)) manages the tree's root.



**Figure 8-6 DNS Tree**

DNS data is called resource records (RR). Resource records are the data within a DNS zone. Table 8-28 lists some common resource records.

**Table 8-28** *DNS Resource Records*

DNS RR	Description
A	Address. Provides the name-to-address mapping. It contains the IP address in dotted-decimal form.
AAAA	Secure IPv6 address.
CNAME	Canonical Name. Used for aliases or nicknames.
MX	Mail Exchanger. Specifies the IP of the server where mail should be delivered.
NS	Name Server. Specifies the name of the device that provides DNS for a particular domain.
PTR	Pointer. Used for reverse mapping from the translation of IP addresses to names.
SOA	Start of Authority. Designates the start of a zone. This is the device that is the master of DNS data for a zone.

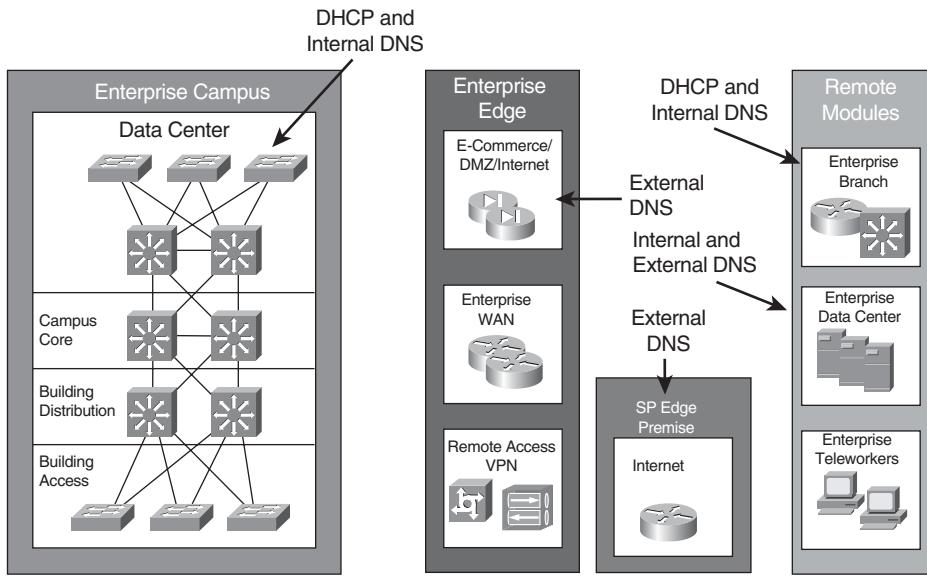
DNS uses TCP and UDP port 53. UDP is the recommended transport protocol for DNS queries. TCP is the recommended protocol for zone transfers between DNS servers. A zone transfer occurs when you place a secondary server in the domain and transfer the DNS information from the primary DNS server to the secondary server. A DNS query searches for the IP address of an FQDN, such aswww.cnn.com.

One important note for the CCDA to remember is to place DNS servers in the Enterprise Campus Server Farm module and Enterprise Branch of the Enterprise Campus architecture (see Figure 8-7).

Table 8-29 summarizes the placement of DHCP and DNS servers on the Cisco enterprise network.

**Table 8-29** *DHCP and DNS Servers*

Network Location	Server Type
Campus Data Center	DHCP and Internal DNS
Enterprise Branch	DHCP and Internal DNS
E-Commerce	External DNS
Internet	External DNS
SP Edge Premises	Internal DNS
Remote Enterprise Data Center	Internal and External DNS

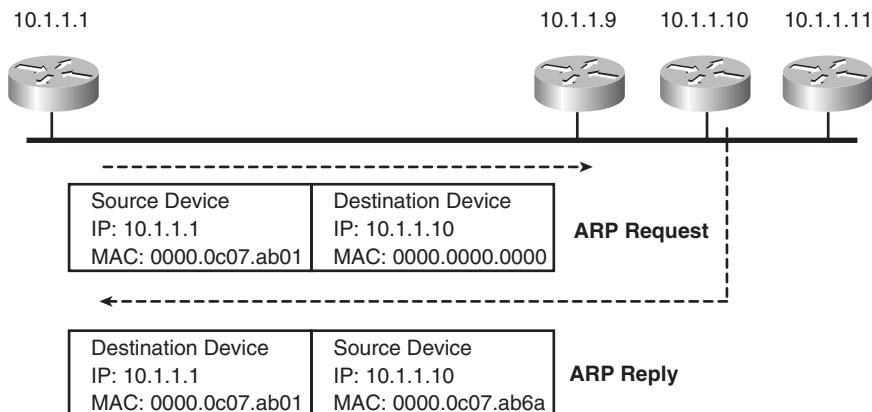


**Figure 8-7** *DHCP and DNS Servers in the Network*

## ARP

When an IP host needs to send an IP packet over an Ethernet network, it needs to find out what 48-bit MAC physical address to send the frame to. Given the destination IP, ARP obtains the destination MAC. The destination MAC can be a local host or the gateway router's MAC address if the destination IP is across the routed network. ARP is described in RFC 826. The local host maintains an ARP table with a list relating IP address to MAC address.

ARP operates by having the sender broadcast an ARP request. Figure 8-8 shows an example of an ARP request and reply. Suppose a router with the IP address 10.1.1.1 has a packet to send to 10.1.1.10 but does not have the destination MAC address in its ARP table. It broadcasts an ARP request to all hosts in a subnet. The ARP request contains the sender's IP and MAC address and the target IP address. All nodes in the broadcast domain receive the ARP request and process it. The device with the target IP address sends an ARP reply to the sender with its MAC address information; the ARP reply is a unicast message sent to 10.1.1.1. The sender now has the target MAC address in its ARP cache and sends the frame.

**Figure 8-8** ARP Request and Reply

## References and Recommended Readings

- RFC 1349, Type of Service in the Internet Protocol Suite, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 951, Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 3246, An Expedited Forwarding PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 2131, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 1631, The IP Network Address Translator (NAT), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2597, Assured Forwarding PHB Group, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 791, Internet Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 1034, Domain Names - Concepts and Facilities, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 1035, Domain Names - Implementation and Specification, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2474, Definition of the Differentiated Services Field (DS Field) in the IPv4 and IPv6 Headers, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 826, Ethernet Address Resolution Protocol: Or Converting Network Protocol Addresses to 48-bit Ethernet Address for Transmission on Ethernet Hardware, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 3168, The Addition of Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) to IP, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 1918, Address Allocation for Private Internets, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 3022, Traditional IP Network Address Translator (Traditional NAT), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 5798, Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 3168, The Addition of Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN) to IP, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2598, An Expedited Forwarding PHB, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 2474, Differentiated Services Field, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/sw/netmgtsw/ps1982/products\\_user\\_guide\\_chapter09186a00800ade55.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/sw/netmgtsw/ps1982/products_user_guide_chapter09186a00800ade55.html)

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 8-30 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 8-30** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Summary	The Type of Service field of the IP header is used to specify QoS parameters.	271
List	IPv4 address types.	278
Summary	IPv4 private addresses.	279
Summary	NAT	279
Summary	IPv4 address subnets.	282
Summary	VLSM	286
List	Three address-allocation mechanisms of DHCP.	291
Summary	DNS	292

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

IPv4, DHCP, DNS, DSCP, NAT, PAT, ToS, VLSM

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** List the RFC 1918 private address ranges.
- 2.** True or false: You can use DHCP to specify the TFTP host's IP address to a client PC.
- 3.** True or false: 255.255.255.248 and /28 are two representations of the same IP mask.
- 4.** True or false: Upper-layer protocols are identified in the IP header's protocol field. TCP is protocol 6, and UDP is protocol 17.
- 5.** Fill in the blank: Without any options, the IP header is \_\_\_\_\_ bytes in length.
- 6.** The IP header's ToS field is redefined as the DS field. How many bits does DSCP use for packet classification, and how many levels of classification are possible?
- 7.** True or false: NAT uses different IP addresses for translations. PAT uses different port numbers to identify translations.
- 8.** True or false: The IP header's header checksum field performs the checksum of the IP header and data.
- 9.** Calculate the subnet, the address range within the subnet, and the subnet broadcast of the address 172.56.5.245/22.
- 10.** When packets are fragmented at the network layer, where are the fragments reassembled?
- 11.** Which protocol can you use to configure a default gateway setting on a host?
  - a.** ARP
  - b.** DHCP
  - c.** DNS
  - d.** RARP
- 12.** How many host addresses are available with a Class B network with the default mask?
  - a.** 63,998
  - b.** 64,000
  - c.** 65,534
  - d.** 65,536
- 13.** Which of the following is a dotted-decimal representation of a /26 prefix mask?
  - a.** 255.255.255.128
  - b.** 255.255.255.192
  - c.** 255.255.255.224
  - d.** 255.255.255.252

- 14.** Which network and mask summarize both the 192.170.20.16/30 and 192.170.20.20/30 networks?
- a. 192.170.20.0/24
  - b. 192.170.20.20/28
  - c. 192.170.20.16/29
  - d. 192.170.20.0/30
- 15.** Which AF class is backward compatible with IP precedence bits' flash traffic?
- a. AF2
  - b. AF3
  - c. AF4
  - d. EF
- 16.** Which of the following is true about fragmentation?
- a. Routers between source and destination hosts can fragment IPv4 packets.
  - b. Only the first router in the network can fragment IPv4 packets.
  - c. IPv4 packets cannot be fragmented.
  - d. IPv4 packets are fragmented and reassembled at each link through the network.
- 17.** A packet sent to a multicast address reaches what destinations?
- a. The nearest destination in a set of hosts.
  - b. All destinations in a set of hosts.
  - c. Broadcasts to all hosts.
  - d. Reserved global destinations.
- 18.** What are three types of IPv4 addresses?
- a. Anycast
  - b. Multicast
  - c. Dynamic
  - d. Broadcast
  - e. Unicast
  - f. Global
  - g. Static

**19.** Which devices should be assigned an IP address dynamically? (Select three.)

- a.** Cisco IP phones
- b.** LAN switches
- c.** Workstations
- d.** Mobile devices
- e.** Routers

**20.** Which name resolution method reduces administrative overhead?

- a.** Static name resolution
- b.** Dynamic name resolution
- c.** DHCP name resolution
- d.** Host.txt name resolution

**21.** How many hosts can be addressed with the following IPv4 subnet:

172.30.192.240/28?

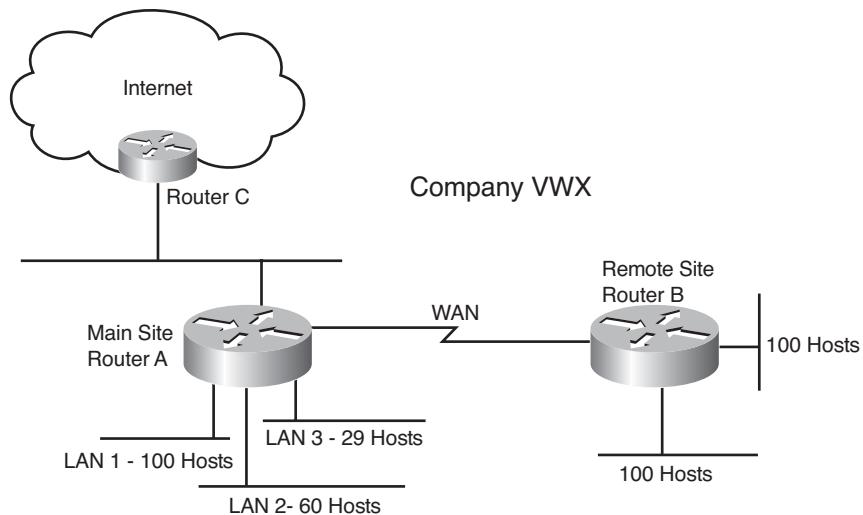
- a.** 6
- b.** 14
- c.** 126
- d.** 1024

**22.** What is the smallest subnet and mask that can be used in a DMZ network that needs to have only three hosts?

- a.** 192.168.10.32/30
- b.** 192.168.10.32/29
- c.** 192.168.10.32/28
- d.** 192.168.10.32/27

Answer the following questions based on the given scenario and Figure 8-9.

Company VWX has the network shown in Figure 8-9. The main site has three LANs, with 100, 29, and 60 hosts. The remote site has two LANs, each with 100 hosts. The network uses private addresses. The Internet service provider assigned the company the network 210.200.200.8/26.



**Figure 8-9 Scenario Diagram**

- 23.** The remote site uses the network prefix 192.168.10.0/24. What subnets and masks can you use for the LANs at the remote site and conserve address space?
- 192.168.10.64/26 and 192.168.10.192/26
  - 192.168.10.0/25 and 192.168.10.128/25
  - 192.168.10.32/28 and 192.168.10.64/28
  - 192.168.10.0/30 and 192.168.10.128/30
- 24.** The main site uses the network prefix 192.168.15.0/24. What subnets and masks can you use to provide sufficient addresses for LANs at the main site and conserve address space?
- 192.168.15.0/25 for LAN 1, 192.168.15.128/26 for LAN 2, and 172.15.192.0/27 for LAN 3
  - 192.168.15.0/27 for LAN 1, 192.168.15.128/26 for LAN 2, and 172.15.192.0/25 for LAN 3
  - 192.168.15.0/100 for LAN 1, 192.168.15.128/60 for LAN 2, and 172.15.192.0/29 for LAN 3
  - 192.168.15.0/26 for LAN 1, 192.168.15.128/26 for LAN 2, and 172.15.192.0/29 for LAN 3

- 25.** Which network and mask would you use for the WAN link to save the most address space?
- a.** 192.168.11.240/27
  - b.** 192.168.11.240/28
  - c.** 192.168.11.240/29
  - d.** 192.168.11.240/30
- 26.** What networks does Router C announce to the Internet service provider's Internet router?
- a.** 210.200.200.8/26
  - b.** 192.168.10.0/24 and 192.168.11.0/24
  - c.** 192.168.10.0/25 summary address
  - d.** 201.200.200.8/29 and 192.168.10.0/25
- 27.** What technology does Router C use to convert private addresses to public addresses?
- a.** DNS
  - b.** NAT
  - c.** ARP
  - d.** VLSM
- 28.** What mechanism supports the ability to divide a given subnet into smaller subnets based on need?
- a.** DNS
  - b.** NAT
  - c.** ARP
  - d.** VLSM

*This page intentionally left blank*



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Introduction to IPv6
- IPv6 Header
- IPv6 Address Representation
- IPv6 Address Scope Types and Address Allocations
- IPv6 Mechanisms
- IPv6 Routing Protocols
- IPv4 to IPv6 Transition Strategies and Deployments
- IPv6 Comparison with IPv4

## Internet Protocol Version 6

---

This chapter reviews Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) address structures, address assignments, representations, and mechanisms used to deploy IPv6. Expect plenty of questions about IPv6 on the exam. The CCDA must understand how an IPv6 address is represented and the different types of IPv6 addresses. This chapter also covers the benefits of IPv6 over IPv4, compares the protocols, and examines migration to IPv6 options.

As IPv6 matures, different deployment models will be used to implement the new protocol with existing IPv4 networks. This chapter covers these models at a high level. This chapter does not discuss the configuration of IPv6 because it is not a requirement for CCDA certification.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The 13-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 9-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 9-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Introduction to IPv6	11
IPv6 Header	1, 2
IPv6 Address Representation	5, 8, 9
IPv6 Address Types and Address Allocations	3, 4, 7
IPv6 Mechanisms	10
IPv4 to IPv6 Transition Strategies and Deployments	6
IPv6 Routing Protocols	12
IPv6 comparison with IPv4	13

- 1.** IPv6 uses how many more bits for addresses than IPv4?
  - a.** 32
  - b.** 64
  - c.** 96
  - d.** 128
- 2.** What is the length of the IPv6 header?
  - a.** 20 bytes
  - b.** 30 bytes
  - c.** 40 bytes
  - d.** 128 bytes
- 3.** What address type is the IPv6 address FE80::300:34BC:123F:1010?
  - a.** Aggregatable global
  - b.** Unique-local
  - c.** Link-local
  - d.** Multicast
- 4.** What are three scope types of IPv6 addresses?
  - a.** Unicast, multicast, broadcast
  - b.** Unicast, anycast, broadcast
  - c.** Unicast, multicast, endcast
  - d.** Unicast, anycast, multicast
- 5.** What is a compact representation of the address 3f00:0000:0000:a7fb:0000:0000:b100:0023?
  - a.** 3f::a7fb::b100:0023
  - b.** 3f00::a7fb:0000:0000:b100:23
  - c.** 3f::a7fb::b1:23
  - d.** 3f00:0000:0000:a7fb::b1:23
- 6.** What is NAT-PT?
  - a.** Network Address Translation-Port Translation. Translates RFC 1918 addresses to public IPv4 addresses.
  - b.** Network Addressable Transparent-Port Translation. Translates network addresses to ports.
  - c.** Network Address Translation-Protocol Translation. Translates between IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
  - d.** Next Address Translation–Port Translation.
- 7.** What IPv6 address scope type replaces the IPv4 broadcast address?
  - a.** Unicast
  - b.** Multicast

- c. Broadcast
  - d. Anycast
8. What is the IPv6 equivalent to 127.0.0.1?
- a. 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
  - b. 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:1
  - c. 127:0:0:0:0:0:0:1
  - d. FF::1
9. Which of the following is an “IPv4-compatible” IPv6 address?
- a. ::180.10.1.1
  - b. f000:0:0:0:0:180.10.1.1
  - c. 180.10.1.1::
  - d. 2010::180.10.1.1
10. Which protocol maps names to IPv6 addresses?
- a. Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
  - b. Network Discovery (ND)
  - c. Domain Name System (DNS)
  - d. DNSv2
11. Which of the following are IPv6 enhancements over IPv4?
- a. Larger address space, globally private IP address, multicast
  - b. Larger address space, globally unique IP addresses, no broadcasts
  - c. Larger address space, globally private IP address, multicast
  - d. Larger address space, address auto-configuration, enhanced broadcasts
12. Which of the following supports routing on IPv6 networks?
- a. RIPv3, OSPFv3, EIGRP for IPv6
  - b. RIPng, OSPFv3, EIGRPv6
  - c. RIPng, OSPFv3, EIGRP for IPv6
  - d. RIPv2, OSPFv2, EIGRP
13. What changed from the IPv4 header to the IPv6 header?
- a. Protocol Type became Next Header field.
  - b. ND is used rather than ARP.
  - c. AAAA records are used rather than A records.
  - d. All of the above.

## Foundation Topics

The following sections cover topics that you need to master for the CCDA exam. The section “IPv6 Header” covers each field of the IPv6 header, which helps you understand the protocol. The section “IPv6 Address Representation” covers the hexadecimal representation of IPv6 addresses and the compressed representation. The section “IPv6 Address Types” covers unicast, multicast, and anycast IPv6 addresses, special address types, and the current allocations of IPv6 addresses.

The section “IPv6 Mechanisms” covers Internet Control Message Protocol Version 6 (ICMPv6), ND, address assignment and resolution, and introduces IPv6 routing protocols. The section “IPv4 to IPv6 Transition Strategies and Deployments” covers dual-stack backbones, IPv6 over IPv4 tunnels, dual-stack hosts, and Network Address Translation-Protocol Translation (NAT-PT).

### Introduction to IPv6

You should become familiar at a high level with IPv6 specifications, addressing, and design. The driving motivation for the adoption of a new version of IP is the limitation imposed by the 32-bit address field in IPv4. In the 1990s, there was concern that the IP address space would be depleted soon. Although classless interdomain routing (CIDR) and NAT have slowed down the deployment of IPv6, its standards and deployments are becoming mature. IPv6 is playing a significant role in the deployment of IP services for wireless phones. Some countries such as Japan directed IPv6 compatibility back in 2005. Other countries, such as China, France, and Korea, have been implementing IPv6. The 2008 Summer Olympics was accessible from the IPv6 Internet. The U.S. federal government had mandated all agencies to support IPv6 by mid 2008. Operating systems such as Windows 7, Vista, Linux, Mac OS, and others all support IPv6. Google and Facebook are also accessible in the IPv6 Internet.

The IPv6 specification provides 128 bits for addressing, a significant increase from 32 bits. The overall specification of IPv6 is in RFC 2460. Other RFCs describing IPv6 specifications are 4921, 3513, 3587, 3879, 2373, 2374, 2461, 1886, and 1981.

IPv6 includes the following enhancements over IPv4:

- **Larger address space:** IPv6 uses 128-bit addresses rather than the 32-bit addresses in IPv4. This supports more address hierarchy levels and uses simpler address autoconfiguration.
  - **Globally unique IP addresses:** The additional address space allows each node to have a unique address and eliminate the need for NAT.
  - **Header format efficiency:** The IPv6 header length is fixed, lowering header processing time and thus allowing vendors to improve packet switching efficiency.
  - **Improved option mechanism:** IPv6 options are placed in separate optional headers
- headers are not required.

- **Address autoconfiguration:** This capability provides for dynamic assignment of IPv6 addresses. IPv6 hosts can automatically configure themselves, with or without a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. Stateful and stateless autoconfiguration is supported.
- **Flow labeling capability:** Instead of the Type of Service field in IPv4, IPv6 enables the labeling of packets belonging to a particular traffic class for which the sender requests special handling, such as quality of service (QoS) and real-time service. This support aids specialized traffic, such as real-time voice or video.
- **Security capabilities:** IPv6 includes features that support authentication and privacy. IP Security (IPsec) is a requirement.
- **Maximum transmission unit (MTU) path discovery:** IPv6 eliminates the need to fragment packets by implementing MTU path discovery before sending packets to a destination.
- **Site multihoming:** IPv6 allows multihoming by allowing hosts to have multiple IPv6 addresses and networks to have multiple IPv6 prefixes, which facilitates connection to multiple ISPs.
- **Support for mobility and multicast:** Mobile IPv6 allows for IPv6 nodes to change its location on a network and maintain its existing connection. The Mobile node is always reachable via one permanent address.
- **Eliminate the use of broadcasts:** IPv6 reduces unnecessary bandwidth by eliminating the use of broadcasts, replacing it with multicasts.

## IPv6 Header

This section covers each field of the IPv6 header. The IPv6 header is simpler than the IPv4 header. Some IPv4 fields have been eliminated or changed to optional fields. The IPv6 header size is 40 bytes. The fragment offset fields and flags in IPv4 have been eliminated from the header. IPv6 adds a flow label field for QoS mechanisms to use.

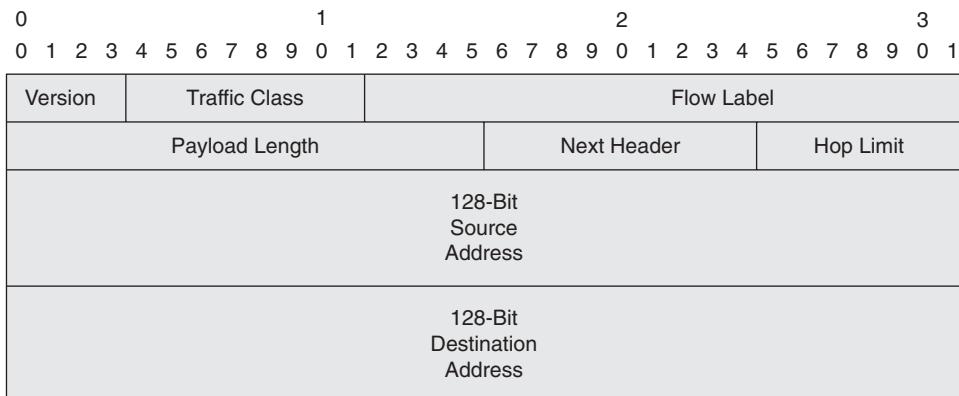


The use of 128 bits for source and destination addresses provides a significant improvement over IPv4. With 128 bits, there are  $3.4 * 10^{38}$  or 34 billion billion billion billion IPv6 addresses, compared to only 4.3 billion IPv4 addresses.

IPv6 improves over IPv4 by using a fixed-length header. The IPv6 header appears in Figure 9-1.

The following is a description of each field in the IP header:

- **Version:** This field is 4 bits long. It indicates the format, based on the version number, of the IP header. These bits are set to 0110 for IPv6 packets.
- **Traffic Class:** This field is 8 bits in length. It describes the class or priority of the IPv6 packet and provides functionality similar to the IPv4 Type of Service field.
- **Flow Label:** This field is 20 bits in length. It indicates a specific sequence of packets data (voice and video).

**Figure 9-1** IPv6 Header Format

- **Payload Length:** This field is 16 bits in length. It indicates the payload's size in bytes. Its length includes any extension headers.
- **Next Header:** This field is 8 bits in length. It indicates the type of header that follows this IPv6 header. In other words, it identifies the upper-layer protocol. It uses values defined by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). Table 9-2 shows some key protocol numbers. You can find a full list at [www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers](http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers).

**Table 9-2** IP Protocol Numbers

Protocol Number	Protocol
6	Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)
17	User Datagram Protocol (UDP)
50	Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)
51	Authentication Header (AH)
85	ICMP for IPv6
59	No Next Header for IPv6
60	Destination Options for IPv6
88	Enhanced IGRP (EIGRP)
89	Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)

- **Hop Limit:** This field is 8 bits in length. It is decremented by 1 by each router that forwards the packets. If this field is 0, the packet is discarded.
- **Source Address:** This field is 128 bits in length. It indicates the sender's IPv6 address.

- **Destination Address:** This field is 128 bits in length. It indicates the destination host's IPv6 address.

Notice that although the IPv6 address is four times the length of an IPv4 address, the IPv6 header is only twice the length (40 bytes). Optional network layer information is not included in the IPv6 header; instead, it is included in separate extended headers. Some extended headers are the routing header, fragment header, and hop-by-hop options header. The routing header is used for source routing. The fragment header is included in fragmented datagrams to provide information to allow the fragments to be reassembled. The hop-by-hop extension header is used to support jumbo-grams.

Two important extended headers are the Authentication Header (AH) and the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) header. These headers are covered later in the chapter.

## IPv6 Address Representation

RFC 4291 (obsoletes RFC 3513 and RFC 2373) specifies the IPv6 addressing architecture. IPv6 addresses are 128 bits in length. For display, the IPv6 addresses have eight 16-bit groups. Each 16-bit group is represented using hexadecimal numbers. (See Appendix C for a quick review on hexadecimal numbers.) The hexadecimal value is  $x:x:x:x:x:x:x$ , where each  $x$  represents four hexadecimal digits (16 bits).

An example of a full IPv6 address is 1111111000011010 0100001010111001  
000000000011011 0000000000000000 0000000000000000 0001001011010000  
0000000001011011 0000011010110000.



The hexadecimal representation of the preceding IPv6 binary number is

FE1A:42B9:001B:0000:0000:12D0:005B:06B0

Groups with a value of 0 can be represented with a single 0. For example, you can also represent the preceding number as

FE1A:42B9:01B:0:0:12D0:05B:06B0

You can represent multiple groups of 16-bit 0s with ::, which is allowed to appear only once in the number. Also, you do not need to represent leading 0s in a 16-bit group. The preceding IPv6 address can be further shortened to

FE1A:42B9:1B::12D0:5B:6B0

**Tip:** Remember that the fully expanded address has eight blocks and that the double colon represents only 0s. You can use the double colon only once.

You expand a compressed address by reversing the process described earlier : add leading 0s in groups where they have been omitted, then add 0s represented by ::. For example, the IPv6 address 2001:4C::50:0:0:741 expands as follows:

2001:004C::0050:0000:0000:0741

Because there should be eight blocks of addresses and you have six, you can expand the double colon to two blocks as follows:

```
2001:004C:0000:0000:0050:0000:0000:0741
```

### IPv4-Compatible IPv6 Addresses

IPv6 allows for IPv4 compatible IPv6 addresses. In a mixed IPv6/IPv4 environment, the IPv4 portion of the address requires the last two 16-bit blocks, or 32 bits of the address, which is represented in IPv4 dotted-decimal notation. The portion of the IPv6 address preceding the IPv4 information is all 0s. Six hexadecimal 16-bit blocks are concatenated with the dotted-decimal format. The first 96 bits are 0, and the last 32 bits are used for the IPv4 address. This form is  $x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d$ , where each  $x$  represents the hexadecimal digits and  $d.d.d.d$  is the dotted-decimal representation.

An example of a mixed full address is 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:100.1.1.1; this example can be shortened to 0:0:0:0:0:100.1.1.1 or ::100.1.1.1.

RFC 4921 mentions that IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses have been deprecated since updated IPv6 transition mechanisms no longer use these addresses.

### IPv6 Prefix Representation

IPv6 prefixes are represented similar to IPv4, with the following format:

*IPv6-address/prefix*

The *IPv6-address* portion is a valid IPv6 address. The *prefix* portion is the number of leftmost contiguous bits that represent the prefix. You use the double colon only once in the representation. An example of an IPv6 prefix is 200C:001b:1100:0:0:0/40 or 200C:1b:1100::/40.

For another example, look at the representations of the 60-bit prefix 200100000000ab0:

```
2001:0000:0000:ab0:0000:0000:0000:0000/60
2001:0000:0000:ab0:0:0:0:0/60
2001:0000:0000:ab0::/60
2001:0:0:ab0::/60
```

The rules for address representation are still valid when using a prefix. The following is not a valid representation of the preceding prefix:

```
2001:0:0:ab0/60
```

The preceding representation is missing the trailing double colon:

```
2001::ab0/60
```

```
2001:0000:0000:0ab0::/60.
```

When representing an IPv6 host address with its subnet prefix, you combine the two. For example, the IPv6 address 2001:0000:0000:0ab0:001c:1bc0:08ba:1c9a in subnet prefix 2001:0000:0000:0ab0::/60 is represented as the following:

2001:0000:0000:0ab0:001c:1bc0:08ba:1c9a/60

## IPv6 Address Scope Types and Address Allocations

This section covers the major types of IPv6 addresses. IPv4 addresses are unicast, multi-cast, or broadcast. IPv6 maintains each of these address functions, except that the IPv6 address types are defined a little differently. A special “all-nodes” IPv6 multicast address handles the broadcast function. IPv6 also introduces the anycast address type.

Also important to understand are the IPv6 address allocations. Sections of the IPv6 address space are reserved for particular functions, each of which is covered in this section. To provide you with a full understanding of address types, the following sections describe each type.

### IPv6 Address Allocations

The leading bits of an IPv6 address can define the IPv6 address type or other reservations. These leading bits are of variable length and are called the format prefix (FP). Table 9-3 shows the allocation of address prefixes. The IPv6 address space was delegated to IANA. You can find current IPv6 allocations at [www.iana.org/assignments/ipv6-address-space](http://www.iana.org/assignments/ipv6-address-space). Many prefixes are still unassigned.

**Table 9-3** *IPv6 Prefix Allocation*

Binary Prefix	Hexadecimal/Prefix	Allocation
0000 0000	0000::/8	Unspecified, loopback, IPv4-compatible
0000 0001	0100::/8	Unassigned
0000 001	0200::/7	Unassigned
0000 010	0400::/7	Reserved for Internetwork Packet Exchange (IPX) allocation
0000 1	0800::/5	Unassigned
001	1000::/4	Unassigned
001	2000::/3	Global unicast address
010	4000::/3	Unassigned
011	6000::/3	Unassigned
100	8000::/3	Reserved for geographic-based unicast addresses
101	A000::/3	Unassigned
110	C000::/3	Unassigned

**Table 9-3 IPv6 Prefix Allocation**

<b>Binary Prefix</b>	<b>Hexadecimal/Prefix</b>	<b>Allocation</b>
1110	E000::/3	Unassigned
1111 0	F000::/5	Unassigned
1111 10	F800::/6	Unassigned
1111 110	FC00::/7	Unique Local Unicast
1111 1110 0	FE00::/9	Unassigned
1111 1110 10	FE80:/10	Link-local unicast addresses
1111 1110 11	FEC0::/10	Unassigned; was site-local unicast addresses (deprecated)
1111 1111	FF00::/8	Multicast addresses

An unspecified address is all 0s: 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0. It signifies that an IPv6 address is not specified for the interface. Unspecified addresses are not forwarded by an IPv6 router.

The IPv6 loopback address is 0:0:0:0:0:0:1. This address is similar to the IPv4 loopback address of 127.0.0.1.

## IPv6 Unicast Address



The IPv6 *unicast* (one-to-one) address is the logical identifier of a single-host interface. With a unicast address, a single source sends to a single destination. It is similar to IPv4 unicast addresses. Unicast addresses are divided into

- Link-local address scope
- Unique-local address scope
- Global aggregatable address scope
- IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses

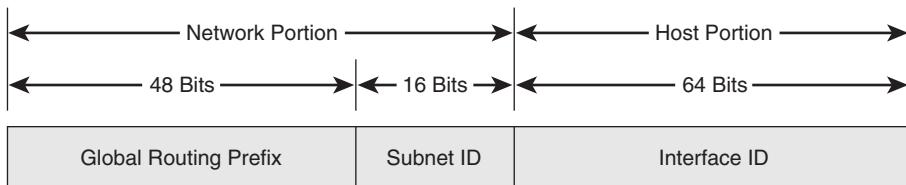
## Global Unicast Addresses

IPv6 global addresses connect to the public network. These unicast addresses are globally unique and routable. This address format is initially defined in RFC 2374. RFC 3587 provides updates to the format.

The original specification defined the address format with a three-layer hierarchy: public topology, site topology, and interface identifier. The *public topology* consisted of service providers that provided transit services and exchanges of routing information. It used a top-level aggregator (TLA) identifier and a next-level identifier. A site-level aggregator (SLA) was used for site topology. The *site topology* is local to the company or site and

RFC 3587. RFC 3587 simplifies these identifiers with a global routing prefix and subnet identifier for the network portion of the address.

Figure 9-2 shows the format of the standard IPv6 global unicast address. The global routing prefix is generally 48 bits in length, and the subnet ID is 16 bits. The interface ID is 64 bits in length and uniquely identifies the interface on the link.



**Figure 9-2** *IPv6 Global Unicast Address Format*

The interface ID is obtained from the 48-bit MAC address of the host. The MAC is converted to the EUI-64 identifier format by inserting the FFFE hexadecimal value in between the 24-bit left and rightmost values.

For example, with the following MAC address 01:00:0C:A4:BC:D0. The leftmost 24 bits are 01:00:0C and the rightmost bits are 01:00:0C. By inserting FFFE the IPv6 64bit identifier becomes:

01:00:0C:FF:FE:A4:BC:D0.

### Link-Local Addresses

IPv6 link-local addresses are significant only to nodes on a single link. Routers do not forward packets with a link-local source or destination address beyond the local link. Link-local addresses are identified by leading FE8 hexadecimal numbers. Link-local addresses are configured automatically or manually.

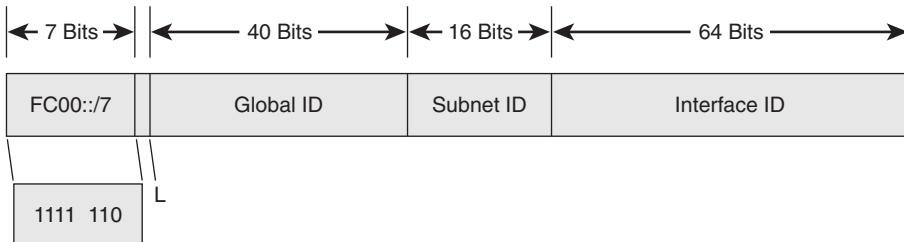
As shown in Figure 9-3, the format of the link-local address is an FP of 1111111010, followed by 54 0s and a 64-bit interface identifier (ID). The interface ID is obtained from the device MAC address and verified automatically through communication with other nodes in the link. The interface ID is then concatenated with the link-local address prefix of FE80::/64 to obtain the interface link-local address.



**Figure 9-3** *IPv6 Link-Local Address Format*

### Unique Local IPv6 Address

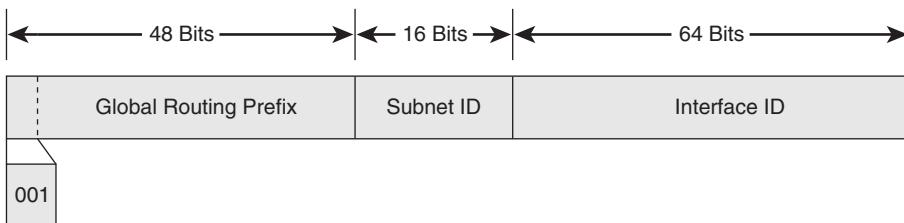
addresses. As shown in Figure 9-4, the format of the unique local address is an FP of 1111 110 (FC00::/7) followed by global ID, followed by the subnet ID and then the 64-bit interface identifier (ID). The bit labeled L is set to 1 if the prefix is locally assigned, and setting it to 0 has not been defined.



**Figure 9-4** IPv6 Unique Local Address

### Global Aggregatable IPv6 Address

Global aggregatable unicast addresses allow the aggregation of routing prefixes. This allows a reduction of the number of routes in the global routing table. These addresses are used in links to aggregate (summarize) routes upwards to the core in large organizations or to ISPs. Global aggregatable addresses are identified by the fixed prefix of 2000::/3. As shown in Figure 9-5, the format of the global aggregatable IPv6 address is a global routing prefix starting with binary 001, followed by the subnet ID and then the 64-bit interface identifier (ID). The device MAC address is normally used as the interface ID.



**Figure 9-5** IPv6 Link-Local Address Format

### IPv4-Compatible IPv6 Address

IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses begin with 96 binary 0s (six 16-bit groups) followed by the 32-bit IPv4 address, as in 0:0:0:0:130.100.50.1 or just ::130.100.50.1. IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses have been deprecated since updated transition mechanisms no longer require this format.

### IPv6 Anycast Addresses

The IPv6 *anycast* (one-to-nearest) address identifies a set of devices. An anycast address has common characteristics and are explicitly configured for anycast.

You can use the anycast address to identify a set of routers or servers within an area. When a packet is sent to the anycast address, it is delivered to the nearest device as determined by the routing protocol. An example of the use of anycast addresses is to assign an anycast address to a set of servers—one in North America, and the other in Europe. Users in North America would be routed to the North American server, and those in Europe to the European server.

You cannot use an anycast address as a source address. Also, you must explicitly configure nodes to which the anycast address is assigned to recognize the anycast address.

## IPv6 Multicast Addresses

The IPv6 *multicast* (one-to-many) address identifies a set of hosts. The packet is delivered to all the hosts identified by that address. This type is similar to IPv4 multicast (Class D) addresses. IPv6 multicast addresses also supersede the broadcast function of IPv4 broadcasts. You use an “all-nodes” multicast address instead. One additional function of IPv6 multicast is to provide the IPv4 broadcast equivalent with the all-nodes multicast group.

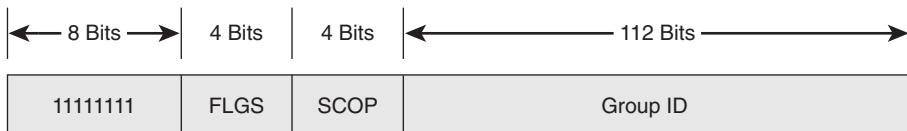


Some IPv6 multicast addresses are

FF01:0:0:0:0:0:1—Indicates all-nodes address for interface-local scope.

FF02:0:0:0:0:0:2—All-routers address for link-local.

RFC 4291 specifies the format of IPv6 multicast addresses. As shown in Figure 9-6, the fields of the IPv6 multicast address are the FP, a value of 0xFF, followed by a 4-bit flags field, a 4-bit scope field, and 112 bits for the group identifier (ID). Again, a quick way to recognize an IPv6 multicast address is that it begins with FF::/8.



**Figure 9-6** Multicast Address Format

The FLGS (flags) field consists of three leading 0s followed by a T bit: 000T. If T = 0, the address is a well-known multicast address assigned by the global IANA. If T = 1, the address is not a permanently assigned address.

The SCOP (scope) field limits the scope of the multicast group. Table 9-4 shows the assigned scope values.

**Table 9-4** Multicast Scope Assignments

SCOP (Binary)	SCOP (Hexadecimal)	Assignment
0000	0	Reserved
0001	1	Node-local scope
0010	2	Link-local scope

**Table 9-4** Multicast Scope Assignments

<b>SCOP (Binary)</b>	<b>SCOP (Hexadecimal)</b>	<b>Assignment</b>
0011	3	Unassigned
0100	4	Admin-local scope
0101	5	Site-local scope
0110	6	Unassigned
0111	7	Unassigned
1000	8	Organization-local scope
1001	9	Unassigned
1010	A	Unassigned
1011	B	Unassigned
1100	C	Unassigned
1101	D	Unassigned
1110	E	Global scope
1111	F	Reserved

The group ID identifies the multicast group within the given scope. The group ID is independent of the scope. A group ID of 0:0:0:0:0:1 identifies nodes, whereas a group ID of 0:0:0:0:0:2 identifies routers. Some well-known multicast addresses appear in Table 9-5 associated with a variety of scope values.

**Table 9-5** Well-Known IPv6 Multicast Addresses

<b>Multicast Address</b>	<b>Multicast Group</b>
FF01::1	All nodes (node-local)
FF02::1	All nodes (link-local)
FF01::2	All routers (node-local)
FF02::2	All routers (link-local)
FF02::5	Open Shortest Path First Version 3 (OSPFv3)
FF02::6	OSPFv3 designated routers
FF02::9	Routing Information Protocol (RIPng)
FF02::A	EIGRP routers
FF02::B	Mobile agents
FF02::C	DHCP servers/relay agents

**Table 9-5 Well-Known IPv6 Multicast Addresses**

Multicast Address	Multicast Group
FF02::D	All Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) routers
FF05::1	All nodes in the local network site
FF0x::FB	Multicast DNS
FF02::1:2	All DHCP and relay agents on the local network site (RFC 3313)
FF05::1:3	All DHCP servers on the local network site (RFC 3313)

Table 9-6 summarizes the IPv6 address types.

**Table 9-6 IPv6 Address Types**

Description	IPv6 Address Type
The IP address of an interface on a single host. It can be a source or destination address.	Unicast
An IP address that identifies a set of devices within an area. It is only a destination address.	Anycast
An IP address that reaches a group of hosts identified by the address. It is only a destination address	Multicast

The CCDA should know how to identify address types based from the prefix. Table 9-7 summarizes the prefixes their respective address type.

**Table 9-7 IPv6 Addresses Prefix**

Description	IPv6 Address Type
0000::0001	Loopback
0000::0000	Unspecified address
2000::/3	Global unicast address
FC00::/7	Unique local unicast
FE80:/10	Link-local unicast address
FF00::/8	Multicast address
FF02::5	OSPFv3
FF02::A	EIGRP routers
FF02::C	DHCP

## IPv6 Mechanisms



The changes to the 128-bit address length and IPv6 header format modified the underlying protocols that support IP. This section covers ICMPv6, IPv6 ND, address resolution, address assignment, and IPv6 routing protocols. These protocols must now support 128-bit addresses. For example, DNS adds a new record locator for resolving fully qualified domain names (FQDN) to IPv6 addresses. IPv6 also replaces ARP with the IPv6 ND protocol. IPv6 ND uses ICMPv6.

### ICMPv6

ICMP needed some modifications to support IPv6. RFC 2463 describes the use of ICMPv6 for IPv6 networks. All IPv6 nodes must implement ICMPv6 to perform network layer functions. ICMPv6 performs diagnostics (ping), reports errors, and provides reachability information. Although IPv4 ICMP uses IP protocol 1, IPv6 uses a next header number of 58.

Informational messages are

- Echo request
- Echo reply

Some error messages are

- Destination unreachable
- Packet too big
- Time exceeded
- Parameter problem

The destination-unreachable messages also provide further details:

- No route to destination
- Destination administratively prohibited
- Address unreachable
- Port unreachable

Other IPv6 mechanisms use ICMPv6 to determine neighbor availability, path MTU, destination address, or port reachability.

### IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Protocol

IPv6 does not implement the ARP that is used in IPv4. Instead, IPv6 implements the Neighbor Discovery (ND) protocol described in RFC 2461. Hosts use ND to implement plug-and-play functions that discover all other nodes in the same link, check for duplicate the primary fails.

The IPv6 ND protocol performs the following functions:

- **Stateless address autoconfiguration:** The host can determine its full IPv6 address without the use of DHCP.
- **Duplicate address detection:** The host can determine whether the address it will use is already in use on the network.
- **Prefix discovery:** The host finds out the link's IPv6 prefix.
- **Parameter discovery:** The host finds out the link's MTU and hop count.
- **Address resolution:** The host can determine the MAC address of other nodes without the use of ARP.
- **Router discovery:** The host finds local routers without the use of DHCP.
- **Next-hop determination:** The host can determine a destination's next hop.
- **Neighbor unreachability detection:** The host can determine whether a neighbor is no longer reachable.
- **Redirect:** The host can tell another host if a preferred next hop exists to reach a particular destination.

IPv6 ND uses ICMPv6 to implement some of its functions. These ICMPv6 messages are

- **Router Advertisement (RA):** Sent by routers to advertise their presence and link-specific parameters
- **Router Solicitation (RS):** Sent by hosts to request RA from local routers
- **Neighbor Solicitation (NS):** Sent by hosts to request link layer addresses of other hosts (also used for duplicate address detection)
- **Neighbor Advertisement (NA):** Sent by hosts in response to an NS
- **Redirect:** Sent to a host to notify it of a better next hop to a destination

The link address resolution process uses NS messages to obtain a neighbor's link layer address. Nodes respond with a NA message that contains the link layer address.

## IPv6 Name Resolution

Name resolution for IPv6 addresses can be static or dynamic. Just as with IPv4, static names to IPv6 addresses can be manually configured in the host configuration file. Dynamic name resolution relies on the Domain Name System (DNS).

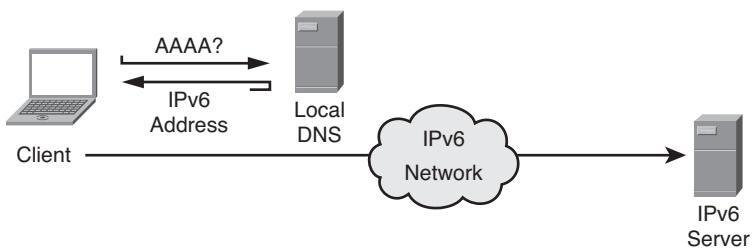
IPv4 uses A records to provide FQDN name-to-IPv4 address resolution. DNS adds a resource record (RR) to support name-to-IPv6-address resolution. RFC 3596 describes the addition of a new DNS resource record type to support transition to IPv6 name resolution. The new record type is AAAA, commonly known as “quad-A.” Given a domain name, the AAAA record returns an IPv6 address to the requesting host.

RFC 2874 specifies another DNS record for IPv6; it defines the A6 resource record. The

RR. But RFC 3363 has changed the status of the A6 RR to deprecated.

Current DNS implementations need to be able to support A (for IPv4), and AAAA resource records, with type A having the highest priority and AAAA the lowest.

For hosts that support dual-stack (IPv4 and IPv6) the application decides with stack to use and accordingly requests an AAAA or A record. As shown in Figure 9-7 below the client device requests the AAAA record of the destination IPv6 server. The DNS server returns the IPv6 address. Note that this is the same DNS server that supports IPv4 addresses; no separate DNS servers are needed for IPv6 networks.



**Figure 9-7** *IPv6 DNS AAAA Request*

### Path MTU Discovery

IPv6 does not allow packet fragmentation throughout the internetwork. Only sending hosts are allowed to fragment. Routers are not allowed to fragment packets. RFC 2460 specifies that the MTU of every link in an IPv6 must be 1280 bytes or greater. RFC 1981 recommends that nodes should implement IPv6 path MTU discovery to determine whether any paths are greater than 1280 bytes. ICMPv6 packet-too-big error messages determine the path MTU. Nodes along the path send the ICMPv6 packet-too-big message to the sending host if the packet is larger than the outgoing interface MTU.

Figure 9-8 shows a host sending a 2000-byte packet. Because the outgoing interface MTU is 1500 bytes, Router A sends an ICMPv6 packet-too-big error message back to Host A. The sending host then sends a 1500-byte packet. The outgoing interface MTU at Router B is 1300 bytes. Router B sends an ICMPv6 packet-too-big error message to Host A. Host A then sends the packet with 1300 bytes.

### IPv6 Address-Assignment Strategies

Assignment of IPv6 addresses to a host can be static or dynamically configured. Static IPv6 address assignment just involves manual configuration on the host's configuration files. Dynamic IPv6 address assignment can be in one of three ways.

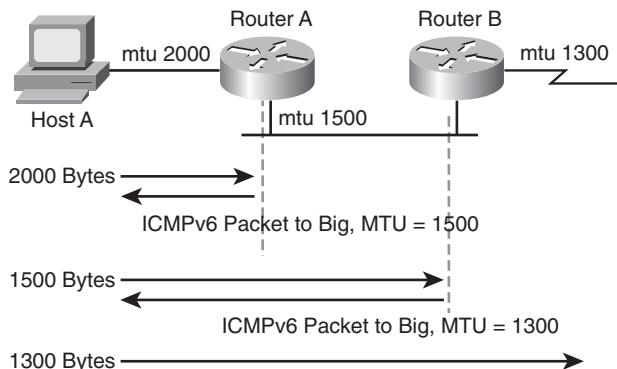
- Stateless autoconfiguration of link-local address
- Stateless autoconfiguration of globally unique address
- Stateful configuration with DHCPv6



#### Link-Local Address (Stateless Autoconfiguration)

method, without DHCP. Hosts obtain their link-local addresses automatically as an

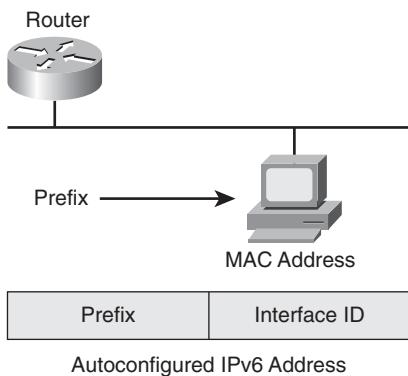
interface is initialized. First, the host performs a duplicate address-detection process. The host joins the all-nodes multicast group to receive neighbor advertisements from other nodes. The neighbor advertisements include the subnet or prefix associated with the link. The host then sends a neighbor-solicitation message with the tentative IP address (interface identifier) as the target. If a host is already using the tentative IP address, that host replies with a neighbor advertisement. If the host receives no neighbor advertisement, the target IP address becomes the link-local address of the originating host. It uses the link-local prefix FE80:: An alternate is to manually configure the link-local address.



**Figure 9-8** ICMPv6 Packet-Too-Big Message

### Autoconfiguration of Globally Unique IP address

RFC 2462 describes stateless autoconfiguration. With autoconfiguration of globally unique IP addresses, IPv6 hosts can use a stateless autoconfiguration method, without DHCP, to acquire their own IP address information. It is done on a per-interface basis. As shown in Figure 9-9, after a host has autoconfigured a link-local address it listens for router advertisement messages. These router messages contain the prefix address to be used for the network. The IPv6 address is then formed from the prefix plus the interface ID (derives from the MAC address).



**Figure 9-9** Stateless Autoconfiguration

Table 9-8 summarizes IPv6 address schemes.

**Table 9-8 IPv6 Address Autoconfiguration Scheme**

Description	IPv6 Address Configuration Scheme
Host sends a neighbor-solicitation message that includes the target IPv6 address that begins with FE80::.	Stateless link-local
Combines the router prefix with the local MAC address	Stateless global unique
Provides stateful address allocation	DHCPv6

### DHCPv6

DHCPv6 is the updated version of DHCP that provides dynamic IP address assignment for IPv6 hosts. DHCPv6 is described in RFC 3315. It provides the same functions as DHCP, with more control than stateless autoconfiguration, and it supports renumbering without routers. DHCPv6 assignment is stateful, whereas IPv6 link-local and global unique auto-configuration is not.

### IPv6 Security

IPv6 has two integrated mechanisms to provide security for communications. It natively supports IP Security (IPsec). IPsec is mandated at the operating-system level for all IPsec hosts. RFC 2401 describes IPsec. Extension headers carry the IPsec AH and ESP headers. The AH provides authentication and integrity. The ESP header provides confidentiality by encrypting the payload. For IPv6, the AH defaults to message digest algorithm 5 (MD5), and the ESP encryption defaults to Data Encryption Standard-cipher block chaining (DES-CBC).

A description of the IPsec mechanisms appears in Chapter 13, “Security Solutions.” More information also appears in RFC 2402, IP Authentication Header, and in RFC 2406, IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP).

Table 9-9 summarizes IPv6 mechanisms.

**Table 9-9 IPv6 Mechanisms**

Description	IPv6 Mechanism
Performs diagnostics and reachability information. Next header number of 58.	ICMPv6
Discovers all nodes in the same link and checks for duplicate addresses.	IPv6 neighbor discovery
DNS resource record for IPv6.	AAAA
Provides stateful IPv6 address assignment.	DHCPv6
Routing protocol that uses UDP port 521.	RIPng

**Table 9-9 IPv6 Mechanisms**

Description	IPv6 Mechanism
Cisco routing protocol for IPv6.	EIGRP for IPv6
Link-state routing protocol for IPv6.	OSPFv3

## IPv6 Routing Protocols

New routing protocols have been developed to support IPv6, such as RIPng, Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS), Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) for IPv6, and Open Shortest Path First Version 3 (OSPFv3) Protocol. Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) also includes changes that support IPv6. These routing protocols are only briefly mentioned here because they are covered in detail in Chapter 10, “Routing Protocol Characteristics, RIP, and EIGRP,” and Chapter 11, “OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and IP Multicast.”

### RIPng

RFC 2080 describes changes to RIP to support IPv6 networks, called RIP next generation (RIPng). RIP mechanisms remain the same. RIPng still has a 15-hop limit, counting to infinity, and split horizon with poison reverse. Instead of User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port 520 for RIPv2, RIPng uses UDP port 521. RIPng supports IPv6 addresses and prefixes. Cisco IOS software currently supports RIPng. RIPng uses multicast group FF02::9 for RIP updates to all RIP routers.

### EIGRP for IPv6

Cisco has developed EIGRP support for IPv6 networks to route IPv6 prefixes. EIGRP for IPv6 is configured and managed separately from EIGRP for IPv4; no network statements are used. EIGRP for IPv6 retains all the characteristics (network discovery, DUAL, modules) and functions of EIGRP for IPv4. EIGRP uses multicast group FF02::A for EIGRP updates.

### OSPFv3

RFC 2740 describes OSPFv3 to support IPv6 networks. OSPF algorithms and mechanisms (flooding, designated router [DR] election, areas, shortest path first [SPF] calculations) remain the same. Changes are made for OSPF to support IPv6 addresses, address hierarchy, and IPv6 for transport. Cisco IOS software currently supports OSPFv3.

OSPFv3 uses multicast group FF02::5 for all OSPF routers and FF02::6 for all DRs.

### IS-IS for IPv6

Specifications for routing IPv6 with integrated IS-IS are currently an Internet draft of the IETF. The draft specifies new type, length, and value (TLV) objects, reachability TLVs, and for IPv6 as currently described in the draft standard.

## BGP4 Multiprotocol Extensions (MP-BGP) for IPv6

RFC 2545 specifies the use of BGP attributes for passing on IPv6 route information. MP-BGP is also referred as BGP4+. The MP\_REACH\_NLRI (multiprotocol-reachable) attribute describes reachable destinations. It includes the next-hop address and a list of Network Layer Reachability Information (NLRI) prefixes of reachable networks. The MP\_UNREACH\_NLRI (multiprotocol-unreachable) attribute conveys unreachable networks. IOS currently supports these BGP4 multiprotocol attributes to communicate reachability information for IPv6 networks.

## IPv4 to IPv6 Transition Mechanisms and Deployment Models

This section describes transition mechanisms and deployment models to migrate from IPv4 to IPv6. During a transition time, both protocols can coexist in the network. The three major transition mechanisms are

- Dual-stack (IPv4 and IPv6 coexist in hosts and networks.)
- Tunneling (IPv6 packets are encapsulated into IPv4 packets.)
- Translation (IPv6 packets are translated to IPv4 packets.)

IPv6 deployment models are also divided into three major categories:

- Dual-stack model (IPv4 and IPv6 coexist on hosts and network.)
- Hybrid model (combination of Intra-Site Automatic Tunneling Protocol (ISATAP) or manually configured tunnels and dual-stack mechanisms)
- Service block model (combination of ISATAP and manually configured tunnels and dual-stack mechanisms)

Each model provides several advantages and disadvantages; familiarize yourself with those. Of all these models, the dual-stack model is recommended because it requires no tunneling and is easier to manage.

### Dual-Stack Mechanism

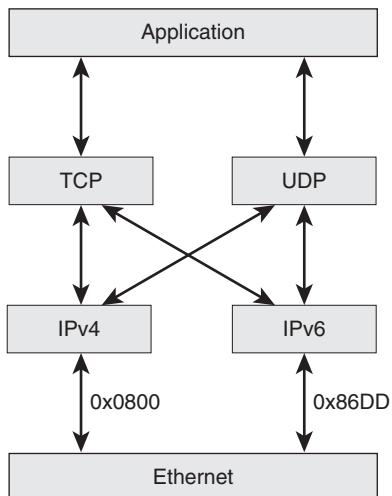
Devices running dual-stack can communicate with both IPv4 and IPv6 devices. The IPv4 protocol stack is used between IPv4 hosts, and the IPv6 protocol stack is used between IPv6 hosts. The application decides which stack to use to communicate with destination hosts. As shown in Figure 9-10, when a frame is received, the Ethernet type code identifies whether the packet needs to be forwarded to IPv4 (0x0800) or IPv6 (0x86DD). When using dual stacks, a host also uses DNS to determine which stack to use to reach a destination. If DNS returns an IPv6 (AAAA record) address to the host, the host uses the IPv6 stack. If DNS returns an IPv4 (A record) address to the host, the host uses the IPv4 stack.

### IPv6 over IPv4 Tunnels

nels. With tunneling, IPv6 traffic is encapsulated within IPv4 packets so that they are sent



over the IPv4 WAN. The advantage of this method is that you do not need separate circuits to connect the IPv6 networks. A disadvantage of this method is the increased protocol overhead of the encapsulated IPv6 headers. Tunnels are created manually, semiautomatically, or automatically.



**Figure 9-10** Dual-Stack Mechanism

For manually configured (static configuration) tunnels, the tunnels are configured with IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for tunnel source and destination. Tunnels can be built between border routers or between routers and hosts.

In semiautomatic configured tunnels, a tunnel broker is used. The tunnel broker is a server on the IPv4 network that receives requests from dual-stack clients and builds a tunnel on the tunnel router and associates it with the client.

Automatic tunnel mechanisms are

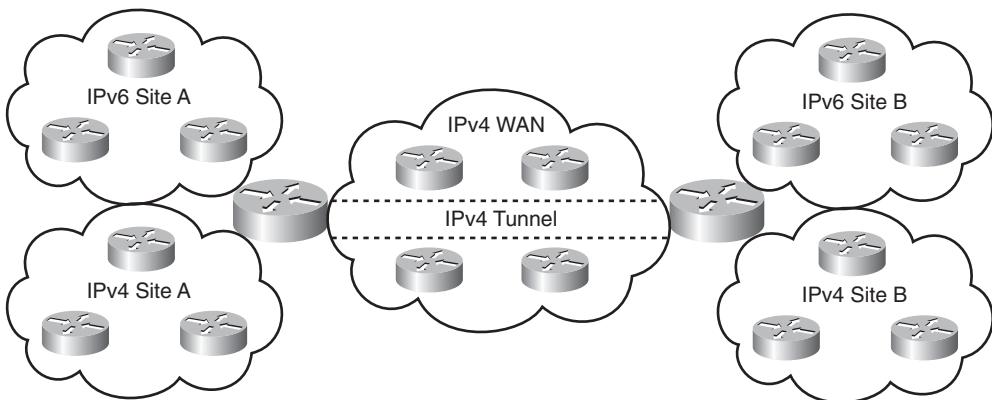
- IPv4 compatible
- 6to4
- 6over4
- ISATAP

IPv4-compatible tunnels use IPv4-compatible addresses. This mechanism does not scale, and IP-compatible addresses have been deprecated, so this mechanism is appropriate only for testing.

RFC 3056 specifies the 6to4 method for transition by assigning an interim unique IPv6 prefix. 2002::/16 is the assigned range for 6to4. Each 6to4 site uses a /48 prefix that is concatenated with 2002. The border router extracts the IPv4 address that is embedded in

forwards it to the IPv6 destination.

Figure 9-11 shows a network using IPv4 tunnels. Site A and Site B both have IPv4 and IPv6 networks. The IPv6 networks are connected using an IPv4 tunnel in the WAN.



**Figure 9-11 IPv6 over IPv4 Tunnels**

6over4 is another tunnel method that requires an IPv4 multicast-enabled network. IPv6 multicast packets get encapsulated into IPv4 multicast packets to communicate with other 6over4 hosts. 6over4 is of limited practical use.

Another method to tunnel IPv6 over IPv4 is the Intra-Site Automatic Tunnel Addressing Protocol (ISATAP). With ISATAP, a tunnel is created between dual-stack hosts or routers to transmit IPv6 packets over an IPv4 network. Unlike 6over4 mechanism, ISATAP does not require the IPv4 to be multicast enabled.

With ISATAP the link-local address is generated by concatenating FE80:0000:0000:0000:5EFE: with the IPv4 address expressed in hexadecimal. For example, with IPv4 192.168.10.10 the link-local address is FE80:0000:0000:0000:5EFE:C0A8:0A0A. ISATAP also requires the use of a routable address (for example, a global unicast IPv6 address that uses the same 0000:5EFE IANA reserved value for the interface ID along with the 32-bit IPv4 embedded address).

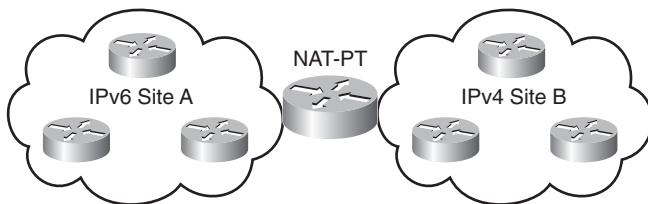
## Protocol Translation Mechanisms

One of the mechanisms for an IPv6-only host to communicate with an IPv4-only host without using dual stacks is protocol translation. Translation is basically an extension to IPv4 NAT techniques. Some techniques are

- **Application layer gateways (ALG):** These use dual stacks and allow one host on the IPv4 domain to communicate with the host on the IPv6 domain.
- **Application programming interfaces (API):** An API module intercepts IP traffic through an API and converts it for the IPv6 counterpart.
- **Translation techniques:** (DSTM).

DSTM proposes the use of a dual stack that uses IPv4 addresses only when needed and the use of IPv4 over IPv6 tunneling to reach a destination IPv4 address. It is used when there is an IPv6-only backbone but an application needs to reach an IPv4 address.

RFC 2766 describes NAT-PT, which provides translation between IPv6 and IPv4 hosts. NAT-PT operates similarly to the NAT mechanisms to translate IPv4 private addresses to public address space. NAT-PT binds addresses in the IPv6 network to addresses in the IPv4 network and vice versa. Figure 9-12 shows a network using NAT-PT. RFC 4699 is a recent Informational RFC that recommends that NAT-PT be placed into historical status and recommends against its use (although the protocol is still supported in IOS).



**Figure 9-12** Network Address Translation-Protocol Translation

Cisco also introduces the Cisco 6PE for Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) service providers. Cisco 6PE allows IPv6 islands to communicate over an MPLS/IPv4 core network using MPLS label-switched paths (LSP). The Cisco 6PE routers are dual stack. The method relies on BGP extensions in the IPv4 6PE routers to exchange IPv6 reachability information, along with an MPLS label for each IPv6 address prefix announced.

## IPv6 Deployment Models

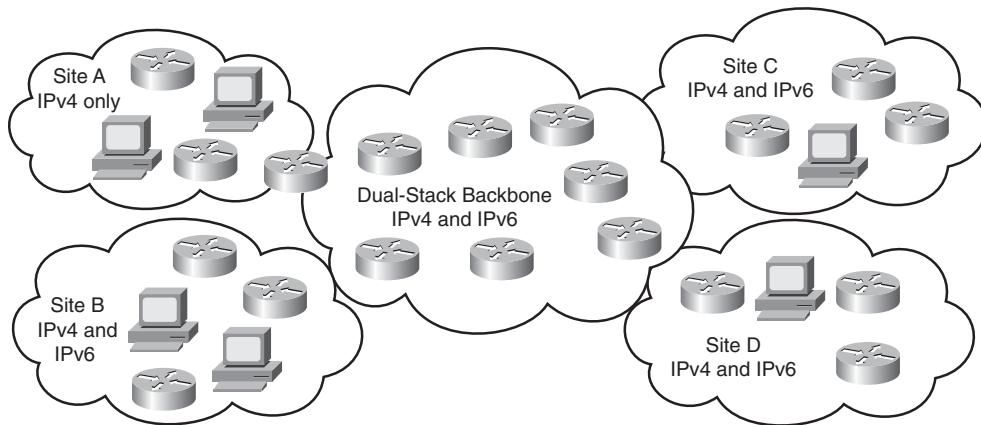
Deployment of IPv6 can be done in one of the following models:

- Dual-stack model (IPv4 and IPv6 coexist on hosts and network)
- Hybrid model (combination of ISATAP or manually configured tunnels and dual-stack mechanisms)
- Service block model (combination of ISATAP and manually configured tunnels and dual-stack mechanisms)



### Dual-Stack Model

In the dual-stack model, both devices and the network routers and switches all run both IPv4 and IPv6 protocol stacks. The applications on the devices decide which stack to use to communicate with destination hosts. Or DNS is used to decide which stack to use. A DNS AAAA RR return uses IPv6, and a DNS A RR return uses IPv4. Because most mature operating systems are now supporting IPv6, this is the preferred technique for transition to IPv6. Figure 9-13 shows a dual-stack network where both protocols reside. Older IPv4 sites that have not migrated to the dual-stack model can communicate the network with other IPv4 devices.



**Figure 9-13** Dual-Stack Network Address Translation-Protocol Translation

### Hybrid Model

The hybrid model uses a combination of transition mechanisms. The transition mechanisms used are based on multiple network criteria such as number of hosts, IPv6 capable hardware, and location of IPv6 services. The hybrid model uses a combination of transition mechanisms:

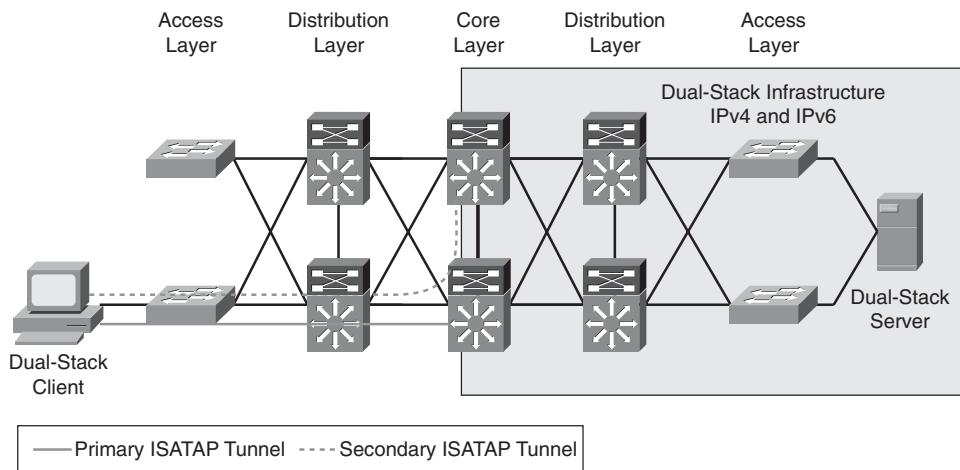
- Dual-stack mechanism
- ISATAP
- Manually configured tunnels

The hybrid model can be used to tunnel a dual-stack host on an IPv4 access layer to an IPv6 core. As shown in Figure 9-14, the dual-stack computer establishes an ISATAP tunnel to the core layer to access services from the dual-stack server on the right.

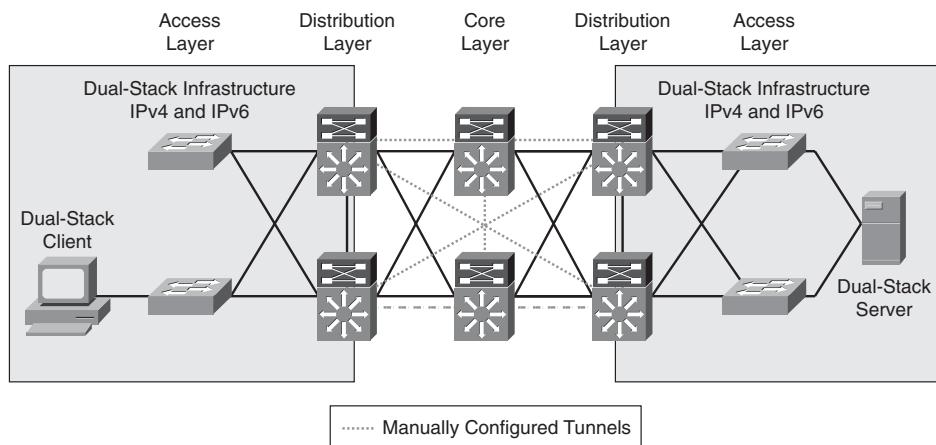
Another scenario is to tunnel dual-stack distribution layers over an IPv4-only core. As shown in Figure 9-15, the dual-stack computer on the left can access the dual-stack server on the right via the manually configured tunnels. Multiple tunnels are configured to provide redundancy and load balancing.

### Service Block Model

In the service block model, a centralized layer that services dual-stack devices is created with tunnels manually configured between the distribution layer and the service block. Dual-stack hosts also connect via ISATAP tunnels. In Figure 9-16, the dual-stack client on the left connects to the service block to establish connectivity with the dual-stack server on the right.



**Figure 9-14** IPv6 Hybrid Model with ISATAP Tunnel



**Figure 9-15** IPv6 Hybrid Model with Manually Configured Tunnels

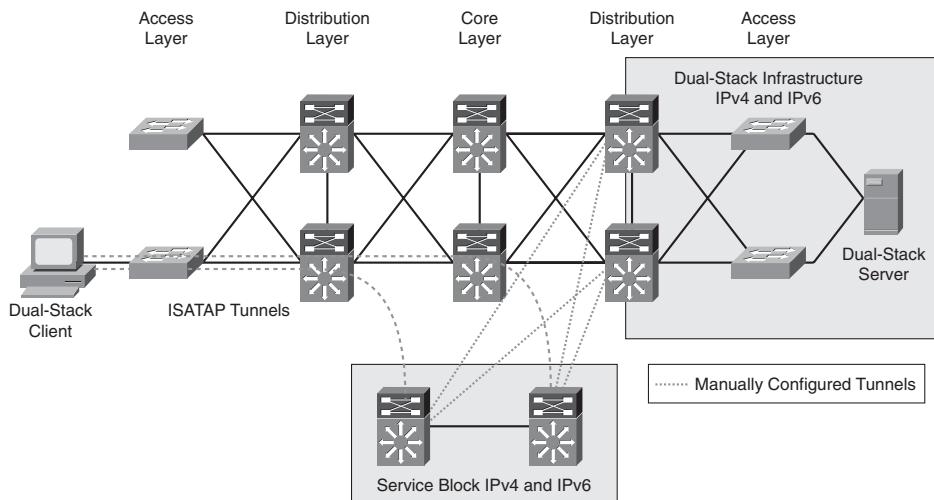
**Figure 9-16** Service Block Deployment Model**IPv6 Deployment Model Comparison**

Table 9-10 summarizes the advantages and disadvantages of the IPv6 deployment models.

**Table 9-10** IPv6 Deployment Model Comparison

IPv6 Deployment Model	Advantages	Disadvantages
Dual-stack model	Tunneling not required. Better processing performance. IPv4 & IPv6 independent routing, QoS, security, and multicast policies.	Network equipment upgrades.
Hybrid model 1	Existing network can be leveraged with no upgrades.	IPv6 multicast not supported within ISATAP tunnels. Terminating ISATAP tunnels in core makes the core appear to be in IPv6 access layer.
Hybrid model 2	IPv4 and IPv6 have independent routing, QoS, security, and multicast policies.	Many static tunnels which makes it difficult to manage.
Server block model	Lesser impact on existing network. Flexible when controlling access to IPv6-enabled applications.	Large amounts of tunneling. Cost of additional equipment.

Table 9-11

name. Study this table for the test.

**Table 9-11** *IPv6 Deployment Models*

Description	IPv6 Deployment Model
All routers and hosts run IPv6 and IPv4.	Dual-stack model
Uses ISATAP or manually configured tunnels to allow dual-stack clients to connect to dual-stack servers over a IPv4 core.	Hybrid model
Uses ISATAP and manually configured tunnels to a service module.	Service block model

## IPv6 Comparison with IPv4

This section provides a summary comparison of IPv6 to IPv4. Become knowledgeable about the characteristics summarized in Table 9-12. The use of 128 bits over 32 bits is an obvious change. The upper-layer protocol is identified with the Next Header field in IPv6, which was the Protocol Type field used in IPv4. ARP is replaced by IPv6 ND.

**Table 9-12** *IPv6 and IPv4 Characteristics*

Characteristic	IPv6	IPv4
Address length	128 bits	32 bits
Address representation	Hexadecimal	Dotted-decimal
Header length	Fixed (40 bytes)	Variable
Upper-layer protocols	Next header field	Protocol Type field
Link address resolution	ND	ARP
Address configuration	Stateless autoconfiguration or stateful DHCP	Stateful DHCP
DNS (name-to-address resolution)	AAAA records	A records
Interior routing protocols	EIGRPv6, OSPFv3, RIPng, IS-IS for IPv6	EIGRP, OSPFv2, RIPv2, IS-IS
Classification and marking	Traffic Class and Flow Label fields, differentiated services code point (DSCP)	IP Precedence bits, Type of Service field, DSCP
Private addresses	Unique-local addresses	RFC 1918 private address space



**Table 9-12 IPv6 and IPv4 Characteristics**

<b>Characteristic</b>	<b>IPv6</b>	<b>IPv4</b>
Fragmentation	Sending host only	Sending host and intermediate routers
Loopback address	0:0:0:0:0:0:1	127.0.0.1
Address scope types	Unicast, anycast, multicast	Unicast, multicast, broadcast

## References and Recommended Readings

- RFC 3056, Connection of IPv6 Domains via IPv4 Clouds, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2740, OSPF for IPv6, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2463, Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2874, DNS Extensions to Support IPv6 Address Aggregation and Renumbering, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2460, Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6) Specification, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- Doyle, J. and J. Carroll. *Routing TCP/IP, Volume I, Second Edition*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2005.
- Doyle, J. and J. Carroll. *Routing TCP/IP, Volume II*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2001.
- RFC 3315, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).
- RFC 2373, IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 3513, Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Addressing Architecture, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 3587, IPv6 Global Unicast Address Format, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- RFC 2374, An IPv6 Aggregatable Global Unicast Address Format, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- Hopps, C. Routing IPv6 for IS-IS (draft), [www.simpleweb.org/ietf/internetdrafts/complete/draft-ietf-isis-ipv6-03.txt](http://www.simpleweb.org/ietf/internetdrafts/complete/draft-ietf-isis-ipv6-03.txt).
- RFC 3879, Deprecating Site Local Addresses, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)
- Implementing IPv6 Networks Training, [www.cisco.com/application/pdf/en/us/guest/tech/tk373/c1482/ccmigration\\_09186a008019d70b.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/application/pdf/en/us/guest/tech/tk373/c1482/ccmigration_09186a008019d70b.pdf)

RFC 2401, Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 2402, IP Authentication Header, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 2406, IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 2080, RIPng for IPv6, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2545, Use of BGP-4 Multiprotocol Extensions for IPv6 Inter-Domain Routing, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 1981, Path MTU Discovery for IP version 6, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 2461, Neighbor Discovery for IP Version 6 (IPv6), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 1886, DNS Extensions to Support IP Version 6, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2766, Network Address Translation – Protocol Translation (NAT-PT), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 4291 IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

[www.cisco.com/web/strategy/docs/gov/IPv6FedGov\\_wp.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/web/strategy/docs/gov/IPv6FedGov_wp.pdf).

RFC 3587 IPv6 Global Unicast Address Format, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 363, Representing Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Addresses in the Domain Name System (DNS), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

Cisco IOS IPv6 Provider Edge Router (6PE) over MPLS, [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/sw/iosswrel/ps1835/products\\_data\\_sheet09186a008052edd3.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/sw/iosswrel/ps1835/products_data_sheet09186a008052edd3.html)

[www.isatap.org/](http://www.isatap.org/).

RFC 5214, Intra-Site Automatic Tunnel Addressing Protocol (ISATAP) [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

IPv6 Extension Headers Review and Considerations, [www.cisco.com/en/US/technologies/tk648/tk872/technologies\\_white\\_paper0900aecd8054d37d.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/technologies/tk648/tk872/technologies_white_paper0900aecd8054d37d.html)

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 9-13 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 9-13** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
List	Lists the enhancements of IPv6 over IPv4	308
Summary	Describes each field of the IPv6 header	309
Summary	Describes how IPv6 addresses are represented	311
Summary	Describes unicast address types	314
Summary	Describes anycast address types	316
Summary	Describes multicast address types	317
Summary	Describes mechanisms such as ICMPv6, IPv6 ND, and address resolution	320
List	Describes stateless autoconfiguration or stateful DHCP address assignment.	322
List	Describes dual-stack, tunneling, and translation-transition mechanisms	326
List	Describes dual-stack, hybrid model, and service block model deployment models	329
Table 9-12	Summarizes IPv6 characteristics as they compare with IPv4	333

## Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

## Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

ALG, AGI, ICMPv6, IANA, ID, ISATAP, FQDN, DHCPv6, IPsec, MTU, NAT-PT, ND, RIPng, OSPFv3, MP-BGP

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** True or false: OSPFv2 supports IPv6.
- 2.** True or false: DNS AAAA records are used in IPv6 networks for name-to-IPv6-address resolution.
- 3.** Fill in the blank: IPv6 ND is similar to what \_\_\_\_\_ does for IPv4 networks.
- 4.** How many bits are there between the colons of IPv6 addresses?
- 5.** The first field of the IPv6 header is 4 bits in length. What binary number is it always set to?
- 6.** True or false: DHCP is required for dynamic allocation of IPv6 addresses.
- 7.** IPv6 multicast addresses begin with what hexadecimal numbers?
- 8.** IPv6 link-local addresses begin with what hexadecimal prefix?
- 9.** True or false: ISATAP allows tunneling of IPv6 through IPv4 networks.
- 10.** List the eight fields of the IPv6 header.
- 11.** Which of the following is not an IPv6 address type?
  - a.** Unicast
  - b.** Broadcast
  - c.** Anycast
  - d.** Multicast
- 12.** True or false: The IPv6 address 2001:0:0:1234:0:0:abcd can be represented as 2001::1234:0:0:abcd and 2001:0:0:1234::abcd.
- 13.** What is the subnet prefix of 2001:1:0:ab0:34:ab1:0:1/64?
- 14.** The IPv6 address has 128 bits. How many hexadecimal numbers does address have?

**15.** What type of IPv6 address is the following?

FF01:0:0:0:0:0:2

**16.** What is the compact format of the address  
2102:0010:0000:0000:0000:fc23:0100:00ab?

- a.** 2102:10::fc23:01:ab
- b.** 2102:001::fc23:01:ab
- c.** 2102:10::fc23:100:ab
- d.** 2102:0010::fc23:01:ab

**17.** When using the dual-stack backbone, which of the following statements is correct?

- a.** The backbone routers have IPv4/IPv6 dual stacks, and end hosts do not.
- b.** The end hosts have IPv4/IPv6 dual stacks, and backbone routers do not.
- c.** Both the backbone routers and end hosts have IPv4/IPv6 dual stacks.
- d.** Neither the backbone routers nor end hosts have IPv4/IPv6 dual stacks.

**18.** How does a dual-stack host know which stack to use to reach a destination?

- a.** It performs an ND, which returns the destination host type.
- b.** It performs a DNS request that returns the IP address. If the returned address is IPv4, the host uses the IPv4 stack. If the returned address is IPv6, the host uses the IPv6 stack.
- c.** The IPv6 stack makes a determination. If the destination is IPv4, the packet is sent to the IPv4 stack.
- d.** The IPv4 stack makes a determination. If the destination is IPv6, the packet is sent to the IPv6 stack.

**19.** What protocol numbers are used by Ethernet to identify IPv4 versus IPv6?

- a.** Protocol 6 for IPv4 and protocol 17 for IPv6.
- b.** 0x86DD for IPv6 and 0x0800 for IPv4.
- c.** 0x8000 for IPv4 and 0x86DD for IPv6.
- d.** 0x0800 for both IPv4 and IPv6; they are identified in the packet layer.

**20.** Which of the following describes the IPv6 header? (Select two.)

- a.** It is 40 bytes in length.
- b.** It is of variable length.
- c.** The Protocol Number field describes the upper-layer protocol.
- d.** The Next Header field describes the upper-layer protocol.

**21.** Which of the following is true about fragmentation?

- a.** Routers between source and destination hosts can fragment IPv4 and IPv6 packets.
- b.** Routers between source and destination hosts cannot fragment IPv4 and IPv6 packets.
- c.** Routers between source and destination hosts can fragment IPv6 packets only. IPv4 packets cannot be fragmented.
- d.** Routers between source and destination hosts can fragment IPv4 packets only. IPv6 packets cannot be fragmented.

**22.** A packet sent to an anycast address reaches what?

- a.** The nearest destination in a set of hosts
- b.** All destinations in a set of hosts
- c.** Broadcasts to all hosts
- d.** Global unicast destinations

**23.** Which of the following is/are true about IPv6 and IPv4 headers?

- a.** The IPv6 header is of fixed length, and the Next Header field describes the upper-layer protocol.
- b.** The IPv4 header is of variable length, and the Protocol field describes the upper-layer protocol.
- c.** The IPv6 header is of fixed length, and the Protocol field describes the upper-layer protocol.
- d.** A and B
- e.** B and C

**24.** An organization uses an IPv6 address range that it received from its ISP. The IPv6 addresses will be used internally, and employees will access the Internet using Port Address Translation. What is required for DNS?

- a.** DNS servers need to support only IPv4 addresses.
- b.** DNS servers need to support only IPv6 addresses.
- c.** No changes are needed to the DNS servers.
- d.** DNS servers need to support both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses
- e.** Additional DNS servers for IPv6 addresses are needed.
- f.** DNS servers are not needed for PAT.

- 25.** Which statements about IPv6 addresses are true? (Select two.)
- a. Leading 0s are required.
  - b. Two colons (:) are used to separate fields.
  - c. Two colons (:) are used to represent successive hexadecimal fields of 0s.
  - d. A single interface will have multiple IPv6 addresses of different types.
- 26.** You have duplicate file servers at multiple locations. Which IPv6 address type allows each end station to send a request to the nearest filer server using the same destination address, regardless of the location of that end station?
- a. Anycast
  - b. Broadcast
  - c. Unicast
  - d. Global unicast
  - e. Multicast
- 27.** Which strategy allows both IPv4 and IPv6 addressing/stacks to coexist on a host to facilitate a migration?
- a. Deploy NAT-PT between the networks.
  - b. Hosts run IPv4 and router run native IPv6.
  - c. Enable anycast in the routing protocol.
  - d. Run both IPv4 and IPv6 address stacks on devices.
  - e. Redistribute between the IPv4 and IPv6 networks.
- 28.** Which strategy would be most flexible for a corporation with the following characteristics?
- 2,400,000 hosts  
11,000 routers  
Internet connectivity  
High volume of traffic with customers and business partners
- a. Deploy NAT-PT between business and Internet networks.
  - b. Hosts run IPv4 and router run native IPv6.
  - c. Both hosts and routers run dual stack.
  - d. Enable anycast in the routing protocol.
  - e. Redistribute between the IPv4 and IPv6 networks.

**29.** What is the hierarchy for IPv6 aggregatable addresses?

- a. Global, site, loop
- b. Public, site, interface
- c. Internet, site, interface
- d. Multicast, anycast, unicast

**30.** NAT-PT translates between what address types?

- a. Translates RFC 1918 private addresses to public IPv4 addresses
- b. Translates between IPv4 and IPv6 addresses
- c. Translates between network addresses and IPv6 ports
- d. Translates between private IPv6 addresses to public IPv6 addresses

**31.** In a network where IPv6 exists within an IPv4 network, which two strategies allow both schemes to coexist? (Select two.)

- a. Translate between the protocols.
- b. Hosts run IPv4 and routers run native IPv6.
- c. Encapsulate IPv6 packets into IPv4 packets.
- d. Enable anycast in the routing protocol.
- e. Redistribute between the IPv4 and IPv6 networks.

**32.** Which IPv6 feature enables routing to distribute connection requests to the nearest content server?

- a. Anycast
- b. Link-local
- c. Aggregatable
- d. Multicast
- e. Site-local

**33.** Which statement best describes the efficiency of the IPv6 header?

- a. It is less efficient than the IPv4 header.
- b. It has the same efficiency as the IPv4 header; the larger IPv6 address makes it faster.
- c. It is more efficient than the IPv4 header.
- d. It is larger than the IPv4 header.

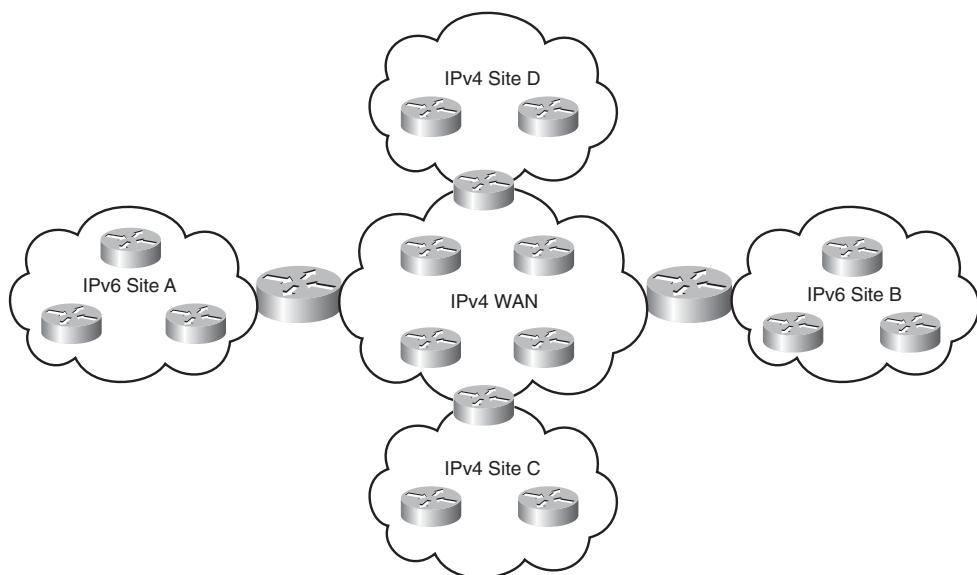
**34.** What does one-to-nearest communication mean for IPv6?

- a. Anycast
- b. Broadcast
- c. Multicast
- d. Unicast

**35.** Which tunneling protocol allows dual-stack hosts to tunnel over IPv4 network that is not multicast enabled?

- a. 6to4
- b. 6over4
- c. IPsec
- d. ISATAP

Questions 36 through 39 are based on the following scenario and Figure 9-17.



**Figure 9-17** Company Adds Sites A and B

A company has an existing WAN that uses IPv4. Sites C and D use IPv4. As shown in Figure 9-17, the company plans to add two new locations (Sites A and B). The new sites will implement IPv6. The company does not want to lease more WAN circuits.

- 36.** What options does the company have to connect Site A to Site B?
- 37.** What mechanism needs to be implemented so that IPv6 hosts can communicate with IPv4 hosts and vice versa?
- 38.** If a dual-stack backbone is implemented, do all WAN routers and all hosts need an IPv6-IPv4 dual stack?
- 39.** If an IPv4 tunnel is implemented between Sites A and B, do all WAN routers require an IPv6-IPv4 dual stack?



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Routing Protocol Characteristics
- Routing Protocol Metrics and Loop Prevention
- RIPv2 and RIPng
- EIGRP

## Routing Protocol Characteristics, RIP, and EIGRP

---

This chapter covers the metrics used and other characteristics of routing protocols. Routing protocols can be categorized as distance-vector or link-state and as hierarchical or flat. The CCDA must understand how each routing protocol is categorized to select the one that meets the customer's requirements. This chapter covers the routing protocols at a high level. The following chapters go into more detail about the operations and algorithms used in each routing protocol.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 10-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 10-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Routing Protocol Characteristics	1, 2, 4, 7, 8
Routing Protocol Metrics and Loop Prevention	6, 9
RIPv2 and RIPng	1, 5, 8
EIGRP	3, 7, 8, 9, 10

- 1.** Which of the following routing protocols are classful?
  - a.** Routing Information Protocol Version 1 (RIPv1) and RIPv2
  - b.** Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) and Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
  - c.** Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS) and OSPF
  - d.** RIPv1 only
  
- 2.** Which type of routing protocol would you use when connecting to an Internet service provider?
  - a.** Classless routing protocol
  - b.** Interior gateway protocol
  - c.** Exterior gateway protocol
  - d.** Classful routing protocol
  
- 3.** Which routing protocol is distance vector and classless?
  - a.** RIPv2
  - b.** EIGRP
  - c.** OSPF
  - d.** IS-IS
  
- 4.** Which type of routing protocol sends periodic routing updates?
  - a.** Static
  - b.** Distance vector
  - c.** Link state
  - d.** Hierarchical
  
- 5.** Which distance-vector routing protocol is used for IPv6 networks?
  - a.** OSPFv2
  - b.** RIPng
  - c.** OSPFv3
  - d.** BGPv3
  
- 6.** Which of the following is true regarding routing metrics?
  - a.** If the metric is bandwidth, the path with the lowest bandwidth is selected.
  - b.** If the metric is bandwidth, the path with the highest bandwidth is selected.
  - c.** If the metric is bandwidth, the highest sum of the bandwidth is used to calculate the highest cost.
  - d.** If the metric is cost, the path with the highest cost is selected.

7. Both OSPF and EIGRP are enabled on a router with default values. Both protocols have a route to a destination network in their databases. Which route is entered into the routing table?
  - a. The OSPF route.
  - b. The EIGRP route.
  - c. Both routes are entered with load balancing.
  - d. Neither route is entered; an error has occurred.
8. Which of the following are classless routing protocols?
  - a. RIPv1 and RIPv2
  - b. EIGRP and RIPv2
  - c. IS-IS and OSPF
  - d. Answers B and C
9. Which parameters are included in the computation of the EIGRP composite metric use by default?
  - a. Bandwidth and load
  - b. Bandwidth and delay
  - c. Bandwidth and reliability
  - d. Bandwidth and maximum transmission unit (MTU)
10. Which routing protocol implements the Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL)?
  - a. IS-IS
  - b. IGRP
  - c. EIGRP
  - d. OSPF

## Foundation Topics

This chapter covers the high-level characteristics of routing protocols and their metrics. You should become familiar with the different categories of routing protocols and their characteristics for the exam. Understand how each metric is used and, based on the metric, which path is preferred. For example, you need to know that a path with the highest bandwidth is preferred over a path with lower bandwidth. This chapter also covers distance vector routing protocols: RIPv2, RIPng, and EIGRP.

### Routing Protocol Characteristics

This section discusses the different types and characteristics of routing protocols.

Characteristics of routing-protocol design are

- **Distance-vector, link-state, or hybrid:** How routes are learned
- **Interior or exterior:** For use in private networks or the public Internet
- **Classless (classless interdomain routing [CIDR] support) or classful:** CIDR enables aggregation of network advertisements (supernetting) between routers
- **Fixed-length or variable-length subnet masks (VLSM):** Conserve addresses within a network
- **Flat or hierarchical:** Addresses scalability in large internetworks
- **IPv4 or IPv6:** Newer routing protocols are used for IPv6 networks

This section also covers the default administrative distance assigned to routes learned from each routing protocol or from static assignment. Routes are categorized as statically (manually) configured or dynamically learned from a routing protocol. The following sections cover all these characteristics.

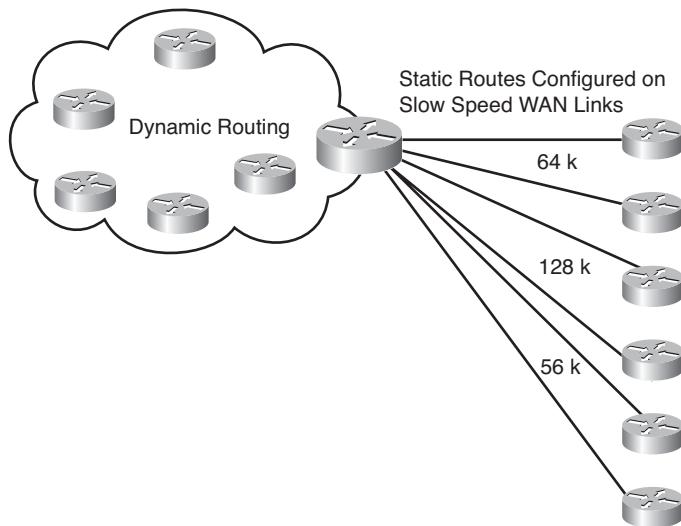
#### Static Versus Dynamic Route Assignment

Static routes are manually configured on a router. They do not react to network outages. The one exception is when the static route specifies the outbound interface: In this situation, if the interface goes down, the static route is removed from the routing table. Because static routes are unidirectional, they must be configured for each outgoing interface the router will use. The size of today's networks makes it impossible to manually configure and maintain all the routes in all the routers in a timely manner. Human configuration can involve many mistakes. Dynamic routing protocols were created to address these shortcomings. They use algorithms to advertise, learn about, and react to changes in the network topology.

The main benefit of static routing is that a router generates no routing protocol overhead. Because no routing protocol is enabled, no bandwidth is consumed by route advertisements between network devices. Another benefit of static routing protocols is that they are easier to configure and troubleshoot than dynamic routing protocols. Static routing is

remote site because the hub is the only route used to reach all other sites. Static routes are also used at network boundaries (Internet or partners) where routing information is not exchanged. These static routes are then redistributed into the internal dynamic routing protocol used.

Figure 10-1 shows a hub-and-spoke WAN where static routes are defined in the remote WAN routers because no routing protocols are configured. This setup eliminates routing protocol traffic on the low-bandwidth WAN circuits.



**Figure 10-1** Static Routes in a Hub-and-Spoke Network

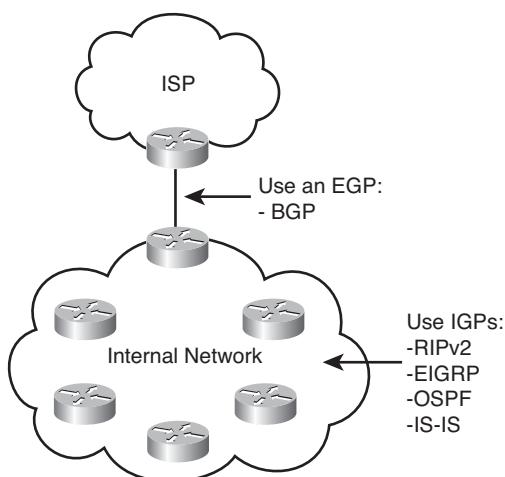
Routing protocols dynamically determine the best route to a destination. When the network topology changes, the routing protocol adjusts the routes without administrative intervention. Routing protocols use a metric to determine the best path toward a destination network. Some use a single measured value such as hop count. Others compute a metric value using one or more parameters. Routing metrics are discussed later in this chapter. The following is a list of dynamic routing protocols:

- RIPv1
- RIPv2
- IGRP
- EIGRP
- OSPF
- IS-IS
- RIPng
- OSPFv3

- EIGRP for IPv6
- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)

### Interior Versus Exterior Routing Protocols

Routing protocols can be categorized as interior gateway protocols (IGP) or exterior gateway protocols (EGP). IGPs are meant for routing within an organization's administrative domain (in other words, the organization's internal network). EGPs are routing protocols used to communicate with exterior domains, where routing information is exchanged between administrative domains. Figure 10-2 shows where an internetwork uses IGPs and EGPs with multiple autonomous administrative domains. BGP exchanges routing information between the internal network and an ISP. IGPs appear in the internal private network.



**Figure 10-2** Interior and Exterior Routing Protocols

One of the first EGPs was called exactly that: Exterior Gateway Protocol. Today, BGP is the de facto (and the only available) EGP.

Potential IGPs for an IPv4 network are

- RIPv2
- OSPF
- IS-IS
- EIGRP

Potential IGPs for an IPv6 network are

- RIPng
- OSPFv3
- EIGRP for IPv6

RIPv1 is no longer recommended because of its limitations. RIPv2 addresses many of the limitations of RIPv1 and is the most recent version of RIP. IGRP is an earlier version of EIGRP. RIPv1 and IGRP are no longer CCDA exam topics. Table 10-2 provides a quick high-level summary of which protocol should be selected.

**Table 10-2 IGP and EGP Protocol Selection**

Description	Routing Protocol
Used to connect to an ISP	BGP
IGP used in enterprise networks, supports large network and multi-vendor	OSPF
IGP used in large enterprise networks with Cisco routers	EIGRP

### Distance-Vector Routing Protocols

The first IGP routing protocols introduced were distance-vector routing protocols. They used the Bellman-Ford algorithm to build the routing tables. With distance-vector routing protocols, routes are advertised as vectors of distance and direction. The distance metric is usually router hop count. The direction is the next-hop router (IP address) toward which to forward the packet. For RIP, the maximum number of hops is 15, which can be a serious limitation, especially in large nonhierarchical internetworks.

Distance-vector algorithms call for each router to send its entire routing table to only its immediate neighbors. The table is sent periodically (30 seconds for RIP). In the period between advertisements, each router builds a new table to send to its neighbors at the end of the period. Because each router relies on its neighbors for route information, it is commonly said that distance-vector protocols “route by rumor.”

Having to wait half a minute for a new routing table with new routes is too long for today’s networks. This is why distance-vector routing protocols have slow convergence.

RIPv2 and RIPng can send triggered updates—full routing table updates sent before the update timer has expired. A router can receive a routing table with 500 routes with only one route change, which creates serious overhead on the network (another drawback). Furthermore, RFC 2091 updates RIP with triggered extensions to allow triggered updates with only route changes. Cisco routers support this on fixed point-to-point interfaces.

The following is a list of IP distance-vector routing protocols:

- RIPv1 and RIPv2
- EIGRP (which could be considered a hybrid)
- RIPng

### EIGRP

link-state routing protocol characteristics. Although EIGRP uses distance-vector metrics,

it sends partial updates and maintains neighbor state information just as link-state protocols do. EIGRP does not send periodic updates as other distance-vector routing protocols do. The important thing to consider for the test is that EIGRP could be presented as a hybrid protocol. EIGRP metrics and mechanisms are discussed later in this chapter.

### Link-State Routing Protocols

Link-state routing protocols address some of the limitations of distance-vector protocols. When running a link-state routing protocol, routers originate information about themselves (IP addresses), their connected links (the number and types of links), and the state of those links (up or down). The information is flooded to all routers in the network as changes in the link state occur. Each router makes a copy of the information received and forwards it without change. Each router independently calculates the best paths to each destination network by using the Dijkstra shortest path algorithm, creating a shortest path tree with itself as the root, and maintains a map of the network.

After the initial exchange of information, link-state updates are not sent unless a change in the topology occurs. Routers do send small hello messages between neighbors to maintain neighbor relationships. If no updates have been sent, the link-state route database is refreshed after 30 minutes.

The following is a list of link-state routing protocols:

- OSPF
- IS-IS
- OSPFv3

OSPF, OSPFv3, and IS-IS are covered in Chapter 11, “OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and Multicast.”

### Distance-Vector Routing Protocols Versus Link-State Protocols

When choosing a routing protocol, consider that distance-vector routing protocols use more network bandwidth than link-state protocols. Distance-vector protocols generate more bandwidth overhead because of the large periodic routing updates. Link-state routing protocols do not generate significant routing update overhead but do use more router CPU and memory resources than distance-vector protocols. Generally, WAN bandwidth is a more expensive resource than router CPU and memory in modern devices.

Table 10-3 compares distance-vector to link-state routing protocols.



**Table 10-3** *Distance-Vector Versus Link-State Routing Protocols*

Characteristic	Distance Vector	Link State
Scalability	Limited	Good
Convergence	Slow	Fast
Routing overhead	More traffic	Less traffic
Implementation	Easy	More complex
Protocols	RIPv1, RIPv2, EIGRP, RIPng	OSPF, IS-IS, OSPFv3

EIGRP is a distance-vector protocol with link-state characteristics (hybrid) that give it high scalability, fast convergence, less routing overhead, and relatively easy configuration. If “distance-vector” is not an answer to a question, then “hybrid” would be a valid option.

### Hierarchical Versus Flat Routing Protocols

Some routing protocols require a network topology that must have a backbone network defined. This network contains some, or all, of the routers in the internetwork. When the internetwork is defined hierarchically, the backbone consists of only some devices. Backbone routers service and coordinate the routes and traffic to or from routers not in the local internetwork. The supported hierarchy is relatively shallow. Two levels of hierarchy are generally sufficient to provide scalability. Selected routers forward routes into the backbone. OSPF and IS-IS are hierarchical routing protocols. By default, EIGRP is a flat routing protocol, but it can be configured with manual summarization to support hierarchical designs.

Flat routing protocols do not allow a hierarchical network organization. They propagate all routing information throughout the network without dividing or summarizing large networks into smaller areas. Carefully designing network addressing to naturally support aggregation within routing-protocol advertisements can provide many of the benefits offered by hierarchical routing protocols. Every router is a peer of every other router in flat routing protocols; no router has a special role in the internetwork. EIGRP, RIPv1, and RIPv2 are flat routing protocols.

### Classless Versus Classful Routing Protocols

Routing protocols can be classified based on their support of VLSM and CIDR. Classful routing protocols do not advertise subnet masks in their routing updates; therefore, the configured subnet mask for the IP network must be the same throughout the entire internetwork. Furthermore, the subnets must, for all practical purposes, be contiguous within the larger internetwork. For example, if you use a classful routing protocol for network 130.170.0.0, you must use the chosen mask (such as 255.255.255.0) on all router interfaces using the 130.170.0.0 network. You must configure serial links with only two hosts and LANs with tens or hundreds of devices with the same mask of 255.255.255.0. The big disadvantage of classful routing protocols is that the network designer cannot take advantage of address summarization across networks (CIDR) or allocation of smaller or larger subnets within an IP network (VLSM). For example, with a classful routing protocol that uses a default mask of /25 for the entire network, you cannot assign a /30 subnet to a serial point-to-point circuit. Classful routing protocols are

- RIPv1
- IGRP (this protocol not a test topic)

Classless routing protocols advertise the subnet mask with each route. You can configure subnetworks of a given IP network number with different subnet masks (VLSM). You can configure large LANs with a smaller subnet mask and configure serial links with a larger subnet mask, thereby conserving IP address space. Classless routing protocols also allow flexible route summarization and supernetting (CIDR). You create supernets by aggregating classful IP networks. For example, 200.100.100.0/23 is a supernet of 200.100.100.0/24 and 200.100.101.0/24. Classless routing protocols are

- RIPv2
- OSPF
- EIGRP
- IS-IS
- RIPng
- OSPFv3
- EIGRP for IPv6
- BGP

### IPv4 Versus IPv6 Routing Protocols

With the increasing use of the IPv6 protocol, the CCDA must be prepared to design networks using IPv6 routing protocols. As IPv6 was defined, routing protocols needed to be updated to support the new IP address structure. None of the IPv4 routing protocols support IPv6 networks, and none of the IPv6 routing protocols are backward compatible with IPv4 networks. But both protocols can coexist on the same network, each with its own routing protocol. Devices with dual stacks recognize which protocol is being used by the IP Version field in the IP header.

RIPng is the IPv6-compatible RIP routing protocol. EIGRP for IPv6 is the new version of EIGRP that supports IPv6 networks. OSPFv3 was developed for IPv6, and OSPFv2 remains for IPv4. Internet drafts were written to provide IPv6 routing using IS-IS. Multiprotocol extensions for BGP provide IPv6 support for BGP. Table 10-4 summarizes IPv4 versus IPv6 routing protocols.

**Table 10-4** *IPv4 and IPv6 Routing Protocols*

IPv4 Routing Protocols	IPv6 Routing Protocols
RIPv2	RIPng
EIGRP	EIGRP for IPv6
OSPFv2	OSPFv3
IS-IS	IS-IS for IPv6
BGP	Multiprotocol BGP

## Administrative Distance

On Cisco routers running more than one routing protocol, it is possible for two different routing protocols to have a route to the same destination. Cisco routers assign each routing protocol an administrative distance. When multiple routes exist for a destination, the router selects the longest match. For example, if to reach a destination of 170.20.10.1 OSPF has a route prefix of 170.20.10.0/24 and EIGRP has a route prefix of 170.20.0.0/16, the OSPF route is preferred because the /24 prefix is longer than the /16 prefix. It is more specific.

If two or more routing protocols offer the same route (with same prefix length) for inclusion in the routing table, the Cisco IOS router selects the route with the lowest administrative distance.

The administrative distance is a rating of the trustworthiness of a routing information source. Table 10-5 shows the default administrative distance for configured (static) or learned routes. In the table, you can see that static routes are trusted over dynamically learned routes. Within IGP routing protocols, EIGRP internal routes are trusted over OSPF, IS-IS, and RIP routes.

**Table 10-5 Default Administrative Distances for IP Routes**

IP Route	Administrative Distance
Connected interface	0
Static route directed to a connected interface	1
Static route directed to an IP address	1
EIGRP summary route	5
External BGP route	20
Internal EIGRP route	90
IGRP route	100
OSPF route	110
IS-IS route	115
RIP route	120
EGP route	140
External EIGRP route	170
Internal BGP route	200
Route of unknown origin	255

The administrative distance establishes the precedence used among routing algorithms. Suppose a router has an EIGRP route to network 172.20.10.0/24 with the best path out

administrative distance of 90 and OSPF has an administrative distance of 110, the router enters the EIGRP route in the routing table and sends packets with destinations of 172.20.10.0/24 out Ethernet 0.

Static routes have a default administrative distance of 1. There is one exception. If the static route points to a connected interface, it inherits the administrative distance of connected interfaces, which is 0. You can configure static routes with a different distance by appending the distance value to the end of the command.

Table 10-6 provides a summary of routing protocol characteristics.

**Table 10-6 Routing Protocol Characteristics**

Routing Protocol	Distance Vector or Link State	Interior or Exterior	Classful or Classless	Administrative Distance
RIPv2	DV	Interior	Classless	120
EIGRP	DV (hybrid)	Interior	Classless	90
OSPF	LS	Interior	Classless	110
IS-IS	LS	Interior	Classless	115
BGP	Path vector	Both	Classless	20

## Routing Protocol Metrics and Loop Prevention

Routing protocols use a metric to determine best routes to a destination. Some routing protocols use a combination of metrics to build a composite metric for best path selection. This section describes metrics and also covers routing loop-prevention techniques. You must understand each metric for the CCDA.

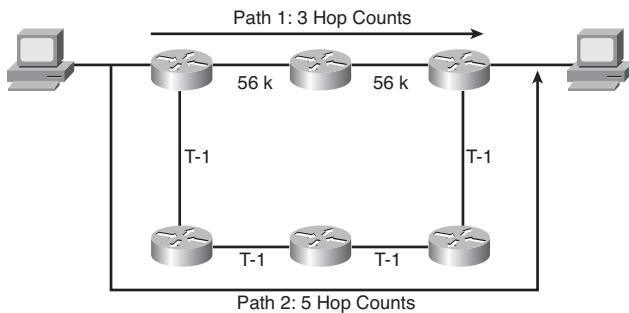
Some routing metric parameters are

- Hop count
- Bandwidth
- Cost
- Load
- Delay
- Reliability
- Maximum transmission unit (MTU)

### Hop Count

The hop count parameter counts the number of links between routers the packet must traverse to reach a destination. The RIP routing protocol uses hop count as the metric for problem with routing protocols that use only this metric is that the shortest hop count is

not always the most appropriate path. For example, between two paths to a destination network—one with two 56-kbps links and another with four T1 links—the router chooses the first path because of the lower number of hops (see Figure 10-3). However, this is not necessarily the best path. You would prefer to transfer a 20-MB file via the T1 links rather than the 56-kbps links.

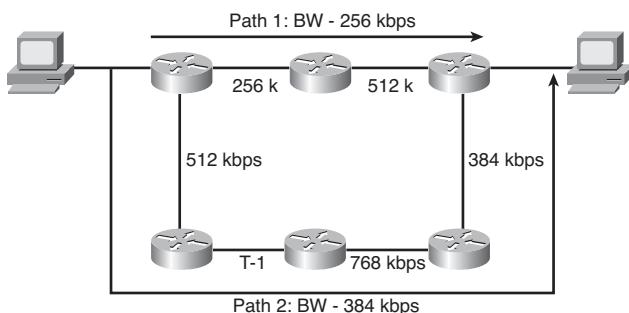


**Figure 10-3 Hop Count Metric**

### Bandwidth

The bandwidth parameter uses the interface bandwidth to determine a best path to a destination network. When bandwidth is the metric, the router prefers the path with the highest bandwidth to a destination. For example, a Fast Ethernet (100 Mbps) is preferred over a DS-3 (45 Mbps). As shown in Figure 10-4, a router using bandwidth to determine a path would select Path 2 because of the larger bandwidth, 1.5 Mbps over 56 kbps.

If a routing protocol uses only bandwidth as the metric and the path has several different speeds, the protocol can use the lowest speed in the path to determine the bandwidth for the path. EIGRP and IGRP use the minimum path bandwidth, inverted and scaled, as one part of the metric calculation. In Figure 10-4, Path 1 has two segments, with 256 kbps and 512 kbps of bandwidth. Because the smaller speed is 256 kbps, this speed is used as Path 1's bandwidth. The smallest bandwidth in Path 2 is 384 kbps. When the router has to choose between Path 1 and Path 2, it selects Path 2 because 384 kbps is larger than 256 kbps.



**Figure 10-4 Bandwidth Metric Example**

## Cost

Cost is the name of the metric used by OSPF and IS-IS. In OSPF on a Cisco router, a link's default cost is derived from the interface's bandwidth.

Cisco's implementation of IS-IS assigns a default cost of 10 to all interfaces.

The formula to calculate cost in OSPF is

$$10^8 / \text{BW}$$

where BW is the interface's default or configured bandwidth.

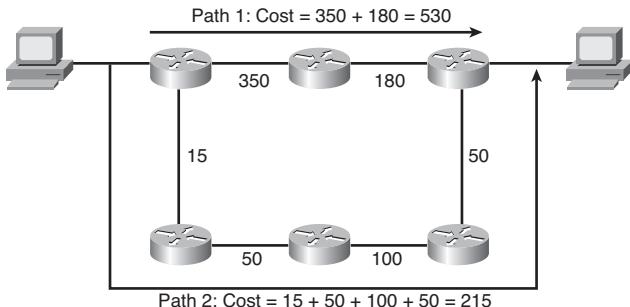
For 10-Mbps Ethernet, cost is calculated as follows:

$$\text{BW} = 10 \text{ Mbps} = 10 * 10^6 = 10,000,000 = 10^7$$

$$\text{cost (Ethernet)} = 10^8 / 10^7 = 10$$

The sum of all the costs to reach a destination is the metric for that route. The lowest cost is the preferred path.

Figure 10-5 shows an example of how the path costs are calculated. The path cost is the sum of all costs in the path. The cost for Path 1 is  $350 + 180 = 530$ . The cost for Path 2 is  $15 + 50 + 100 + 50 = 215$ .



**Figure 10-5 Cost Metric Example**

Because the cost of Path 2 is less than that of Path 1, Path 2 is selected as the best route to the destination.

## Load

The load parameter refers to the degree to which the interface link is busy. The router keeps track of interface utilization; routing protocols can use this metric when calculating the best route. Load is one of the five parameters included in the definition of the EIGRP metric. By default, it is not used to calculate the composite metric. If you have 512-kbps and 256-kbps links to reach a destination, but the 512-kbps circuit is 99 percent busy and the 256-kbps is only 5 percent busy, the 256 kbps link is the preferred path. On Cisco routers, the percentage of load

is shown as 255/255, and utilization at 0 percent is shown as 0/255. Example 10-1 shows the load of a serial interface at 5/255 (1.9 percent).

#### **Example 10-1 Interface Load**

```
router3>show interface serial 1
Serial1 is up, line protocol is up
  Hardware is PQUICC Serial
  Internet address is 10.100.1.1/24
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1544 Kbit, DLY 20000 usec, rely 255/255, load 5/255
```

#### **Delay**

The delay parameter refers to how long it takes to move a packet to the destination. Delay depends on many factors, such as link bandwidth, utilization, port queues, and physical distance traveled. Total delay is one of the five parameters included in the definition of the EIGRP composite metric. By default, it is used to calculate the composite metric. You can configure an interface's delay with the **delay tens-of-microseconds** command, where *tens-of-microseconds* specifies the delay in tens of microseconds for an interface or network segment. The interface delay can be checked with the **show interface** command. As shown in Example 10-2, the interface's delay is 20,000 microseconds.

#### **Example 10-2 Interface Delay**

```
router3>show interface serial 1
Serial1 is up, line protocol is up
  Hardware is PQUICC Serial
  Internet address is 10.100.1.1/24
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1544 Kbit, DLY 20000 usec, rely 255/255, load 1/255
```

#### **Reliability**

The reliability parameter is the dependability of a network link. Some WAN links tend to go up and down throughout the day. These links get a small reliability rating. Reliability is measured by factors such as a link's expected received keepalives and the number of packet drops and interface resets. If the ratio is high, the line is reliable. The best rating is 255/255, which is 100 percent reliability. Reliability is one of the five parameters included in the definition of the EIGRP metric. By default, it is not used to calculate the composite metric. As shown in Example 10-3, you can verify an interface's reliability using the **show interface** command.

#### **Example 10-3 Interface Reliability**

```
router4#show interface serial 0
Serial0 is up, line protocol is up
  Hardware is PQUICC Serial
```

## Maximum Transmission Unit

The MTU parameter is simply the maximum size of bytes a unit can have on an interface. If the outgoing packet is larger than the MTU, the IP protocol might need to fragment it. If a packet larger than the MTU has the Do Not Fragment flag set, the packet is dropped. As shown in Example 10-4, you can verify an interface's MTU using the `show interface` command.

### Example 10-4 Interface MTU

```
router4#show interface serial 0
Serial0 is up, line protocol is up
  Hardware is PQUICC Serial
    MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1544 Kbit, DLY 20000 usec, rely 255/255, load 1/255
```

## Routing Loop-Prevention Schemes

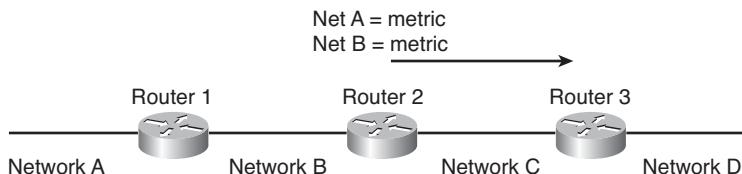
Some routing protocols employ schemes to prevent the creation of routing loops in the network. These schemes are

- Split horizon
- Poison reverse
- Counting to infinity

### Split Horizon

Split horizon is a technique used by distance-vector routing protocols to prevent routing loops. Routes that are learned from a neighboring router are not sent back to that neighboring router, thus suppressing the route. If the neighbor is already closer to the destination, it already has a better path.

In Figure 10-6, Routers 1, 2, and 3 learn about Networks A, B, C, and D. Router 2 learns about Network A from Router 1 and also has Networks B and C in its routing table. Router 3 advertises Network D to Router 2. Now, Router 2 knows about all networks. Router 2 sends its routing table to Router 3 without the route for Network D because it learned that route from Router 3.

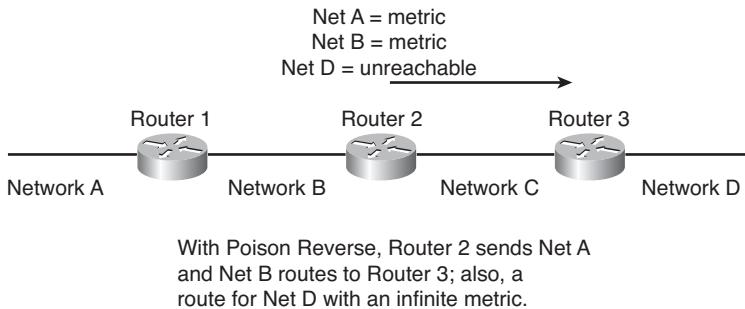


With Split Horizon, Router 2 sends Net A and Net B routes to Router 3; no route for Net D is sent to Router 3.

**Figure 10-6** Simple Split-Horizon Example

### Poison Reverse

Poison reverse is a route update sent out an interface with an infinite metric for routes learned (received) from the same interface. Poison reverse simply indicates that the learned route is unreachable. It is more reliable than split horizon alone. Examine Figure 10-7. Instead of suppressing the route for Network D, Router 2 sends that route in the routing table marked as unreachable. In RIP, the poison-reverse route is marked with a metric of 16 (infinite) to prevent that path from being used.



**Figure 10-7** *Poison Reverse*

### Counting to Infinity

Some routing protocols keep track of router hops as the packet travels through the network. In large networks where a routing loop might be present because of a network outage, routers might forward a packet without its reaching its destination.

Counting to infinity is a loop-prevention technique in which the router discards a packet when it reaches a maximum limit. It assumes that the network diameter is smaller than the maximum allowed hops. RIP has a maximum of 16 hops. And EIGRP has a maximum of 100 hops by default. These values are considered infinity.

### Triggered Updates

Another loop-prevention and fast-convergence technique used by routing protocols is triggered updates. When a router interface changes state (up or down), the router is required to send an update message, even if it is not time for the periodic update message. Immediate notification about a network outage is key to maintaining valid routing entries within all routers in the network by allowing faster convergence. Some distance-vector protocols, including RIP, specify a small time delay to avoid having triggered updates generate excessive network traffic. The time delay is variable for each router.

### Summarization

Another characteristic of routing protocols is the ability to summarize routes. Protocols that support VLSMs can perform summarization outside of IP class boundaries. By summarizing routes, routers can reduce the size of routing tables and decrease the amount of traffic on the network. This is particularly useful in large-scale networks where summarization can significantly reduce the number of routes a router needs to store and advertise.

## RIPv2 and RIPng

This section covers RIPv2 and RIPng. RIPv2 is used for IPv4 networks and RIPng was created to support IPv6 networks. RIPv2 was first described in RFC 1388 and RFC 1723 (1994); the current RFC is 2453, written in November 1998. Although current environments use advanced routing protocols such as OSPF and EIGRP, some networks still use RIP. The need to use VLSMs and other requirements prompted the definition of RIPv2. RIPv1 was the first version of RIP, which did not support VLSMs. RIPv1 is not a CCDA topic.

RIPv2 improves on RIPv1 with the ability to use VLSM, with support for route authentication, and with multicasting of route updates. RIPv2 supports CIDR. It still sends updates every 30 seconds and retains the 15-hop limit; it also uses triggered updates. RIPv2 still uses UDP port 520; the RIP process is responsible for checking the version number. It retains the loop-prevention strategies of poison reverse and counting to infinity. On Cisco routers, RIPv2 has the same administrative distance as RIPv1, which is 120. Finally, RIPv2 uses the IP address 224.0.0.9 when multicasting route updates to other RIP routers. As in RIPv1, RIPv2 by default summarizes IP networks at network boundaries. You can disable autosummarization if required.

You can use RIPv2 in small networks where VLSM is required. It also works at the edge of larger networks.

### Authentication

Authentication can prevent communication with any RIP routers that are not intended to be part of the network, such as UNIX stations running *routed*. Only RIP updates with the authentication password are accepted. RFC 1723 defines simple plain-text authentication for RIPv2.

### MD5 Authentication

In addition to plain-text passwords, the Cisco implementation provides the ability to use message digest 5 (MD5) authentication, which is defined in RFC 1321. MD5 is a hashing algorithm that takes a variable-length string of text and produces a fixed-length 128-bit output. One significant advantage to hashing plaintext is that the original message cannot be reconstituted even with knowledge of the hash algorithm. This provides greater security than using plaintext authentication.

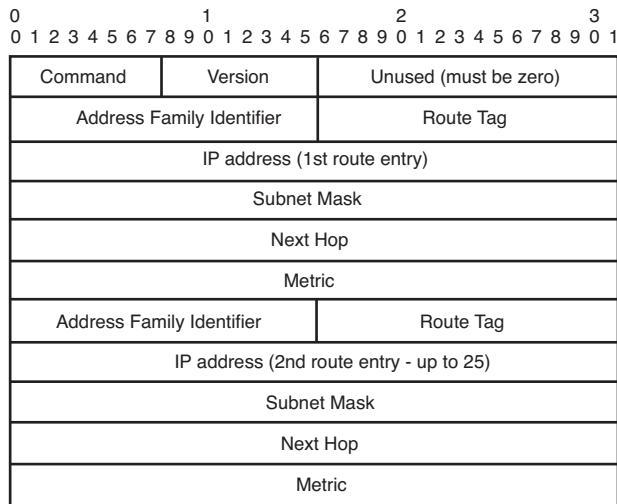
### RIPv2 Routing Database

RIPv2 maintains a routing table database as in Version 1. The difference is that it also keeps the subnet mask information. The following list repeats the table information of RIPv1:

- **IP address:** The IP address of the destination host or network, with subnet mask
- **Gateway:** The first gateway along the path to the destination
- **Interface:** The physical network that must be used to reach the destination
- **Metric:** A number indicating the number of hops to the destination
- **Timer:** The amount of time since the route entry was last updated

## RIPv2 Message Format

The RIPv2 message format takes advantage of the unused fields in the RIPv1 message format by adding subnet masks and other information. Figure 10-8 shows the RIPv2 message format.



**Figure 10-8 RIPv2 Message Format**

The following describes each field:

- **Command:** Indicates whether the packet is a request or response message. The request message asks that a router send all or a part of its routing table. Response messages contain route entries. The router sends the response periodically or as a reply to a request.
- **Version:** Specifies the RIP version used. It is set to 2 for RIPv2 and to 1 for RIPv1.
- **AFI:** Specifies the address family used. RIP is designed to carry routing information for several different protocols. Each entry has an AFI to indicate the type of address specified. The AFI for IP is 2. The AFI is set to 0xFFFF for the first entry to indicate that the remainder of the entry contains authentication information.
- **Route tag:** Provides a method for distinguishing between internal routes (learned by RIP) and external routes (learned from other protocols). You can add this optional attribute during the redistribution of routing protocols.
- **IP Address:** Specifies the IP address (network) of the destination.
- **Subnet Mask:** Contains the subnet mask for the destination. If this field is 0, no subnet mask has been specified for the entry.
- **Next Hop:** the destination.

- **Metric:** Indicates how many router hops to reach the destination. The metric is between 1 and 15 for a valid route or 16 for an unreachable or infinite route.

Again, as in RIPv1, the router permits up to 25 occurrences of the last five 32-bit words (20 bytes) for up to 25 routes per RIP message. If the AFI specifies an authenticated message, the router can specify only 24 routing table entries. The updates are sent to the multicast address of 224.0.0.9.

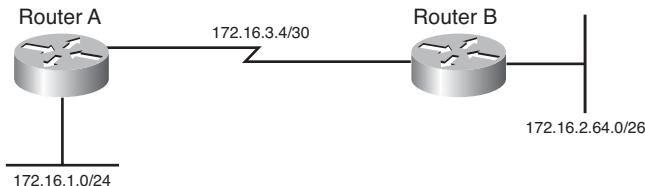
### RIPv2 Timers

RIPv2 timers are the same as in RIPv1. They send periodic updates every 30 seconds. The default invalid timer is 180 seconds, the hold-down timer is 180 seconds, and the flush timer is 240 seconds. You can write this list as 30/180/180/240, representing the U/I/H/F timers.

### RIPv2 Design

Things to remember in designing a network with RIPv2 include that it supports VLSM within networks and allows for the summarization of routes in a hierarchical network. RIPv2 is still limited to 16 hops; therefore, the network diameter cannot exceed this limit. RIPv2 multicasts its routing table every 30 seconds to the multicast IP address 224.0.0.9. RIPv2 is usually limited to accessing networks where it can interoperate with servers running **routed** or with non-Cisco routers. RIPv2 also appears at the edge of larger internetworks. RIPv2 further provides for route authentication.

As shown in Figure 10-9, when you use RIPv2, all segments can have different subnet masks.



**Figure 10-9 RIPv2 Design**

### RIPv2 Summary

The characteristics of RIPv2 follow:

- Distance-vector protocol.
- Uses UDP port 520.
- Classless protocol (support for CIDR).
- Supports VLSMs.
- Metric is router hop count.
- Low scalability: maximum hop count is 15; infinite (unreachable) routes metric of 16.



- Periodic route updates are sent every 30 seconds to multicast address 224.0.0.9.
- 25 routes per RIP message (24 if you use authentication).
- Supports authentication.
- Implements split horizon with poison reverse.
- Implements triggered updates.
- Subnet mask included in route entry.
- Administrative distance for RIPv2 is 120.
- Not scalable. Used in small, flat networks or at the edge of larger networks.

## RIPng

RIPng (RIP next generation) is the version of RIP that can be used in IPv6 networks. It is described in RFC 2080. Most of the RIP mechanisms from RIPv2 remain the same. RIPng still has a 15-hop limit, counting to infinity, and split horizon with poison reverse. A hop count of 16 still indicates an unreachable route.

Instead of using UDP port 520 as in RIPv2, RIPng uses UDP port 521. RIPng supports IPv6 addresses and prefixes. RIPng uses multicast group FF02::9 for RIPng updates to all RIPng routers.

### RIPng Timers

RIPng timers are similar to RIPv2. Periodic updates are sent every 30 seconds. The default invalid timeout for routes to expire is 180 seconds, the default hold-down timer is 180 seconds, and the default garbage-collection timer is 120 seconds.

### Authentication

RIPng does not implement authentication methods in its protocol as RIPv2 does. RIPng relies on built-in IPv6 authentication functions.

### RIPng Message Format

Figure 10-10 shows the RIPng routing message. Each route table entry (RTE) consists of the IPv6 prefix, route tag, prefix length, and metric.

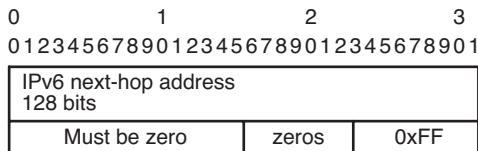
0	1	2	3
01234567890123456789012345678901			
Command	Version	Must be zero	
Route entry 1: IPv6 Prefix 128 bits			
Route tag	Prefix length	metric	
Route entry 2: IPv6 prefix 128 bits			
Route tag	Prefix length	metric	

**Figure 10-10** RIPng Update Message Format

The following describes each field:

- **Command:** Indicates whether the packet is a request or response message. This field is set to 1 for a request and to 2 for a response.
- **Version:** Set to 1, the first version of RIPng.
- **IPv6 prefix:** The destination 128-bit IPv6 prefix.
- **Route Tag:** As with RIPv2, this is a method that distinguishes internal routes (learned by RIP) from external routes (learned by external protocols). Tagged during redistribution.
- **Prefix Length:** Indicates the significant part of the prefix.
- **Metric:** This 8-bit field contains the router hop metric.

RIPv2 has a Next Hop field for each of its route entries. An RTE with a metric of 0xFF indicates the next-hop address to reduce the number of route entries in RIPng. It groups all RTEs after it to summarize all destinations to that particular next-hop address. Figure 10-11 shows the format of the special RTE indicating the next-hop entry.



**Figure 10-11** RIPng Next-Hop Route Table Entry

## RIPng Design

RIPng has low scalability. As with RIPv2, it is limited to 15 hops; therefore, the network diameter cannot exceed this limit. RIPng also broadcasts its routing table every 30 seconds, which causes network overhead. RIPng can be used only in small networks.

## RIPng Summary

The characteristics of RIPng are as follows:



- Distance-vector protocol for IPv6 networks only.
- Uses UDP port 521.
- Metric is router hop count.
- Maximum hop count is 15; infinite (unreachable) routes have a metric of 16.
- Periodic route updates are sent every 30 seconds to multicast address FF02::9.
- Uses IPv6 functions for authentication.
- Implements split horizon with poison reverse.
- Implements triggered updates.

- Prefix length included in route entry.
- Administrative distance for RIPv2 is 120.
- Not scalable. Used in small networks.

## EIGRP

Cisco Systems released EIGRP in the early 1990s as an evolution of IGRP toward a more scalable routing protocol for large internetworks. EIGRP is a classless protocol that permits the use of VLSMs and that supports CIDR for the scalable allocation of IP addresses. EIGRP does not send routing updates periodically, as does IGRP. EIGRP allows for authentication with MD5. EIGRP autosummarizes networks at network borders and can load share over unequal-cost paths. Packets using EIGRP use IP 88. Only Cisco routers can use EIGRP.

EIGRP is an advanced distance-vector protocol that implements some characteristics similar to those of link-state protocols. Some Cisco documentation refers to EIGRP as a hybrid protocol. EIGRP advertises its routing table to its neighbors as distance-vector protocols do, but it uses hellos and forms neighbor relationships as link-state protocols do. EIGRP sends partial updates when a metric or the topology changes on the network. It does not send full routing-table updates in periodic fashion as do distance-vector protocols. EIGRP uses Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL) to determine loop-free paths to destinations. This section discusses DUAL.

By default, EIGRP load balances traffic if several paths have equal cost to the destination. EIGRP performs unequal-cost load sharing if you configure it with the *variance n* command. EIGRP includes routes that are equal to or less than *n* times the minimum metric route to a destination. As in RIP and IGRP, EIGRP also summarizes IP networks at network boundaries.

EIGRP internal routes have an administrative distance of 90. EIGRP summary routes have an administrative distance of 5, and EIGRP external routes (from redistribution) have an administrative distance of 170.

### EIGRP Components

EIGRP has four components that characterize it:

- Protocol-dependent modules
- Neighbor discovery and recovery
- Reliable Transport Protocol (RTP)
- Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL)



You should know the role of the EIGRP components, which are described in the following sections.

## Protocol-Dependent Modules

EIGRP uses different modules that independently support IP, Internetwork Packet Exchange (IPX), and AppleTalk routed protocols. These modules are the logical interface between DUAL and routing protocols such as IPX RIP, and AppleTalk Routing Table Maintenance Protocol (RTMP). The EIGRP module sends and receives packets but passes received information to DUAL, which makes routing decisions.

When configured to support IPX, EIGRP communicates with the IPX RIP and forwards the route information to DUAL to select the best paths. AppleTalk EIGRP automatically redistributes routes with AppleTalk RTMP to support AppleTalk networks. IPX and AppleTalk area not CCDA objectives and are not covered in this book.

## Neighbor Discovery and Recovery

EIGRP discovers and maintains information about its neighbors. It multicasts hello packets (224.0.0.10) every 5 seconds on most interfaces. The router builds a table with EIGRP neighbor information. The holdtime to maintain a neighbor is 3 times the hello time: 15 seconds. If the router does not receive a hello in 15 seconds, it removes the neighbor from the table. EIGRP multicasts hellos every 60 seconds on multipoint WAN interfaces (X.25, Frame Relay, ATM) with speeds less than a T-1 (1.544 Mbps), inclusive. The neighbor holdtime is 180 seconds on these types of interfaces. To summarize, hello/holdtime timers are 5/15 seconds for high-speed links and 60/180 seconds for low-speed links.

Example 10-5 shows an EIGRP neighbor database. The table lists the neighbor's IP address, the interface to reach it, the neighbor holdtime timer, and the uptime.

### **Example 10-5 EIGRP Neighbor Database**

Router# show ip eigrp neighbor								
IP-EIGRP neighbors for process 100								
H	Address	Interface	Hold (sec)	Uptime	SRTT (ms)	RTO Cnt	Q	Seq Num Type
1	172.17.1.1	Se0	11	00:11:27	16	200 0	0	2
0	172.17.2.1	Et0	12	00:16:11	22	200 0	0	3

## RTP

EIGRP uses RTP to manage EIGRP packets. RTP ensures the reliable delivery of route updates and uses sequence numbers to ensure ordered delivery. It sends update packets using multicast address 224.0.0.10. It acknowledges updates using unicast hello packets with no data.

## DUAL

EIGRP implements DUAL to select paths and guarantee freedom from routing loops. J. J. Garcia Luna-Aceves developed DUAL. It is mathematically proven to result in a loop-free

make convergence slower.

DUAL selects a best path and a second-best path to reach a destination. The best path selected by DUAL is the *successor*, and the second-best path (if available) is the *feasible successor*. The feasible distance is the lowest calculated metric of a path to reach the destination. The topology table in Example 10-6 shows the feasible distance. The example also shows two paths (Ethernet 0 and Ethernet 1) to reach 172.16.4.0/30. Because the paths have different metrics, DUAL chooses only one successor.

**Example 10-6 Feasible Distance as Shown in the EIGRP Topology Table**

```
Router8# show ip eigrp topology
IP-EIGRP Topology Table for AS(100)/ID(172.16.3.1)

Codes: P - Passive, A - Active, U - Update, Q - Query, R - Reply,
       r - reply Status, s - sia Status

P 172.16.4.0/30, 1 successors, FD is 2195456
    via 172.16.1.1 (2195456/2169856), Ethernet0
    via 172.16.5.1 (2376193/2348271), Ethernet1
P 172.16.1.0/24, 1 successors, FD is 281600
    via Connected, Ethernet0
```

The route entries in Example 10-6 are marked with a P for the passive state. A destination is in passive state when the router is not performing any recomputations for the entry. If the successor goes down and the route entry has feasible successors, the router does not need to perform any recomputations and does not go into active state.

DUAL places the route entry for a destination into active state if the successor goes down and there are no feasible successors. EIGRP routers send query packets to neighboring routers to find a feasible successor to the destination. A neighboring router can send a reply packet that indicates it has a feasible successor or a query packet. The query packet indicates that the neighboring router does not have a feasible successor and will participate in the recomputation. A route does not return to passive state until it has received a reply packet from each neighboring router. If the router does not receive all the replies before the “active-time” timer expires, DUAL declares the route as stuck in active (SIA). The default active timer is 3 minutes.

### EIGRP Timers

EIGRP sets updates only when necessary and sends them only to neighboring routers. There is no periodic update timer.

EIGRP uses hello packets to learn of neighboring routers. On high-speed networks, the default hello packet interval is 5 seconds. On multipoint networks with link speeds of T1 and slower, hello packets are unicast every 60 seconds.

The holdtime to maintain a neighbor adjacency is 3 times the hello time: 15 router does not receive a hello within the holdtime, it removes the neighbor

table. Hellos are multicast every 60 seconds on multipoint WAN interfaces (X.25, Frame Relay, ATM) with speeds less than 1.544 Mbps, inclusive. The neighbor holdtime is 180 seconds on these types of interfaces. To summarize, hello/holdtime timers are 5/15 seconds for high-speed links and 60/180 seconds for multipoint WAN links less than 1.544 Mbps, inclusive.

**Note:** EIGRP does not send updates using a broadcast address; instead, it sends them to the multicast address 224.0.0.10 (all EIGRP routers). It also can send an update using unicast packets if the neighbor command is used.

## EIGRP Metrics

EIGRP uses the same composite metric as IGRP, but the bandwidth (BW) term is multiplied by 256 for finer granularity. The composite metric is based on bandwidth, delay, load, and reliability. MTU is not an attribute for calculating the composite metric.

EIGRP calculates the composite metric with the following formula:

$$\text{EIGRP}_{\text{metric}} = \{k1 * \text{BW} + [(k2 * \text{BW})/(256 - \text{load})] + k3 * \text{delay}\} * \{k5/(\text{reliability} + k4)\}$$

In this formula, BW is the lowest interface bandwidth in the path, and delay is the sum of all outbound interface delays in the path. The router dynamically measures reliability and load. It expresses 100 percent reliability as 255/255. It expresses load as a fraction of 255. An interface with no load is represented as 1/255.

Bandwidth is the inverse minimum bandwidth (in kbps) of the path in bits per second scaled by a factor of  $256 * 10^7$ . The formula for bandwidth is

$$(256 * 10^7)/\text{BW}_{\text{min}}$$

The delay is the sum of the outgoing interface delays (in tens of microseconds) to the destination. A delay of all 1s (that is, a delay of hexadecimal FFFFFFFF) indicates that the network is unreachable. The formula for delay is

$$[\text{sum of delays}] * 256$$

Reliability is a value between 1 and 255. Cisco IOS routers display reliability as a fraction of 255. That is, 255/255 is 100 percent reliability, or a perfectly stable link; a value of 229/255 represents a 90 percent reliable link.

Load is a value between 1 and 255. A load of 255/255 indicates a completely saturated link. A load of 127/255 represents a 50 percent saturated link.

By default,  $k1 = k3 = 1$  and  $k2 = k4 = k5 = 0$ . EIGRP's default composite metric, adjusted for scaling factors, is

$$\text{EIGRP}_{\text{metric}} = 256 * \{ [10^7/\text{BW}_{\text{min}}] + [\text{sum\_of\_delays}] \}$$

$BW_{min}$  is in kbps, and *sum\_of\_delays* is in 10s of microseconds. The bandwidth and delay for an Ethernet interface are 10 Mbps and 1 ms, respectively.

The calculated EIGRP BW metric is

$$\begin{aligned} 256 * 10^7 / BW &= 256 * 10^7 / 10,000 \\ &= 256 * 10,000 \\ &= 256,000 \end{aligned}$$

The calculated EIGRP delay metric is

$$\begin{aligned} 256 * \text{sum of delay} &= 256 * 1 \text{ ms} \\ &= 256 * 100 * 10 \text{ microseconds} \\ &= 25,600 \text{ (in 10s of microseconds)} \end{aligned}$$

Table 10-7 shows some default values for bandwidth and delay.

**Table 10-7 Default EIGRP Values for Bandwidth and Delay**

Media Type	Delay	Bandwidth
Satellite	5120 (2 seconds)	5120 (500 Mbps)
Ethernet	25,600 (1 ms)	256,000 (10 Mbps)
T-1 (1.544 Mbps)	512,000 (20,000 ms)	1,657,856
64 kbps	512,000	40,000,000
56 kbps	512,000	45,714,176

The **metric weights** subcommand is used to change EIGRP metric computation. You can change the *k* values in the EIGRP composite metric formula to select which EIGRP metrics to use. The command to change the *k* values is the **metric weights *tos k1 k2 k3 k4 k5*** subcommand under **router eigrp *n***. The *tos* value is always 0. You set the other arguments to 1 or 0 to alter the composite metric. For example, if you want the EIGRP composite metric to use all the parameters, the command is as follows:

```
router eigrp n
metric weights 0 1 1 1 1 1
```

## EIGRP Packet Types

EIGRP uses five packet types:

- **Hello:** EIGRP uses hello packets in the discovery of neighbors. They are multicast to WAN links with 1.544 Mbps speeds or less).

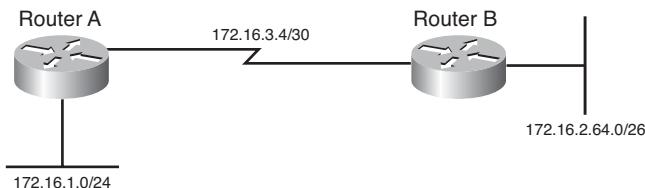
- **Acknowledgment:** An acknowledgment packet acknowledges the receipt of an update packet. It is a hello packet with no data. EIGRP sends acknowledgment packets to the unicast address of the sender of the update packet.
- **Update:** Update packets contain routing information for destinations. EIGRP unicasts update packets to newly discovered neighbors; otherwise, it multicasts update packets to 224.0.0.10 when a link or metric changes. Update packets are acknowledged to ensure reliable transmission.
- **Query:** EIGRP sends query packets to find feasible successors to a destination. Query packets are always multicast unless they are sent as a response; then they are unicast back to the originator.
- **Reply:** EIGRP sends reply packets to respond to query packets. Reply packets provide a feasible successor to the sender of the query. Reply packets are unicast to the sender of the query packet.

## EIGRP Design

When designing a network with EIGRP, remember that it supports VLSMs and network summarization. EIGRP allows for the summarization of routes in a hierarchical network. EIGRP is not limited to 16 hops as RIP is; therefore, the network diameter can exceed this limit. In fact, the EIGRP diameter can be 225 hops. The default diameter is 100. EIGRP can be used in the site-to-site WAN and IPsec virtual private networks (VPN). In the enterprise campus, EIGRP can be used in data centers, server distribution, building distribution, and the network core.

EIGRP does not broadcast its routing table periodically, so there is no large network overhead. You can use EIGRP for large networks; it is a potential routing protocol for the core of a large network. EIGRP further provides for route authentication.

As shown in Figure 10-12, when you use EIGRP, all segments can have different subnet masks.



**Figure 10-12 EIGRP Design**

EIGRP is suited for almost all enterprise environments, included LANs and WANs and is simple to design. The only caveat is that it is a Cisco proprietary routing protocol which cannot be used with other vendors. The use of EIGRP is preferred over RIP in all environments.



## EIGRP for IPv4 Summary

The characteristics of EIGRP for IPv4 networks follow:

- Hybrid routing protocol (a distance-vector protocol that has link-state protocol characteristics).
- Uses IP protocol number 88.
- Classless protocol (supports VLSMs).
- Default composite metric uses bandwidth and delay.
- You can factor load and reliability into the metric.
- Sends partial route updates only when there are changes.
- Supports MD5 authentication.
- Uses DUAL for loop prevention.
- Fast convergence.
- By default, equal-cost load balancing with equal metrics. Unequal-cost load sharing with the **variance** command.
- Administrative distance is 90 for EIGRP internal routes, 170 for EIGRP external routes, and 5 for EIGRP summary routes.
- High scalability; used in large networks.
- Multicasts updates to 224.0.0.10.
- Does not require a hierarchical physical topology.
- Provides routing for IPv4, plus legacy protocols such as AppleTalk and IPX.

## EIGRP for IPv6 (EIGRPv6) Networks

Cisco has developed EIGRP support for IPv6 networks to route IPv6 prefixes. EIGRP for IPv6 is configured and managed separately from EIGRP for IPv4; no network statements are used. EIGRP for IPv6 retains all the same characteristics (network discovery, DUAL, modules) and functions as EIGRP for IPv4. The major themes with EIGRP for IPv6 are as follows:

- Implements the protocol-independent modules.
- EIGRP neighbor discovery and recovery.
- Reliable transport.
- Implements the DUAL algorithm for a loop-free topology.
- Same metrics as EIGRP for IPv4 networks.
- Same timers as EIGRP for IPv4.
- Uses same concepts of feasible successors and feasible distance as EIGRP for IPv4.
- Uses the same packet types as EIGRP for IPv4.

- Managed and configured separately from EIGRP for IPv4.
- Requires a router ID before it can start running.
- Configured on interfaces. No network statements are used.

The difference is the use of IPv6 prefixes and the use of IPv6 multicast group FF02::A for EIGRP updates. Another difference is that EIGRP for IPv6 defaults to a shutdown state for the routing protocols and must be manually or explicitly enabled on an interface to become operational. Because EIGRP for IPv6 uses the same characteristics and functions as EIGRP for IPv4 covered in the previous section on EIGRP, they are not repeated here.

### EIGRP for IPv6 Design

Use EIGRP for IPv6 in large geographic IPv6 networks. EIGRP's diameter can scale up to 255 hops, but this network diameter is not recommended. EIGRP authentication can be used instead of IPv6 authentication.

EIGRP for IPv6 can be used in the site-to-site WAN and IPsec VPNs. In the enterprise campus, EIGRP can be used in data centers, server distribution, building distribution, and the network core.

EIGRP's DUAL algorithm provides for fast convergence and routing loop prevention. EIGRP does not broadcast its routing table periodically, so there is no large network overhead. The only constraint is that EIGRP for IPv6 is restricted to Cisco routers.

### EIGRP for IPv6 Summary

The characteristics of EIGRP for IPv6 are as follows:



- Uses the same characteristics and functions as EIGRP for IPv4.
- Hybrid routing protocol (a distance-vector protocol that has link-state protocol characteristics).
- Uses Next Header protocol 88.
- Routes IPv6 prefixes.
- Default composite metric uses bandwidth and delay.
- You can factor load and reliability into the metric.
- Sends partial route updates only when there are changes.
- Supports EIGRP MD5 authentication.
- Uses DUAL for loop prevention and fast convergence.
- By default, equal-cost load balancing. Unequal-cost load balancing with the **variance** command.
- Administrative distance is 90 for EIGRP internal routes, 170 for EIGRP external routes, and 5 for EIGRP summary routes.
- Uses IPv6 multicast FF02::A for EIGRP updates.
- High scalability; used in large networks.

The CCDA should understand EIGRP specific characteristics and benefits. Table 10-8 provides a summary for reference.

**Table 10-8 EIGRP Protocol Characteristics**

Characteristic	EIGRP Support
Distance vector or link state	Hybrid: distance-vector routing protocol with link-state characteristics
Convergence	Fast convergence with DUAL for a loop-free topology
Classless or classful	Classless routing protocol, supports VLSMs
Scalability	Highly scalable, supports large networks
Multiprotocol support	Supports IPv4, IPv6, plus legacy protocols such as IPX and AppleTalk
Multicast address for updates	224.0.0.10 for IPv4; FF02::A for IPv6

## References and Recommended Readings

Bruno, A. *CCIE Routing and Switching Exam Certification Guide*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2002.

RFC 1058, Routing Information Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2453, RIP Version 2, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2328, OSPF Version 2, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 1142, OSI IS-IS Intra-domain Routing Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

Bruno, A. *CCIE Routing and Switching Exam Certification Guide*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2002.

Doyle, J. *Routing TCP/IP*, Volume I. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 1998.

“Enhanced IGRP,” [www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito\\_doc/en\\_igrp.htm](http://www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito_doc/en_igrp.htm)

“Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol,” [www.cisco.com/en/US/tech/tk365/tk207/technologies\\_white\\_paper09186a0080094cb7.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/tech/tk365/tk207/technologies_white_paper09186a0080094cb7.shtml)

RFC 1058, Routing Information Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

“Implementing EIGRP for IPv6,” [www.cisco.com/en/US/partner/products/sw/iosswrel/ps5187/products\\_configuration\\_guide\\_chapter09186a00805fc867.html#wp1049317](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/partner/products/sw/iosswrel/ps5187/products_configuration_guide_chapter09186a00805fc867.html#wp1049317).

RFC 1723, RIP Version 2 - Carrying Additional Information, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2453, RIP Version 2, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2080, RIPng for IPv6, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 1321, The MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

“Routing Information Protocol,” [www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito\\_doc/rip.htm](http://www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito_doc/rip.htm).

“Tech Notes: How Does Unequal Cost Path Load Balancing (Variance) Work in IGRP and EIGRP?,” [www.cisco.com/warp/public/103/19.html](http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/103/19.html)

“IPv6 Deployment Strategies,” [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios/solutions\\_docs/ipv6/IPv6dswp.html#wp1028199](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios/solutions_docs/ipv6/IPv6dswp.html#wp1028199).

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 10-9 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 10-9** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
List	Routing protocol characteristics	348
Table 10-3	Distance-vector routing protocols versus link-state protocols	352
List	RIPv2 summary	364
List	RIPng summary	366
List	EIGRP components	367
List	EIGRP for IPv4 summary	373
List	EIGRP for IPv6 summary	374

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

administrative distance, BW, delay, distance vector, DUAL, EIGRP, EGP, hop count, IGP, link state, load, RIPng, RIPv2, VLSM

### Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

1. True or false: Link-state routing protocols send periodic routing updates.
2. True or false: RIPv2 was created to support IPv6.
3. True or false: The path with the lowest cost is preferred.

- 4.** True or false: A link with a reliability of 200/255 is preferred over a link with a reliability of 10/255.
- 5.** True or false: A link with a load of 200/255 is preferred over a link with a load of 10/255.
- 6.** On a router, both EIGRP and OSPF have a route to 198.168.10.0/24. Which route is injected into the routing table?
- 7.** On a router, both RIPv2 and IS-IS have a route to 198.168.10.0/24. Which route is injected into the routing table?
- 8.** On a router, EIGRP has a route to the destination with a prefix of /28, and OSPF has a route to the destination with a prefix of /30. Which is used to reach the destination?
- 9.** Which of the following is the best measurement of an interface's reliability and load?
  - a.** Reliability 255/255, load 1/255
  - b.** Reliability 255/255, load 255/255
  - c.** Reliability 1/255, load 1/255
  - d.** Reliability 1/255, load 255/255
- 10.** Which routing protocols permit an explicit hierarchical topology?
  - a.** BGP
  - b.** EIGRP
  - c.** IS-IS
  - d.** RIP
  - e.** OSPF
  - f.** B and D
  - g.** C and E
- 11.** What routing protocol parameter is concerned with how long a packet takes to travel from one end to another in the internetwork?
- 12.** For what routing protocol metric is the value of a Fast Ethernet interface calculated as  $10^8 / 10^8 = 1$ ?
- 13.** Match the loop-prevention technique (numerals) with its description (letters).
  - i. Split horizon
  - ii. Poison reverse
  - iii. Triggered updates
  - iv. Counting to infinity
  - a.** Sends an infinite metric from which the route was learned
  - b.** Drops a packet when the hop count limit is reached

- c. Suppresses a route announcement from which the route was learned
  - d. Sends a route update when a route changes
- 14.** True or false: Link-state routing protocols are more CPU and memory intensive than distance-vector routing protocols.
- 15.** Which routing protocols would you select if you needed to take advantage of VLSMs? (Select all that apply.)
- a. RIPv1
  - b. RIPv2
  - c. IGRP
  - d. EIGRP
  - e. OSPF
  - f. IS-IS
- 16.** Which standards-based protocol would you select in a large IPv6 network?
- a. RIPng
  - b. OSPFv3
  - c. EIGRP for IPv6
  - d. RIPv2
- 17.** Which of the following routing protocols are fast in converging when a change in the network occurs? (Select three.)
- a. RIPv1
  - b. RIPv2
  - c. EIGRP
  - d. OSPF
  - e. IS-IS
  - f. BGP
- 18.** If you are designing a large corporate network that cannot be designed in a hierarchy, which routing protocol would you recommend?
- a. RIPv1
  - b. RIPv2
  - c. EIGRP
  - d. OSPF
  - e. IS-IS
  - f. BGP

- 19.** Which routing protocols support VLSMs? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** RIPv1
  - b.** RIPv2
  - c.** EIGRP
  - d.** OSPF
  - e.** IS-IS
  - f.** All of the above
- 20.** You are connecting your network to an ISP. Which routing protocol would you use to exchange routes?
- a.** RIPv1
  - b.** RIPv2
  - c.** EIGRP
  - d.** OSPF
  - e.** IS-IS
  - f.** BGP
  - g.** All of the above
- 21.** Which routing protocol requires only Cisco routers on the network?
- a.** RIPv1
  - b.** RIPv2
  - c.** EIGRP
  - d.** OSPF
  - e.** IS-IS
  - f.** BGP
  - g.** All of the above
- 22.** Which routing protocol would be supported on an IPv6 network with multiple vendor routers?
- a.** RIPv2
  - b.** EIGRP for IPv6
  - c.** BGPv6
  - d.** OSPFv3
  - e.** RIPv3
  - f.** All of the above
  - g.** B and D

- 23.** Which of the following characteristics are implemented differently between distance-vector and link-state routing protocols?
- a. IP route tables
  - b. Route information distribution
  - c. Routing tables
  - d. Forwarding of traffic
  - e. Verification of route information sources
  - f. Administrative distance
- 24.** Which two are true for IGPs and EGPs?
- a. IGPs can be substituted with static routing.
  - b. IGPs are better at finding the fastest paths across the network.
  - c. IGPs must converge quickly, but EGPs do not.
  - d. IGPs are for inter-autonomous system connection, EGPs are used for intra-autonomous system connections.
- 25.** How is convergence related to routing information?
- a. The speed of convergence affects the frequency of routing updates
  - b. The faster the convergence, less consistent routing information is produced
  - c. The faster the convergence, more consistent routing information is produced
  - d. There is no relation between convergence and routing information consistency.
- 26.** What is a major advantage of classless structured network over a classless network?
- a. There is less overhead in classless networks
  - b. There is more overhead in classless networks.
  - c. Less IP addresses are used in classful networks.
  - d. Classless networks do not have advantages over classful networks.
- 27.** Which two EIGRP features make it appropriate for a company's network?
- a. Slow convergence
  - b. VLSM support
  - c. DUAL
  - d. Automatic summarization
  - e. Multivendor support

**28.** Match the protocol with the characteristic.

- i. EIGRP for IPv6
- ii. RIPv2
- iii. RIPng
- iv. EIGRP
  - a. Uses multicast FF02::9
  - b. Uses multicast 224.0.0.9
  - c. Uses multicast 224.0.0.10
  - d. Uses multicast FF02::A

**29.** A small network is experiencing excessive broadcast traffic and slow response times. The current routing protocol is RIPv1. What design changes would you recommend?

- a. Migrate to RIPv2.
- b. Migrate to RIPng.
- c. Migrate to EIGRP for IPv4.
- d. Migrate to EIGRPv6.

**30.** Match the EIGRP component with its description.

- i. RTP
- ii. DUAL
- iii. Protocol-dependent modules
- iv. Neighbor discovery
  - a. An interface between DUAL and IPX RIP, IGRP, and AppleTalk
  - b. Used to deliver EIGRP messages reliably
  - c. Builds an adjacency table
  - d. Guarantees a loop-free network

**31.** Match each EIGRP parameter with its description.

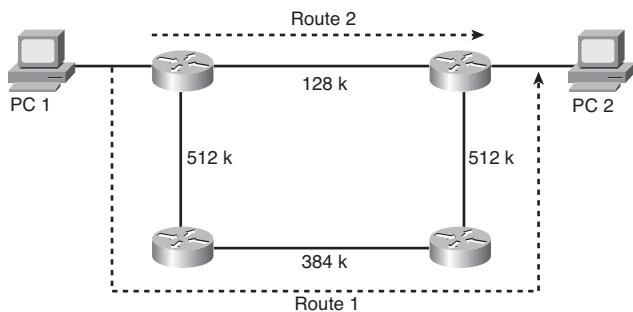
- i. Feasible distance
- ii. Successor
- iii. Feasible successor
- iv. Active state
  - a. The best path selected by DUAL.
  - b. The successor is down.

- c. The lowest calculated metric of a path to reach the destination.
  - d. The second-best path.
- 32.** On an IPv6 network, you have RIPng and EIGRP running. Both protocols have a route to destination 10.1.1.0/24. Which route gets injected into the routing table?
- a. The RIPng route
  - b. The EIGRP route
  - c. Both routes
  - d. Neither route, because of a route conflict.
- 33.** Which routing protocol should be used if the network requirements include fastest convergence time and unequal load balancing?
- a. Use BGP.
  - b. Use OSPF.
  - c. Use EIGRP.
  - d. Use RIPv2.
- 34.** Which two routing protocols converge most quickly?
- a. BGP
  - b. OSPF
  - c. EIGRP
  - d. RIPv2
- 35.** Which routing protocol represents each column of Table 10-10?

**Table 10-10** *Routing Protocol Characteristics*

Characteristic	A	B	C	D	E
Supports VLSM	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Convergence	Fast	Fast	Slow	Fast	Fast
Scalability	High	High	Low	High	High
Supports IPv6	Yes	No	No	No	Yes
Proprietary	Yes	No	No	Yes	No

Answer questions 36–38 based on Figure 10-13.

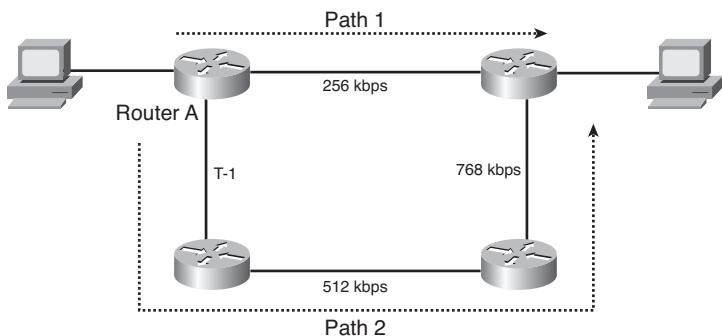


**Figure 10-13 Scenario Diagram**

- 36.** A user performs a Telnet from PC 1 to PC 2. If the metric used by the configured routing protocol is the bandwidth parameter, which route will the packets take?
- Route 1
  - Route 2
  - Neither, because the information is insufficient.
  - One packet takes Route 1, the following packet takes Route 2, and so on.
- 37.** A user performs a Telnet from PC 1 to PC 2. If the metric used by the configured routing protocol is hop count, which route will the packets take?
- Route 1
  - Route 2
  - Neither, because the information is insufficient.
  - One packet takes Route 1, the following packet takes Route 2, and so on.
- 38.** A user performs a Telnet from PC 1 to PC 2. If the metric used by the configured routing protocol is OSPF cost, which route will the packets take?
- Route 1
  - Route 2
  - Neither, because the information is insufficient.
  - One packet takes Route 1, the following packet takes Route 2, and so on.

Use Figure 10-14 to answer the remaining questions.

- 39.** By default, if RIPv2 is enabled on all routers, what path is taken?
- Path 1
  - Path 2
  - Unequal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2
  - Equal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2



**Figure 10-14 Path Selection**

40. By default, if RIPng is enabled on all routers, what path is taken?
  - a. Path 1
  - b. Path 2
  - c. Unequal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2
  - d. Equal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2
  
41. By default, if EIGRP is enabled on all routers, what path is taken?
  - a. Path 1
  - b. Path 2
  - c. Unequal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2
  - d. Equal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2
  
42. EIGRP is configured on the routers. If it is configured with the variance command, what path is taken?
  - a. Path 1
  - b. Path 2
  - c. Unequal load sharing Path 1 and Path 2
  - d. Equal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2
  
43. By default, if EIGRP for IPv6 is enabled on all routers, and this is an IPv6 network, what path is taken?
  - a. Path 1
  - b. Path 2
  - c. Unequal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2
  - d. Equal load balancing with Path 1 and Path 2



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- OSPFv2
- OSPFv3
- BGP
- Route Manipulation
- IP Multicast Review

## OSPF, BGP, Route Manipulation, and IP Multicast

---

This chapter reviews the characteristics and design issues of the Open Shortest Path First Version 2 (OSPFv2) routing protocol. For IPv6 networks, OSPFv3 is also covered. OSPFv2 and OSPFv3 are link-state routing protocols. They do not broadcast their route tables as distance-vector routing protocols do. Routers using link-state routing protocols send information about the status of their interfaces to all other routers in the area. Then they perform database computations to determine the shortest paths to each destination. This chapter also covers the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP), which is used to exchange routes between autonomous systems. It is most frequently used between enterprises and service providers. The “Route Manipulation” section covers route summarization, route filtering, and redistribution of route information between routing protocols. The CCDA should know where redistribution occurs when required by the network design. This chapter concludes by covering IP multicast protocols.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The 13-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 11-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 11-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
OSPFv2	1, 2, 3, 4, 6,
OSPFv3	7
BGP	8, 12
Route Manipulation	9, 13
Multicast	5, 10, 11

- 1.** Which protocol defines an Area Border Router (ABR)?
  - a.** Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP)
  - b.** Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
  - c.** Intermediate System-to- Intermediate System (IS-IS)
  - d.** Routing Information Protocol (RIP)
  
- 2.** Which routing protocols support variable-length subnet masks (VLSM)?
  - a.** EIGRP
  - b.** OSPF
  - c.** IS-IS
  - d.** A and B
  - e.** A and C
  - f.** B and C
  - g.** A, B, and C
  
- 3.** What is an ASBR?
  - a.** Area Border Router
  - b.** Autonomous System Boundary Router
  - c.** Auxiliary System Border Router
  - d.** Area System Border Router
  
- 4.** What is the OSPFv2 link-state advertisement (LSA) type for autonomous system external LSAs?
  - a.** Type 1
  - b.** Type 2
  - c.** Type 3
  - d.** Type 4
  - e.** Type 5
  
- 5.** What address do you use to multicast to the OSPFv2 designated router (DR)?
  - a.** 224.0.0.1
  - b.** 224.0.0.5
  - c.** 224.0.0.6
  - d.** 224.0.0.10

- 6.** To where are OSPF Type 1 LSAs flooded?
  - a.** The OSPF area
  - b.** The OSPF domain
  - c.** From the area to the OSPF backbone
  - d.** Through the virtual link
- 7.** What OSPFv3 LSA carries address prefixes?
  - a.** Network LSA
  - b.** Summary LSA
  - c.** Interarea-router LSA
  - d.** Intra-area-prefix LSA
- 8.** What protocol do you use to exchange IP routes between autonomous systems?
  - a.** IGMP
  - b.** eBGP
  - c.** EIGRP
  - d.** OSPF
- 9.** Where should routes be summarized?
  - a.** On the core routers
  - b.** On the distribution routers
  - c.** On the access routers
  - d.** None of the above
- 10.** What is IGMP?
  - a.** Interior Group Management Protocol
  - b.** Internet Group Management Protocol
  - c.** Interior Gateway Routing Protocol
  - d.** Interior Gateway Media Protocol
- 11.** How many bits are mapped from the Layer 3 IPv4 multicast address to a Layer 2 MAC address?
  - a.** 16 bits
  - b.** 23 bits
  - c.** 24 bits
  - d.** 32 bits

**12.** What is the administrative distance of eBGP routes?

- a.** 20
- b.** 100
- c.** 110
- d.** 200

**13.** What is CIDR?

- a.** Classful intradomain routing
- b.** Classful interior domain routing
- c.** Classless intradomain routing
- d.** Classless interdomain routing

---

## Foundation Topics

---

This chapter covers the link-state routing protocol OSPF. OSPF is an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) used within an autonomous system. OSPF is a popular standards-based protocol used in enterprises. OSPFv2 is used for IPv4 networks, and OSPFv3 is used for IPv6 networks. IS-IS is another link-state routing protocol, but it is not covered here because it is no longer a CCDA exam topic.

The “BGP” section covers the characteristics and design of BGP. eBGP exchanges routes between autonomous systems. eBGP is commonly used between enterprises and their service providers.

The section “Route Manipulation” covers how you use policy-based routing (PBR) to change packets’ destination addresses based on policies. This section also covers route summarization, filtering, and redistribution of route information between routing protocols.

The section “IP Multicast Review” covers multicast protocols such as Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), Cisco Group Management Protocol (CGMP), and Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM).

## OSPFv2

RFC 2328 defines OSPFv2, a link-state routing protocol that uses Dijkstra’s shortest path first (SPF) algorithm to calculate paths to destinations. OSPFv2 is used in IPv4 networks. OSPF was created for its use in large networks where RIP failed. OSPF improved the speed of convergence, provided for the use of variable-length subnet masks (VLSM), and improved the path calculation.

In OSPF, each router sends link-state advertisements (LSA) about itself and its links to all other routers in the area. Note that it does not send routing tables but link-state information about its interfaces. Then, each router individually calculates the best routes to the destination by running the SPF algorithm. Each OSPF router in an area maintains an identical database describing the area’s topology. The routing table at each router is individually constructed using the local copy of this database to construct a shortest-path tree.

OSPFv2 is a classless routing protocol that permits the use of VLSMs. With Cisco routers, OSPF also supports equal-cost multipath load balancing and neighbor authentication. OSPF uses multicast addresses to communicate between routers. OSPF uses IP protocol 89.

This section covers OSPF theory and design concepts. It discusses OSPF LSAs, area types, and router types. OSPF uses a two-layer hierarchy with a backbone area at the top and all other areas below. Routers send LSAs informing other routers of the status of their interfaces. The use of LSAs and the characteristics of OSPF areas are important concepts to understand for the exam.

### OSPFv2 Metric

$10^8 / \text{BW}$ , where BW is the bandwidth of the interface expressed as a full integer of bits per second (bps). If the result is smaller than 1, the cost is set to 1. A 10BASE-T (10 Mbps =  $10^7$  bps) interface has a cost of  $10^8 / 10^7 = 10$ . OSPF performs a summation of the costs to reach a destination; the lowest cost is the preferred path. Table 11-2 shows some sample interface metrics.

**Table 11-2** OSPF Interface Costs

Interface Type	OSPF Cost
10 Gigabit Ethernet	.01 => 1
Gigabit Ethernet	.1 => 1
OC-3 (155 Mbps)	.64516 => 1
Fast Ethernet	$10^8 / 10^8 = 1$
DS-3 (45 Mbps)	2
Ethernet	$10^8 / 10^7 = 10$
T1	64
512 kbps	195
256 kbps	390

The default reference bandwidth used to calculate OSPF costs is  $10^8$  (cost =  $10^8 / \text{BW}$ ). Notice that for technologies that support speeds greater than 100 Mbps, the default metric gets set to 1 without regard for the network's different capabilities (speed).

Because OSPF was developed prior to high-speed WAN and LAN technologies, the default metric for 100 Mbps was 1. Cisco provides a method to modify the default reference bandwidth. The cost metric can be modified on every interface.

## OSPFv2 Adjacencies and Hello Timers

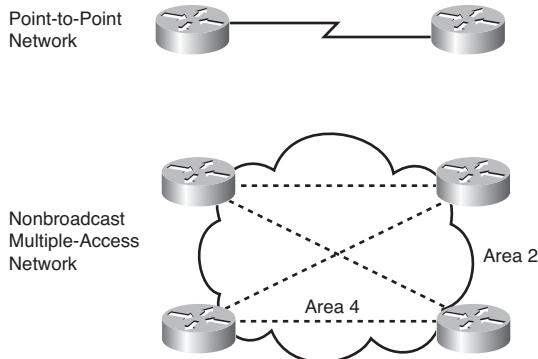
OSPF uses Hello packets for neighbor discovery. The default Hello interval is 10 seconds (30 seconds for nonbroadcast multiaccess [NBMA] networks). For point-to-point networks the Hello interval is 10 seconds. Hellos are multicast to 224.0.0.5 (ALLSPFRouters). Hello packets include such information as the router ID, area ID, authentication, and router priority.

After two routers exchange Hello packets and set two-way communication, they establish adjacencies.

Figure 11-1 shows a point-to-point network and an NBMA network.

For point-to-point networks, valid neighbors always become adjacent and communicate using multicast address 224.0.0.5. For broadcast (Ethernet) and NBMA networks (Frame

router (BDR) but not to each other. All routers reply to the DR and BDR using the multi-cast address 224.0.0.6. The section “OSPF DRs,” covers the DR concept.



**Figure 11-1** OSPF Networks

On OSPF point-to-multipoint nonbroadcast networks, it is necessary to configure the set of neighbors that are directly reachable over the point-to-multipoint network. Each neighbor is identified by its IP address on the point-to-multipoint network. Nonbroadcast point-to-multipoint networks do not elect DRs, so the DR eligibility of configured neighbors is undefined. OSPF communication in point-to-point networks use unicast or multi-cast addresses for neighbor communication.

OSPF virtual links unicast OSPF packets. Later, the section “Virtual Links” discusses virtual links.

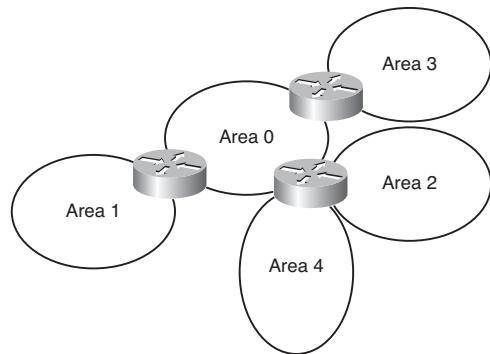
## OSPFv2 Areas

As a network grows, the initial flooding and database maintenance of LSAs can burden a router’s CPU. OSPF uses areas to reduce these effects. An area is a logical grouping of routers and links that divides the network. Routers share link-state information with only the routers in their areas. This setup reduces the size of the database and the cost of computing the SPF tree at each router.



Each area is assigned a 32-bit integer number. Area 0 (or 0.0.0.0) is reserved for the backbone area. Every OSPF network should have a backbone area. The backbone area must exist in any internetwork using OSPF over multiple areas as a routing protocol. As you can see in Figure 11-2, communication between Area 1 and Area 2 must flow through Area 0. This communication can be internal to a single router that has interfaces directly connected to Areas 0, 1, and 2.

Intra-area traffic is packets passed between routers in a single area.

**Figure 11-2** OSPF Areas

### OSPF Router Types



OSPF classifies participating routers based on their place and function in the area architecture. Figure 11-3 shows OSPF router types.

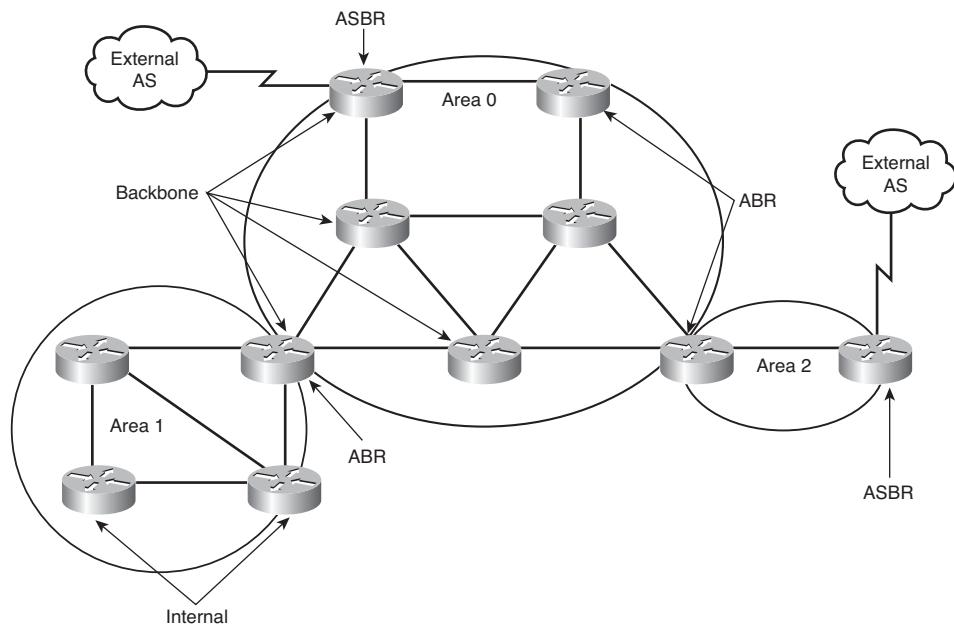
**Figure 11-3** OSPF Router Types

Table 11-3 explains each router type in Figure 11-3.

**Table 11-3** Major LSA Types

Type	Description
Internal router	Any router whose interfaces all belong to the same OSPF area. These routers keep only one link-state database.
ABR	Routers that are connected to more than one area. These routers maintain a link-state database for each area they belong to. These routers generate summary LSAs.
ASBR	Routers that inject external LSAs into the OSPF database (redistribution). These external routes are learned via either other routing protocols or static routes.
Backbone router	Routers with at least one interface attached to Area 0.

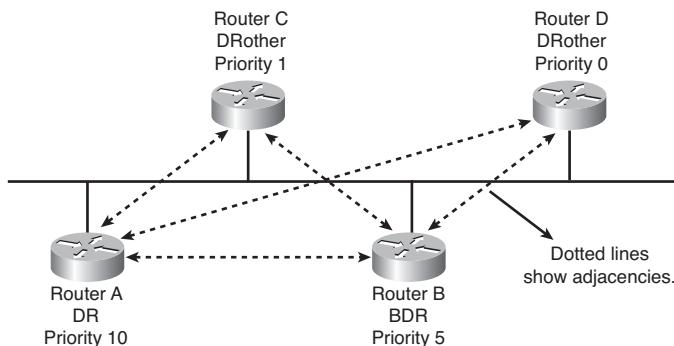
**Tip:** An OSPF router can be an ABR, an ASBR, and a backbone router at the same time. The router is an ABR if it has an interface on Area 0 and another interface in another area. The router is a backbone router if it has one or more interfaces in Area 0. The router is an ASBR if it redistributes external routes into the OSPF network.

## OSPF DRs

On multiaccess networks (such as Ethernet), some routers get selected as DRs. The purpose of the DR is to collect LSAs for the multiaccess network and to forward the LSA to all non-DR routers; this arrangement reduces the amount of LSA traffic generated. A router can be the DR for one multiaccess network and not the DR in another attached multiaccess network.

The DR also floods the network LSAs to the rest of the area. OSPF also selects a BDR; it takes over the function of the DR if the DR fails. Both the DR and BDR become adjacent to all routers in the multiaccess network. All routers that are not DR and BDR are sometimes called DRothers. These routers are only adjacent to the DR and BDR. The DR generates a Type 2 (network) LSA, which advertises all other routers on the multiaccess segment. This allows the DRothers routers to get the Type 1 LSAs. OSPF routers multicast LSAs only to adjacent routers. DRothers multicast packets to the DR and BDR using the multicast address 224.0.0.6 (ALLDRouters). The DR floods updates using ALLSPFRouters (224.0.0.5).

DR and BDR selection is based on an OSPF DR interface priority. The default value is 1, and the highest priority determines the DR. In a tie, OSPF uses the numerically highest router ID. The router ID is the IP address of the configured loopback interface. The router ID is the highest configured loopback address, or if the loopback is not configured, it's the highest physical address. Routers with a priority of 0 are not considered for DR/BDR selection. The dotted lines in Figure 11-4 show the adjacencies in the network.

**Figure 11-4 DRs**

In Figure 11-4, Router A is configured with a priority of 10, and Router B is configured with a priority of 5. Assuming that these routers are turned on simultaneously, Router A becomes the DR for the Ethernet network. Router C has a lower priority, becoming adjacent to Router A and Router B but not to Router D. Router D has a priority of 0 and therefore is not a candidate to become a DR or BDR.

If you introduce a new router to the network with a higher priority than that of the current DR and BDR, it does not become the selected DR unless both the DR and BDR fail. If the DR fails, the current BDR becomes the DR.

### LSA Types



OSPF routers generate LSAs that are flooded within an area, between areas, and throughout the entire autonomous system. OSPF defines different LSA types for participating routers, DRs, ABRs, and ASBRs. Understanding the LSA types can help you with other OSPF concepts. Table 11-4 describes the major LSA types. There are other LSA types that are not covered in this book.

**Table 11-4 Major LSA Types**

Type Code	Type	Description
1	Router LSA	Produced by every router. Includes all the router's links, interfaces, state of links, and cost. This LSA type is flooded within a single area.
2	Network LSA	Produced by every DR on every broadcast or NBMA network. It lists all the routers in the multiaccess network. This LSA type is contained within an area.
3	Summary LSA for ABRs	Produced by ABRs. It is sent into an area to advertise destinations outside the area.
4	Summary LSA for ASBRs	Originated by ABRs. Sent into an area by the ABR to advertise the ASBRs.

**Table 11-4 Major LSA Types**

Type Code	Type	Description
5	Autonomous system external LSA	Originated by ASBRs. Advertises destinations external to the OSPF autonomous system, flooded throughout the whole OSPF autonomous system.
7	Not-so-stubby area (NSSA) external LSA	Originated by ASBRs in an NSSA. It is not flooded throughout the OSPF autonomous system, only to the NSSA. Similar to the Type 5 LSA.

Type 1 and Type 2 LSAs are intra-area LSAs that have an area-flooding scope. Type 3 LSAs are a summary of destinations outside the local area but within the OSPF domain. Type 4 LSAs provide reachability about the ASBR. Type 3 and Type 4 LSAs are interarea LSAs that have an area-flooding scope. ABRs exchange Type 3 and Type 4 LSAs. Type 5 LSAs advertise external destinations. Type 5 LSAs have a domain-flooding scope, meaning they are flooded throughout all areas.

### Autonomous System External Path Types

The two types of autonomous system external paths are Type 1 (E1) and Type 2 (E2), and they are associated with Type 5 LSAs. ASBRs advertise external destinations whose cost can be just a redistribution metric (E2) or a redistribution metric plus the costs of each segment (E1) used to reach the ASBR.

By default, external routes are of Type 2, which is the metric (cost) used in the redistribution. Type 1 external routes have a metric that is the sum of the redistribution cost plus the cost of the path to reach the ASBR.

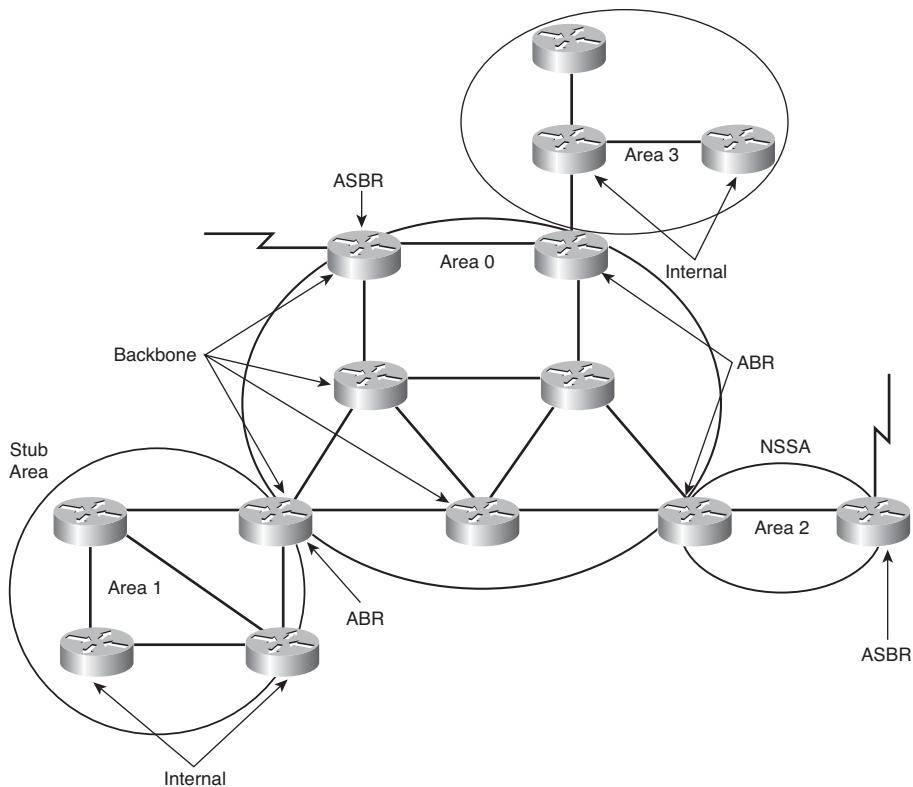
### OSPF Stub Area Types

OSPF provides support for stub areas. The concept is to reduce the number of interarea or external LSAs that get flooded into a stub area. RFC 2328 defines OSPF stub areas. RFC 1587 defines support for NSSAs. Cisco routers use totally stubby areas, such as Area 2, as shown in Figure 11-5.

### Stub Areas

Consider Area 1 in Figure 11-5. Its only path to the external networks is via the ABR through Area 0. All external routes are flooded to all areas in the OSPF autonomous system. You can configure an area as a stub area to prevent OSPF external LSAs (Type 5) from being flooded into that area. A single default route is injected into the stub area instead. If multiple ABRs exist in a stub area, all inject the default route. Traffic originating within the stub area routes to the closest ABR.

Note that network summary LSAs (Type 3) from other areas are still flooded into the stub Area 1.



**Figure 11-5** OSPF Stub Networks

### Totally Stubby Areas

Take the Area 1 in Figure 11-5 one step further. The only path for Area 1 to get to Area 0 and other areas is through the ABR. A totally stubby area does not flood network summary LSAs (Type 3). It stifles Type 4 LSAs, as well. Like regular stub areas, totally stubby areas do not flood Type 5 LSAs. They send just a single LSA for the default route. If multiple ABRs exist in a totally stubby area, all ABRs inject the default route. Traffic originating within the totally stubby area routes to the closest ABR.

### NSSAs

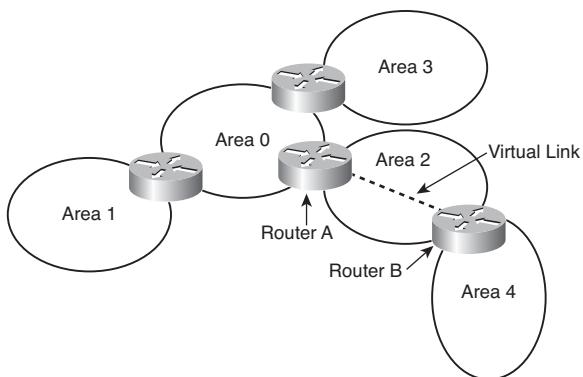
Notice that Area 2 in Figure 11-5 has an ASBR. If this area is configured as an NSSA, it generates the external LSAs (Type 7) into the OSPF system while retaining the characteristics of a stub area to the rest of the autonomous system. There are two options for the ABR. First, the ABR for Area 2 can translate the NSSA external LSAs (Type 7) to autonomous system external LSAs (Type 5) and flood the rest of the internetwork. Second, the ABR is not configured to convert the NSSA external LSAs to Type 5 external LSAs, and therefore the NSSA external LSAs remain within the NSSA.

There is also an NSSA totally stub area. The difference is that the default NSSA has no default route unless the ABR is explicitly configured to advertise one. The NSSA totally stub area does receive a default route.

### Virtual Links

OSPF requires that all areas be connected to a backbone router. Sometimes, WAN link provisioning or failures can prevent an OSPF area from being directly connected to a backbone router. You can use virtual links to temporarily connect (virtually) the area to the backbone.

As shown in Figure 11-6, Area 4 is not directly connected to the backbone. A virtual link is configured between Router A and Router B. The flow of the virtual link is unidirectional and must be configured in each router of the link. Area 2 becomes the transit area through which the virtual link is configured. Traffic between Areas 2 and 4 does not flow directly to Router B. Instead, the traffic must flow to Router A to reach Area 0 and then pass through the virtual link.



**Figure 11-6** OSPF Virtual Link

### OSPFv2 Router Authentication

OSPFv2 supports the authentication of routes using 64-bit clear text or cryptographic message digest 5 (MD5) authentication. Authentication can be performed on a per-area or per-interface basis. Plaintext authentication passwords do not need to be the same for the routers throughout the area, but they must be the same between neighbors.

MD5 authentication provides higher security than plaintext authentication. As with plaintext authentication, passwords do not have to be the same throughout an area, but they do need to be same between neighbors.

### OSPFv2 Summary

OSPFv2 is used in large enterprise IPv4 networks. The network topology must be hierar-

The characteristics of OSPFv2 follow:

- Link-state routing protocol.
- Uses IP protocol 89.
- Classless protocol (supports VLSMs and CIDR).
- Metric is cost (based on interface bandwidth by default).
- Fast convergence. Uses link-state updates and SPF calculation.
- Reduced bandwidth use. Sends partial route updates only when changes occur.
- Routes are labeled as intra-area, interarea, external Type 1, or external Type 2.
- Support for authentication.
- Uses the Dijkstra algorithm to calculate the SPF tree.
- Default administrative distance is 110.
- Uses multicast address 224.0.0.5 (ALLSPFRouters).
- Uses multicast address 224.0.0.6 (ALLDRouters).
- Good scalability. Recommended for large networks.

## OSPFv3

RFC 2740 describes OSPF Version 3 as a routing protocol for IPv6 networks. Note that OSPFv3 is for IPv6 networks only and that it is not backward compatible with OSPFv2 (used in IPv4). OSPF algorithms and mechanisms, such as flooding, router types, designated router election, areas, stub and NSSA, and SPF calculations, remain the same. Changes are made for OSPF to support IPv6 addresses, address hierarchy, and IPv6 for transport. OSPFv3 uses multicast group FF02::5 for all OSPF routers and FF02::6 for all designated routers.

### OSPFv3 Changes from OSPFv2

The following are the major changes for OSPFv3:

- **Version number is 3:** Obviously, this is a newer version of OSPF, and it runs over IPv6 only.
- **Support for IPv6 addressing:** New LSAs created to carry IPv6 addresses and prefixes.
- **Per-link processing:** OSPFv2 uses per-subnet processing. With link processing, routers in the same link can belong to multiple subnets.
- **Address semantics removed:** Addresses are removed from the router and network LSAs. These LSAs now provide topology information.
- **No authentication in the OSPFv3 protocol:** schemes inherited in IPv6.



- **New link LSA:** For local-link flooding scope.
- **New intra-area-prefix LSA:** Carries all the IPv6 prefix information. Similar to OSPFv2 router and network LSAs.
- **Identifying neighbors by router ID:** Neighbors are *always* identified by the router ID. This does not occur in OSPFv2 point-to-point and broadcast networks.
- **Options field changes:** Two Options bits, the R-bit and the V6-bit, have been added to the Options field for processing router LSAs during the SPF calculation.

**Note:** In OSPFv3, the router IDs, area IDs, and LSA link-state IDs remain at the size of 32 bits. Larger IPv6 addresses cannot be used.

## OSPFv3 Areas and Router Types

OSPFv3 retains the same structure and concepts as OSPFv2. The area topology, interfaces, neighbors, link-state database, and routing table remain the same. RFC 2740 does not define new area types or router types.

The OSPF areas shown in Figure 11-2 and the router types shown in Figure 11-3 remain the same. The router types in relation to the OSPF areas are

- **Internal router:** Any router whose interfaces all belong to the same OSPF area. These routers keep only one link-state database.
- **ABR:** Routers that are connected to more than one area, in which one area is Area 0. These routers maintain a link-state database for each area they belong to. These routers generate summary LSAs.
- **ASBR:** Routers that inject external LSAs into the OSPF database (redistribution). These external routes are learned via either other routing protocols or static routes.
- **Backbone router:** Routers with at least one interface attached to Area 0.

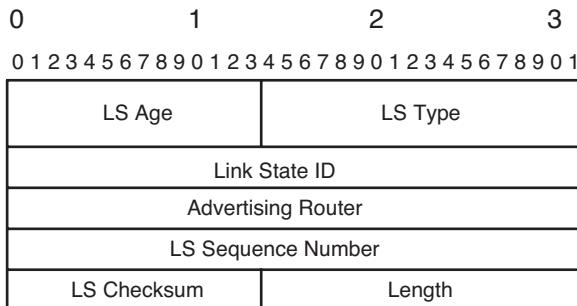
## OSPFv3 LSAs

OSPFv3 retains the LSA types used by OSPFv2 with some modifications and introduces two new LSAs: link LSA and intra-area-prefix.

All LSAs use a common 20-byte header that indicates the LS type, the advertising router, and the sequence number. Figure 11-7 shows the format of the LSA header.

The LS Age indicates the time in seconds since the LSA was generated.

The LS Type indicates the function performed by this LSA. This field includes a U bit and S2 and S1 bits. When the U bit is set to 0, the LSA is flooded only locally. When the U bit is set to 1, the LSA is stored and flooded. The S1 and S2 bits have the functions indicated in Table 11-5.

**Figure 11-7 LSA Header****Table 11-5 LSA Header S2 S1 Bits**

S2 S1	Flooding Scope
00	Link-local scope
01	Flood to all routers within the area
10	Flood to all routers within the autonomous system
11	Reserved

The Link State ID is used with the LS type and advertising router to identify the link-state database. The Advertising Router field contains the 32-bit router ID of the router that generated the LSA. The LS Sequence Number is used to detect old or duplicate LSAs. The LS Checksum is for error checking. The Length field indicates the length of the LSA, including the header.

Table 11-6 summarizes the nine LSAs that can be used in OSPF. Most LSAs retain the same function used in OSPFv2 for IPv4. Each OSPFv3 LSA is described in more detail following the table.

**Table 11-6 OSPFv3 LSA Types**

LSA Name	LS Type	Description
Router LSA	0x2001	State of router interfaces
Network LSA	0x2002	Generated by DR routers in broadcast or NBMA networks
Interarea-prefix LSA	0x2003	Routes to prefixes in other areas
Interarea-router LSA	0x2004	Routes to routers in other areas
Autonomous system external LSA	0x4005	Routes to networks external to the autonomous system
Group-membership LSA	0x2006	Networks that contain multicast groups



**Table 11-6** OSPFv3 LSA Types

LSA Name	LS Type	Description
NSSA Type 7 LSA	0x2007	Routers to networks external to the autonomous system, injected into the NSSA
Link LSA	0x0008	Link-local addresses and list IPv6 prefixes associated with the link
Intra-area-prefix LSA	0x2009	IPv6 prefixes associated with a router, a stub network, or an associated transit network segment

Router LSAs describe the cost and state of all the originating router's interfaces. These LSAs are flooded within the area only. Router LSAs are LS type 0x2001. No IPv6 prefixes are contained in this LSA.

Network LSAs are originated by DRs in broadcast or NBMA networks. They describe all routers attached to the link that are adjacent to the DR. These LSAs are flooded within the area only. The LS type is 0x2002. No IPv6 prefixes are contained in this LSA.

Interarea-prefix LSAs describe routes to IPv6 prefixes that belong to other areas. They are similar to OSPFv2 type 3 summary LSAs. The interarea-prefix LSA is originated by the ABR and has an LS type of 0x2003. It is also used to send the default route in stub areas. These LSAs are flooded within the area only.

Each interarea-router LSA describes a route to a router in another area. It is similar to OSPF Type 4 summary LSAs. It is originated by the ABR and has an LS type of 0x2004. These LSAs are flooded within the area only.

Autonomous system-external LSAs describe networks that are external to the autonomous system. These LSAs are originated by ASBRs, have an LS type of 0x4005, and therefore are flooded to all routers in the autonomous system.

The group-membership LSA describes the directly attached networks that contain members of a multicast group. This LSA is limited to the area and has an LS type of 0x2006. This LSA is described further in RFC 1584. This LSA is not supported in Cisco IOS software.

Type 7 LSAs describe networks that are external to the autonomous system, but they are flooded to the NSSA area only. NSSAs are covered in RFC 1587. This LSA is generated by the NSSA ASBR and has a type of 0x2007.

Link LSAs describe the router's link-local address and a list of IPv6 prefixes associated with the link. This LSA is flooded to the local link only and has a type of 0x0008.

The intra-area-prefix LSA is a new LSA type that is used to advertise IPv6 prefixes associated with a router, a stub network, or an associated transit network segment. This LSA contains information that used to be part of the router LSAs and network LSAs.

## OSPFv3 Summary

OSPFv3 is used in large enterprise IPv6 networks. The network topology must be hierarchical. OSPF is used in the enterprise campus building access, distribution, and core layers. OSPF is also used in the enterprise data center, WAN/MAN, and branch offices.

The characteristics of OSPFv3 follow:

- Link-state routing protocol for IPv6.
- Uses IPv6 Next Header 89.
- Metric is cost (based on interface bandwidth by default).
- Sends partial route updates only when changes occur.
- Routes are labeled as intra-area, interarea, external Type 1, or external Type 2.
- Uses IPv6 for authentication.
- Uses the Dijkstra algorithm to calculate the SPF tree.
- Default administrative distance is 110.
- Uses multicast address FF02::5 (ALLSPFRouters).
- Uses multicast address FF02::6 (ALLDRouters).
- Fast convergence, scalable, and reduces bandwidth.
- Recommended for large IPv6 networks.

## BGP

This section covers Border Gateway Protocol theory and design concepts. The current version of BGP, Version 4, is defined in RFC 1771 (March 1995). BGP is an interdomain routing protocol. What this means is that you use BGP to exchange routing information between autonomous systems. (It is used for inter-autonomous system routing.) The primary function of BGP is to provide and exchange network-reachability information between domains or autonomous systems. BGP is a path-vector protocol. BGP is best suited for setting routing policies between autonomous systems. In the enterprise campus architecture, BGP is used in the Internet connectivity module.

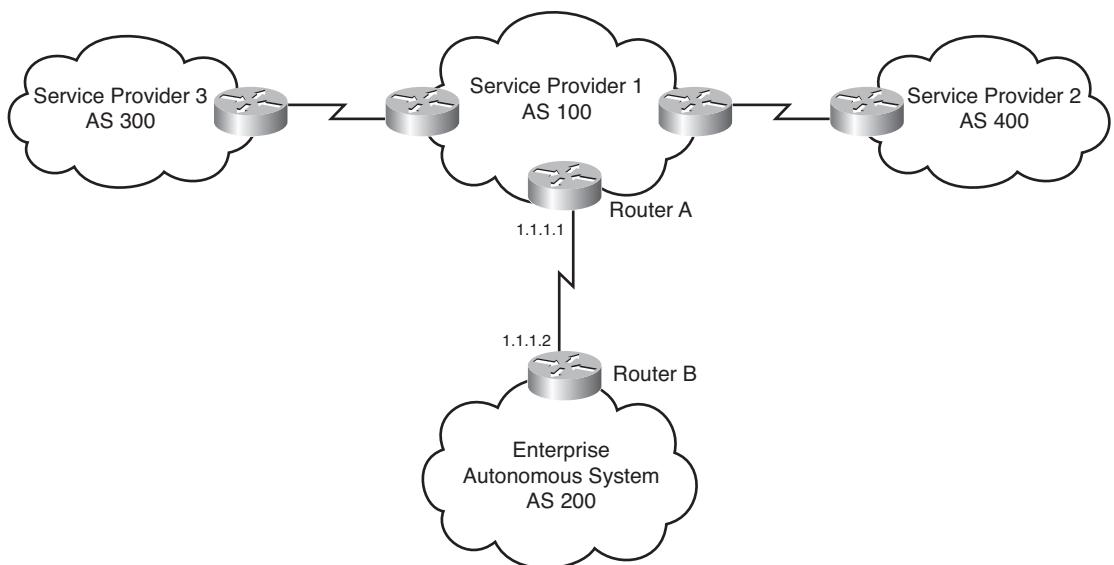
BGP is the de facto standard for routing between service providers on the Internet because of its rich features. You can also use it to exchange routes in large internal networks. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) reserved TCP port 179 to identify the BGP protocol. BGPv4 was created to provide CIDR, a feature that was not present in the earlier versions of BGP. BGP is a path-vector routing protocol; it is neither a distance-vector nor link-state routing protocol.

**Note:** RFC 1519 describes CIDR, which provides the capability to forward packets based on IP prefixes only, with no concern for IP address class boundaries. CIDR was created as

summarization of IP addresses across network class boundaries. The early 1990s saw an increase in the growth of Internet routing tables and a reduction in Class B address space. CIDR provides a way for service providers to assign address blocks smaller than a Class B network but larger than a Class C network.

## BGP Neighbors

BGP is usually configured between two directly connected routers that belong to different autonomous systems. Each autonomous system is under different technical administration. BGP is frequently used to connect the enterprise to service providers and to interconnect service providers, as shown in Figure 11-8. The routing protocol within the enterprise could be any Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP). Common IGP choices include RIPv2, EIGRP, OSPF, IS-IS. BGPv4 is the only deployed Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP).



**Figure 11-8 BGP Neighbors**

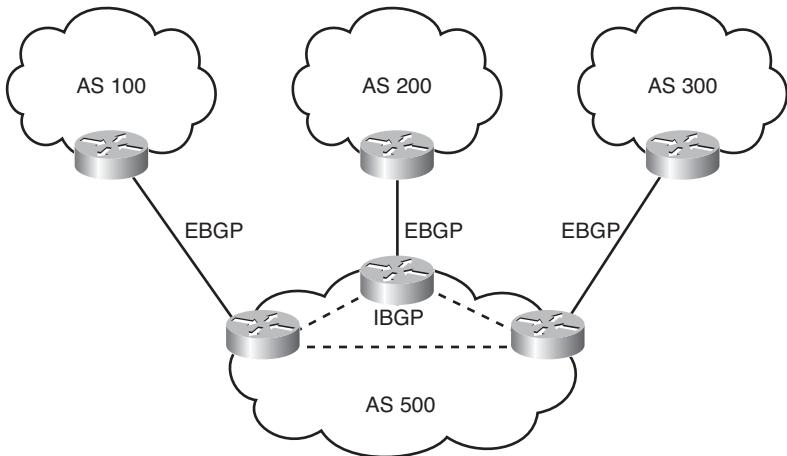
BGP is an interdomain routing protocol that allows BGP speakers residing in different autonomous systems to exchange routing (NLRI) information. An autonomous system is a collection of devices under common administration. BGP autonomous systems range from 1 through 65,535. Autonomous system numbers (ASN) 1 through 64,511 are considered public ASNs. These are allocated by IANA to Regional Internet Registries (RIR). Entities wanting to receive an ASN must complete the application process of their local RIR and be approved before being assigned an ASN. ASNs 65,512 through 65,535 are considered private ASNs. These ASNs can be used by any organization, but, addresses cannot be used on the Internet.

Before two BGP routers can exchange routing updates, they must become established neighbors. After BGP routers establish a TCP connection, exchange information, and accept the information, they become established neighbors and start exchanging routing updates. If the neighbors do not reach an established state, they do not exchange BGP updates. The information exchanged before the neighbors are established includes the BGP version number, ASN, BGP router ID, and BGP capabilities.

### eBGP



*External Border Gateway Protocol* is the term used to describe BGP peering between neighbors in different autonomous systems. As required by RFC 1771, the eBGP peers share a common subnet (although Cisco does allow some flexibility to avoid doing so). In Figure 11-9, all routers speak eBGP with routers in other autonomous systems. Within autonomous system 500, the routers communicate using iBGP, which is covered next.



**Figure 11-9 eBGP Used Between Autonomous Systems**

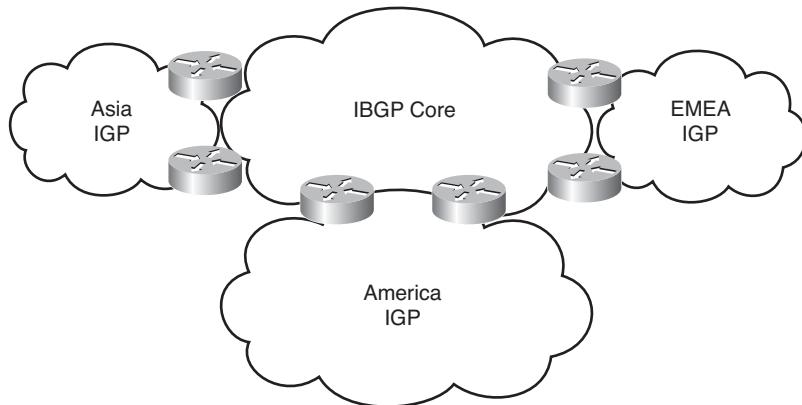
### iBGP



*Internal Border Gateway Protocol* is the term used to describe the peering between BGP neighbors in the same autonomous system. iBGP is used primarily in transit autonomous systems. Transit autonomous systems forward traffic from one external autonomous system to another external autonomous system. If transit autonomous systems did not use iBGP, the eBGP-learned routes would have to be redistributed into an IGP and then redistributed into the BGP process in another eBGP router. Normally, the number of eBGP routes is too large for an IGP to handle.

iBGP provides a better way to control the routes within the transit autonomous system. With iBGP, the external route information (attributes) is forwarded. The various IGPs system paths, between eBGP routers.

Another use of iBGP is in large corporations where the IGP networks are in smaller independent routing domains along organizational or geographic boundaries. In Figure 11-10, a company has decided to use three independent IGPs: one for the Americas; another for Asia and Australia; and another for Europe, the Middle East, and Africa. Routes are redistributed into an iBGP core.



**Figure 11-10** iBGP in a Large Corporation

**Other Uses of iBGP** The CCDA should know at a high level these other uses for iBGP:

- **Applying policies in the internal autonomous system with the help of BGP path attributes:** BGP path attributes are covered in a later section.
- **QoS policy propagation on BGP (QPPB):** QPPB uses iBGP to spread common QoS parameters from one router to other routers in the network. It classifies packets using IP precedence bits based on BGP community lists, BGP autonomous system paths, and access lists. After packets are classified, QoS features can enforce policies.
- **Multiprotocol BGP peering of Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) virtual private networks (VPN):** The multiprotocol version of BGP is used to carry MPLS VPN information between all provider edge (PE) routers within a VPN community. MP-BGP is defined in RFC 2858. It introduces a new BGP capabilities advertisement to determine whether a BGP peer supports MP-BGP. It introduces optional nontransitive attributes used to advertise feasible routes to a peer, network layer reachability information, and other characteristics. It defines an address family identifier (AFI) of 2 to identify IPv6, which is used to convey an IPv4 address as the BGP next hop for the advertised IPv6 prefixes.

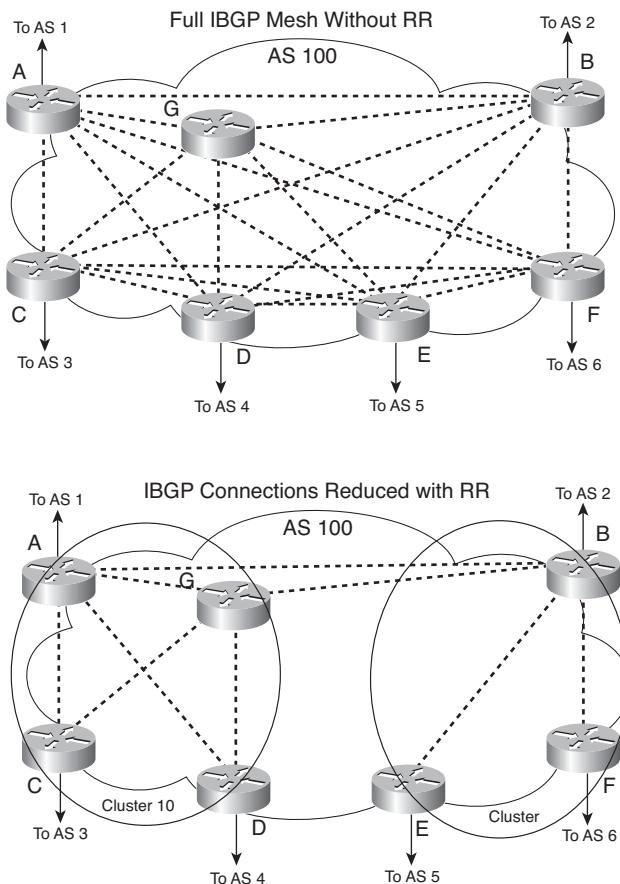
### Route Reflectors

iBGP requires that all routers be configured to establish a logical connection with all other iBGP routers. The logical connection is a TCP link between all iBGP-speaking routers. The

meshed peers can become very large. Network administrators can use route reflectors to

reduce the number of required mesh links between iBGP peers. Some routers are selected to become the route reflectors to serve several other routers that act as route-reflector clients. Route reflectors allow a router to advertise or reflect routes to clients. The route reflector and its clients form a cluster. All client routers in the cluster peer with the route reflectors within the cluster. The route reflectors also peer with all other route reflectors in the internetwork. A cluster can have more than one route reflector.

In Figure 11-11, without route reflectors, all iBGP routers are configured in an iBGP mesh, as required by the protocol. When Routers A and G become route reflectors, they peer with Routers C and D; Router B becomes a route reflector for Routers E and F. Routers A, B, and G peer among each other.



**Figure 11-11** Route Reflectors

**Note:** The combination of the route reflector and its clients is called a cluster. In Figure 11-11, Routers A, G, C, and D form a cluster. Routers B, E, and F form another cluster.

Routers A and G are configured to peer with each other and with Routers B, C, and D. The configuration of Routers C and D is different from the rest; they are configured to peer with Routers A and G only. All route reflectors in the same cluster must have the same cluster ID number.

Router B is the route reflector for the second cluster. Router B peers with Routers A and G and with Routers E and F in its cluster. Routers E and F are route-reflector clients and peer only with Router B. If Router B goes down, the cluster on the right goes down because no second route reflector is configured.

## Confederations

Another method to reduce the iBGP mesh within an autonomous system is BGP confederations. With confederations, the autonomous system is divided into smaller, sub autonomous systems, and the whole group is assigned a confederation ID. The sub-ASNs or identifiers are not advertised to the Internet but are contained within the iBGP networks. The routers within each private autonomous system are configured with the full iBGP mesh. Each sub-autonomous system is configured with eBGP to communicate with other sub-autonomous systems in the confederation. External autonomous systems see only the ASN of the confederation, and this number is configured with the BGP confederation identifier.

In Figure 11-12, a confederation divides the autonomous system into two.

Routers A, B, and G are configured for eBGP between the sub autonomous systems. You configure the **bgp confederation identifier** command on all routers. The confederation identifier number is the same for all routers in the network. You use the **bgp confederation peers** command to identify the ASN of other sub-autonomous systems in the confederation. Because Routers A and G are in autonomous system 10, the peer confederation to Router B is autonomous system 20. Router B is in autonomous system 20, and its peer confederation to Routers A and G is autonomous system 10. Routers C and D are part of autonomous system 10 and peer with each other and with Routers A and G. Routers E and F are part of autonomous system 20 and peer with each other and with Router B.

## BGP Administrative Distance

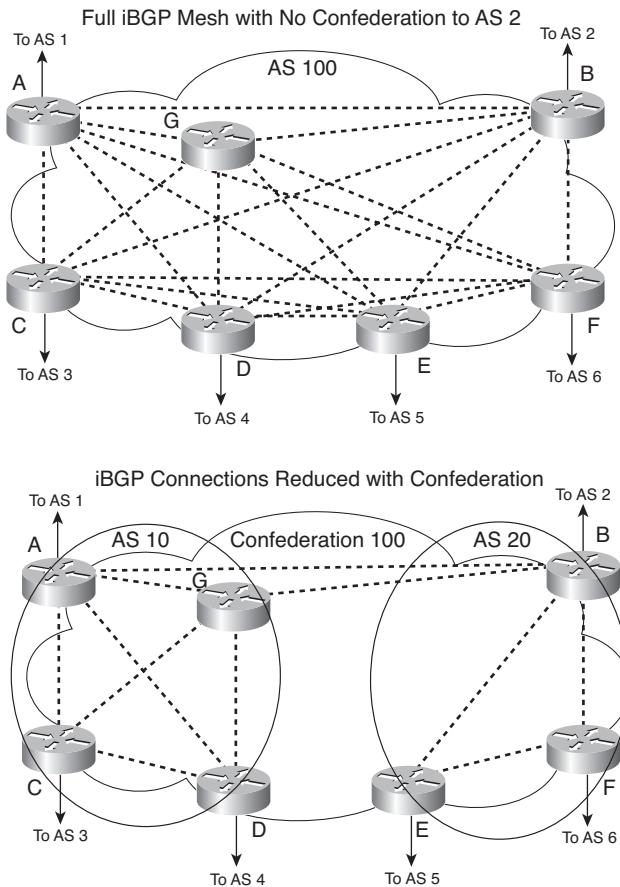
The Cisco IOS software assigns an administrative distance to eBGP and iBGP routes, as it does with other routing protocols. For the same prefix, the route with the lowest administrative distance is selected for inclusion in the IP forwarding table. For BGP, the administrative distances are

- **eBGP routes:** 20
- **iBGP routes:** 200



## BGP Attributes, Weight, and the BGP Decision Process

The BGP protocol uses path attributes to select the best path to a destination. This sub-BGP decision process.



**Figure 11-12** *BGP Confederations*

### BGP Path Attributes

BGP uses several attributes for the path-selection process. BGP uses path attributes to communicate routing policies. BGP path attributes include next hop, local preference, autonomous system path, origin, multi-exit discriminator (MED), atomic aggregate, and aggregator. Of these, the autonomous system path is one of the most important attributes: It lists the number of autonomous system paths to reach a destination network.

BGP attributes can be categorized as *well known* or *optional*. Well-known attributes are recognized by all BGP implementations. Optional attributes do not have to be supported by the BGP process.

Well-known attributes can be further subcategorized as *mandatory* or *discretionary*. Mandatory attributes are always included in BGP update messages. Discretionary attributes might or might not be included in the BGP update message.

Optional attributes can be further subcategorized as *transitive* or *nontransitive*. Transitive attributes must advertise the route with transitive attributes to its peers even if it does not support

the attribute locally. If the path attribute is nontransitive, the router does not have to advertise the route to its peers.

The following subsections cover each attribute category.

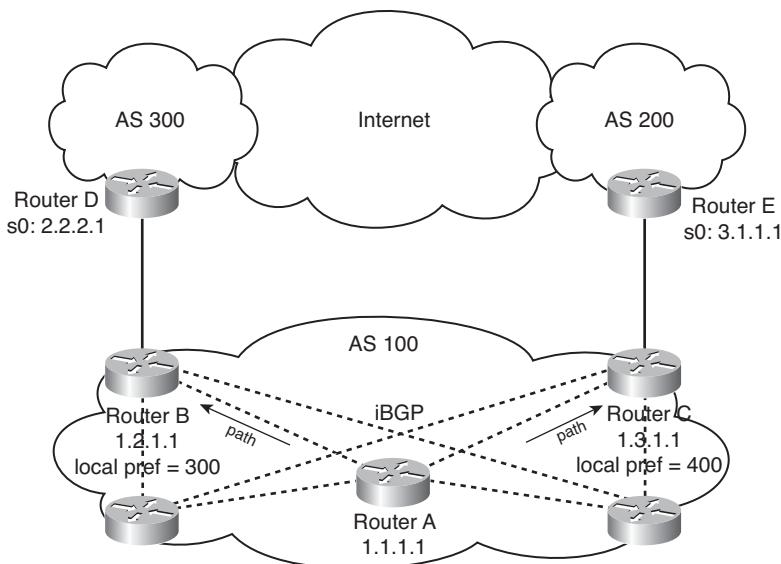
### Next-Hop Attribute

The next-hop attribute is the IP address of the next IP hop that will be used to reach the destination. The next-hop attribute is a well-known mandatory attribute.

### Local Preference Attribute

The local preference attribute indicates which path to use to exit the autonomous system. It is a well-known discretionary attribute used between iBGP peers and is not passed on to external BGP peers. In Cisco IOS software, the default local preference is 100. The higher local preference is preferred.

The default local preference is configured on the BGP router with an external path; it then advertises its local preference to internal iBGP peers. Figure 11-13 shows an example of the local preference attribute where Routers B and C are configured with different local preference values. Router A and other iBGP routers then receive routes from both Router B and Router C. Router A prefers using Router C to route Internet packets because it has a higher local preference (400) than Router B (300). The arrows represent the paths taken to go out of the autonomous system.



**Figure 11-13 BGP Local Preference**

### Origin Attribute

Origin is a well-known mandatory attribute that defines the source of the route. Do not confuse the origin with comparing whether the route is (eBGP) or

internal (iBGP). The origin attribute is received from the source BGP router. There are three types:

- **IGP:** Indicated by an *i* in the BGP table. Present when the route is learned by way of the network statement.
- **EGP:** Indicated by an *e* in the BGP table. Learned from EGP.
- **Incomplete:** Indicated by a question mark (?) in the BGP table. Learned from redistribution of the route.

In terms of choosing a route based on origin, BGP prefers routes that have been verified by an IGP over routes that have been learned from EGP peers, and BGP prefers routes learned from eBGP peers over incomplete paths.

### Autonomous System Path Attribute

The autonomous system path is a well-known mandatory attribute that contains a list of ASNs in the path to the destination. Each autonomous system prepends its own ASN to the autonomous system path. The autonomous system path describes all the autonomous systems a packet would have to travel to reach the destination IP network. It is used to ensure that the path is loop free. When the autonomous system path attribute is used to select a path, the route with the fewest autonomous system hops is preferred. In the case of a tie, other attributes, such as MED, break the tie. Example 12-1 shows the autonomous system path for network 200.50.32.0/19. To reach the destination, a packet must pass autonomous systems 3561, 7004, and 7418. The command `show ip bgp 200.50.32.0` displays the autonomous system path information.

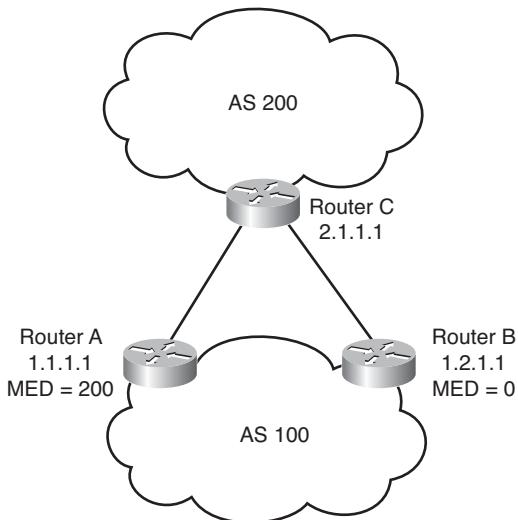
#### **Example 12-1 Autonomous System Path Attribute**

```
Router# show ip bgp 200.50.32.0
BGP routing table entry for 200.50.32.0/19, version 93313535
Paths: (1 available, best #1)
      Not advertised to any peer
      3561 7004 7418
      206.24.241.181 (metric 490201) from 165.117.1.219 (165.117.1.219)
          Origin IGP, metric 4294967294, localpref 100, valid, internal, best
          Community: 2548:182 2548:337 2548:666 3706:153
```

### MED Attribute

The MED attribute, also known as a metric, tells an external BGP peer the preferred path into the autonomous system when multiple paths into the same autonomous system exist. In other words, MED influences which one of many paths a neighboring autonomous system uses to reach destinations within the autonomous system. It is an optional nontransitive attribute carried in eBGP updates. The MED attribute is not used with iBGP peers. The lowest MED value is preferred, and the default value is 0. Paths received with no MED are assigned a MED of 0. The MED is carried into an autonomous system and not leave the autonomous system.

Consider the diagram shown in Figure 11-14. With all attributes considered equal, consider that Router C selects Router A as its best path into autonomous system 100 based on Router A's lower router ID (RID). If Router A is configured with a MED of 200, that will make Router C select Router B as the best path to autonomous system 100. No additional configuration is required on Router B because the default MED is 0.



**Figure 11-14 MED Attribute**

### Community Attribute

Although it is not an attribute used in the routing-decision process, the community attribute groups routes and applies policies or decisions (accept, prefer) to those routes. It is a group of destinations that share some common property. The community attribute is an optional transitive attribute of variable length.

### Atomic Aggregate and Aggregator Attributes

The atomic aggregate attribute informs BGP peers that the local router used a less specific (aggregated) route to a destination without using a more specific route.

If a BGP router selects a less-specific route when a more-specific route is available, it must attach the atomic aggregate attribute when propagating the route. The atomic aggregate attribute lets the BGP peers know that the BGP router used an aggregated route. A more-specific route must be in the advertising router's BGP table before it propagates an aggregate route.

When the atomic aggregate attribute is used, the BGP speaker has the option to send the aggregator attribute. The aggregator attribute includes the ASN and the IP address of the router that originated the aggregated route. In Cisco routers, the IP address used is the

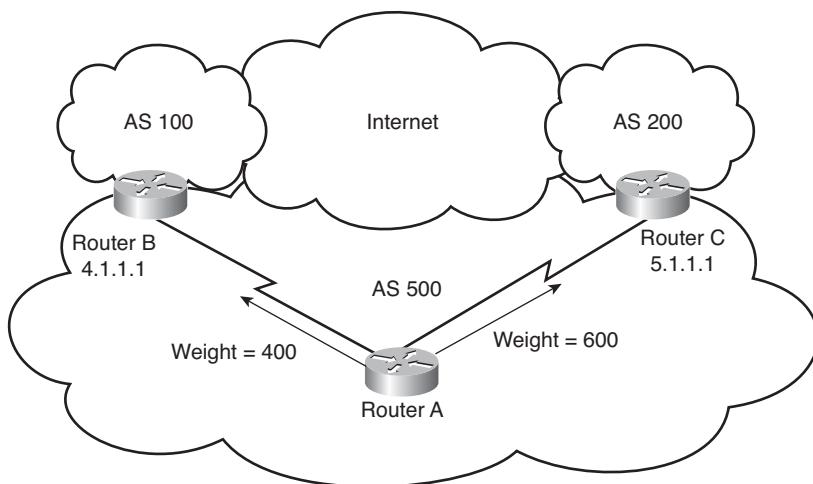
discretionary attribute, and aggregator is an optional transitive attribute.

## Weight

Weight is assigned locally on a router to specify a preferred path if multiple paths exist out of a router for a destination. Weights can be applied to individual routes or to all routes received from a peer. Weight is specific to Cisco routers and is not propagated to other routers. The weight value ranges from 0 to 65,535. Routes with a higher weight are preferred when multiple routes exist to a destination. Routes that are originated by the local router have a default weight of 32,768.

You can use weight rather than local preference to influence the selected path to external BGP peers. The difference is that weight is configured locally and is not exchanged in BGP updates. On the other hand, the local preference attribute is exchanged between iBGP peers and is configured at the gateway router.

When the same destinations are advertised from both Router B and Router C, as shown in Figure 11-15, Router A prefers the routes from Router C over Router B because the routes received from Router C have a larger weight (600) locally assigned.



**Figure 11-15 BGP Weight**

## BGP Decision Process

By default, BGP selects only a single path to reach a specific destination (unless you specify maximum paths). The Cisco implementation of BGP uses a simple decision process. When the path is selected, BGP puts the selected path in its routing table and propagates the path to its neighbors.

To select the best path to a destination, Cisco routers running BGP use the following algorithm in the following order:

1. If the specified next hop is inaccessible, drop the path.
2. drop the path.

3. Prefer the path with the largest weight. (This step is Cisco specific, and weight is localized to the router.)
4. Prefer the path with the largest local preference. iBGP uses this path only to reach the preferred external BGP router.
5. Prefer the path that was locally originated via a **network** or **aggregate** BGP subcommand or through redistribution from an IGP. Local paths sourced by **network** or **redistribute** commands are preferred over local aggregates sourced by the **aggregate-address** command. (This step is Cisco specific.)
6. If no route was originated, prefer the route that has the shortest autonomous system path. (This step is Cisco specific.)
7. If all paths have the same autonomous system path length, prefer the path with the lowest origin type. Paths with an origin type of IGP (lower) are preferred over paths originated from an EGP such as BGP, and EGP origin is preferred over a route with an incomplete origin. (This step is Cisco specific.)
8. If the origin codes are the same, prefer the path with the lowest MED attribute. An eBGP peer uses this attribute to select a best path to the autonomous system. (This step is a tiebreaker, as described in the RFC that defines the BGP.)
9. If the paths have the same MED, prefer the external (eBGP) path over the internal (iBGP) path. (This step is Cisco specific.)
10. If the paths are still the same, prefer the path through the closest IGP neighbor (best IGP metric). (This step is a tiebreaker, as described in the RFC that defines the BGP.)
11. Prefer the path with the BGP neighbor with the lowest router ID. (The RFC that defines the BGP describes the router ID.)

After BGP decides on a best path, it marks it with a > sign in the **show ip bgp** table and adds it to the IP routing table.

## BGP Summary

The characteristics of BGP follow:

- BGP is an Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP) used in routing in the Internet. It is an interdomain routing protocol.
- BGP is a path-vector routing protocol suited for strategic routing policies.
- It uses TCP port 179 to establish connections with neighbors.
- BGPv4 implements CIDR.
- eBGP is used for external neighbors. It is used between different autonomous systems.
- iBGP is used for internal neighbors. It is used within an autonomous system.
- BGP uses several attributes in the routing-decision algorithm.
- It uses confederations and route reflectors to reduce BGP peering overhead.
- bound traffic.

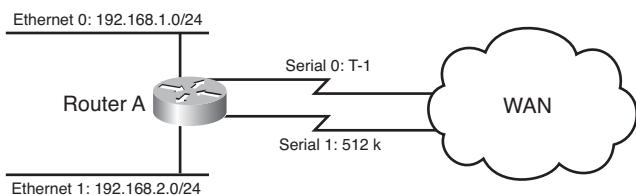
- Weight is used to influence the path of outbound traffic from a single router, configured locally.

## Route Manipulation

This section covers policy-based routing (PBR), route summarization, route filtering, and route redistribution. You can use PBR to modify the next hop of packets from what is selected by the routing protocol. PBR is useful when the traffic engineering of paths is required. Routes are summarized to reduce the size of routing tables and at network boundaries. Redistribution between routing protocols is required to inject route information from one routing protocol to another. Route filtering is used to control network addresses that get redistributed or control access to certain parts of the network. The CCDA must understand the issues with the redistribution of routes.

### PBR

You can use PBR to modify the next-hop address of packets or to mark packets to receive differential service. Routing is based on destination addresses; routers look at the routing table to determine the next-hop IP address based on a destination lookup. PBR is commonly used to modify the next-hop IP address based on the source address. You can also use PBR to mark the IP precedence bits in outbound IP packets so that you can apply QoS policies. In Figure 11-16, Router A exchanges routing updates with routers in the WAN. The routing protocol might select Serial 0 as the preferred path for all traffic because of the higher bandwidth. The company might have business-critical systems that use the T1 but does not want systems on Ethernet 1 to affect WAN performance. You can configure PBR on Router A to force traffic from Ethernet 1 out on Serial 1.



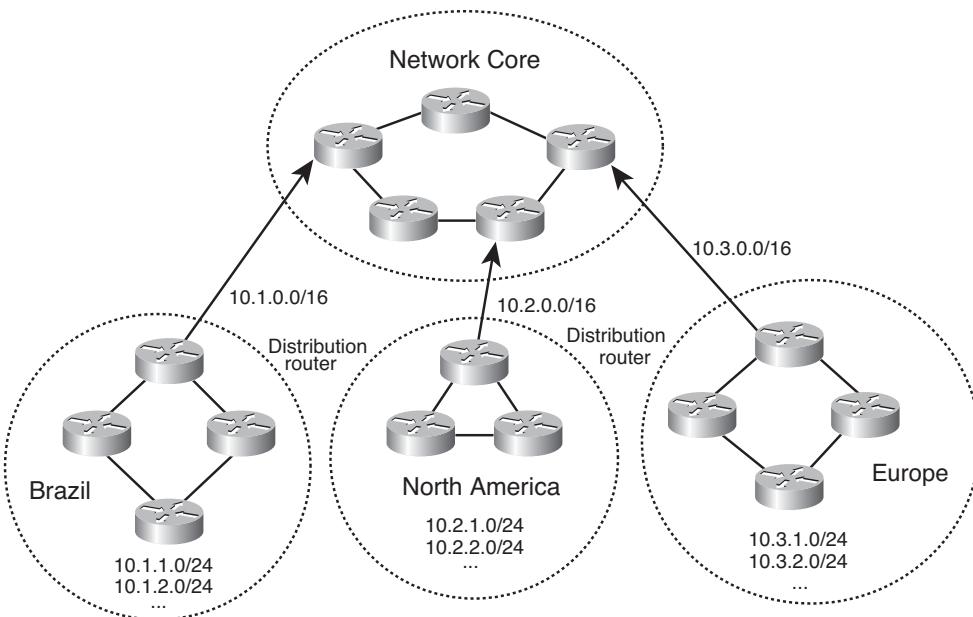
**Figure 11-16** Policy-Based Routing

### Route Summarization

Large networks can grow quickly from 500 routes to 1000, to 2000, and higher. Network IP addresses should be allocated to allow for route summarization. Route summarization reduces the amount of route traffic on the network and unnecessary route computation. Route summarization also allows the network to scale as a company grows.

The recommended location for route summarization is to summarize at the distribution layer of the network topology. Figure 11-17 shows a hierarchical network. It has a network core, regional distribution routers, and access routes for sites.





**Figure 11-17** Route Summarization

Routers in Europe need to know only the summarized route to get to Brazil and North America, and vice versa. Again, a design best practice is to summarize at the distribution toward the core. The core needs to know only the summarized route of the regional areas.

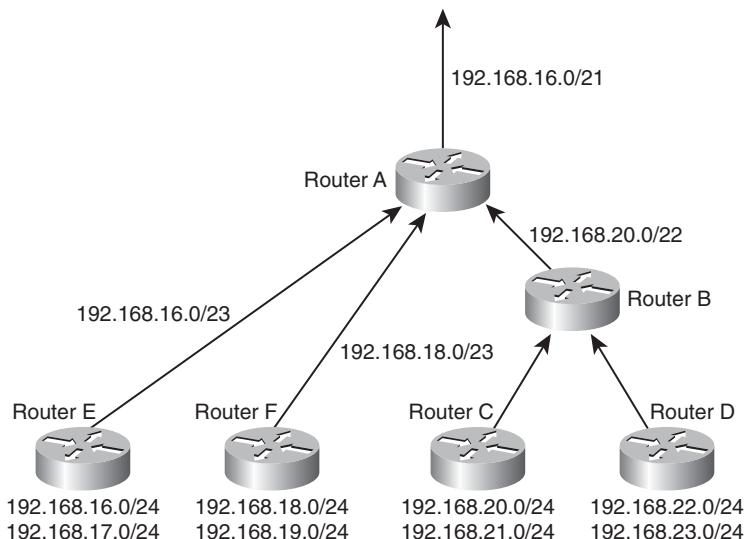
You can also use summarization to aggregate four contiguous Class C networks at the /22 bit level. For example, networks 200.1.100.0, 200.1.101.0, 200.1.102.0, and 200.1.103.0 share common bits, as shown in Table 11-7. The resulting network is 200.1.100.0/22, which you can use for a 1000-node network.

**Table 11-7** Common Bits Within Class C Networks

Binary Address	IP Address
11001000 00000001 01100100 00000000	200.1.100.0
11001000 00000001 01100101 00000000	200.1.101.0
11001000 00000001 01100110 00000000	200.1.102.0
11001000 00000001 01100111 00000000	200.1.103.0

It is important for an Internet network designer to assign IP networks in a manner that permits summarization. It is preferred that a neighboring router receive one summarized route, rather than 8, 16, 32, or more routes, depending on the level of summarization. This setup reduces the size of the routing tables in the network.

Figure 11-18 shows another example of route summarization. All the edge routers send network information to their upstream routers. Router E summarizes its two LAN networks by sending 192.168.16.0/23 to Router A. Router F summarizes its two LAN networks by sending 192.168.18.0/23. Router B summarizes the networks it receives from Routers C and D. Routers B, E, and F send their routes to Router A. Router A sends a single route (192.168.16.0/21) to its upstream router, instead of sending eight routes. This process reduces the number of networks that upstream routers need to include in routing updates.



**Figure 11-18** Route Summarization

Notice in Table 11-8 that all the Class C networks share a bit boundary with 21 common bits. The networks are different on the 22nd bit and thus cannot be summarized beyond the 21st bit. All these networks are summarized with 192.168.16.0/21.

**Table 11-8** Summarization of Networks

Binary Address	IP Network
11000000 10101000 00010000 00000000	192.168.16.0
11000000 10101000 00010001 00000000	192.168.17.0
11000000 10101000 00010010 00000000	192.168.18.0
11000000 10101000 00010011 00000000	192.168.19.0
11000000 10101000 00010100 00000000	192.168.20.0
11000000 10101000 00010101 00000000	192.168.21.0
11000000 10101000 00010110 00000000	192.168.22.0
11000000 10101000 00010111 00000000	192.168.23.0

To summarize, the recommended practices regarding summarization include the following:

- Implement summarization at WAN connectivity and remote-access points toward the network core, to reduce the routing table size.
- Summarize at the distribution layer for all network interfaces that point to the network core.
- Implement passive interfaces on access layer interfaces so that neighbor adjacencies are not established through the access layer. A more-specific route might be created, which would be taken over a summarized route.

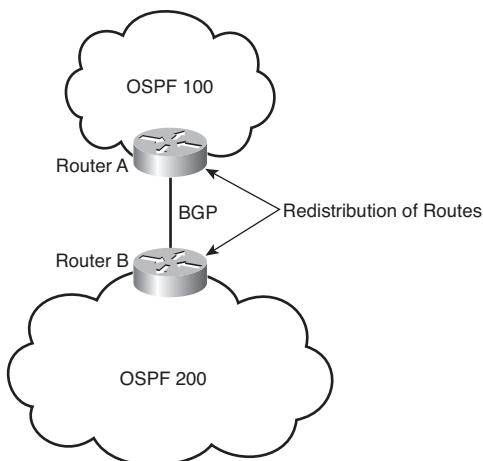


## Route Redistribution

Route redistribution is an exchange of routes between routing protocols (for example, between EIGRP and OSPF). You configure the redistribution of routing protocols on routers that reside at the service provider edge of the network. These routers exchange routes with other autonomous systems. Redistribution is also done on routers that run more than one routing protocol. Here are some reasons to do redistribution:

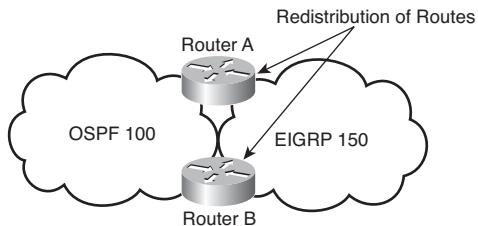
- Migration from an older routing protocol to a new routing protocol.
- Mixed-vendor environment in which Cisco routers might be using EIGRP and other vendor routers might be using OSPF.
- Different administrative domain between company departments using different routing protocols.
- Mergers and acquisitions in which the networks initially need to communicate. In this scenario, two different EIGRP processes might exist.

Figure 11-19 shows an example of the exchange of routes between two autonomous systems. Routes from autonomous system 100 are redistributed into BGP on Router A. Routes from autonomous system 200 are redistributed into BGP on Router B. Then, Routers A and B exchange BGP routes. Router A and Router B also implement filters to redistribute only the desired networks.



**Figure 11-19** Redistribution of BGP Routes

A company might also acquire another company that might be running another routing protocol. Figure 11-20 shows a network that has both OSPF and EIGRP routing protocols. Routers A and B perform redistribution between OSPF and EIGRP. Both routers must filter routes from OSPF before redistributing them into EIGRP and filter routes from EIGRP before redistributing them into OSPF. This setup prevents route feedback.



**Figure 11-20** *Redistribution Between IGPs*

Route feedback occurs when a routing protocol learns routes from another routing protocol and then announces the routes to the other routing protocol. In Figure 11-20, OSPF should not advertise the routes it learned from EIGRP on Router A back to EIGRP on Router B. And EIGRP should not announce the routes it learned from OSPF on Router B back to EIGRP on Router A.

You can use access lists, distribution lists, and route maps when redistributing routes. You can use these methods to specify (select) routes for redistribution, to set metrics, or to set other policies for the routes. They are used to prevent loops in the redistribution. They are also used to control routes' redistribution direction. Redistribution can be accomplished by two methods:

- Two-way redistribution
- One-way redistribution

In two-way redistribution, routing information is exchanged between both routing protocols. No static routes are used in this exchange. Route filters are used to prevent routing loops. Routing loops can be caused by one route protocol redistributing routes that were learned from a second route protocol back to that second routing protocol.

One-way redistribution only allows redistribution from one routing protocol to another. Normally, it is used in conjunction with a default or static route at the edge of a network. Figure 11-21 shows an example of one-way redistribution. The routing information from the WAN routes is redistributed into the campus, but campus routes are not redistributed out to the WAN. The WAN routers use a default gateway to get back to the campus.

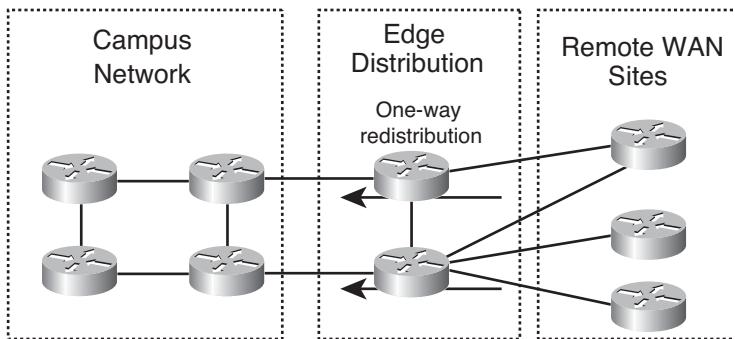
Other locations for one-way redistribution are from building access networks, BGP routes or static routes into the IGP, and from VPN static routes into the IGP.

### Default Metric

You should configure the metric of the redistributed routes to a metric other than 0. You can configure the metric in the **redistribution** command. You can also use the **default-metric** command. The

**default-metric** command is used to specify the seed metric that is used if one is not specified during redistribution. The **default-metric** command has the following syntax for EIGRP:

```
default-metric bandwidth delay reliability load mtu
```



**Figure 11-21 One-Way Route Redistribution**

### OSPF Redistribution

This subsection reviews a few things you need to remember when designing a network that will redistribute with OSPF.

When redistributing routes into OSPF, use the **subnets** keyword to permit subnetted routes to be received. If you do not use it, only the major network route is redistributed, without any subnetworks. In other words, OSPF performs automatic summarization to IP classful network values. Also, unlike EIGRP and RIPv2, OSPF does not need a metric to be specified during redistribution, neither does it need a seed metric to be specified because it uses a default metric for redistributed routes.

By default, redistributed routes are classified as external Type 2 (E2) in OSPF. You can use the **metric-type** keyword to change the external route to an external Type 1 (E1). The network design can take into account the after-redistribution cost (Type 2) or the after-redistribution cost plus the path's cost (Type 1).

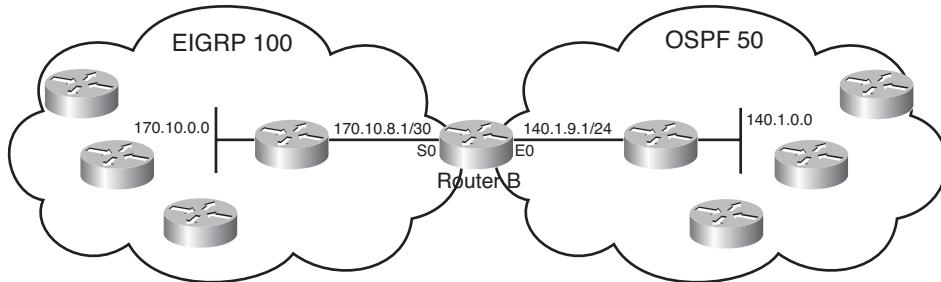
In Figure 11-22, Router B is configured to perform mutual redistribution between EIGRP 100 and OSPF process ID 50. In this example, you can use route maps and access lists to prevent routing loops. The route maps permit or deny the networks that are listed in the access lists. The **subnets** keyword redistributes every subnet in EIGRP into OSPF. This book does not cover exact configurations.

### Route Filtering

Filtering of routes can occur on either a redistribution point or in the routing domain to prevent some parts of the network from accessing other sections of the network.

Filtering at a redistribution point provides the following:

- Avoids routing loops
- Avoids suboptimal routing
- Prevents certain routes from entering the domain



**Figure 11-22** OSPF and EIGRP Redistribution

Another redistribution point where filtering is important is in a multihomed BGP connection with multiple Internet providers. When BGP routes get exchanged with multiple Internet service providers (ISP) route filtering is used to prevent advertisement of private addresses and addresses that are out of scope of the domain. Route filtering is also used to filter routes at the redistribution of BGP into IGPs such as OSPF, EIGRP, or RIP.

### Routing Protocols on the Hierarchical Network Infrastructure

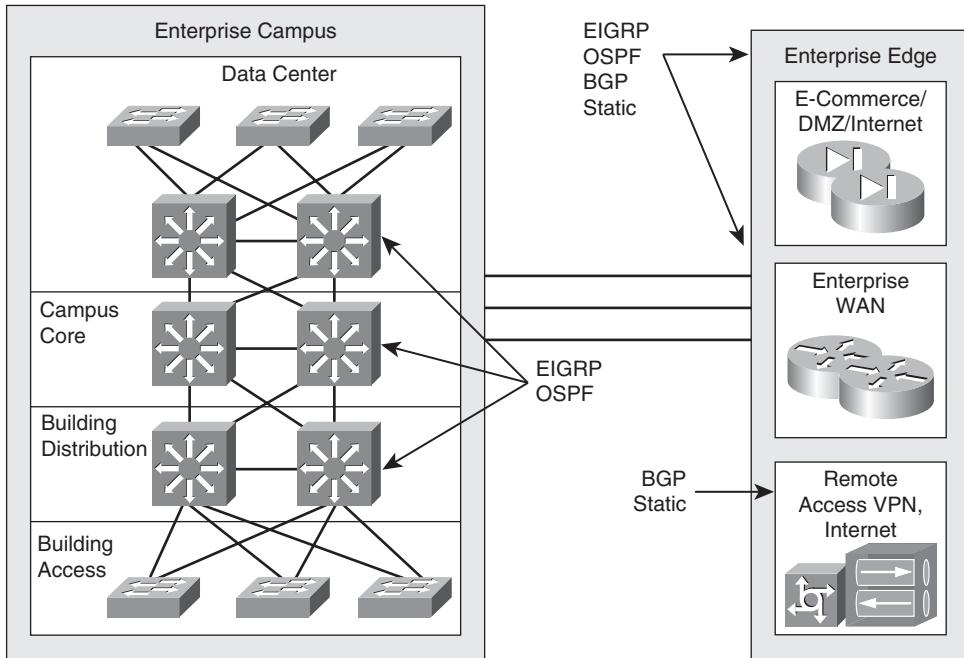
The selected routing protocol should be used based on the network design goals and the network module being used. As shown in Figure 11-23, high-speed routing is recommended for the network core and distribution layers. These routing protocols react fast to network changes. It is a best practice that the same routing protocol be used in the three layers (core, distribution, access) of the enterprise network.

The enterprise edge connects the campus network with external connectivity including WAN, Internet, VPN, remote-access modules. Routing protocols in the enterprise edge may be EIGRP, OSPF, BGP, and static routes. Specifically in the Internet module you will find BGP/static routes.

Table 11-9 shows a summary of the recommended routing protocols in the network infrastructure.

**Table 11-9** Routing Protocols on the Hierarchical Network Infrastructure

Network Module	Routing Protocols
Campus core	EIGRP, OSPF
Campus distribution	EIGRP, OSPF
Enterprise edge	EIGRP, OSPF, BGP, Static
Internet and VPN modules	BGP, Static



**Figure 11-23** Routing Protocols on the Hierarchical Network Infrastructure

## IP Multicast Review

With multicast, packets are sent to a multicast group, which is identified with an IP multicast address. Multicast supports the transmission of IP packets from one source to multiple hosts. Packets with unicast addresses are sent to one device, and broadcast addresses are sent to all hosts; packets with multicast addresses are sent to a group of hosts.

### Multicast Addresses

Multicast addressing uses Class D addresses from the IPv4 protocol. Class D addresses range from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. IANA manages multicast addresses.

Routing protocols (RIPv2, EIGRP, and OSPF) use multicast addresses to speak to their neighbors. For example, OSPF routers use 224.0.0.6 to speak to the designated router (DR) in a multiaccess network. Class D multicast addresses range from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. Multicast addresses in the range of 224.0.0.1 to 224.255.255.255 are reserved for special addresses or network protocol on a multiaccess link. RFC 2365 reserves multicast addresses in the range of 239.192.000.000 to 239.251.255.255 for organization-local scope. Similarly, 239.252.000.000 to 239.252.255.255, 239.254.000.000 to 239.254.255.255, and 239.255.000.000 to 239.255.255.255 are reserved for site-local scope.

Table 11-10 lists some well-known and multicast address blocks.



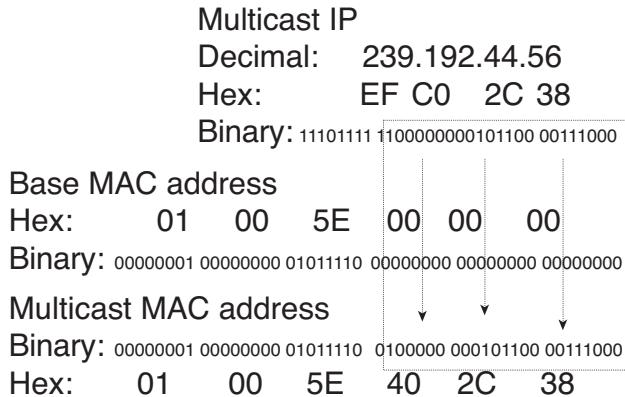
**Table 11-10 Multicast Addresses**

Multicast Address	Description
224.0.0.0/24	Local network control block
224.0.0.1	All hosts or all systems on this subnet
224.0.0.2	All multicast routers
224.0.0.4	Distance-Vector Multicast Routing Protocol (DVMRP) routers
224.0.0.5	All OSPF routers
224.0.0.6	All OSPF DR routers
224.0.0.9	RIPv2 routers
224.0.0.10	EIGRP routers
224.0.0.13	All PIM routers
224.0.1.0/24	Internetwork control block
224.0.1.39	Rendezvous point (RP) announce
224.0.1.40	RP discovery
224.0.2.0 to 224.0.255.0	Ad hoc block
239.000.000.000 to 239.255.255.255	Administratively scoped
239.192.000.000 to 239.251.255.255	Organization-local scope
239.252.000.000 to 239.254.255.255	Site-local scope

### Layer 3-to-Layer 2 Mapping

Multicast-aware Ethernet, Token Ring, and Fiber Distributed Data Interface (FDDI) network interface cards use the reserved IEEE 802 address 0100.5e00 for multicast addresses at the MAC layer. This includes Fast Ethernet and Gigabit Ethernet. Notice that for the address, the high-order byte 0x01 has the low-order bit set to 1. This bit is the Individual/Group (I/G) bit. It signifies whether the address is an individual address (0) or a group address (1). Hence, for multicast addresses, this bit is set to 1.

Ethernet interfaces map the lower 23 bits of the IP multicast address to the lower 23 bits of the MAC address 0100.5e00.0000. As an example, the IP multicast address 224.0.0.2 is mapped to the MAC layer as 0100.5e00.0002. Figure 11-24 shows another example looking at the bits of multicast IP 239.192.44.56. The IP address in hexadecimal is EF:C0:2C:38. The lower 23 bits get mapped into the lower 23 bits of the base multicast MAC to produce the multicast MAC address 01:00:5E:40:2C:38.



**Figure 11-24** Mapping of Multicast IP Addressing to MAC Addresses

## IGMP

Internet Group Management Protocol is the protocol used in multicast implementations between the end hosts and the local router. RFC 2236 describes IGMP Version 2 (IGMPv2). RFC 3376 describes IGMP Version 3 (IGMPv3). RFC 1112 describes the first version of IGMP.

IP hosts use IGMP to report their multicast group memberships to routers. IGMP messages use IP protocol number 2. IGMP messages are limited to the local interface and are not routed.

### IGMPv1

The first RFC describing IGMP (RFC 1112), written in 1989, describes the host extensions for IP multicasting. IGMPv1 provides simple message types for communication between hosts and routers. These messages are

- **Membership query:** Sent by the router to check whether a host wants to join a multicast group
- **Membership report:** Sent by the host to join a multicast group in the segment

The problem with IGMPv1 is the latency involved for a host to leave a group. With IGMPv1, the router sends membership queries periodically; a host must wait for the membership query message to leave a group. The query interval is 60 seconds, and it takes three query intervals (3 minutes) for a host to leave the group.

### IGMPv2

IGMPv2 improves on IGMPv1 by allowing faster termination or leaving of multicast groups.

IGMPv2 has three message types, plus one for backward compatibility:

- **Membership query:** Sent by the router to check whether a host wants to join a group.

- **Version 2 membership report:** A message sent to the group address with the multicast group members (IP addresses). It is sent by hosts to join and remain in multicast groups on the segment.
- **Version 2 leave group:** Sent by the hosts to indicate that a host will leave a group; it is sent to destination 224.0.0.2. After the host sends the leave group message, the router responds with a group-specific query.
- **Version 1 membership report:** For backward compatibility with IGMPv1 hosts.

You enable IGMP on an interface when you configure a multicast routing protocol, such as PIM. You can configure the interface for IGMPv1, IGMPv2, or IGMPv3.

### IGMPv3

IGMPv3 provides the extensions required to support source-specific multicast (SSM). It is designed to be backward compatible with both earlier versions of IGMP.

IGMPv3 has two message types, plus three for backward compatibility:

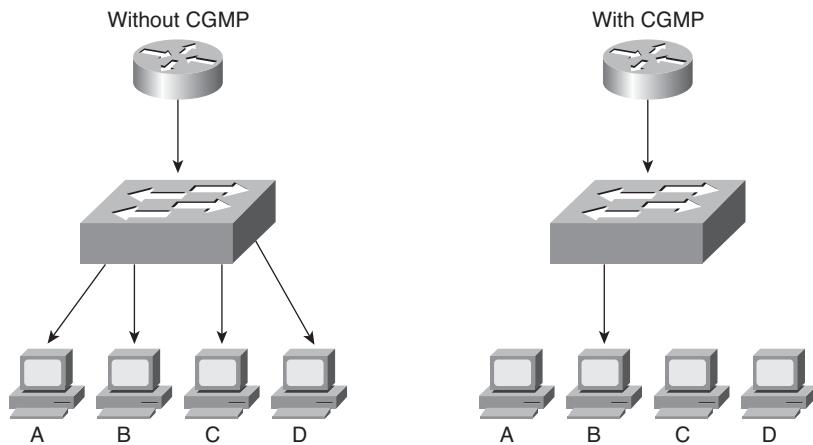
- **Membership query:** Sent by the router to check that a host wants to join a group.
- **Version 3 membership report:** A message sent to the group address with the multicast group members (IP addresses). It is sent by hosts to request and remain in multicast groups on the segment.
- **Version 2 membership report:** A message sent to the group address with the multicast group members (IP addresses). It is sent by hosts to request and remain in multicast groups on the segment. This message is used for backward compatibility with IGMPv2 hosts.
- **Version 2 leave group:** Sent by the hosts to indicate that a host will leave a group, to destination 224.0.0.2. The message is sent without having to wait for the IGMPv2 membership report message. This message is used for backward compatibility with IGMPv2 hosts.
- **Version 1 membership report:** A message used for backward compatibility with IGMPv1 hosts.

You enable IGMP on an interface when you enable a multicast routing protocol, such as PIM. You can configure the interface for IGMPv1, IGMPv2, or IGMPv3.

### CGMP

CGMP is a Cisco proprietary protocol implemented to control multicast traffic at Layer 2. Because a Layer 2 switch is unaware of Layer 3 IGMP messages, it cannot keep multicast packets from being sent to all ports.

As shown in Figure 11-25, with CGMP the LAN switch can speak with the IGMP router to find out the MAC addresses of the hosts that want to receive the multicast packets. With CGMP, switches distribute multicast sessions only to the switch ports that have group members.



**Figure 11-25 CGMP**

When a router receives an IGMP report, it processes the report and then sends a CGMP message to the switch. The switch can then forward the multicast messages to the port with the host receiving multicast traffic. CGMP fast-leave processing allows the switch to detect IGMP Version 2 leave messages sent by hosts on any of the switch ports. When a host sends the IGMPv2 leave message, the switch can then disable multicasting for the port.

CGMP is no longer used and is not a CCDA topic. IGMP snooping is the standards-based protocol used in today's networks.

### IGMP Snooping

IGMP snooping is standards-based method for switches to control multicast traffic at Layer 2. It has replaced CGMP. It listens to IGMP messages between the hosts and routers. If a host sends an IGMP query message to the router, the switch adds the host to the multicast group and permits that port to receive multicast traffic. The port is removed from multicast traffic if the host sends an IGMP leave message to the router. The disadvantage of IGMP snooping is that it has to process every IGMP control message, which can impact the CPU utilization of the switch.

### Sparse Versus Dense Multicast

IP multicast traffic for a particular (source, destination group) multicast pair is transmitted from the source to the receivers using a spanning tree from the source that connects all the hosts in the group. Multicast destinations are represented in the following form: (S,G) or (\*,G). Any multicast transmission has a Class D multicast group address, G. A multicast group can have more than one source, and each such source will also have a “regular” (Class A, B or C, or CIDR) Internet address, S. The notation (\*,G) means every possible source for a given group G, while (S,G) means a particular source, at a particular Internet address S, in the group G.

trees that chart paths from each sender to all receivers. IP multicast routing protocols follow two approaches.

The first approach assumes that the multicast group members are densely distributed throughout the network (many of the subnets contain at least one group member), all devices want to receive multicast traffic, and that bandwidth is plentiful. The approach with dense multicast routing protocols is to flood the traffic throughout the network and then, at the request of receiving routers, stop the flow of traffic on branches of the network that have no members of the multicast group. Multicast routing protocols that follow this technique of flooding the network include DVMRP, Multicast Open Shortest Path First (MOSPF), and Protocol-Independent Multicast-Dense Mode (PIM-DM).

The second approach to multicast routing assumes that multicast group members are sparsely distributed throughout the network, assumes received do not want to receive multicast traffic, and that bandwidth is not necessarily widely available. Sparse mode does not imply that the group has few members, just that they are widely dispersed. The approach with sparse multicast routing protocols is to not send traffic until it is requested by the receiving routers or hosts. Multicast routing protocols of this type are Core-Based Trees (CBT) and Protocol-Independent Multicast-Sparse Mode (PIM-SM). CBT is not widely deployed and is not discussed in this book.

### Multicast Source and Shared Trees

Multicast distribution trees control the path that multicast packets take to the destination hosts. The two types of distribution trees are source and shared. With *source* trees, the tree roots from the source of the multicast group and then expands throughout the network in spanning-tree fashion to the destination hosts. Source trees are also called shortest-path trees (SPT) because they create paths without having to go through a rendezvous point (RP). The drawback is that all routers through the path must use memory resources to maintain a list of all multicast groups. PIM-DM uses a source-based tree.

*Shared* trees create the distribution tree's root somewhere between the network's source and receivers. The root is called the RP. The tree is created from the RP in spanning-tree fashion with no loops. The advantage of shared trees is that they reduce the memory requirements of routers in the multicast network. The drawback is that initially the multicast packets might not take the best paths to the receivers because they need to pass through the RP. After the data stream begins to flow from sender to RP to receiver, the routers in the path optimize the path automatically to remove any unnecessary hops. The RP function consumes significant memory on the assigned router. PIM-SM uses an RP.

### PIM

PIM comes in two flavors: *sparse mode* (PIM-SM) and *dense mode* (PIM-DM). The first uses shared trees and RPs to reach widely dispersed group members with reasonable protocol bandwidth efficiency. The second uses source trees and reverse path forwarding (RPF) to reach relatively close group members with reasonable processor and memory efficiency in the network devices of the distribution trees.

With RPF, received multicast packets are forwarded out all other interfaces, allowing the data stream to reach all segments. If no hosts are members of a multicast group on any of the router's attached or downstream subnets, the router sends a prune message up the distribution tree (the reverse path) to tell the upstream router not to send packets for the multicast group. So, the analogy for PIM-DM is the push method for sending junk mail, and the intermediate router must tell upstream devices to stop sending it.

### PIM-SM

PIM-SM is defined in RFC 2362. PIM-SM assumes that no hosts want to receive multicast traffic unless specifically requested. The RP gathers the information from senders and makes the information available to receivers. Routers with receivers have to register with the RP. The end-host systems request multicast group membership using IGMP with their local routers. The routers serving the end systems then register as traffic receivers with the RPs for the specified group in the multicast network.

**Joining PIM-SM** With PIM-SM, DRs on end segments receive IGMP query messages from hosts wanting to join a multicast group. The router checks whether it is already receiving the group for another interface. If it is receiving the group, the router adds the new interface to the table and sends membership reports periodically on the new interface.

If the multicast group is not in the multicast table, the router adds the interface to the multicast table and sends a join message to the RP with multicast address 224.0.0.13 (all PIM routers) requesting the multicast group.

**Pruning PIM-SM** When a PIM-SM does not have any more multicast receiving hosts or receiving routers out any of its interfaces, it sends a prune message to the RP. The prune message includes the group to be pruned or removed.

### PIM DR

A designated router is selected in multiaccess segments running PIM. The PIM DR is responsible for sending join, prune, and register messages to the RP. The PIM router with the highest IP address is selected as the DR.

### Auto-RP

Another way to configure the RP for the network is to have the RP announce its services to the PIM network. This process is called auto-RP. Candidate RPs send their announcements to RP mapping agents with multicast address 224.0.1.39 (`cisco-rp-announce`). RP mapping agents are also configured. In smaller networks, the RP can be the mapping agent. The 224.0.1.40 address is used in AUTO-RP-DISCOVERY is the destination address for messages from the RP mapping agent to discover candidates. Configured RP mapping agents listen to the announcements. The RP mapping agent then selects the RP for a group based on the highest IP address of all the candidate RPs. The RP mapping agents then

send RP-discovery messages to the rest of the PIM-SM routers in the internetwork with the selected RP-to-group mappings.

### PIMv2 Bootstrap Router

Instead of using auto-RP, you can configure a PIMv2 bootstrap router (BSR) to automatically select an RP for the network. The RFC for PIM Version 2, RFC 2362, describes BSR. With BSR, you configure BSR candidates (C-BSR) with priorities from 0 to 255 and a BSR address. C-BSRs exchange bootstrap messages. Bootstrap messages are sent to multicast IP 224.0.0.13 (all PIM routers). If a C-BSR receives a bootstrap message, it compares it with its own. The largest priority C-BSR is selected as the BSR.

After the BSR is selected for the network, it collects a list of candidate RPs. The BSR selects RP-to-group mappings, which is called the RP set, and distributes the selected RPs using bootstrap messages sent to 224.0.0.13 (all PIM routers).

### DVMRP

RFC 1075 describes DVMRP. It is the primary multicast routing protocol used in the multicast backbone (MBONE). The MBONE is used in the research community.

DVMRP operates in dense mode using RPF by having routers send a copy of a multicast packet out all paths. Routers that receive the multicast packets then send prune messages back to their upstream neighbor router to stop a data stream if no downstream receivers of the multicast group exist (either receiving routers or hosts on connected segments).

DVMRP implements its own unicast routing protocol, similar to RIP, based on hop counts. DVMRP has a 32 hop-count limit. DVMRP does not scale suboptimally. Cisco's support of DVMRP is partial; DVMRP networks are usually implemented on UNIX machines running the mrouted process. A DVMRP tunnel is typically used to connect to the MBONE DVMRP network.

### IPv6 Multicast Addresses

IPv6 retains the use and function of multicast addresses as a major address class. IPv6 prefix FF00::/8 is allocated for all IPv6 multicast addresses. IPv6 multicast addresses are described in RFC 2373. EIGRP for IPv6, OSPFv3, and RIPng routing protocols use multicast addresses to communicate between router neighbors.

The format of the IPv6 multicast address is described in Chapter 9, “Internet Protocol Version 6.” The common multicast addresses are repeated in Table 11-11.

**Table 11-11 Well-Known Multicast Addresses**

Multicast Address	Multicast Group
FF01::1	All nodes (node-local)
FF02::1	All nodes (link-local)
FF01::2	All routers (node-local)
FF02::2	All routers (link-local)
FF02::5	OSPFv3 routers
FF02::6	OSPFv3 DRs
FF02::9	Routing Information Protocol (RIPng)
FF02::A	EIGRP routers
FF02::B	Mobile agents
FF02::C	DHCP servers/relay agents
FF02::D	All PIM routers

## References and Recommended Readings

Bruno, A. *CCIE Routing and Switching Exam Certification Guide*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2002.

RFC 2740, OSPF for IPv6, Available from [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 1587, The OSPF NSSA Option, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

Martey, A. *IS-IS Network Design Solutions*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2002.

RFC 1584, Multicast Extensions to OSPF, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2328, OSPF Version 2, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 1142, OSI IS-IS Intra-domain Routing Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

Border Gateway Protocol, [www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito\\_doc/bgp.htm](http://www.cisco.com/univercd/cc/td/doc/cisintwk/ito_doc/bgp.htm).

RFC 1997, BGP Communities Attribute, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 1112, Host Extensions for IP Multicasting, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

Doyle, J. and J. Carroll. *Routing TCP/IP, Volume I*, Second Edition. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2005.

Doyle, J. and J. Carroll. *Routing TCP/IP, Volume II*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2001.

RFC 2362, Protocol Independent Multicast-Sparse Mode (PIM-SM): Protocol Specification (experimental), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 2236, Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 2, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 1519, Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR): An Address Assignment and Aggregation Strategy, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

Halabi, S. *Internet Routing Architectures*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2000.

“Internet Protocol (IP) Multicast Technology Overview” (white paper), [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps5763/products\\_white\\_paper0900aecd804d5fe6.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps5763/products_white_paper0900aecd804d5fe6.shtml)

RFC 2365, Administratively Scoped IP Multicast, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

A Border Gateway Protocol 4 (BGP-4), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 1075, Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

Williamson, B. *Developing IP Multicast Networks*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 1999.

RFC 2858, Multiprotocol Extensions for BGP-4, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 11-12 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 11-12 Key Topics**

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Summary	OSPFv2 areas	393
Summary	OSPF router types	394
Summary	OSPF LSA types	396
List	Major changes to OSPFv3	400
Table 11-6	OSPFv3 LSA types	402
Summary	eBGP	406
Summary	iBGP	406
List	BGP administrative distances	409
Summary	Route summarization	416
Summary	Route redistribution	419
Summary	Route filtering	421
Summary	Multicast	423

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

OSPFv2, OSPFv3, ABR, ASBR, DR, LSA, stub, BGP, iBGP, QPPB, MP-BGP, PBR, IGMP, PIM

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

1. True or false: A router needs to have all its interfaces in Area 0 to be considered an OSPF backbone router.
2. True or false: OSPF IS-IS uses a designated router in multiaccess networks.
3. Which multicast addresses do OSPFv2 routers use?
4. Which multicast addresses are used by OSPFv3 routers?
5. What is the Cisco administrative distance of OSPF?
6. Which OSPFv2 router type generates the OSPF Type 3 LSA?
7. Which OSPFv2 router type generates the OSPF Type 2 LSA?
8. What is included in an OSPFv2 router LSA?
9. True or false: The router with the lowest priority is selected as the OSPF DR.
10. True or false: You use iBGP to exchange routes between different autonomous systems.
11. True or false: BGP Version 4 does not include support for CIDR, only OSPF and EIGRP do.
12. True or false: eBGP and iBGP redistribute automatically on a router if the BGP peers are configured with the same autonomous system number.
13. eBGP routes have an administrative distance of \_\_\_, and iBGP routes have an administrative distance of \_\_\_.
14. True or false: IGMP snooping and CGMP are methods to reduce the multicast traffic at Layer 2.
15. True or false: PIM has a hop-count limit of 32.
16. True or false: PIM-SM routers use the multicast 224.0.0.13 address to request a multicast group to the RP.
17. True or false: autonomous system path is the only attribute BGP uses to determine the best path to the destination.
18. List three IP routing protocols that use multicast addresses to communicate with their neighbors.
19. What IPv6 multicast address does EIGRP use for IPv6?
20. Match the routing protocol with the description:
  - i. EIGRP
  - ii. OSPFv2
  - iii. RIPv2

iv. BGP

- a. Distance-vector protocol used in the edge of the network
- b. IETF link-state protocol used in the network core
- c. Hybrid protocol used in the network core
- d. Path-vector protocol

- 21.** What is the default OSPF cost for a Fast Ethernet interface?
- 22.** Which routing protocol do you use in the core of a large enterprise network that supports VLSMs for a network with a mix of Cisco and non-Cisco routers?
- 23.** What is the benefit of designing for stub areas?
- 24.** What constraint does the OSPF network design have for traffic traveling between areas?
- 25.** How is OSPFv3 identified as the upper-layer protocol in IPv6?
- 26.** Which routing protocols are recommended for large enterprise networks?
- a. RIPv2
  - b. OSPFv2
  - c. EIGRP
  - d. IS-IS
  - e. A and B
  - f. B and C
  - g. B and D
  - h. A, B, C, and D
- 27.** What OSPFv3 has an LS type of 0x0008?
- a. Router LSA
  - b. Interarea-router LSA
  - c. Link LSA
  - d. Intra-area-prefix LSA
- 28.** Which routing protocol does not support VLSMs?
- a. RIPv1
  - b. OSPFv2
  - c. EIGRP
  - d. RIPv2
  - e. B and C
  - f. B, C, and D

**29.** Which routing protocols have fast convergence for IPv4 networks?

- a.** BGP
- b.** OSPFv2
- c.** EIGRP
- d.** RIPv2
- e.** B and C
- f.** B, C, and D
- g.** A, B, and C

**30.** Which routing protocols have fast convergence for IPv6 networks?

- a.** RIPng
- b.** OSPFv3
- c.** EIGRP for IPv6
- d.** RIPv2
- e.** MP-BGP
- f.** B and C
- g.** B, C, and D
- h.** B, C, and E

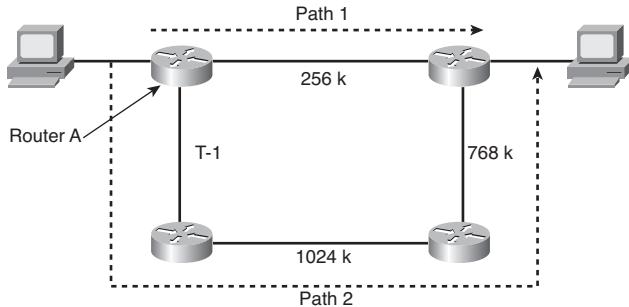
**31.** A retail chain has about 800 stores that connect to the headquarters and a backup location. The company wants to limit the amount of routing traffic used on the WAN links. What routing protocol(s) is/are recommended?

- a.** RIPv1
- b.** RIPv2
- c.** OSPFv2
- d.** EIGRP
- e.** IS-IS
- f.** BGP
- g.** B, C, and D
- h.** C and D
- i.** C, D, and E

**32.** Which of the following statements is correct?

- a. OSPFv3 provides changes to OSPFv2 for use in IPv4 networks.
- b. OSPFv3 provides changes to OSPFv2 for use in IPv6 networks.
- c. OSPFv3 provides changes to OSPFv2 for use in IPv6 and IPv4 networks.
- d. OSPFng provides changes to OSPFv2 for use in IPv6 networks.

Use Figure 11-26 to answer the following question.

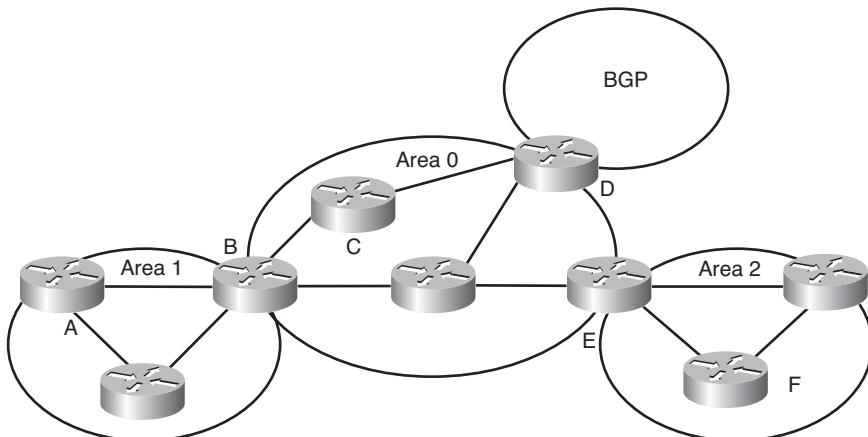


**Figure 11-26** Path Selection

**33.** If OSPF is enabled on all routers with the default metrics unchanged, what path is taken?

- a. Path 1
- b. Path 2
- c. Unequal load balance with Path 1 and Path 2
- d. Equal load balance with Path 1 and Path 2

Use Figure 11-27 to answer the following question.



**Figure 11-27** OSPF Router Types

**34.** Identify the OSPF router types shown in Figure 11-27.

Router A = \_\_\_\_\_

Router B = \_\_\_\_\_

Router C = \_\_\_\_\_

Router D = \_\_\_\_\_

Router E = \_\_\_\_\_

Router F = \_\_\_\_\_

**35.** Match the IP multicast address with its description.

- i. 224.0.0.1
  - ii. 224.0.0.2
  - iii. 224.0.0.5
  - iv. 224.0.0.10
- a.** All OSPF routers
  - b.** All routers
  - c.** EIGRP routers
  - d.** All hosts

**36.** Match the BGP attribute with its description.

- i. Local preference
  - ii. MED
  - iii. Autonomous system path
  - iv. Next hop
- a.** IP address
  - b.** Indicates the path used to exit the autonomous system
  - c.** Tells external BGP peers the preferred path into the autonomous system
  - d.** List of ASNs

**37.** Which Cisco feature can you use instead of local preference to influence the selected path to external BGP routers?

**38.** What is the purpose of route reflectors?

**39.** When BGP confederations are used, which number do external peers see?

**40.** With \_\_\_\_\_ all routers peer with each other within the private autonomous system, and with \_\_\_\_\_ client routers peer only with the reflector.

**41.** Which of the following shows the correct order that BGP uses to select a best path?

- a.** Origin, lowest IP, autonomous system path, weight, local preference, MED
- b.** Weight, local preference, autonomous system path, origin, MED, lowest IP
- c.** Lowest IP, autonomous system path, origin, weight, MED, local preference
- d.** Weight, origin, local preference, autonomous system path, MED, lowest IP

**42.** What feature did BGPv4 implement to provide forwarding of packets based on IP prefixes?

**43.** What route should be used to summarize the following networks?

10.150.80.0/23, 10.150.82.0/24, 10.150.83.0/24, 10.150.84.0/22

- a.** 10.150.80.0/23, 10.150.82.0/23, and 10.150.84.0/22
- b.** 10.150.80.0/22 and 10.150.84/22
- c.** 10.150.80.0/21
- d.** 10.150.80.0/20

**44.** Match the IPv6 multicast address with its description.

- i. FF02::1
  - ii. FF02::2
  - iii. FF02::5
  - iv. FF02::9
  - v. FF02::A
- a.** OSPFv3 routers
  - b.** RIPng routers
  - c.** All routers
  - d.** EIGRP routers
  - e.** All nodes

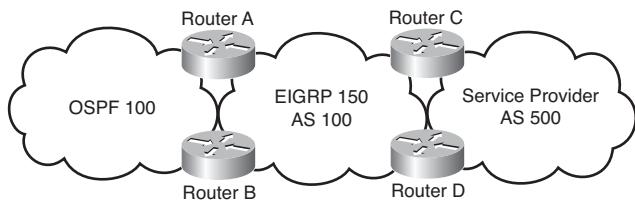
**45.** Route summarization and redistribution occur in which layer of the hierarchical model?

- a.** Building access
- b.** Distribution
- c.** Core
- d.** Server access

**46.** Which of the following best describes route summarization?

- a. Grouping contiguous addresses to advertise a large Class A network
- b. Grouping noncontiguous addresses to advertise a larger network
- c. Grouping contiguous addresses to advertise a larger network
- d. Grouping Internet addresses

Refer to Figure 11-28 to answer the following questions.



**Figure 11-28** Network Scenario

**47.** Where should you configure BGP?

- a. Routers A and B
- b. Routers C and D
- c. Answers A and B
- d. Routers A and C

**48.** On which router should you configure redistribution for OSPF and EIGRP?

- a. Router A only
- b. Router B only
- c. Routers A and B
- d. Redistribution occurs automatically.

- 49.** To announce the networks from autonomous system 100 to autonomous system 500, which routing protocols should you redistribute into BGP?
- a.** OSPF only
  - b.** EIGRP only
  - c.** OSPF and EIGRP
  - d.** iBGP
- 50.** Where should you use filters?
- a.** Routers A and B
  - b.** Routers C and D
  - c.** Routers A and C
  - d.** Answers A and B

### **CCDA exam topics covered in this part:**

- Describe network management protocols and features
- Describe the security lifecycle
- Identify Cisco technologies to mitigate security vulnerabilities
- Select appropriate Cisco security solutions and deployment placement
- Describe high-level voice and video architectures
- Identify the design considerations for voice/video services

# **Part IV: Security, Convergence, Network Management**

---

**Chapter 12: Managing Security**

**Chapter 13: Security Solutions**

**Chapter 14: Voice and Video Design**

**Chapter 15: Network Management Protocols**



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Network Security Overview
- Security Policy and Process
- Trust and Identity Management
- Secure Connectivity
- Threat Defense
- Security Management Solutions

## Managing Security

---

This chapter discusses network security in terms of security management and policy. You will be tested on network security topics that include security threats, risks, policy compliance, and securing network connectivity. The chapter goes on to explain how network security management and policy provide a framework for secure networks. This chapter also explores trust and identity management, which defines how network access can occur, and threat defense, which adds increased levels of security into network endpoints.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 12-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 12-1** *Do I Know This Already?* Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Network Security Overview	1–4
Security Policy and Process	5, 6
Trust and Identity Management	7
Secure Connectivity	8
Threat Defense	9
Security Management Solutions	10

- 1.** Which of the following security legislation applies protection for credit card holder data?
  - a.** SOX
  - b.** GLBA
  - c.** HIPAA
  - d.** PCI DSS
  
- 2.** What classification of security threat gathers information about the target host?
  - a.** Gaining unauthorized access
  - b.** Reconnaissance
  - c.** Denial of service
  - d.** None of the above
  
- 3.** What type of security threat works to overwhelm network resources such as memory, CPU, and bandwidth?
  - a.** Denial of service
  - b.** Reconnaissance
  - c.** Gaining unauthorized access
  - d.** NMAP scans
  
- 4.** What is it called when attackers change sensitive data without proper authorization?
  - a.** VLAN filtering
  - b.** ACLs
  - c.** Integrity violations
  - d.** Loss of availability
  
- 5.** What security document focuses on the processes and procedures for managing network events in addition to emergency-type scenarios?
  - a.** Acceptable-use policy
  - b.** Incident-handling policy
  - c.** Network access control policy
  - d.** Security management policy
  
- 6.** Which of the following should be included in a security policy? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** Identification of assets
  - b.** Definition of roles and responsibilities
  - c.** Description of permitted behaviors
  - d.** All of the above

7. Authentication of the identity is based on what attributes? (Select all that apply.)
  - a. Something the subject knows
  - b. Something the subject has
  - c. Something the subject is
  - d. All of the above
8. What VPN protocol uses encrypted point-to-point GRE tunnels?
  - a. GRE-based VPN
  - b. Cisco Easy VPN
  - c. Cisco GET VPN
  - d. Cisco DMVPN
9. What are some physical security guidelines to consider for a secure infrastructure? (Select all that apply.)
  - a. Evaluate potential security breaches
  - b. Use physical access controls such as locks or alarms
  - c. Assess the impact of stolen network resources and equipment
  - d. Syslog and SNMP analysis
10. Which of the following benefits does a security management solution provide?
  - a. SAINT scans
  - b. Provisions network security policies for deployment
  - c. Prevents unauthorized access
  - d. NMAP scans

---

## Foundation Topics

---

This chapter examines security management topics that you need to master for the CCDA exam. It begins by explaining the reasons for network security and some techniques that can be used to prevent attacks. Next, the chapter describes the types of attacks that can compromise network security and classifications of security threats. It goes on to cover the risks inherent in network security, along with a series of risk examples that illustrate how attacks can occur. The chapter then looks what a “security policy” is and how it is used as a framework for network security.

In addition, this chapter explores ways to control and permit network access at any point within the network and discusses enabling security in network equipment by using traffic-isolation techniques. The chapter wraps up with examining some security management solutions.

## Network Security Overview

For many years, networks were designed to be fairly open in nature and did not require much security. The greatest area of concern was physical access. Over time, networks grew in size, and complexity increased the need for network security. For today’s businesses and organizations, security is now a mandatory part of designing IT systems, because the risks are too high if critical data is lost or tampered with. Security teams within organizations must now provide adequate levels of protection for the business to conduct its operations.

Network security is used to defend against network attacks and prevent unauthorized access from intruders. In addition, network security protects data from manipulation and theft. Businesses today also need to comply with company policy and security legislation that is in place to help protect data and keep it private.

Network security needs to be transparent to the end users and should also be designed to prevent attacks by

- Blocking external attackers from accessing the network
- Permitting access to only authorized users
- Preventing attacks from sourcing internally
- Supporting different levels of user access
- Safeguarding data from tampering or misuse

## Security Legislation

A number of legislative bodies along with the public have insisted that security controls be in place to protect private information and make certain that it is handled properly. These legislative bodies influence network security by imposing mandates with which organizations are required to comply. These requirements might include protecting customer in question.

The United States has a growing body of security legislation that you need to be aware of:

- **U.S. Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002 (Sarbanes-Oxley or SOX):** Focuses on the accuracy and controls imposed on a company's financial records. This was passed as a U.S. federal law because of a number of corporate and accounting scandals.
- **Payment Card Industry (PCI) Data Security Standard (DSS):** PCI is a data security standard that defines how to protect credit card holder data, including the storage and transfer of credit card holder information. Many retailers that accept credit cards have to meet PCI DSS standards or pay stiff penalties and are subject to regular and rigorous audits for PCI DSS compliance.
- **Gramm-Leach-Bliley Financial Services Modernization Act of 1999 (GLBA):** Provides protection against the sale of bank and account information that is regularly bought and sold by financial institutions. GLBA also guards against the practice of obtaining private information through false pretenses.
- **U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA):** Applies to the protection of private health information that is used electronically. The purpose is to enable better access to health information, reduce fraud, and lower the cost of health care in the United States.
- **EU Data Protection Directive 95/46/EC:** Calls for the protection of people's right to privacy with respect to the processing of personal data.

Table 12-2 describes the security legislation and identifies its abbreviation.

**Table 12-2 Security Legislation**

Legislation Description	Legislation Abbreviation	Key Topic
Focuses on the accuracy and the controls imposed on a company's financial records	SOX	
Data security standard that defines how to protect credit card holder data	PCI DSS	
Protection against the sale of bank and account information that is regularly bought and sold by financial institutions	GLBA	
Protection of private health information that is used electronically	HIPPA	
Protection of people's privacy with respect to the processing of personal data	Directive 95/46/EC	

## Security Threats

It is important to be aware of the different types of attacks that can impact the security of IT systems. Security threats can be classified into three broad categories:

- **Reconnaissance:** The goal of reconnaissance is to gather as much information as possible about the target host/network. Generally, this type of information gathering is done before an attack is carried out.
- **Gaining unauthorized access:** Refers to the act of attacking or exploiting the target system or host. Operating systems, services, and physical access to the target host have known system vulnerabilities that the attacker can take advantage of and use to increase his or her privileges. Social engineering is another technique for obtaining confidential information from employees by manipulation. As a result of the attacker exploiting the host, confidential information can be read, changed, or deleted from the system.
- **Denial of service (DoS):** DoS attacks aim to overwhelm resources such as memory, CPU, and bandwidth and thus impact the target system and deny legitimate user's access. distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks involve multiple sources working together to deliver the attack.

Table 12-3 outlines the categorized security threats.



**Table 12-3 Security Threats**

Threat Description	Threat Category
Gathering information about a host/network segment	Reconnaissance
Attacks aimed at overwhelming resources such as memory, CPU, and bandwidth of an attacked system	Denial of service (DoS)
Act of attacking or exploiting the target host system	Gaining unauthorized access

### Reconnaissance and Port Scanning

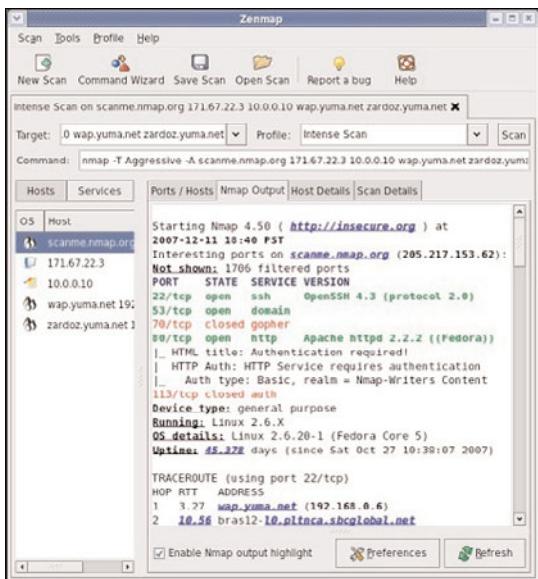
Reconnaissance network tools are used to gather information from the hosts attached to the network. They have many capabilities, including identifying the active hosts and which services the hosts are running. In addition, these tools can find trust relationships, determine OS platforms, and identify user and file permissions.

Some of the techniques that these scanning tools use include TCP connects (open), TCP SYNs (half open), ACK sweeps, Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) sweeps, SYN sweeps, and Null scans. Listed here are some of the more popular port-scanning tools and their uses:

- **NMAP** (Network Mapper) is designed to scan large networks or even a single host. It is an open source utility used for network exploration/security audits.
- **Superscan** provides high-speed scanning, host detection, Windows host enumeration, clients.

- **NetStumbler** identifies wireless networks using 802.11a/b/g wireless LAN (WLAN) standards with or without service set identifier (SSID) being broadcast. NetStumbler runs on Microsoft Windows-based platforms, including Windows Mobile.
- **Kismet** is an 802.11 wireless sniffer and intrusion detection system (IDS) application that can collect traffic from 802.11a/b/g/n networks. Kismet collects packets and detects wireless networks even when they are hidden.

Figure 12-1 shows NMAP scanning several hosts that have different operating systems. This particular scan displays the IP address, open ports, services, device type, and OS details.



**Figure 12-1** NMAP: Scanning Several Hosts

### Vulnerability Scanners

Vulnerability scanners determine what potential exposures are present in the network. Passive scanning tools are used to analyze the traffic flowing on the network. Active testing injects sample traffic onto the network. Here are some various sources for published vulnerability information:

- **CERT CC:** [www.cert.org](http://www.cert.org)
- **MITRE:** [www.cve.mitre.org](http://www.cve.mitre.org)
- **Microsoft:** [www.microsoft.com/technet/security/bulletin/summary.mspx](http://www.microsoft.com/technet/security/bulletin/summary.mspx)
- **Cisco Security Notices:** [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/products\\_security\\_advisories\\_listing.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/products_security_advisories_listing.html)

Here are some tools used for vulnerability scanning:

- **Nessus** is designed to automate the testing and discovery of known vulnerabilities. Nessus is an open source tool that runs on various operating systems, including Linux, UNIX and Microsoft Windows-based operating systems.
- **SAINT (Security Administrator's Integrated Network Tool)** is a vulnerability-assessment application that runs on Linux/UNIX hosts.
- **MBSA (Microsoft Baseline Security Analyzer)** is used to scan systems and identify whether patches are missing for Windows products such as operating systems, Internet Information Services (IIS), Structured Query Language (SQL), Exchange Server, Internet Explorer, Media Player, and Microsoft Office applications. MBSA also alerts you if it finds any known security vulnerabilities such as weak or missing passwords and other common security issues.

The MBSA security report in Figure 12-2 displays several security issues on this host. There are some user account passwords with blank or missing passwords, Windows hot-fixes missing, and some hard disks that are not using NTFS file systems.



**Figure 12-2** MBSA: Security Report

### Unauthorized Access

Another threat that you need to be concerned with is attackers gaining access. Hackers use several techniques to gain system access. One approach is when unauthorized people use usernames and passwords to escalate the account's privilege levels. Furthermore, some system user accounts have default administrative username and password pairings that are common knowledge, which makes them very unsecure. Trust relationships between systems and applications are another way unauthorized access takes place.

Unauthorized access is also obtained through the use of social engineering (the practice

by walking around an organization. Many security items can be found unsecured in offices and cubicles. For example, it is not uncommon to find passwords written on notes or badges and keys left on tops of desks or in unlocked drawers. The psychology method is another way of gaining confidential information. For example, someone pretending to be from the IT department calls a user and asks for her account information to maintain or correct an account discrepancy.

In addition to these approaches, hackers can obtain account information by using password-cracking utilities or by capturing network traffic.

## Security Risks

To protect network resources, processes, and procedures, technology needs to address several security risks. Important network characteristics that can be at risk from security threats include data confidentiality, data integrity, and system availability:

- **System availability** should ensure uninterrupted access to critical network and computing resources to prevent business disruption and loss of productivity.
- **Data integrity** should ensure that only authorized users can change critical information and guarantee the authenticity of data.
- **Data confidentiality** should ensure that only legitimate users can view sensitive information to prevent theft, legal liabilities, and damage to the organization.

In addition, the use of redundant hardware and encryption can significantly reduce the risks associated with system availability, data integrity, and data confidentiality.

Table 12-4 summarizes security risks types with descriptions.

**Table 12-4 Security Risks**

Risk Description	Risk Type	Key Topic
Ensure only legitimate users can view sensitive information to prevent theft, legal liabilities, and damage to the organization.	Confidentiality of data	
Ensure only authorized users can change critical information and guarantee the authenticity of data.	Integrity of data	
Allow uninterrupted access to critical network and computing resources to prevent business disruption and loss of productivity.	System and data availability	

## Targets

Given the wide range of potential threats, just about everything in the network has become vulnerable and is a potential target. Ordinary hosts top the list as the favorite target, especially for worms and viruses. After a host has been compromised, it is frequently used as a new attack point. (A collection of such hosts is referred to as a botnet.)

Other high-value targets include devices that support the network. Here is a list of some network devices, servers, and security devices that stand out as potential targets:

- **Infrastructure devices:** Routers, switches
- **Security devices:** Firewalls, intrusion detection/prevention systems (IDS/IPS)
- **Network services:** Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and Domain Name System (DNS) servers
- **Endpoints:** Management stations and IP phones
- **Infrastructure:** Network throughput and capacity

### Loss of Availability

Denial of service (DoS) attacks try to block or deny access to impact the availability of network services. These types of attacks can interrupt business transactions, cause considerable loss, and damage the company's reputation. DoS attacks are fairly straightforward to carry out, even by an unskilled attacker. Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks are initiated by multiple source locations within the network to increase the attack's size and impact.

DDoS attacks occur when the attacker takes advantage of vulnerabilities in the network/host. Here are some common failure points:

- A network, host, or application fails to process large amounts of data sent to it, which crashes or breaks communication ability.
- A host or application is unable to handle an unexpected condition, such as improperly formatted data and memory or resource depletion.
- Nearly all DoS attacks are carried out with spoofing and flooding methods.

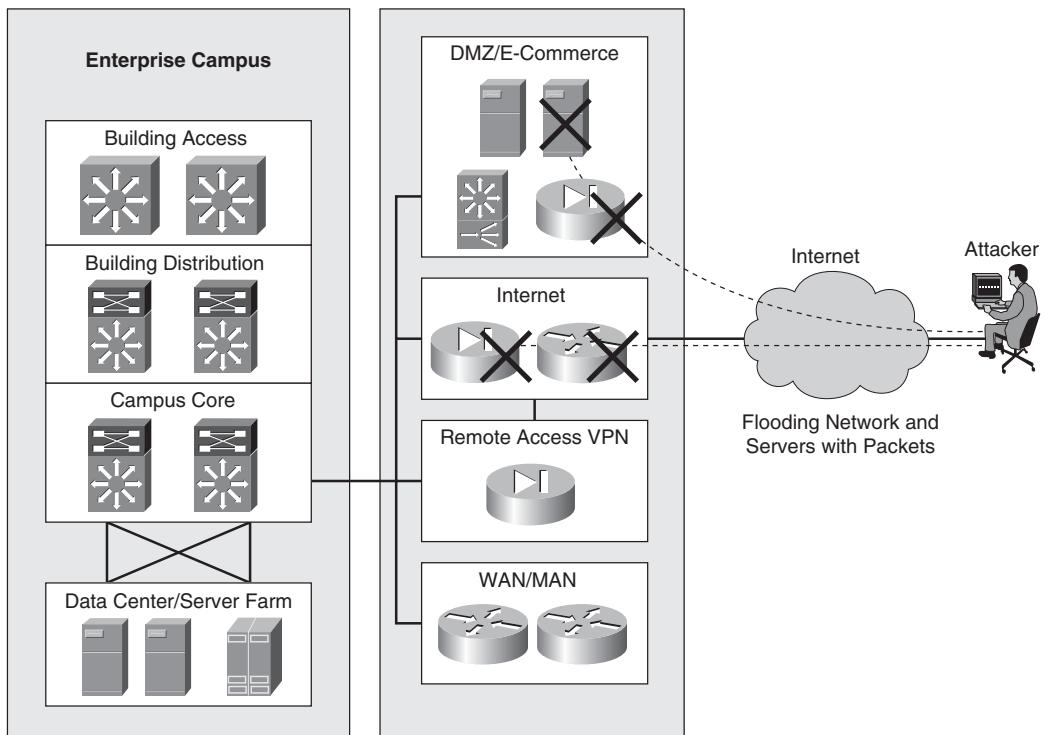
Table 12-5 lists some DoS-mitigating IOS software features.



**Table 12-5 Software Features to Manage DoS Attacks**

Feature Description	Feature
Verifies DHCP transactions and prevents rogue DHCP servers from interfering with production traffic	DHCP snooping
Intercepts Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) packets and verifies that the packets have valid IP-to-MAC bindings	Dynamic ARP Inspection (DAI)
Prevents unknown source addresses from using the network as a transport mechanism to carry out attacks	Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding (uRPF)
Controls what traffic is allowed on the network	Access control lists (ACL)
Controls the rate of bandwidth that incoming traffic, such as ARP packets and DHCP requests	Rate limiting

Figure 12-3 shows a DoS threat on availability. The attacker is performing a DoS attack on the network and servers using a flood of packets. Keep in mind that this is an external attack; however, an internal attack is also certainly possible.



**Figure 12-3 DoS Threat**

### Integrity Violations and Confidentiality Breaches

When attackers change sensitive data without the proper authorization, this is called an integrity violation. For example, an attacker might access financial data and delete critical information. The effect of this change might not be felt for some time or until a significant loss has occurred. Integrity attacks like this are considered by many companies to be one of the most serious threats to their business. Furthermore, identifying these attacks can be difficult, and the effects can be devastating.

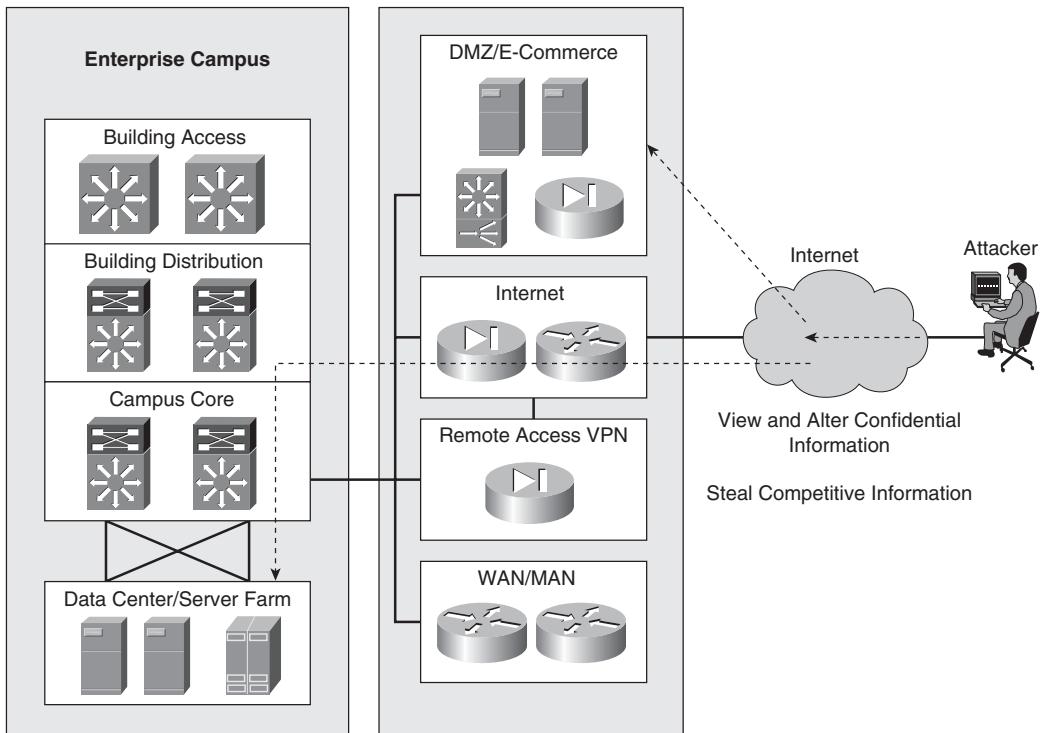
Confidentiality breaches occur when the attacker attempts to read sensitive information. It is difficult to detect these types of attacks, and loss of data can happen without the owner's knowledge.

It is important to use restrictive access controls to prevent integrity violations and confidentiality attacks. Here are some ways to enforce access control to reduce risks:

- 
- Restrict access with OS-based controls in both Windows and UNIX.

- Limit user access by using user profiles for different departmental roles.
- Use encryption techniques to secure data or digitally sign data.

Figure 12-4 shows an attacker viewing, altering, and stealing competitive information. Pay particular attention to the obstacles the attacker must go through to get to the data.



**Figure 12-4** Confidentiality and Integrity Threats

## Security Policy and Process

To provide the proper levels of security and increase network availability, a security policy is a crucial element in providing secure network services. This is an important concept to understand, and such business requirements should be considered throughout the system life cycle. Business requirements and risk analysis are used in the development of a security policy. It is often a balance between ease of access versus the security risk and cost of implementing the security technology.

In terms of network security in the system life cycle, the business needs are a key area to consider. Business needs define what the business wants to do with the network.

Risk analysis is another part of the system life cycle. It explains the risks and their costs. Business needs and risk assessment feed information into the security policy.

The security policy describes the organization's processes, procedures, guidelines, and standards. Furthermore, industry and security best practices are leveraged to provide well-known processes and procedures.

Finally, an organization's security operations team needs to have processes and procedures defined. This information helps explain what needs to happen for incident response, security monitoring, system maintenance, and managing compliance.

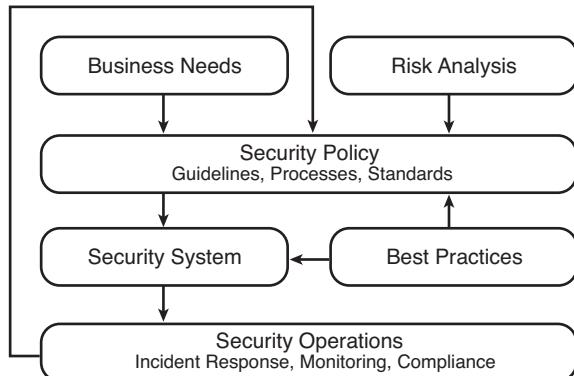
Table 12-6 outlines key network security considerations.

**Table 12-6 Key Network Security Elements of the Network Security Life Cycle**

Security Consideration	Name
What are the business requirements?	Business needs
What is associated risk and cost?	Risk analysis
What policy governs the business requirements and risk?	Security policy
What are the recommended industry security best practices?	Best practices
What will the process be for incident, compliance, and change management?	Security operations

Key Topic

Figure 12-5 shows the flow of the network security life cycle.



**Figure 12-5 Network Security: System Life Cycle**

### Security Policy Defined

RFC 2196 says, "A security policy is a formal statement of the rules by which people who are given access to an organization's technology and information assets must abide."

When you are developing security policies for an organization, RFC 2196 can serve as a guide for developing security processes and procedures. This RFC lists issues and factors that an organization must consider when setting its policies. Organizations need to make many decisions and come to agreement when creating their security policy.

## Basic Approach of a Security Policy

To help create a security policy, here is a generally accepted approach from RFC 2196:

- Step 1.** Identify what you are trying to protect.
- Step 2.** Determine what you are trying to protect it from.
- Step 3.** Determine how likely the threats are.
- Step 4.** Implement measures that protect your assets in a cost-effective manner.
- Step 5.** Review the process continuously, and make improvements each time a weakness is found.

## Purpose of Security Policies

One of the main purposes of a security policy is to describe the roles and requirements for securing technology and information assets. The policy defines the ways in which these requirements will be met.

There are two main reasons for having a security policy:

- It provides the framework for the security implementation:
  - Identifies assets and how to use them
  - Defines and communicates roles and responsibilities
  - Describes tools and procedures
  - Clarifies incident handling of security events
- It creates a security baseline of the current security posture:
  - Describes permitted and unpermitted behaviors
  - Defines consequences of asset misuse
  - Provides cost and risk analysis

Here are some questions you might need to ask when developing a security policy:

- What data and assets will be included in the policy?
- What network communication is permitted between hosts?
- How will policies be implemented?
- What happens if the policies are violated?
- How will the latest attacks impact your network and security systems?

## Security Policy Components

A security policy is divided into smaller parts that help describe the overall risk management policy, identification of assets, and where security should be applied. Other components of the security policy explain how responsibilities related to risk management are handled throughout the enterprise.

Further documents concentrate on specific areas of risk management:

- **Acceptable-use policy** is a general end-user document that is written in simple language. This document defines the roles and responsibilities within risk management and should have clear explanations to avoid confusion.
- **Network access control policy** defines general access control principles used in the network and how data is classified, such as confidential, top secret, or internal.
- **Security management policy** explains how to manage the security infrastructure.
- **Incident-handling policy** defines the processes and procedures for managing security incidents including the handling of emergency scenarios.

Several other documents supplement these; they vary depending on the organization. The security policy requires the acceptance and support of all employees to make it successful. All the key stakeholders or business leaders, including members of senior management, should have input into the development of the security policy. In addition, key stakeholders should continue to participate in the ongoing maintenance and updates to the security policy in order to keep it up-to-date.

Table 12-7 summarizes additional security policy documents.

**Table 12-7 Security Policy Documents**

Policy Description	Document Name
Defines the roles and responsibilities within risk management	Acceptable-use policy
Defines general access control principles used and how data is classified, such as confidential, top secret, or internal	Network access control policy
Explains how to manage the security infrastructure	Security management policy
Defines the processes and procedures for managing incidents	Incident-handling policy

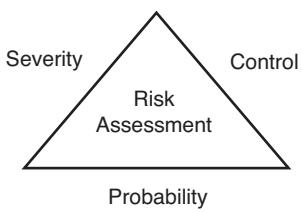


## Risk Assessment

Within network security, proper risk management is a technique used to lower risks to within acceptable levels. A well thought-out plan for network security design implements the components that are part of the security policy. The security policies that an organization employs use risk assessments and cost-benefit analysis to reduce security risks.

Figure 12-6 shows the three major components of risk assessment. *Control* refers to how you use the security policy to minimize potential risks. *Severity*

risk to the organization, and *probability* is the likeliness that an attack against the assets will occur.



**Figure 12-6** Risk Assessment Components

Risk assessments should explain the following:

- What assets to secure
- The monetary value of the assets
- The actual loss that would result from an attack
- The severity and the probability that an attack against the assets will occur
- How to use security policy to control or minimize the risks

In many cases, security costs can be justified by describing the loss of productivity or revenue that could occur during security incidents.

Generally, network systems are built with just enough security to reduce potential losses to a reasonable level. However, some organizations have higher security requirements, such as complying with PCI DSS, SOX or HIPAA regulations, so they need to employ stronger security mechanisms.

## Risk Index

A risk index is used to consider the risks of potential threats. The risk index is based on risk assessment components (factors):

- Severity of loss if the asset is compromised
- Probability of the risk actually occurring
- Ability to control and manage the risk

One approach to determining a risk index is to give each risk factor a value from 1 (lowest) to 3 (highest). For example, a high-severity risk would have a substantial impact on the user base and/or the entire organization. Medium-severity risks would have an effect on a single department or site. Low-severity risks would have limited impact and would be relatively straightforward to mitigate.

The risk index is calculated by multiplying the severity times the probability factor, and then dividing by the control factor:

$$\text{Risk index} = (\text{severity factor} * \text{probability factor}) / \text{control factor}$$

Table 12-8 shows a sample risk index calculation for a typical large corporation facing a couple of typical risks. If the risk index number calculated is high, there is more risk and therefore more impact to the organization. The lower the index number calculated means that there is less risk and less impact to the organization.

**Table 12-8 Risk Index Calculation**

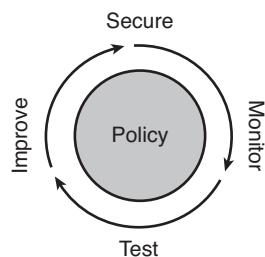
Risk	Severity (S) Range 1 to 3	Probability (P) Range 1 to 3	Control Range 1 to 3	Risk Index (S * P)/C Range .3 to 9
DoS attack lasting for 1.5 hours on the email server	2	2	1	4
Breach of confidential customer lists	3	1	2	1.5

### Continuous Security

As requirements change and new technology is developed, the network security policy should be updated to reflect the changes. Here are four steps are used to facilitate continuing efforts in maintaining security policies:

- Step 1. Secure:** Identification, authentication, ACLs, stateful packet inspection (SPI), encryption, and VPNs
- Step 2. Monitor:** Intrusion and content-based detection and response
- Step 3. Test:** Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing
- Step 4. Improve:** Data analysis, reporting, and intelligent network security

Figure 12-7 shows the four-step process that updates and continues the development of security policies.



**Figure 12-7 Continuous Security**

Table 12-9 lists the steps for continuous security.



**Table 12-9 Steps for Continuous Security**

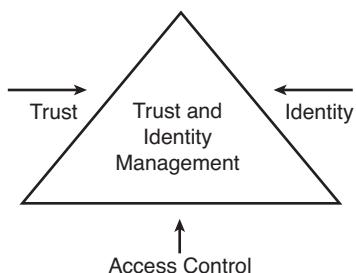
Process Description	Process Name
Identification, authentication, ACLs, stateful packet inspection (SPI), encryption, and VPNs	Secure
Intrusion and content-based detection and response	Monitor
Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing	Test
Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing	Improve

### Integrating Security Mechanisms into Network Design

Today's network designs demonstrate an increased use of security mechanisms and have become more tightly integrated with network design. Many security services such as IDS/IPS, firewalls, and IPsec virtual private network (VPN) concentrators now reside within the internal network infrastructure. It is recommended that you incorporate network security during the network design planning process. This requires close coordination between the various engineering and operation teams.

## Trust and Identity Management

Trust and identity management is part of the Cisco Security Architecture for the Enterprise (SAFE) security reference architecture that is crucial for the development of a secure network system. Trust and identity management defines who and what can access the network, and when, where, and how that access can occur. Access to the business applications and network equipment is based on the user-level rights that are granted and assigned by the administrators. Trust and identity management also attempts to isolate and keep infected machines off the network by enforcing access control. The three main components of trust and identity management are trust, identity, and access control, as shown in Figure 12-8. The following sections cover these components in detail.



**Figure 12-8 Trust and Identity Management**

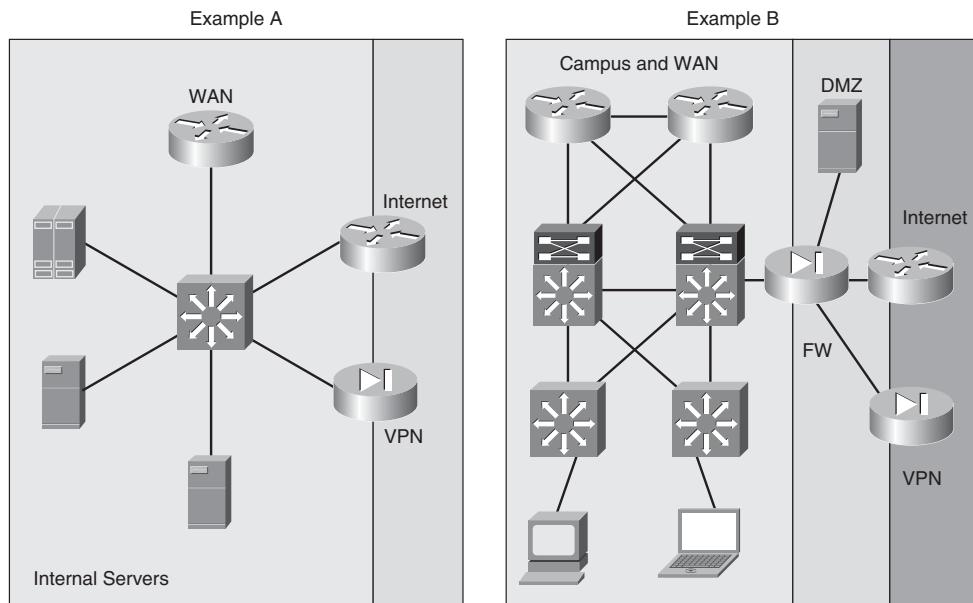
## Trust

Trust is the relationship between two or more network entities that are permitted to communicate. Security policy decisions are largely based on this premise of trust. If you are trusted, you are allowed to communicate as needed. However, sometimes security controls need to apply restraint to trust relationships by limiting or preventing access to the designated privilege level. Trust relationships can be explicit or implied by the organization. Some trust relationships can be inherited or passed down from one system to another. However, keep in mind that these trust relationships can also be abused.

## Domains of Trust

Domains of trust are a way to group network systems that share a common policy or function. Network segments have different trust levels, depending on the resources they are securing. When applying security controls within network segments, it is important to consider the trust relationships between the segments. Keep in mind that customers, partners, and employees each have their own unique sets of requirements from a security perspective that can be managed independently with “domains of trust” classifications. When domains of trust are managed in this way, consistent security controls within each segment can be applied.

Figure 12-9 shows two examples of trust domains with varying levels of trust segmented. The lighter shading indicates an internal environment with higher security, and the darker areas represent less-secure areas with lower security.



**Figure 12-9 Domains of Trust**

Trust levels such as the internal network can be very open and flexible, whereas the outside needs to be considered unsafe and therefore needs strong security to protect the resources. Table 12-10 shows different levels of trust, from low to high.

**Table 12-10 Domains of Trust: Risks from Low to High**

Domain	Level	Safeguards Required
Production to lab	Low risk	ACLs and network monitoring
Headquarters to branch (IPsec VPN)	Medium risk	Authentication, confidentiality, integrity concerns, ACLs, route filtering
Inside (private) to outside (public)	High risk	Stateful packet inspection, intrusion protection (IPS), security monitoring

## Identity

Identity is the “who” of a trust relationship. These can be users, devices, organizations, or all of the above. Network entities are validated by credentials. Authentication of the identity is based on the following attributes:

- **Something the subject knows:** Knowledge of a secret, password, PIN, or private key
- **Something the subject has:** Possession of an item such as a token card, smartcard, or hardware key
- **Something the subject is:** Human characteristics, such as a fingerprint, retina scan, or voice recognition

Generally, identity credentials are checked and authorized by requiring passwords, pins, tokens, or certificates.

## Passwords

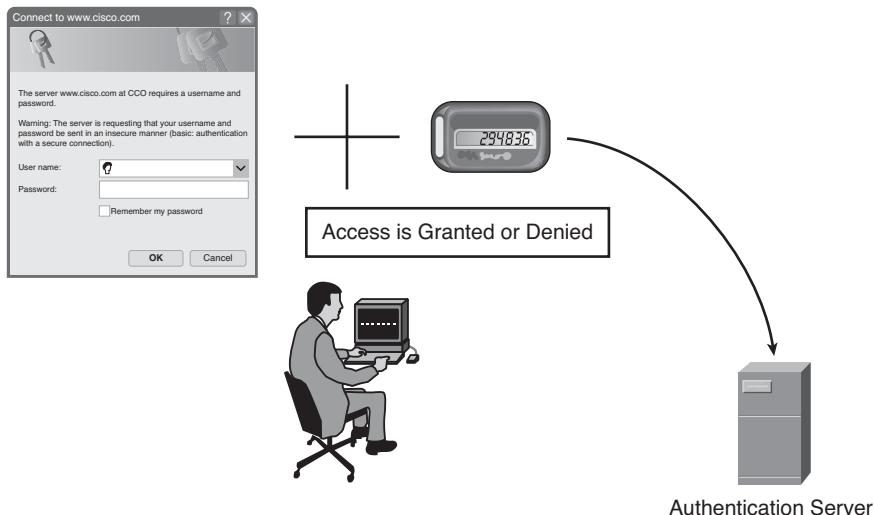
Passwords are used to give users access and allow them to access network resources. Passwords are an example of the authentication attribute called “something you know.” Typically, users do not want to use strong passwords; they usually prefer to use passwords that are easy to remember. Users present a weakness in password security that requires increased enforcement of the organization’s password policy. Passwords should not be common dictionary words and should be time-limited. Passwords should never be shared or posted on a computer monitor.

## Tokens

Tokens represent a way to increase security by requiring “two-factor authentication.” This type of authentication is based on “something you know” and “something you have.” For example, one factor may be a six-digit PIN, and another is the seven-digit code on the physical token. The code on the tokens changes frequently, and it is not useful without the PIN. The code plus the PIN is transmitted to the authentication server for authorization.

Some token-based systems even require a password along with the pin and code from the token. This is known as two-factor authentication.

Figure 12-10 shows two-factor authentication using a username and password, along with a token access code.



**Figure 12-10 Using Tokens**

### Certificates

Certificates are used to digitally prove your identity or right to access information or services. Certificates, also known as digital certificates, bind an identity to a pair of electronic keys that can be used to encrypt and sign digital information. A digital certificate is signed and issued by a certification authority (CA) with the CA's private key. A digital certificate contains the following:

- Owner's public key
- Owner's name
- Expiration date of the public key
- Name of the certificate authority
- Serial number
- Digital signature of the CA

Certificates can be read or written by an application conforming to the X.509 CCITT international standard and are typical when deploying Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)-based server applications.

## Access Control

Access control is a security mechanism for controlling admission to networks and resources. These controls enforce the security policy and employ rules about which resources can be accessed. Access control ensures the confidentiality and integrity of the network resources.

The core of network access control consists of the following:

- **Authentication** establishes the user's identity and access to the network resources.
- **Authorization** describes what can be done and what can be accessed.
- **Accounting** provides an audit trail of activities by logging the actions of the user.

Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) are the network security services that help manage the network access control on your network equipment.

## Secure Connectivity

Secure connectivity is a component of the Cisco SAFE security reference architecture. This component of SAFE aims to protect the integrity and privacy of organizations' sensitive information. With increased security risks on the rise, it is critical that security be implemented within today's network environments. Consider, for example, the increased use of the Internet as a transport for extranet and teleworker connectivity via always-on broadband connectivity. Internal network segments have traditionally been considered trusted, but now require higher levels of network security. However, internal threats are now more than ten times more expensive and destructive than external threats. Data that flows across the network needs to be secured so that its privacy and integrity are preserved. These are important concepts to keep in mind when making business decisions about securing connectivity.

The Cisco Secure Connectivity System provides secure transport for data and applications using encryption and authentication techniques. Many security technologies exist for securing data, voice, and video traffic using wired or wireless networks.

Security technologies include

- IP Security (IPsec)
- Secure Shell (SSH)
- Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)
- Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) VPNs
- MPLS VPNs with IPsec

## Encryption Fundamentals

Cryptography uses encryption to keep data private, thus protecting its confidentiality.

crypt the data and reveal the message transmitted. The encryption and decryption can be

used only by authorized users. Most encryption algorithms require the user to have knowledge of the secret keys. IPsec is an example of a security protocol framework that uses encryption algorithms to hide the IP packet payload during transmission.

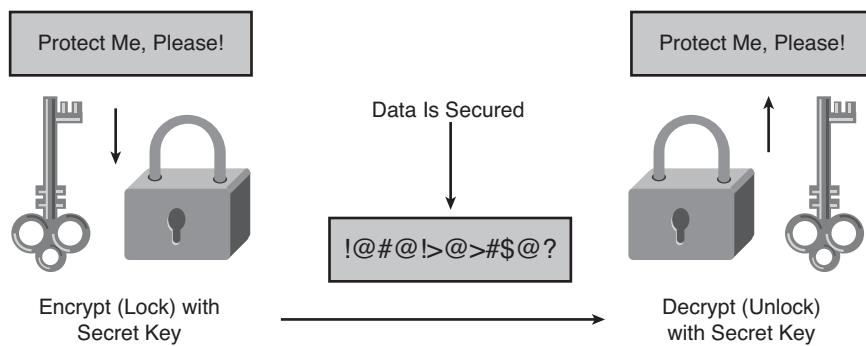
## Encryption Keys

An encryption session between two endpoints needs a key to encrypt the traffic and a key to decrypt the traffic at the remote endpoint. There are two ways to send a key to the remote endpoint:

- Shared secrets
  - Both sides can use the same key or use a transform to create the decryption key.
  - The key is placed on the remote endpoint out of band.
  - This is a simple mechanism, but it has security issues because the key does not change frequently enough.
- PKI
  - It relies on asymmetric cryptography, which uses two different keys for encryption.
  - Public keys are used to encrypt and private keys to decrypt.
  - PKI requires a certificate to be issued by a certificate authority (CA) and is used by many e-commerce sites on the Internet.



Figure 12-11 shows what occurs during the encryption process using shared secret keys.



**Figure 12-11** Encryption Keys

## VPN Protocols

There are several VPN protocols to choose from, each with varying benefits and uses:

- Standard IPsec
- secure data.

**Key**

- Uses Internet Key Exchange (IKE) for dynamic key exchange.
- Endpoints require IPsec software.
- Choose when multi-vendor interoperability support is required.
- Cisco Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)
  - Secure encrypted point-to-point generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnels
  - Provides on-demand spoke-to-spoke connectivity
  - Routing, multicast, and quality of service (QoS) support
  - When hub and spoke VPN is needed
- Cisco Easy VPN
  - Simplifies hub-and-spoke VPNs.
  - QoS support.
  - Choose when reducing management of VPNs is the primary goal.
- Cisco GRE-based VPN
  - Enables routing and multicast traffic across an IPsec VPN.
  - Non-IP protocol and QoS support.
  - Choose when more detailed configuration than DMVPN is required.
- Cisco GET VPN
  - Encryption integration on IP and MPLS WANs.
  - Simplifies encryption management using group keying.
  - Any-to-any connectivity.
  - Support for routing, multicast, and QoS.
  - Choose when adding encryption to IP or MPLS WANs while allowing any-to-any connectivity.

Table 12-11 describes key features of VPN security protocols.

**Table 12-11** *VPN Protocols*

VPN Description	VPN Name
Use AH and ESP to secure data; requires endpoints have IPsec software	Standard IPsec
Secure encrypted point-to-point GRE tunnels; on-demand spoke-to-spoke connectivity	Cisco DMVPN
Simplifies hub-and-spoke VPNs; need to reduce VPN management	Cisco Easy VPN

**Table 12-11** VPN Protocols

VPN Description	VPN Name
Enables routing and multicast traffic across an IPsec VPN; non-IP protocol and QoS support	Cisco GRE-based VPN
Encryption integration on IP and MPLS WANs; simplifies encryption management using group keying; any-to-any connectivity	Cisco GET VPN

IPsec comes in two forms: IP ESP and IP AH, which use protocol numbers 50 and 51, respectively. ESP is defined in RFC 2406, and AH is defined in RFC 2402. ESP provides confidentiality, data-origin authentication, integrity, and anti-replay service. AH allows for connectionless integrity, origin authentication, and anti-replay protection. These protocols can be used together or independently. Most IPsec-enabled clients or routers use IKE to exchange keys and ESP to encrypt the traffic.

Another type of VPN technology is SSL VPNs, which have become increasingly popular because of their clientless nature. The client only needs a standard web browser and a connection to the SSL VPN host, usually via the Internet.

### Transmission Confidentiality

To ensure that data is kept private over unsecure networks such as the Internet, transmission confidentiality is used. Because the Internet is a public network, ordinary access control mechanisms are unavailable. Therefore, you need to encrypt the data before transporting over any untrusted network such as the Internet.

To provide transmission confidentiality, IPsec VPNs that support encryption can create a secure tunnel between the source and destination. As packets leave one site, they are encrypted; when they reach the remote site, they are decrypted. Eavesdropping on the Internet can occur, but with IPsec-encrypted packets, it is much more difficult.

IPsec VPNs commonly use well-known algorithms to perform the confidentiality treatment for packets. The well-known cryptographic algorithms include Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES), Advanced Encryption Standard (AES), and Rivest Cipher 4 (RC4). These algorithms are thoroughly tested and checked and are considered trusted. However, keep in mind that cryptography can pose some performance problems, depending on the network's state. That is why it is important to carefully analyze the network before deploying VPNs with IPsec.

### Data Integrity

Cryptographic protocols protect data from tampering by employing secure fingerprints and digital signatures that can detect changes in data integrity.

Secure fingerprints function by appending a checksum to data that is generated and verified with the secret key. Only those who are authorized also know the secret key. An example of secure fingerprints is Hash-based Message Authentication Code (HMAC), which maintains packet integrity and the authenticity of the data protected.

Digital signatures use a related cryptography method that digitally signs the packet data. A signer creates the signature using a key that is unique and known only to the original signer. Recipients of the message can check the signature by using the signature verification key. The cryptography inherent in digital signatures guarantees accuracy and authenticity because the originator signed it. Financial businesses rely on digital signatures to electronically sign documents and also to prove that the transactions did in fact occur.

Keep in mind the following data integrity guidelines:

- Analyze the need for transmission integrity.
- Factor in performance, but use the strongest cryptography.
- Always use well-known cryptographic algorithms.

## Threat Defense

As part of the Cisco SAFE security reference architecture, threat defense enhances the security in the network by adding increased levels of security protection on network devices, appliances, and endpoints. Both internal and external threats have become much more destructive than in the past. DoS attacks, man-in-the-middle attacks, and Trojan horses have the potential to severely impact business operations. The Cisco Threat Defense System (Cisco TDS) provides a strong defense against these internal and external threats.

Threat defense has three main areas of focus:

- **Enhancing the security of the existing network:** Preventing loss of downtime, revenue, and reputation
- **Adding full security services for network endpoints:** Securing servers and desktops endpoints with Cisco Network Admission Control (NAC)
- **Enabling integrated security in routers, switches, and appliances:** Security techniques enabled throughout the network, not just in point products or locations

## Physical Security

During your security implementations, it is essential to incorporate physical security to increase the strength of the overall security design. Physical security helps protect and restrict access to network resources and physical network equipment. Sound security policies must defend against potential attacks that can cause loss of uptime or reputation, or even revenue impacts.

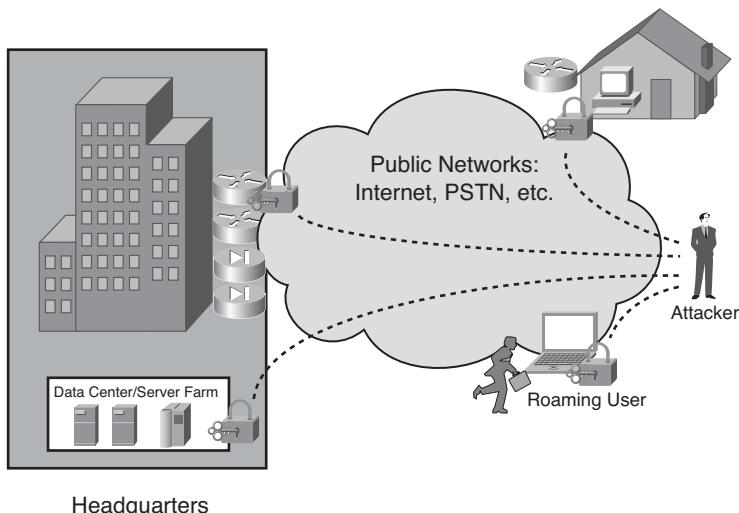
Here are some considerations for potential physical threats:

- Vulnerabilities inherent in systems when attackers access the hardware directly through console access or untrusted software.
- Access to the network, allowing attackers to capture, alter, or remove data flowing in the network.
- Attackers may use their own hardware, such as a laptop or router, to inject malicious traffic onto the network.

Keep in mind these physical security guidelines when designing physical security architectures:

- Use physical access controls such as locks or alarms.
- Evaluate potential security breaches.
- Assess the impact of stolen network resources and equipment.
- Use controls such as cryptography to secure traffic flowing on networks outside your control.

Figure 12-12 shows some physical security threat locations that an attacker could potentially exploit.



**Figure 12-12 Physical Security Threats**

### Infrastructure Protection

The infrastructure needs to be protected using security features and services to meet the growing needs of business without disruption. Infrastructure protection is the process of taking steps to reduce the risks and threats to the network infrastructure and to maintain the integrity and high availability of network resources.

By using best practices and a security policy, you can secure and harden the infrastructure equipment to prevent potential attacks. To combat network threats, Cisco has enhanced Cisco IOS with security features to support the secure infrastructure and increase the network's availability.

Here are some recommended best practices for infrastructure protection:

- Access network equipment remotely with SSH rather than with Telnet.
- In network switching infrastructure, use BPDU Guard, Root Guard, and VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) mode Transparent.

- In network switching infrastructure, use ARP inspection and DHCP snooping.
- In network switching infrastructure, use Control Plane Policing (CoPP).
- Use AAA for access control management.
- Enable syslog collection; review the logs for further analysis.
- Use Simple Network Management Protocol Version 3 (SNMPv3) for its security and privacy features.
- Disable unused network services, such as tcp-small-servers and udp-small-servers.
- Use FTP or SFTP rather than TFTP to manage images.
- Use access classes to restrict access to management and the command-line interface (CLI).
- Enable routing protocol authentication when available (Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol [EIGRP], Open Shortest Path First [OSPF] Protocol, Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System [IS-IS], Border Gateway Protocol [BGP], Hot Standby Router Protocol [HSRP], VLAN Trunking Protocol [VTP]).
- Use one-step lockdown in Security Device Manager (SDM) before connecting the router to the Internet.

## Security Management Solutions

Security management solutions are used to monitor, control, and support the network infrastructure. These same tools can be helpful during network audits and can save administrators a considerable amount of time.



Security management solutions provide the following:

- Collects, interprets, and presents information
- Provisions network security policies for deployment
- Maintains consistency by tracking policy changes
- Monitors account activity and provides role-based access control (RBAC)

*A strong security implementation is only as good as the policies that are used. One of the biggest risks with a good security implementation is policy error. The network operations personnel need to fully understand the security policies, processes, and tools so that they can respond quickly when a security incident arises.*

## References and Recommended Readings

IANA protocol numbers, [www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers](http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers)

Module 6, “Evaluating Security Solutions for the Network,” Designing for Cisco Internetwork Solution Course (DESGN) v2.1.

Cisco SAFE Solution Overview, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/SAFE\\_SolOver.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/SAFE_SolOver.html).

Cisco SAFE Reference Guide, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/SAFE\\_RG/Safe\\_rg.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/SAFE_RG/Safe_rg.html).

RFC 2196, Site Security Handbook, [www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2196.txt](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2196.txt)

RFC 2402, IP Authentication Header, [www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2402.txt](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2402.txt).

RFC 2406, IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP), [www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2406.txt](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2406.txt).

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 12-12 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 12-12** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Table 12-2	Security legislation	449
Table 12-3	Security threats	450
Table 12-4	Security risks	453
Table 12-5	Software features to manage DoS attacks	454
Table 12-6	Key network security elements of the network security life cycle	457
Table 12-7	Security policy documents	459
Table 12-9	Steps for continuous security	462
List	Two ways to send a key to the remote endpoint	467
List	VPN protocols	467
List	Security management solutions	472

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

## Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

U.S. Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002, Gramm-Leach-Bliley Financial Services Modernization Act of 1999 (GLBA), U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA), EU Data Protection Directive 95/46/EC, reconnaissance, gaining unauthorized access, denial of service (DoS), NMAP, Superscan, DHCP snooping, Dynamic ARP Inspection, Unicast RPF, access control lists (ACLs), rate limiting, NetStumbler, Kismet, acceptable-use policy, network access control policy, security management policy, incident-handling policy, secure, monitor, test, improve, authentication, authorization, accounting, Adaptive Security Appliance (ASA), routers, Catalyst switches

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

1. What technique can be used to protect private information that is transported over the Internet between the headquarters and branch office? (Select the best answer.)
  - a. Authentication
  - b. Log all data
  - c. Encryption
  - d. Accounting
2. What would be recommended to protect database servers connected to or accessible from the Internet? (Select all that apply.)
  - a. Firewall
  - b. Server load balancing (SLB)
  - c. Syslog
  - d. SPAN
3. What network security issue does 3DES encryption aim to solve?
  - a. Data integrity
  - b. User authentication
  - c. Data authentication
  - d. Data confidentiality

- 4.** Users are reporting a DoS attack in the DMZ. All the servers have been patched, and all unnecessary services have been turned off. What else can you do to alleviate some of the attack's effects? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** Rate limit traffic on the firewall's ingress.
  - b.** Use ACLs to let only allowed traffic into the network.
  - c.** Block all TCP traffic from unknown sources.
  - d.** DHCP snooping for the DMZ segment.
- 5.** You are a network engineer for ABC Corp. You need to bring your coworkers up-to-date on network security threats. What would you discuss with them? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** Reconnaissance and gaining unauthorized access
  - b.** DHCP snooping
  - c.** DMZ security
  - d.** DoS
- 6.** True or false: IPsec can ensure data integrity and confidentiality across the Internet.
- 7.** What focuses on the accuracy and controls imposed on a company's financial records?
  - a.** HIPAA
  - b.** GLBA
  - c.** SOX
  - d.** EU Data Protection Directive
- 8.** What are components of managing the security infrastructure? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** Security management policy
  - b.** Incident-handling policy
  - c.** Network access control policy
  - d.** None of the above
- 9.** Which security legislative body calls for the protection of people's privacy?
  - a.** HIPAA
  - b.** GLBA
  - c.** EU Data Protection Directive
  - d.** SOX

- 10.** How can attackers obtain sensitive account information? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Password-cracking utilities
  - b.** Capturing network traffic
  - c.** Social engineering
  - d.** All of the above
- 11.** What best describes how to protect data's integrity?
- a.** System availability
  - b.** Data confidentiality
  - c.** Ensuring that only legitimate users can view sensitive data
  - d.** Allowing only authorized users to modify data
- 12.** What provides an audit trail of network activities?
- a.** Authentication
  - b.** Accounting
  - c.** Authorization
  - d.** SSHv1
- 13.** What authenticates valid DHCP servers to ensure unauthorized host systems are not from interfering with production systems?
- 14.** What contains the organization's procedures, guidelines, and standards?
- 15.** How can you enforce access control? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** Restrict access using VLANs
  - b.** Restrict access using OS-based controls
  - c.** Use encryption techniques
  - d.** All of the above
- 16.** What is a general user document that is written in simple language to describe the roles and responsibilities within risk management?
- 17.** True or false: The network access control policy defines the general access control principles used and how data is classified, such as confidential, top secret, or internal.

- 18.** What are the four steps used to facilitate continuing efforts in maintaining security policies?
- a.** Secure, monitor, maintain, close out
  - b.** Monitor, test, evaluate, purchase
  - c.** Improve, test, purchase, evaluate
  - d.** Secure, monitor, test, improve
- 19.** Match the encryption keys and VPN protocols with their definitions.
- i. IPsec
  - ii. SSL
  - iii. Shared secret
  - iv. PKI
- a.** Both sides use the same key.
  - b.** Uses AH and ESP.
  - c.** Web browser TCP port 443.
  - d.** Asymmetric cryptography.
- 20.** What does Cisco recommend as the foundation of any deployed security solution?
- a.** Customer requirements
  - b.** Security audit
  - c.** SLA policy
  - d.** Security policy
- 21.** Which two of the following protocols are used for IP security?
- a.** SSH and EIGRP
  - b.** BGP and TCP
  - c.** AH and ESP
  - d.** SSH and RIP

- 22.** Which security solution best meets requirements for confidentiality, integrity, and authenticity when using the public network such as the Internet?
- a.** Cisco IOS firewall
  - b.** Intrusion prevention
  - c.** Secure connectivity
  - d.** AAA
  - e.** Traffic Guard Protector
- 23.** What uses security integrated into routers, switches, and appliances to defend against attacks?
- a.** Trust and identity management
  - b.** Threat defense
  - c.** Secure connectivity
  - d.** Cisco SAFE
  - e.** Secure firewalling
- 24.** Encryption and authentication are used to provide secure transport across untrusted networks by providing \_\_\_\_\_.
- a.** Trust and identity management
  - b.** Threat defense
  - c.** Secure connectivity
  - d.** Cisco SAFE
  - e.** Secure firewalling



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Cisco SAFE Architecture
- Trust and Identity Technologies
- Detecting and Mitigating Threats
- Security Management Applications
- Integrating Security into Network Devices
- Securing the Enterprise

## Security Solutions

---

This chapter covers Cisco Security Architecture for the Enterprise (SAFE), security technologies, and design options for securing the enterprise. The CCDA candidate can expect many questions related to integrating security technologies and mitigating security exposures. This chapter also focuses on how to integrate security into existing network devices and security platforms throughout your network. Furthermore, the CCDA must understand the different types of security features available and where to deploy them.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 13-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 13-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Cisco SAFE Architecture	1, 2
Trust and Identity Technologies	3, 4
Detecting and Mitigating Threats	5, 6
Security Management Applications	7
Integrating Security into Network Devices	8
Securing the Enterprise	9, 10

- 1.** Which of the following are benefits of using Cisco SAFE Architecture? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** SAFE eases the development, implementation, and management of secure networks.
  - b.** SAFE provides for an open, modular, and expandable structure.
  - c.** SAFE is the basis for the design of highly available secure networks.
  - d.** SAFE provides for self-healing of network devices.
- 2.** What network security platform combines a high-performance firewall with an IPS, antivirus, IPsec, and an SSL VPN in a single unified architecture?
  - a.** Integrated Services Routers
  - b.** Cisco Catalyst switches
  - c.** Adaptive Security Appliances
  - d.** NAC
- 3.** Which media-level access control standard developed by IEEE permits and denies access to the network and applies traffic policy based on identity?
  - a.** AES
  - b.** 802.1X
  - c.** NAC
  - d.** FWSM
- 4.** What mechanism protects networks from threats by enforcing security compliance on all devices attempting to access the network?
  - a.** NAC
  - b.** SNMP
  - c.** ASDM
  - d.** SDM
- 5.** Which of the following can be used to perform firewall filtering with the use of ACLs? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** ASA
  - b.** IPS
  - c.** FWSM
  - d.** All of the above

- 6.** What Cisco security appliance acts as an SMTP gateway for the enterprise?
  - a.** Cisco NAC Appliance
  - b.** Cisco IronPort ESA
  - c.** Cisco ASA
  - d.** Cisco IronPort WSA
- 7.** Which security management solution integrates the configuration management of firewalls, VPNs, routers, switch modules, and IPS devices?
  - a.** CSM
  - b.** SDM
  - c.** ASDM
  - d.** ACS
- 8.** When integrating security into the network, which of the following can be used? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** RMON
  - b.** ASA
  - c.** Cisco IOS IPS
  - d.** Syslog
- 9.** Which of the following technologies is used to detect and mitigate threats in network traffic?
  - a.** 802.1X
  - b.** NetFlow
  - c.** NAC
  - d.** SSH
- 10.** What Cisco security management platform is used to control the TACACS and RADIUS protocols?
  - a.** SSH
  - b.** NIPS
  - c.** ACS
  - d.** IDM

---

## Foundation Topics

---

This chapter covers security topics that you need to master for the CCDA exam. It begins with a discussion of the Cisco SAFE architecture and then covers the strategy for identifying and responding to security threats. The next section, “Trust and Identity Technologies,” discusses the technologies and services used on network security devices such as routers and firewalls. The section “Detecting and Mitigating Threats” covers the technologies supporting threat defense, such as network- and host-based intrusion prevention systems (IPS), Adaptive Security Appliances (ASA), and Cisco Security Monitoring, Analysis, and Response System (MARS).

The “Security Management Applications” section describes the Cisco security management products designed to support the Cisco SAFE architecture. Next, the “Integrating Security into Network Devices” section covers the security features integrated into Cisco network devices, such as routers, firewalls, IPS, endpoint security, and Catalyst service modules. Then, the “Securing the Enterprise” section reviews the locations to deploy security devices and solutions in the enterprise campus, data center, and WAN edge.

## Cisco SAFE Architecture

Cisco Security Architecture for the Enterprise (SAFE) is a security reference architecture that provides detailed design and implementation guidelines to assist in the development of secure and reliable networks. Part of the SAFE architecture discusses the building blocks of secure networks that are resilient to well-known and new forms of attack. Because enterprise networks are key enablers of business, networks must be designed with integrated security in mind to ensure confidentiality, integrity, and availability of network resources, especially those networks that support critical business activity.

One key principle of Cisco SAFE architecture relates to the need for deep security and protection from both the inside and outside of the organization, along with providing guidelines for analyzing security requirements. The Cisco SAFE approach allows for the analysis of expected threats and supports the design of the network security strategy. In addition, the modular nature of Cisco SAFE allows for the security system to be expanded and scaled as the business grows.

Here are the goals of Cisco SAFE:

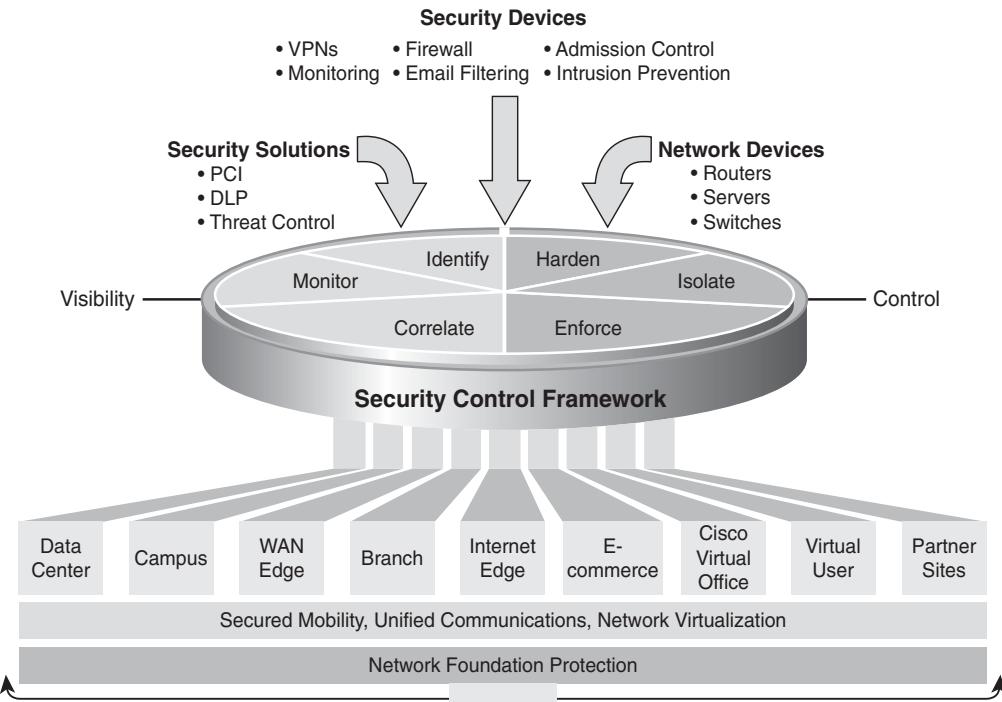
- Mitigation of threats and security based on policy
- Secure management tools and the development of reports
- Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) for network equipment
- Use of security mechanisms for all network devices
- Intrusion detection for network devices and IP subnets

Here are the benefits of Cisco SAFE:

- SAFE is the basis for the design of highly available secure networks.
- SAFE provides for an open, modular, and expandable structure.

- SAFE facilitates the development, implementation, and management of secure networks.

Figure 13-1 shows Cisco SAFE components and major concepts.



**Figure 13-1 Cisco SAFE Architecture**

## Network Security Platforms

Network security starts with having a secure underlying network. The underlying network provides an ideal place to implement core and advanced security solutions. The center of these secure network solutions consists of the Adaptive Security Appliances (ASA), Integrated Services Routers (ISR), and Cisco Catalyst switches that have integrated security features. These are highly intelligent network security devices with many built-in security features that provide a framework for incorporating security throughout the network. Here is a description of some important security device platforms:

- ASA is a high-performance firewall appliance with IPS, antivirus, IPsec, and Secure Shell (SSL) virtual private network (VPN) technologies integrated into a single unified architecture. ASA also has embedded Network Admission Control (NAC) capabilities.
- ISR G2 combines IOS firewall, VPN, and IPS services across the router portfolio, enabling new security features on existing routers. Supported VPNs include IPsec VPN,

Cisco Easy VPN, Dynamic Multipoint VPN (DMVPN), and SSL VPN. ISRs can also be NAC enabled.

- Cisco Catalyst switches include denial of service (DoS) and man-in-the-middle attack mitigations and integration with service modules that provide firewall and VPN capabilities providing for secure connectivity. Unique security zones can be set up along with the virtualization of firewalls.

## Cisco Security Control Framework

The Cisco Security Control Framework (SCF) is a security framework that provides a foundation for securing networks based on proven industry best practices and security architecture principles. Cisco SCF is designed to address current threats and threats that are still evolving by using common and comprehensive security solutions. The Cisco SAFE architecture uses SCF to develop secure network designs that ensure high availability of network services. Cisco SCF influences security product selection and helps guide network implementations to allow for better visibility and control.

SCF assumes the presence of security policies derived from threat and risk assessments that complement the goals of the business. Security policies and guidelines define the acceptable-use policy for the secure use of network services and devices in the organization. The security policies should also determine the process and procedures for handling security events, which help define the security operations. To achieve business goals, it is critical to businesses that security policy and procedures empower the business rather than prevent access.



Total Visibility and Complete Control are two of the main components of SCF. Network security is a function of visibility and control. Without visibility, there is a lack of control, and without control, you are missing key elements of security. The success of a security policy depends on solid visibility and control. Within SCF, there are 6 security actions used to enforce security policy and allow for visibility and control. Visibility is improved with *identify*, *monitor*, and *correlate* security actions; and control is enhanced through the *harden*, *isolate*, and *enforce* security actions. Each of these security actions is further defined in the SCF model.

Figure 13-2 describes of components of the Cisco SCF model.

## Trust and Identity Technologies



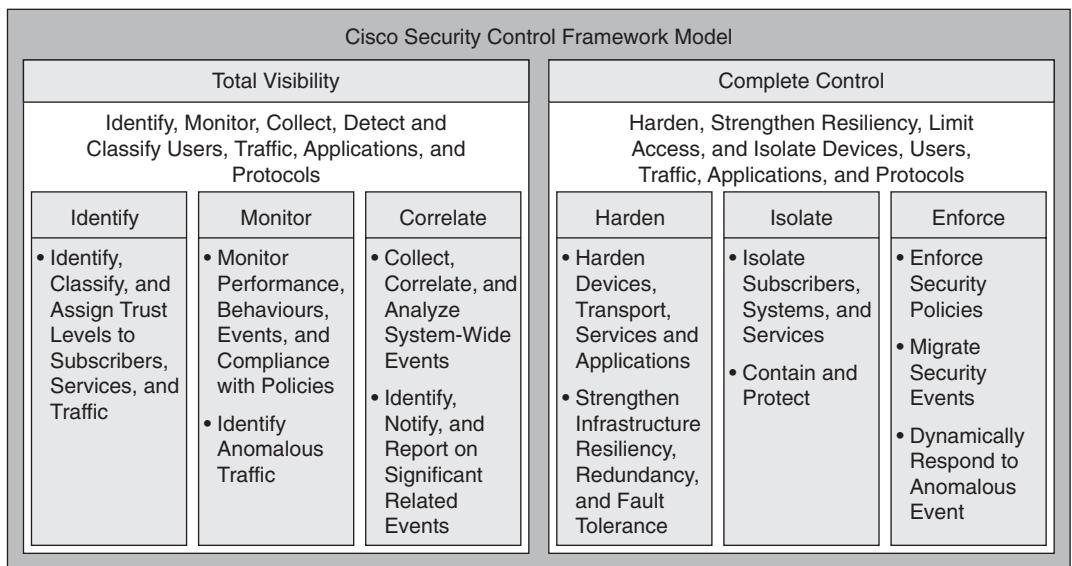
Trust and identity technologies are security controls that enable network traffic security. The following are examples of technologies used to support trust and identity management:

- **Access control lists (ACL):** ACLs are used on routers, switches, and firewalls to control access. For example, ACLs are commonly used to restrict traffic on the ingress or egress of an interface by a wide variety of methods, such as using IP addresses and TCP or User Datagram Protocol (UDP) ports.
- **Firewall:** A security device designed to permit or deny network traffic based on

riety by using the access and authorization policy to determine what is trusted and

untrusted. The firewall also performs stateful packet inspection (SPI), which keeps track of the state of each TCP/UDP connection. SPI permits ingress traffic if the traffic originated from a higher security interface, such as the inside.

- **Cisco Network Admission Control (NAC) Appliance:** Protects the network from security threats by enforcing security compliance on all devices attempting to access the network.
- **802.1X:** An IEEE media-level access control standard that permits and denies admission to the network and applies traffic policy based on identity.
- **Cisco Identity-Based Network Services (IBNS):** Based on several Cisco solutions integrated to enable authentication, access control, and user policies to secure network infrastructure and resources.



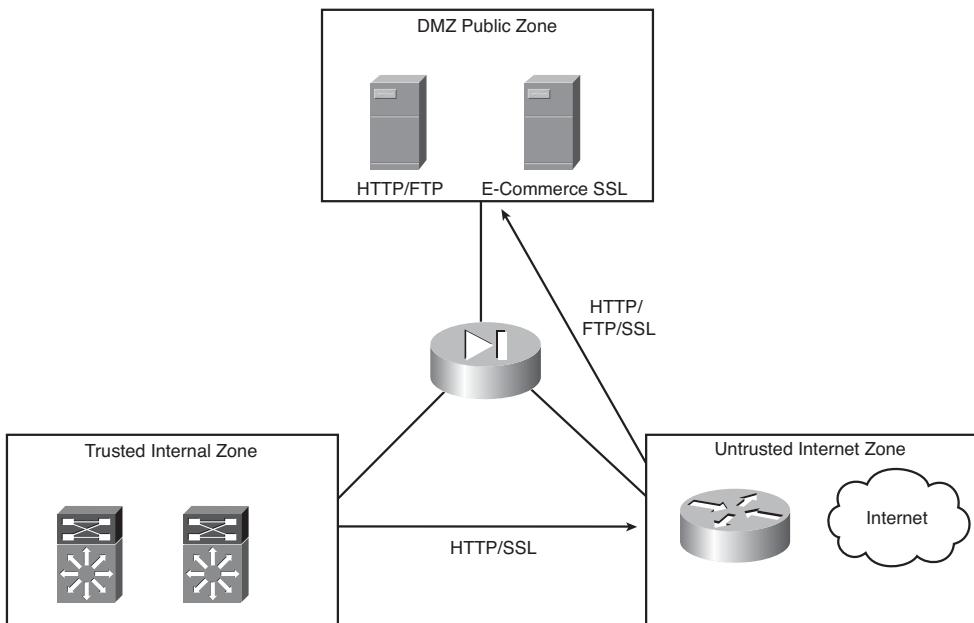
**Figure 13-2 Cisco Security Control Framework**

The following sections cover some of these trust and identity technologies in more detail.

### Firewall ACLs

Firewalls control access to and from the Internet and to provide interaction with customers, suppliers, and employees. But because the Internet is unsecure, firewalls need to use ACLs to permit and deny traffic flowing through it. Firewalls use security zones to define trust levels that are associated with the firewall's interfaces. For example, the trusted zone is associated with an interface connected to the internal network, and the untrusted zone is associated with an interface connected to outside of the firewall. Common security zones include the inside, outside, and demilitarized zone (DMZ), but others can be created as needed.

Figure 13-3 shows an ASA firewall with three zones and the permitted policy and flow of the traffic.



**Figure 13-3** Firewall ACLs and Zones

The policy for the firewall shown in Figure 13-3 includes the following:

- Allow HTTP and HTTPS to the Internet
- Allow HTTPS and FTP to the public web and FTP server
- Allow HTTPS to the public e-commerce server

### Cisco NAC Appliance

The Cisco NAC Appliance is a turnkey solution that can meet any organization's technology and operational needs. The Cisco NAC Appliance is a self-contained product that integrates with the infrastructure to provide user authentication and enforce security policy for wired and wireless devices seeking access into the network. NAC Appliances can provide posture compliance and remediation before allowing access to the network infrastructure.

NAC can restrict access of noncompliant devices but permit access to trusted wired or wireless endpoints such as desktops, laptops, PDAs, and servers.

Successful deployments of NAC infrastructure require detailed planning, with considerations for timeframes, groups involved, and customer requirements.

## Cisco Identity-Based Network Services

The Cisco Identity-Based Network Services solution is a way to authenticate host access based on policy for admission to the network. IBNS supports identity authentication, dynamic provisioning of VLANs on a per-user basis, guest VLANs, and 802.1X with port security.

The 802.1X protocol is a standards-based protocol for authenticating network clients by permitting or denying access to the network. The 802.1X protocol operates between the end-user client seeking access and an Ethernet switch or wireless access point (AP) providing the connection to the network. In 802.1X terminology, clients are called supplicants, and switches and APs are called authenticators. A back-end RADIUS server such as a Cisco Access Control Server (ACS) provides the user account database used to apply authentication and authorization.

With an IBNS solution, the host uses 802.1X and Extensible Authentication Protocol over LANs (EAPoL) to send the credentials and initiate a session to the network. After the host and switch establish LAN connectivity, username and password credentials are requested. The client host then sends the credentials to the switch, which forwards them to the RADIUS ACS.

The RADIUS ACS performs a lookup on the username and password to determine the credentials' validity. If the username and password are correct, an accept message is sent to the switch or AP to allow access to the client host. If the username and password are incorrect, the server sends a message to the switch or AP to block the host port.

Figure 13-4 illustrates the communication flow of two hosts using 802.1X and EAPoL with the switch, AP, and back-end RADIUS server.

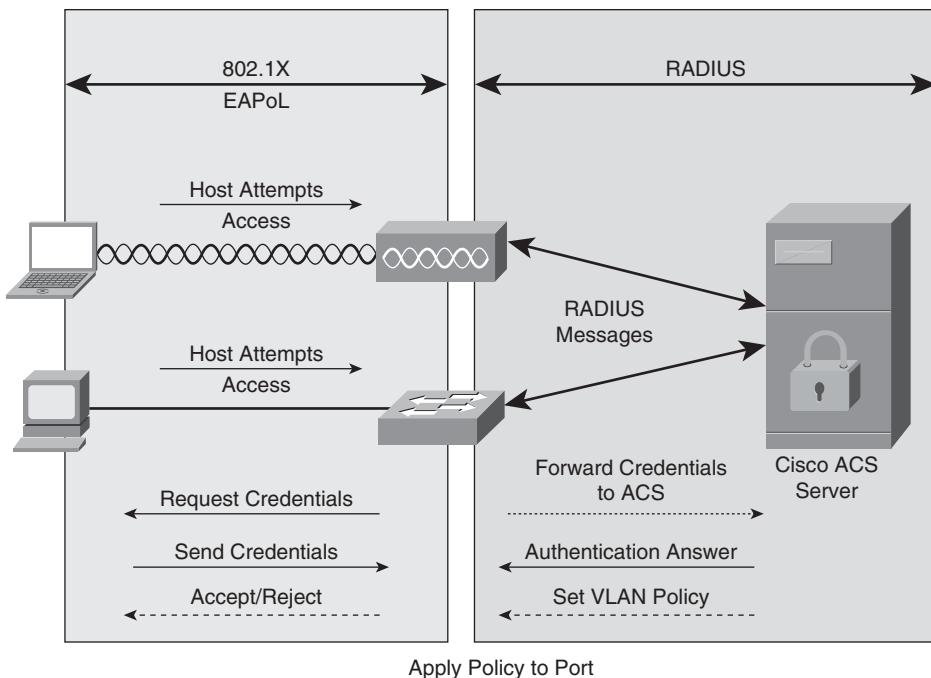
## Identity and Access Control Deployments

Validating user authentication should be implemented as close to the source as possible, with an emphasis on strong authentication for access from untrusted networks. Access rules should enforce policy deployed throughout the network with the following guidelines:

- Source-specific rules with *any* type destinations should be applied as close to the source as possible.
- Destination-specific rules with *any* type sources should be applied as close to the destination as possible.
- Mixed rules integrating both source and destination should be used as close to the source as possible.

An integral part of identity and access control deployments is to allow only the necessary access. Highly distributed rules allow for greater granularity and scalability but, unfortunately, increase the management complexity. On the other hand, centralized rule deployment eases management but lacks flexibility and scalability.

Practicing “defense in depth” by using security mechanisms that back each other up is an ACLs to filter packets in addition to the firewall inspecting packets at a deeper level.



**Figure 13-4** 802.1X and EAPoL

Figure 13-5 shows the importance of the authentication databases and how many network components in the enterprise rely on them for authentication services.

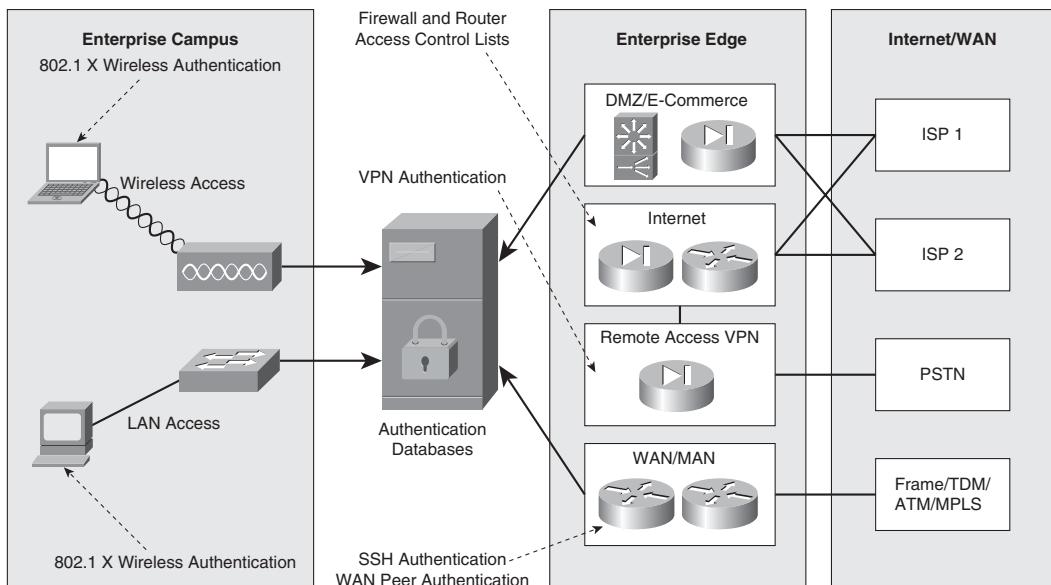
## Detecting and Mitigating Threats

### Key Topic

The use of threat detection and mitigation techniques enables early detection of and notifications about unwanted malicious traffic. The goals are to detect, notify, and help stop unforeseen and unauthorized traffic. These techniques help increase the network's availability, particularly against unidentified and unexpected attacks. Threat detection and mitigation solutions include the following:

- **Endpoint protection:** Viruses and worms can create havoc by propagating infections from host to host throughout the network. Antivirus services can help hosts detect and remove infections based on known virus pattern markings.
- **Application security and content security defense:** Several new application layer network products have been released that help address new classes of threats, such as spam, phishing, spyware, packet abuse, and unauthorized point-to-point file sharing. Content security products such as Cisco IronPort Appliances provide comprehensive antivirus, antispyware, file-blocking, antispam, URL blocking, and content-filtering services. These products supplement traditional firewalls and network-based intrusion detection system (NIDS) solutions with more granular traffic throughout the network.

- **Infection containment:** The Cisco ASA, Firewall Services Module (FWSM), and IOS firewalls protect the network by creating security zones that partition the network into separate segments. The firewall services provide perimeter network security but do not eliminate the need for continuous network monitoring. As part of the Cisco SAFE architecture, NAC can be used in the perimeter to perform policy-based admission control, thus reducing potential threats.
- **Inline IPS and anomaly detection:** Cisco has innovated in the area of NIDS by being the first to incorporate NIDS into the IOS on routing and switching platforms. In addition, IPS solutions have inline filtering features that can remove unwanted traffic with programmable features that classify traffic patterns. The Cisco IPS 4200 sensor appliances, Cisco Catalyst 6500 IDSM-2, and the Cisco IOS IPS can identify, analyze, and stop unwanted traffic from flowing on the network. Another set of tools used to prevent distributed Dos (DDoS) attacks and ensure business continuity is the Cisco Traffic Anomaly Detector XT and Guard XT appliances, along with the Cisco Catalyst 6500 Traffic Anomaly Detector Module and Cisco Anomaly Guard Module.



**Figure 13-5** Identity and Access Control

### Threat Detection and Mitigation Technologies

Here are some examples of Cisco threat-detection and threat-mitigation technologies:

- **FWSM:** Catalyst 6500 Firewall Services Module
- **ASA:** Adaptive Security Appliance (Robust firewall or NIPS)

- IOS firewall: Cisco IOS software feature set
- IPS sensor appliance: NIPS
- IPS: Intrusion prevention system (IOS feature)
- NAC: Cisco NAC Appliance
- Cisco Traffic Anomaly Detector Module: Detects high-speed DoS attacks
- Cisco IronPort Web Security Appliance (Cisco WSA)
- Cisco IronPort Email Security Appliance (Cisco ESA)
- Network management protocols and solutions
  - **NetFlow:** Stats on packets flowing through router (IOS feature)
  - **Syslog:** Logging data (IOS feature)
  - **SNMP:** Simple Network Management Protocol (IOS feature)
  - **Cisco MARS:** Monitoring, Analysis, and Response System
  - **Cisco Security Manager**
  - **Cisco NAC Manager**

### Threat-Detection and Threat-Mitigation Solutions

Threat-detection and threat-mitigation solutions are deployed throughout the network and can serve as an effective layered defense for secure network communications. For example, suppose your network is being attacked from the Internet (for example, via a worm or virus outbreak). The Internet WAN routers are your first line of protection and can be used to spot increasing network load or suspicious NetFlow data. After some information has been collected, you can use specific granular ACLs to further identify the attack.

The NIPS appliances can provide deep packet inspection to determine the additional details about the attack's signature. The IPS signature information, along with other data that is collected, can be used to correlate a solution to prevent and stop the attack.

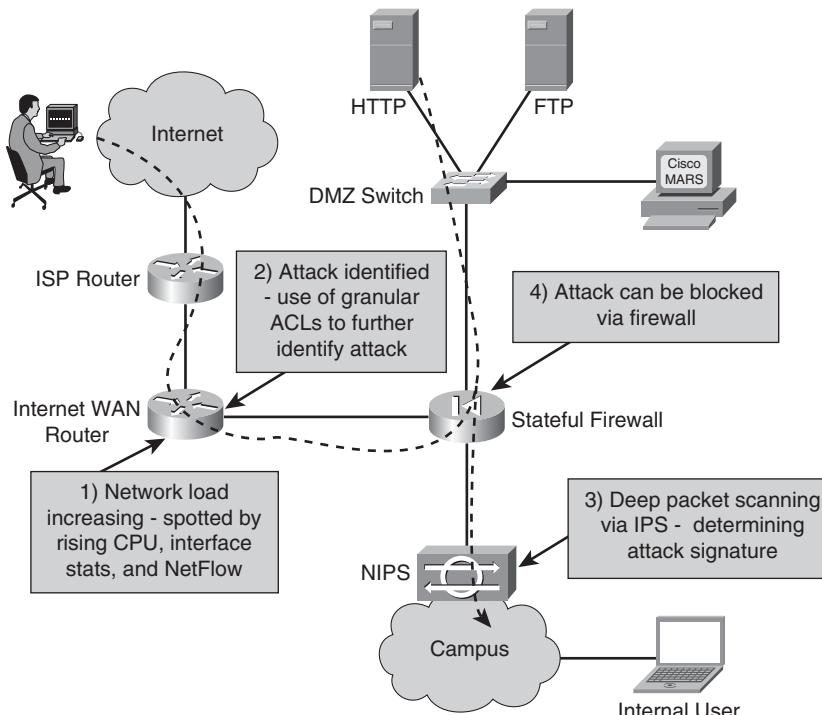
Firewalls can perform stateful packet inspections and can ultimately block unwanted network traffic in the event of an attack. However, it is preferable to engage the ISP and have them block the attack from even entering your network.

To successfully detect threats and mitigate them, it is important to understand where to look for potential threats. The following are good sources of information for detecting and mitigating threats:

- NetFlow
- Syslog
- Remote Monitor (RMON) events

- Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) thresholds and traps
- CPU and interface statistics
- Cisco Security MARS reporting

Figure 13-6 depicts an attacker sourcing from the Internet and targeting the internal network and how to detect and mitigate the threat.



**Figure 13-6 Threat Detection and Mitigation**

### Cisco IronPort ESA

IronPort Email Security Appliances (ESA) are designed to protect networks from today's and tomorrow's email threats. IronPort ESA is a firewall and threat-monitoring appliance for Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP; TCP port 25)-based traffic. In the email delivery process, ESA acts as a SMTP gateway firewall for the enterprise. One of the advantages of using IronPort ESA for your MTA is that ESA can determine the source IP address and query that against the Cisco SensorBase to get the sender's reputation score. IronPort ESA uses the reputation score to stop junk mail and various malware from arriving in users' mailboxes.

Multiple deployment options are available depending on the number of interfaces used. It

most common deployment option uses a single physical interface inserted in a firewalled DMZ network segment. An alternative approach is to use two interfaces, one to send and receive email traffic located in the DMZ and another interface connected to an inside network to deliver mail to internal mail servers. With either approach, it is recommended to use a static Network Address Translation (NAT) on the Internet firewall to translate the public address into a private address located in the DMZ.

### Cisco IronPort WSA

IronPort Web Security Appliances (WSA) are designed to monitor and mitigate abnormal web traffic between users and the public Internet. The WSA acts as a web proxy for the corporate users residing on the internal network segments and is logically placed in the path between the users and the internet. There are three ways to implement the WSA, two of which require internet browser customizations.

Table 13-2 describes the Cisco IronPort WSA mode options.

**Table 13-2** *IronPort WSA Modes*

Cisco IronPort WSA Mode	Description
Explicit mode with proxy auto-configuration (PAC) files	<p>Proxy information stores in PAC</p> <p>Automatic download of PAC to browser using DHCP/DNS</p> <p>Supports redundancy; multiple WSAs listed in PAC</p>
Explicit mode without PAC files	<p>Requires changes to every browser</p> <p>Configuration of browser to point to the WSA as its proxy</p> <p>Does not support redundancy</p>
Transparent mode with Web Cache Communication Protocol (WCCP)	<p>Web traffic transparently directed to WSA using WCCP redirection</p> <p>No changes to browser necessary</p> <p>Requires configuration of WCCP enabled FW/Router/L3 switch to point traffic to WSA</p> <p>Supports load sharing and redundancy</p>

It is recommended to use explicit mode with PAC files for testing and then transition to WCCP for final implementation. The PAC file implementation is much easier to deploy during testing than WCCP because you just need to modify the test browser proxy settings, however the WCCP mode is much more elegant in the long run because you do not need to modify all the users' browsers settings.

## Security Management Applications

Security management applications consolidate network management and monitoring, which allows more secure control of the network. Security management provides several functions:

- Central repository for collecting network information for further analysis of security-related events. In addition, many applications have reporting capabilities to help network managers' present technical information to upper management. Some examples include authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) with TACACS and RADIUS servers, syslog servers, and IPS System Manager, which enables deep inspection of complex security events.
- Allows for easier deployment of security policies into the security devices via graphical user interface (GUI) tools. These tools help you maintain the consistency of the security policies across a broad spectrum of network device types.
- Role-based access control for all accounts to separate administrative tasks and user functions.

Security implementations need to be planned properly using the security policies governed by the organization to make good use of the security applications. From time to time, audits are necessary, which requires updates to the security policy and related security management applications. A major risk to security implementations is policy error. Management needs to be cognizant of the security policy and know how to manage incidents properly.

### Security Platform Solutions

Cisco has a variety of security management products and technologies that allow scalable administration and enforcement of security policy for the Cisco SCF architecture. These solutions reduce the operational management and automate many of the common tasks, including configuration, analysis, incident response, and reporting. Security management platforms include the following:



- **Cisco Security Manager (CSM)** is an integrated solution for GUI configuration management of firewall, VPN, and IPS policies on Cisco security appliances, firewalls, routers, and switch modules. CSM has capabilities for security policies to be deployed by device, by group, or globally for all devices.
- **Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS)** provides centralized control for administrative access to Cisco devices and security applications. ACS provides for AAA security services and supports routers, switches, VPN services, ASAs, and Cisco NAC clients. In addition, Cisco ACS also supports back-end directory integration with Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) and Microsoft Active Directory (AD) for authentication services.
- **Cisco Security Monitoring, Analysis, and Response System (Cisco Security MARS)** monitors, identifies, isolates, and responds to security threats. MARS understands the network

topology and device configurations from routers, switches, firewalls, and IPS devices. MARS also can model packet flows on the network.

- **Cisco NAC Manager** is an appliance that manages the Cisco NAC servers. NAC Manager has a web-based interface for managing security policies and online users that are part of the NAC infrastructure. Cisco NAC Manager acts as an authentication proxy using Cisco ACS or Microsoft AD.
- **System Administration Host** provides a centralized host used to stage configuration, software images, and implement network changes.
- **Network Time Protocol (NTP) server** provides time synchronization to NTP clients such as routers and switches. Time synchronization is crucial in the analysis of event correlations.
- **Configuration and Software Archive Host** serves as a repository to backup device configurations and software images.

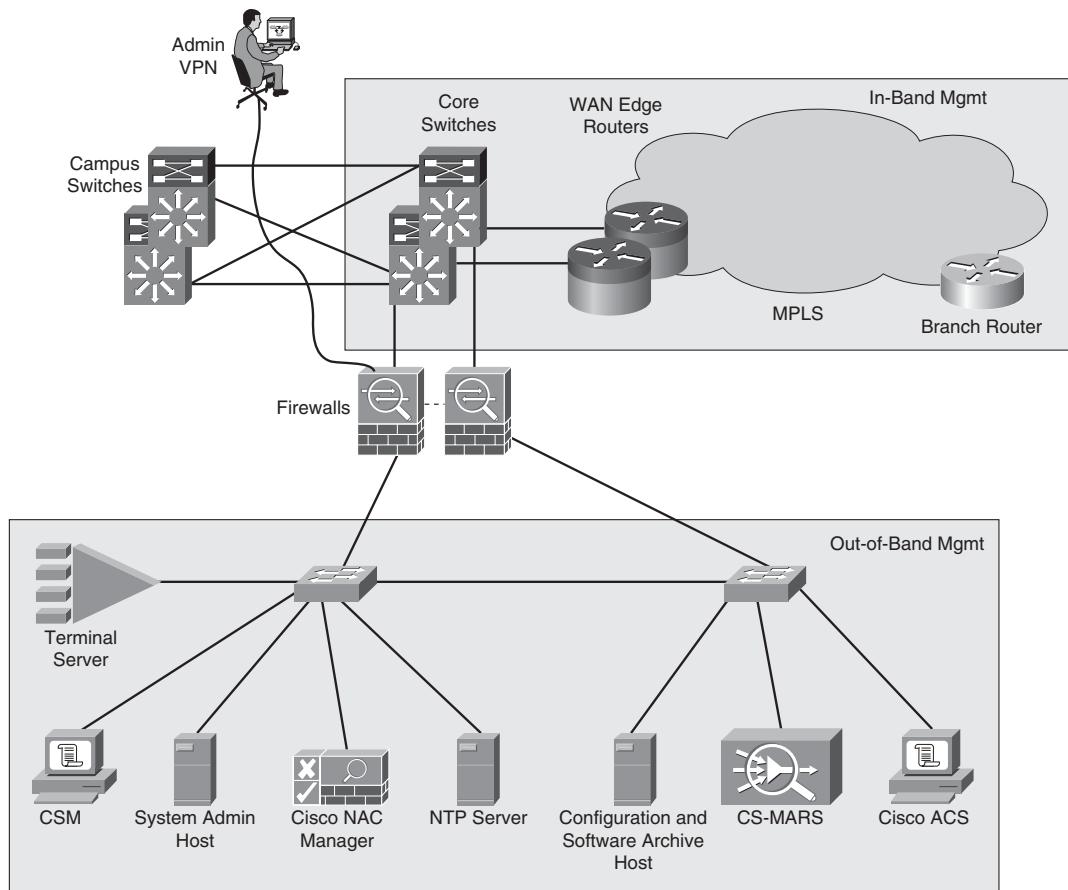
## Security Management Network

The SAFE architecture design incorporates a management network module dedicated to carrying network management and control plane traffic such as NTP, SSH, SNMP, TACACS, VPN, syslog, and NetFlow reporting. Two primary technologies are used in the management module: Cisco IOS routers acting as terminal servers and a management VLAN or separate network segment. Together, these technologies provide configuration management to nearly all network devices. The management VLAN provides the primary access method for devices using SSH and HTTPS. Hardened terminal servers provide console access and command-line interface (CLI) using reverse Telnet functions. It is a best practice to configure your network devices to send network management traffic such as NTP, SSH, SNMP, TACACS, syslog, and NetFlow traffic back to the dedicated network management VLAN.

Network management can be implemented in both in-band (IB) management and out-of-band (OOB) management configurations designed to provide secure management of network devices within the enterprise. OOB management is typically located at the headquarters and uses dedicated Ethernet ports on the devices connected to the OOB VLAN or network segment. These Ethernet ports are intended to be used for management and monitoring functions of the network devices. The OOB management network can be a separate LAN or by using an isolated VLAN. The in-band management is used for remote devices such as branch site routers and the access is provided through a firewalled data path through the core network.

In some cases, console access to the network equipment is needed, and that functionality can be provided using an OOB console server.

Figure 13-7 illustrates the SAFE management network using both IB and OOB networks for carrying control and management plane traffic. The firewall controls the security between the IB and OOB networks.



**Figure 13-7** SAFE Management Network: In-Band and Out-of-Band

## Integrating Security into Network Devices

It is crucial to integrate security into all network devices throughout your network. Common device types include



- IOS routers and switches
- Adaptive Security Appliances (ASA)
- Intrusion Prevention Systems (IPS)
- Catalyst 6500 service modules
- Endpoint security

The following sections discuss device security integration in more detail.

## IOS Security

Cisco has developed many security features that are integrated into the IOS base software or security-specific feature sets. Here are some of the major areas of security focus that have been included with IOS releases:

- **Cisco IOS firewall** is a security-specific option that provides stateful firewall functionality for perimeter IOS routers. Cisco IOS firewall provides effective control of application traffic flowing through the network. Key benefits of IOS firewall include protecting networks from network and application layer attacks, improving uptime, and offering policy enforcement for internal and external connections.
- **Cisco IOS IPS** offers inline deep packet inspection to successfully diminish a wide range of network attacks. IOS IPS can identify, classify, and block malicious traffic in real time. IOS IPS operates by loading attack signatures on the router and then matching the attacks based on signatures. Cisco also provides prebuilt signature definition files (SDF) that contain high-fidelity signatures that are based on the memory available on the router.
- **Cisco IOS IPsec** encrypts data at the IP packet level using a set of standards-based protocols. IPsec provides data authentication, anti-replay, and data confidentiality, and is the preferred method of securing VPNs.
- **Cisco IOS Trust and Identity** is a set of core technologies that enables network traffic security. Technologies include the following:
  - **AAA:** Framework and mechanisms for controlling device access
  - **Secure Shell (SSH):** Used for encrypted access between applications and routers
  - **Secure Socket Layer (SSL):** Secure web application access
  - **PKI (Public Key Infrastructure):** Strong authentication for e-commerce applications

Table 13-3 describes the Cisco IOS integrated security features.



**Table 13-3** *Integrated Security for Cisco IOS*

Cisco IOS Integrated Security	Description
Cisco IOS firewall	Stateful multiservice application-based filtering
Cisco IOS IPS	Inline deep packet inspection
Cisco IOS IPsec	Data encryption at the packet level
Cisco IOS Trust and Identity	AAA, PKI, SSH, SSL

## ISR G2 Security Hardware Options

The Cisco G2 ISRs have additional hardware options that enhance the routers' security capabilities. Here are some of the available hardware options:

- **Built-In VPN Acceleration** is hardware-based encryption that offloads VPN processing from the router's internal CPU to improve VPN throughput.
- **High-Performance Advanced Integration Module (AIM)** is a VPN encryption advanced integration module used to terminate large numbers of VPN tunnels such as with Dynamic Multipoint VPN (DMVPN). The module supports Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES) and Advanced Encryption Standard (AES), which increases the router's encryption and compression performance.
- **IPS Enhanced Network Module (IPS NME)** provides technologies to prevent a large range of security threats using hardware-based intrusion prevention. Cisco IPS NME can identify, classify, and stop unwanted traffic, including spyware, malware, network viruses, and worms. The IPS NME can monitor up to 75 Mbps of traffic and supports T1/E1 and T3 WAN interfaces.
- **Universal serial bus (USB) port and removable credentials:** G2 ISRs were designed with onboard USB 1.1 ports enabling security and storage capabilities. The USB ports allow for storing removable credentials for establishing IPsec VPN connections, configuration files, and software images.
- **Secure Voice** is referred to as digital signal processor (DSP) slots on the ISR for use with packet voice/fax DSP modules (PVDMs). These offer capabilities such as conferencing and transcoding. In addition, Secure Real-time Transport Protocol (SRTP) protects the entire voice payload by encryption, except for the header, which remains in clear text to support QoS.
- **Cisco NAC Network Module** adds NAC server (NAS) capabilities to the Cisco 2900 and 3900 series ISR G2s. The Cisco NAC module provides authentication, authorization, evaluation, and remediation for wired and wireless networks before allowing access to the network. The integration of the Cisco NAS capabilities into a network module reduces network complexity and combines data, voice, and security into a single device for the branch office.

**Note:** For a complete ISR G2 series comparison, go to [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10536/prod\\_series\\_comparison.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10536/prod_series_comparison.html).

## Cisco Security Appliances

Cisco security appliances provide robust security services and protection for firewalling, VPN services, content defenses, intrusion prevention services, and network access control. The following is an overview of Cisco security appliances:



- **Adaptive Security Appliance (ASA):** The ASA is a high-performance, multifunctional security appliance that provides a wide range of security services, including firewalling, VPN, content filtering, and intrusion prevention. It is designed to protect enterprise networks from various threats and ensure compliance with industry standards.

for firewall, IPS, anti-virus, and VPN. The ASA is a critical component of the Cisco SAFE architecture that provides proactive threat mitigation, controls application data flows, and delivers flexible VPN and IPS services. In addition, the ASA is very cost-effective and easy to manage, and offers advanced integration modules that enhance the processing capabilities.

- **ASAs for VPNs:** The Cisco ASAs provide businesses with IPsec and SSL VPN connectivity. ASAs are flexible and offer many deployment scenarios. Although they are commonly used to terminate VPN sessions for remote-access connections, ASAs can also be used to terminate site-to-site tunnels with other ASAs, routers, or even non-Cisco firewalls. The centralized architecture and web-based management ease the administrative burden and consolidate the VPN connectivity for the enterprise.
- **NAC Appliance:** The Cisco NAC Appliance support both wired and wireless environments and can provide posture assessments for both network environments. The Cisco NAC Appliance can integrate with Cisco NAC Guest Server and Cisco NAC Profiler to enhance the NAC implementation.

## Intrusion Prevention

The Cisco IPS solution integrates passive intrusion detection, inline prevention services, and new technologies to increase accuracy and keep legitimate traffic from being affected. The Cisco IPS 4200 series sensors offer significant protection by detecting and stopping threats from attacking your network. Cisco IPS Sensor Software Version 7.0 supports inline (IPS) capabilities with improved accuracy to stop more threats and reduce the number of false positives. The IPS appliances support multivector threat identification through detailed inspection of data flows in Layers 2 through 7. Multivector identification secures the network from policy violations, vulnerability exploits, and abnormal reconnaissance activities. The following IPS sensors support bandwidth requirements ranging from 250 Mbps to 4 Gbps:

- **IPS 4240** monitors traffic and provides protection up to 250 Mbps in environments with multiple T3 WAN, gigabit, and fully saturated 10/100 Mbps interfaces. The IPS 4240 has support for multiple 10/100/1000 interfaces. IPS 4240-DC supports DC power and is Network Equipment Building Standards (NEBS) Level 3 compliant.
- **IPS 4255** delivers up to 600 Mbps of performance and can be used to protect partially utilized gigabit-connected subnets.
- **IPS 4260** delivers up to 2 Gbps of performance and can be used on Gigabit subnets with copper or fiber network connections, providing additional flexibility.
- **IPS 4270** delivers up to 4 Gbps of intrusion prevention performance and has fiber and copper interfaces expansion options for up to 16 interfaces that can be used to monitor and protect multiple network segments.

## Catalyst 6500 Service Modules

The Catalyst 6500 switching platform supports additional security services and functionalities of security-related services with the Cisco Catalyst 6500 platform. Many



environments now combine many of these service modules together to form what is now referred to as services switches.

Catalyst 6500 security-related service modules include the following:

- **Firewall Services Module (FWSM)** is a high-speed firewall module for use in the Cisco Catalyst 6500 and Cisco 7600 series routing platforms. Up to four FWSMs can be installed in a single chassis, providing 5 Gbps of throughput performance per module. For service provider and large enterprise environments, the FWSM supports advanced features such as multiple security contexts for both routed and bridged firewall modes. Running multiple contexts on the same firewall hardware is a technique used to virtualize the FW into multiple firewalls, each with its own configuration and firewall policy.
- **Intrusion Detection Service Module 2 (IDSM2)** is an IDS module that is part of the Cisco IPS family that supports both inline (IPS) and passive (IDS) operation. IDSM2 provides up to 500 Mbps of packet inspection capabilities to efficiently monitor and protect your infrastructure.
- **SSL Service Module** is an integrated service module for terminating SSL sessions on Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switch or Cisco 7600 series routing platforms. By offloading the SSL terminations with the SSL module, the web server's CPU is reduced, and they can support more connections, thereby increasing operational efficiency. Up to four SSL modules can be used in a single chassis.
- **IPsec VPN SPA** enables cost-effective and scalable VPN services using the Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switches and Cisco 7600 series routing platforms. The module does not have any interfaces, but instead uses the other LAN and WAN interfaces that are available on the chassis. Using the SPA Carrier-400, each slot of the Cisco Catalyst 6500 or Cisco 7600 router can support up to two Cisco IPsec VPN SPAs.
- **WebVPN Services Module** is a high-speed integrated SSL VPN Services Module for support of large-scale remote-access VPN deployments. The WebVPN Services Module support up to 32,000 SSL VPN users, and up to 4 modules can be used in a single chassis.
- **Network Analysis Module** provides packet-capture capabilities and visibility into all the layers of the network data flows. You can analyze application traffic between hosts, networks, and servers. The NAMs support Remote Network Monitoring 2 (RMON2) and mini-RMON features to provide port-level Layer 2 traffic statistics.
- **Traffic Anomaly Detector Module** uses behavioral analysis and attack recognition technology to identify attack patterns. It monitors traffic destined for application servers and builds detailed profiles based on the normal operating conditions. If the module detects any abnormal behavior in the per-flow data conversations, it considers this behavior a potential attack and responds based on the configured preference. You can have the module send an operator an alert or launch the Cisco Anomaly Guard Module to begin mitigation services.

- **Anomaly Guard Module** provides the attack response by blocking malicious traffic at Gbps line rates. With multiple layers of defense, it can divert traffic destined for specific targeted devices only whereby not affecting legitimate traffic.

## Endpoint Security

Endpoint security solutions protect server and desktop endpoints from the latest threats caused by malicious network attacks. Endpoint security solutions can identify and prevent network attacks that are considered unknown or “day-zero”-type threats. Endpoint security solutions are packed with many features, including firewall capabilities, intrusion prevention, malicious mobile code protection, operating system integrity assurance, and audit log consolidation. Cisco Network Admission Control (NAC) enables the network to enforce security policies on both wired and wireless devices seeking access to the network infrastructure. Cisco NAC protects data and prevents unauthorized network access by initially confirming a user’s identity before allowing access. Cisco NAC also provides posture assessment to reduce the risks associated with noncompliant devices by not allowing network access until the device is compliant with the configured policy. Cisco endpoint security solutions are based on integrations with various third-party vendors such as Trend, Sophos, and Priveon (Bit9).

## Securing the Enterprise

The Cisco SAFE architecture provides the most comprehensive security systems for securing the enterprise network from the threats of today and tomorrow.

Each location in the enterprise network has unique security requirements because concerns are different and vary by location. In most cases, however, customizing network security solutions by functional area offers the best protection for the enterprise network.

The following sections examine some ways to use Cisco security solutions in the campus, data center, and enterprise edge.

### Implementing Security in the Campus

Security for the campus begins with remembering that you need to implement security throughout your network. Several technologies, protocols, solutions, and devices work together to provide the secure campus. Network security should be implemented in the core, distribution, and access layers and can be grouped into four broad categories, as described in Table 13.4.



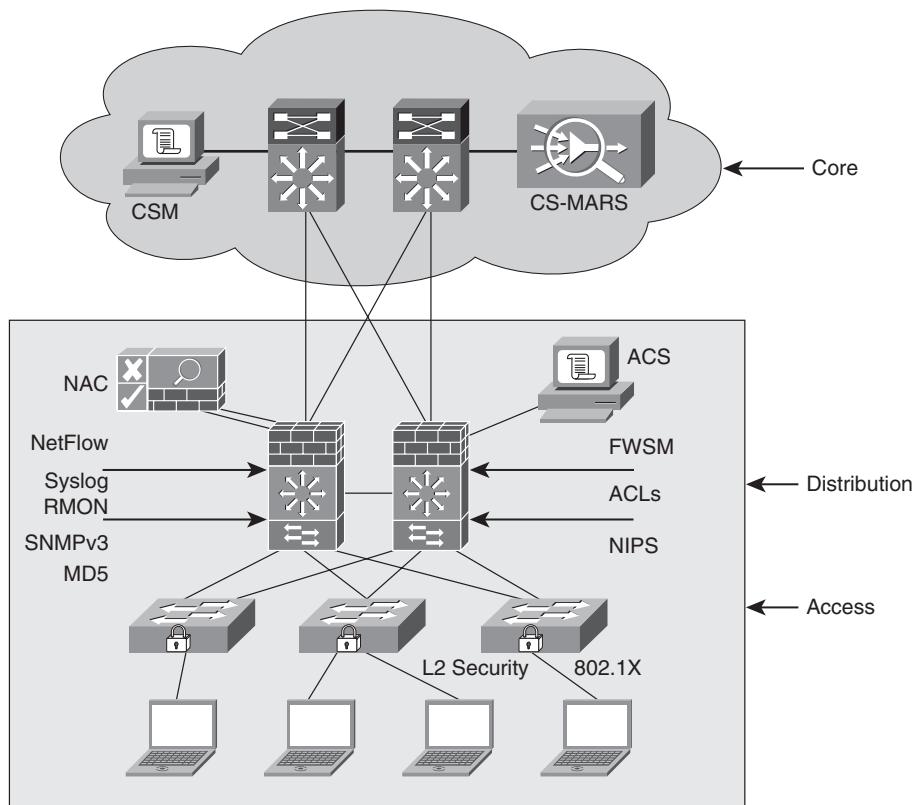
**Table 13-4** *Security in the Campus*

Cisco Security Category	Security Solutions
Identity and access control	802.1X, NAC, ACLs, and firewalls
Threat detection and mitigation	NetFlow, syslog, SNMP, RMON, CS-MARS, and NIPS

**Table 13-4 Security in the Campus**

Cisco Security Category	Security Solutions
Infrastructure protection	AAA, TACACS, RADIUS, SSH, SNMPv3, IGP/EGP MD5, and Layer 2 security features
Security management	CSM, CS-MARS, and ACS

Figure 13-8 illustrates an enterprise campus security scenario and shows where security technologies, protocols, and mechanisms can be deployed in the enterprise campus.

**Figure 13-8 Enterprise Campus Security**

### Implementing Security in the Data Center

The enterprise data center hosts critical servers and applications for the main campus and the branch offices. Many of the servers require high availability because of the importance of the information and the high volume of users they serve. Several of the servers

may contain sensitive information that is crucial to the business and therefore cannot become compromised. Therefore, it needs to be highly secured. Network performance is another area that is critically important, which can limit the choice of protection mechanisms and technologies. Here are some of the risks inherent with enterprise data centers:

- Compromised applications and unauthorized access to critical information
- Exploiting different servers in the business by launching an attack from the compromised servers

To provide adequate security protection, organizations can implement the network security solutions described in Table 13.5.



**Table 13-5 Security in the Data Center**

Cisco Security Category	Security Solutions
Identity and access control	802.1X, ACLs, and firewalls (FWSM)
Threat detection and mitigation	NetFlow, syslog, SNMP, RMON, CS-MARS, and NIPS
Infrastructure protection	AAA, TACACS, RADIUS, SSH, SNMPv3, IGP/EGP MD5, and Layer 2 security features
Security management	CSM, CS-MARS, and ACS

Figure 13-9 illustrates an enterprise data center security scenario and shows where security technologies, protocols, and mechanisms can be deployed in the enterprise data center.

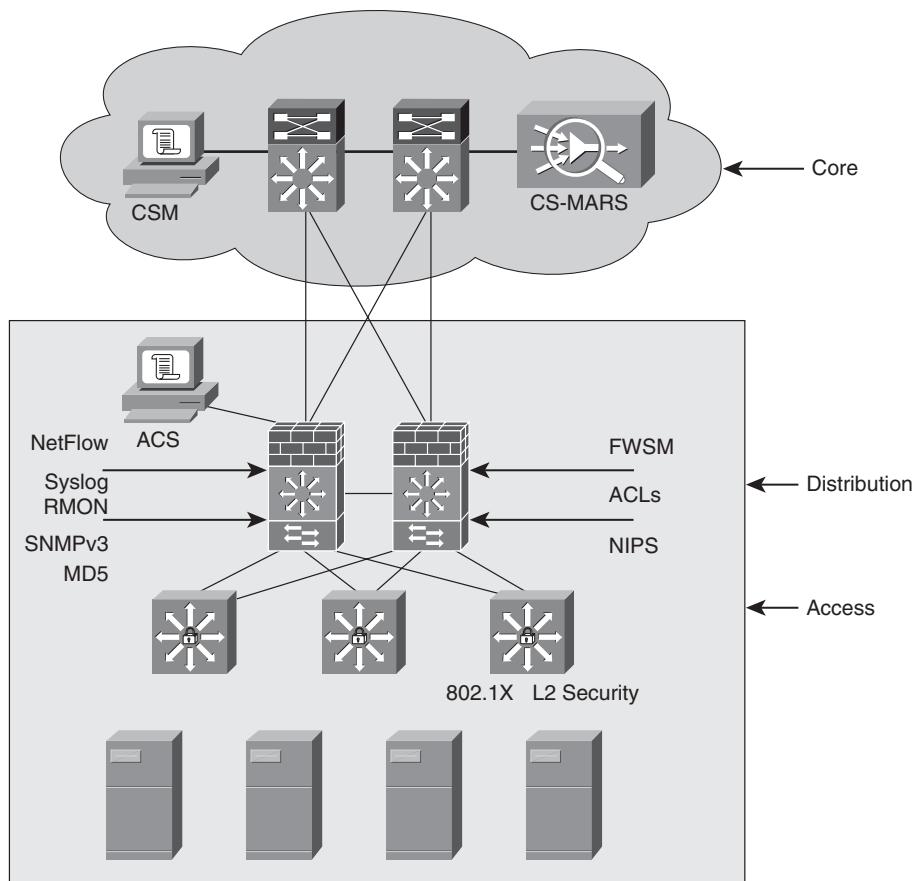
### Implementing Security in the Enterprise Edge and WAN

The enterprise edge and WAN provide connectivity to other parts of your network over both private and public networks. It is important to consider the available security options when transferring data between locations and over WAN and Internet transports.

Keep in mind the following potential risk areas when moving data between locations:

- Attackers obtain access to the network and compromise the confidentiality and integrity of sensitive information with eavesdropping or data manipulation.
- Misconfiguration of the WAN could cause inappropriate WAN configuration and unwanted connectivity.

To provide adequate security protection between locations, organizations can implement the security solutions described in Table 13.6.



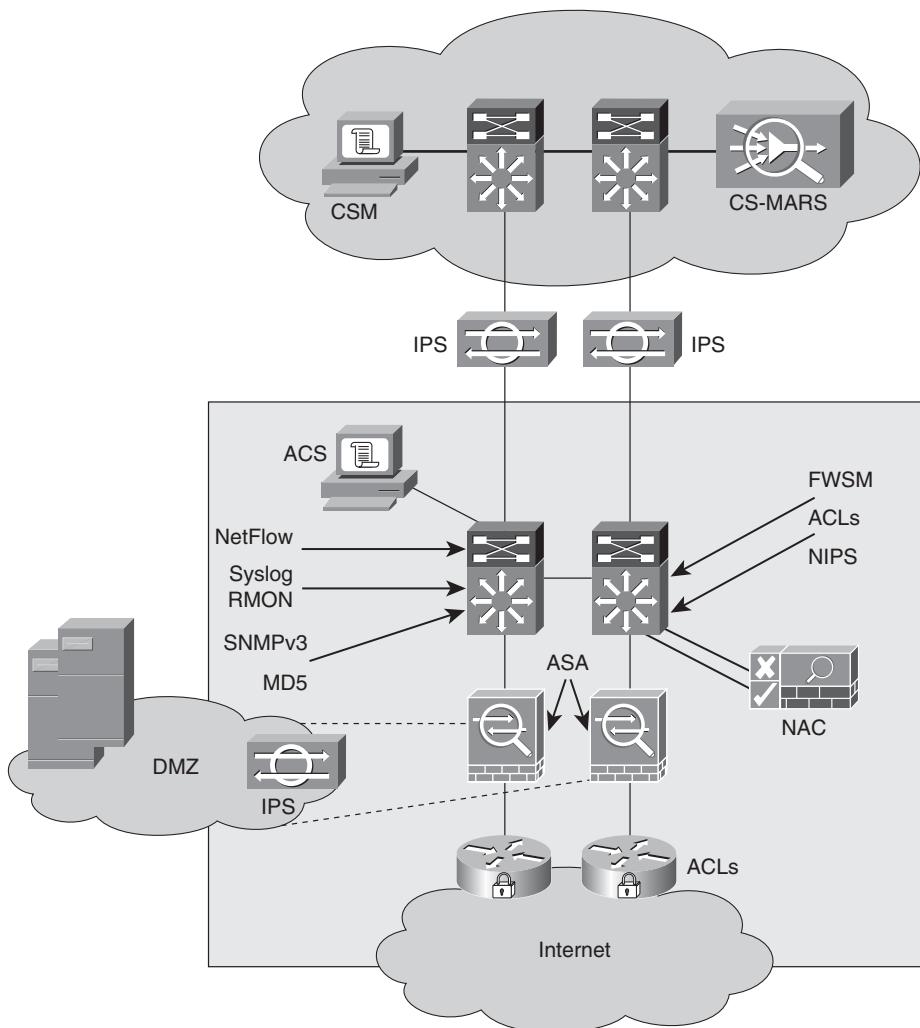
**Figure 13-9** Enterprise Data Center Security

**Table 13-6** Security in the Enterprise Edge

Cisco Security Category	Security Solutions
Identity and access control	Firewalls, IPsec, SSL VPN, and ACLs
Threat detection and mitigation	NetFlow, syslog, SNMP, RMON, IDS modules, CS-MARS, and NIPS
Infrastructure protection	AAA, CoPP, TACACS, RADIUS, SSH, SNMP v3, IGP/EGP MD5, RFC 2827 ingress filtering and Layer 2 security features
Security management	CSM, CS-MARS, and ACS



Figure 13-10 illustrates the use of enterprise edge and WAN security, and where security technologies, protocols, and mechanisms can be deployed in the enterprise edge and WAN.



**Figure 13-10** Enterprise Edge and WAN Security

## References and Recommended Readings

The Cisco ASA 5500 as a Superior Firewall Solution, [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns171/ns413/networking\\_solutions\\_white\\_paper0900aecd8058ec85.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns171/ns413/networking_solutions_white_paper0900aecd8058ec85.shtml)

Cisco ISR G2 at a Glance, [www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/routers/ps10538/aag\\_c45\\_556315.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/routers/ps10538/aag_c45_556315.pdf).

Cisco Security Solutions Quick Reference Guide, [www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/vpndevc/ps6032/ps6094/ps6120/brochure\\_c02-518424.pdf](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/prod/collateral/vpndevc/ps6032/ps6094/ps6120/brochure_c02-518424.pdf).

Cisco SAFE Solution Overview, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/SAFESolOver.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/SAFESolOver.html).

Deploying Firewalls Throughout Your Organization, [www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns171/ns413/networking\\_solutions\\_white\\_paper0900aecd8057f042.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/netsol/ns340/ns394/ns171/ns413/networking_solutions_white_paper0900aecd8057f042.shtml)

Module 6 (Evaluating Security Solutions for the Network)—Designing for Cisco Internet-Work Solution Course (DESGN) 2.1.

Cisco Security Control Framework (SCF) Model, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/CiscoSCF.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Security/CiscoSCF.html).

RFC 2827, Network Ingress Filtering: Defeating Denial of Service Attacks Which Employ IP Source Address Spoofing, [www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2827.html](http://www.faqs.org/rfcs/rfc2827.html)

IronPort Email Security Appliance, white paper, [www.ironport.com/pdf/ironport\\_email\\_security\\_appliance\\_whitelpaper.pdf](http://www.ironport.com/pdf/ironport_email_security_appliance_whitelpaper.pdf)

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 13-7 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 13-7** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Summary	Cisco Security Control Framework	486
List	Trust and Identity technologies	486
List	Detecting and mitigating threats	490
List	Security platform solutions	495
List	Integrating security into network devices	497
Table 13-3	Integrated security for Cisco IOS	498
List	Cisco security appliances	499
List	Catalyst 6500 service modules	500
Table 13-4	Security in the campus	502
Table 13-5	Security in the data center	504
Table 13-6	Security in the enterprise edge	505

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

## Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

Adaptive Security Appliance (ASA), Integrated Services Router (ISR) G2, Cisco Catalyst switches, access control lists, firewall, Network Admission Control (NAC), 802.1X, Cisco Identity-Based Network Services (IBNS), Cisco Security Manager (CSM), Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS), Cisco Security Monitoring, Analysis, and Response System (MARS), Cisco Router and Security Device Manager (SDM), Cisco Adaptive Security Device Manager (ASDM), Cisco Intrusion Prevention System Device Manager (IDM)

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

1. What security device combines IOS firewall with VPN and IPS services?
  - a. ASA
  - b. ISR
  - c. Cisco Catalyst switches
  - d. IPS
2. Which of the following is a standards-based protocol for authenticating network clients?
  - a. NAC
  - b. PoE
  - c. 802.1X
  - d. CSM
3. Cisco \_\_\_\_\_ Appliance is an integrated solution led by Cisco that incorporates the network infrastructure and third-party software to impose security policy on attached endpoints.
  - a. ASA
  - b. CSM
  - c. ISR
  - d. NAC

- 4.** What is an appliance-based solution for network security administrators to monitor, identify, isolate, and respond to security threats? (Select the best answer.)
  - a.** CS-MARS
  - b.** CSA MC
  - c.** ASDM
  - d.** IDM
- 5.** Cisco IOS Trust and Identity has a set of services that include which of the following? (Select all that apply.)
  - a.** 802.1X
  - b.** SSL
  - c.** AAA
  - d.** ASDM
- 6.** Cisco IOS \_\_\_\_\_ offers data encryption at the IP packet level using a set of standards-based protocols.
  - a.** IPS
  - b.** IPsec
  - c.** L2TP
  - d.** L2F
- 7.** What provides hardware VPN encryption for terminating a large number of VPN tunnels for ISRs?
  - a.** FWSM
  - b.** IDS Network Module
  - c.** Network Analysis Module
  - d.** High-Performance AIM
- 8.** What are two ways to enhance VPN performance on Cisco ISR G2s?
  - a.** SSL Network Module
  - b.** IDS Network Module
  - c.** Built-In Hardware VPN Acceleration
  - d.** High-Performance AIM

- 9.** Which Cisco security solution can prevent noncompliant devices from accessing the network until they are compliant?
- a.** CS-MARS
  - b.** IDS module
  - c.** ACS
  - d.** NAC
- 10.** Which of the following service modules do Cisco Catalyst 6500 switches support? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** FWSM
  - b.** IDSM2
  - c.** IPsec VPN Shared Port Adapter (SPA)
  - d.** ASA
- 11.** What provides attack responses by blocking malicious traffic with Gbps line rates?
- a.** Network Analysis Module
  - b.** Anomaly Guard Module
  - c.** Content Switch Module
  - d.** Traffic Anomaly Detector Module
- 12.** Which of the following are identity and access control protocols and mechanisms? (Select all that apply.)
- a.** 802.1X
  - b.** ACLs
  - c.** NAC
  - d.** NetFlow
- 13.** Which two of the following are Cisco security management tools?
- a.** CS-MARS
  - b.** IDS module
  - c.** ACS
  - d.** NAC
- 14.** True or false: NetFlow is used for threat detection and mitigation.
- 15.** True or false: Cisco ASAs, PIX security appliances, FWSM, and IOS firewall are part of infection containment.

- 16.** What IOS feature offers inline deep packet inspection to successfully diminish a wide range of network attacks?
- a.** IOS SSH
  - b.** IOS SSL VPN
  - c.** IOS IPsec
  - d.** IOS IPS
- 17.** The Cisco 4200 \_\_\_\_\_ sensor appliances can identify, analyze, and block unwanted traffic from flowing on the network.
- 18.** What provides centralized control for administrative access to Cisco devices and security applications?
- a.** CSM
  - b.** ACS
  - c.** CS-MARS
  - d.** ASDM
- 19.** True or false: IPS 4255 delivers 10000 Mbps of performance and can be used to protect partially utilized gigabit-connected subnets.
- 20.** Match each protocol, mechanism, or feature with its security grouping:
- i. CSM
  - ii. IGP/EGP MD5
  - iii. NetFlow
  - iv. NAC
- a.** Identity and access control
  - b.** Threat detection and mitigation
  - c.** Infrastructure protection
  - d.** Security management

*This page intentionally left blank*



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Traditional Voice Architectures
- Converged Multiservice Networks
- IPT Design

## Voice and Video Design

---

The designs of enterprise voice networks are migrating from the traditional use of Private Branch Exchange (PBX) switches to the use of IP telephony architectures such as Cisco Unified CallManager. Enterprise networks now have to be designed with IP telephony in mind. This chapter reviews public switched telephone network (PSTN) and PBX voice networks, converged multiservice networks, IP telephony (IPT) design, and quality of service (QoS) for IPT networks.

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 14-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 14-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Traditional Voice Architectures	5, 9
Converged Multiservice Networks	1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7
IPT Design	8, 10

1. Which International Telecommunication Union (ITU) standard provides a framework for multimedia protocols for the transport of voice, video, and data over packet-switched networks?
  - a. Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)
  - b. Voice over IP (VoIP)
  - c. H.323
  - d. Weighted fair queuing (WFQ)

- 2.** What is the default coder-decoder (codec) used with VoIP dial peers?
  - a.** G.711
  - b.** G.723
  - c.** G.728
  - d.** G.729
- 3.** Real-time Transport Protocol (RTP) operates at what layer of the OSI model?
  - a.** Application
  - b.** Session
  - c.** Transport
  - d.** Network
- 4.** Which H.323 protocol is responsible for call setup and signaling?
  - a.** H.245
  - b.** G.711
  - c.** H.225
  - d.** RTCP
- 5.** What unit represents the average number of concurrent voice calls, commonly calculated for the period of 1 hour?
  - a.** Kbps
  - b.** Erlang
  - c.** DS0
  - d.** FXS
- 6.** Which feature does not transmit packets when there is silence?
  - a.** Ear and mouth (E&M)
  - b.** Voice-activity detection (VAD)
  - c.** Dial peers
  - d.** Digital silence suppressor (DSS)
- 7.** What does Compressed Real-time Transport Protocol (cRTP) compress?
  - a.** RTP headers
  - b.** RTP, TCP, and IP headers
  - c.** RTP, User Datagram Protocol (UDP), and IP headers
  - d.** Real-time Transport Control Protocol (RTCP) headers

- 8.** Which QoS mechanism is recommended for VoIP networks?
  - a.** Custom queuing
  - b.** Low-latency queuing (LLQ)
  - c.** Priority queuing
  - d.** Switched-based queuing
- 9.** Where is the local loop located?
  - a.** Between phones and the central office (CO) switch
  - b.** Between two PBXs
  - c.** Between the loopback interfaces of two VoIP routers
  - d.** Between two PSTN switches
- 10.** What is jitter?
  - a.** The echo caused by mismatched impedance
  - b.** The loss of packets in the network
  - c.** The variable delay of received packets
  - d.** The fixed delay of received packets

---

## Foundation Topics

---

This chapter covers traditional voice architectures, integrated voice design, and QoS in voice networks. The section “Traditional Voice Architectures” covers the architecture of time-division multiplexing (TDM) voice networks. It also discusses PSTN technologies and limitations.

The section “Converged Multiservice Networks” covers IP telephony design for Cisco Unified Communications. The “IPT Design” section covers QoS mechanisms used in IPT networks and provides IPT design recommendations.

### Traditional Voice Architectures

This section reviews technologies and concepts to help you understand traditional voice networks.

The PSTN is the global public voice network that provides voice services. The PSTN is a variety of networks and services that are in place worldwide; it provides a circuit-switched service that uses Signaling System 7 (SS7) to control its calls. Central office (CO) switches exchange SS7 messages to place and route voice calls throughout the network. The PSTN uses TDM facilities to have multiple calls to be placed into a single signal. From the CO to the customer premises, the call can be analog, ISDN, or TDM digital. Each call consumes 64 k bps of bandwidth, called digital service zero (DS0).

### PBX and PSTN Switches

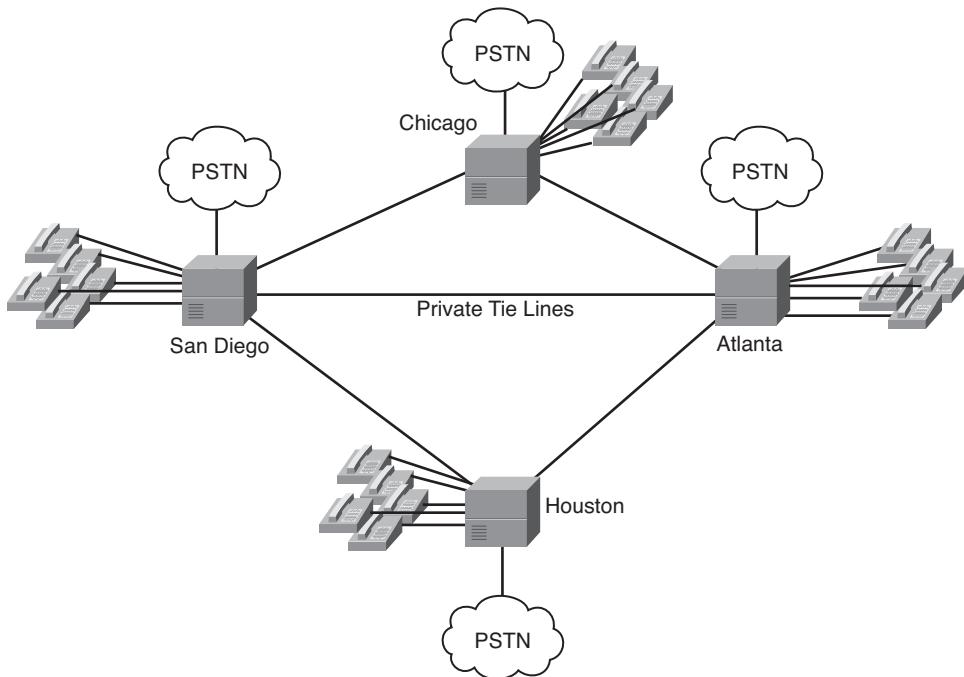
Traditional switches and PBXs route voice using TDM technology and analog technology. The CCDA must understand some of the differences between these devices. The PBX, as its name states, is used in a private network and uses proprietary protocols. The PBX is located in the enterprise’s data center. Each PBX may scale up to thousands of phones.

Companies deploy PBX networks to obtain enterprise feature such as extension dialing, dialing privilege control, voice mail, transfers, conferencing, and so on. Also companies that have multiple large locations with lots of intersite calling can implement tie lines to reduce long distance charges. On these types of circuits, there are no toll charges, but there are fixed costs associated with the circuits, which are provided by network carriers/phone companies.

PBXs are customer-owned voice switches. Enterprise companies install and configure their own PBXs to provide telephony service, abbreviated or extension dialing, remote-office extensions, voice mail, and private-line routing within other features. Organizations can reduce toll charges by using private tie lines between their switches. Calls that are placed between offices through the private voice network are called on-net. If a user needs to place a call outside the private network, the call is routed to the local PSTN. If the call is forwarded to the PSTN, it is called off-net.

Figure 14-1

toll charges by using its private voice network. A separate private network is in place for data traffic. If a user places a call from San Diego to Los Angeles, it is routed to the PSTN from the San Diego PBX. Then, toll charges are incurred for the call.



**Figure 14-1** *PBX Network*

Another issue in the design is the limitation on the number of calls per private line. If the private lines are T1s, they are each limited to carrying 24 concurrent calls at a time. This is because each call takes 64 kbps of bandwidth with the G.711 codec, and 24 calls times 64 kbps/call equals 1.536 Mbps, the bandwidth of a T1. All of this bandwidth is allocated for voice calls and cannot be used for data transport.

PSTN switches are not private. They can scale up to tens of thousands of phones and use open standards because they have to communicate with other switches, PBXs, fax machines, and home telephones. PSTN switches normally are located at the CO of the local or interexchange carrier.

### Local Loop and Trunks

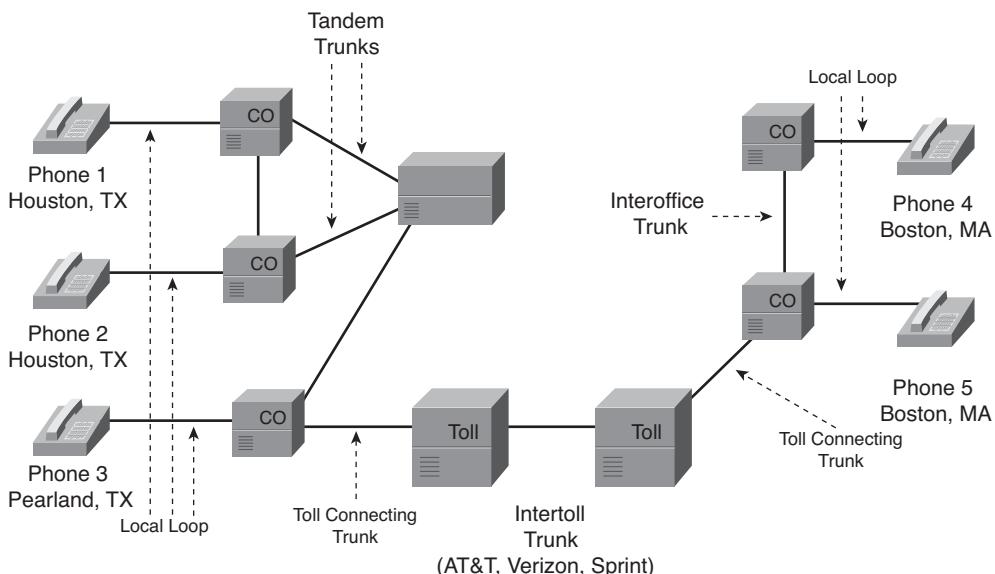
Depending on the dialed digits, a call routes through the local loop, one or more trunks, and the destination local loop to reach the destination phone. The local loop is the pair of wires that runs from the CO to the home or business office.

the trunk is connecting. The term *tie line* is frequently used instead of

dedicated line connecting two telephone switches within a single organization. The following is a list of trunk types:

- **Interoffice trunk** connects two CO switches. Also called a PSTN switch trunk.
- **Tandem trunk** connects central offices within a geographic area.
- **Toll-connecting trunk** connects the CO to the long-distance office.
- **Intertoll trunk** connects two long-distance offices.
- **Tie trunk** connects two PBXs. Also called a private trunk.
- **PBX-to-CO trunk or CO-to-PBX business line** connects the CO switch to the enterprise PBX.

Figure 14-2 shows an example of the PSTN. All phones connect to their local CO via the local loop. Calls between Phones 1 and 2 and between Phones 4 and 5 go through interoffice trunks. Calls between Phones 2 and 3 go through tandem trunks within a region. When you place calls between Texas and Massachusetts, they are forwarded to the long-distance toll provider via a toll-connecting trunk and are routed through intertoll trunks.



**Figure 14-2 Local Loops and Trunks**

## Ports

You can use several ports to connect to voice end stations (phones) and private voice switches:

- **Foreign Exchange Station (FXS)** endpoint device such as traditional telephones or fax machines. It provides line power, dial tone, and ring voltage.



- **Foreign Exchange Office (FXO)** allows a switch such as a PBX to use a standard analog connection (FXS) from the PSTN or from another switch. In this case the PBX is emulating an endpoint device. Because this is a standard endpoint connection it uses two-wire connections just like a standard phone and often uses an RJ-11 connector interface.
- **Ear and Mouth (E&M)** connects private switches. It is an analog trunk used to connect to a voice switch; it supports tie-line facilities or signaling between phone switches. E&M can be connected with two-wire and four-wire. E&M is also called Earth and Magnet.
- **Channelized T1 (or E1)** circuits can be used to connect PBXs and the PSTN or 2 PBXs. These circuits can be provisioned in two different formats:
  - Channel Associated Signaling (CAS) circuits provide 24 (for T1) or 32 (for E1) channels (1 per DS0). CAS circuits get their name from the fact that switch to switch signaling (dialed digits, caller ID, and so on) occurs in band along on each individual channel with the voice traffic. Each DS0 channel is fixed at 64 Kbps, so this type of signaling takes a small number of bits away from the voice transmission to carry signaling data. Because of this CAS is also known as robbed-bit signaling.
  - Common Channel Signaling (CCS) circuits also use T1/E1 circuits. However, unlike CAS circuits, CCS circuits set aside one channel specifically for carrying signaling information for all of the other channels. This architecture allows for CCS circuits to provide a more robust feature set between switches. ISDN PRI uses CCS signaling and is the preferred connection type for PSTN-to-PBX or PBX-to-PBX connections. CCS support is not always available, and therefore CAS circuits are still widely used.

### Major Analog and Digital Signaling Types

Signaling is needed to provide the state of telephones, digit dialing, and other information. For a call to be placed, managed, and closed, all of the following signaling categories have to occur:

- **Supervisory** provides call control and phone state (on-hook and off-hook).
- **Addressing** provides dialed digits.
- **Informational** provides information such as dial and busy tones and progress indicators.

These different signaling categories are provided by analog and digital circuit types.

The signaling type depends on the type of connection. The major areas are

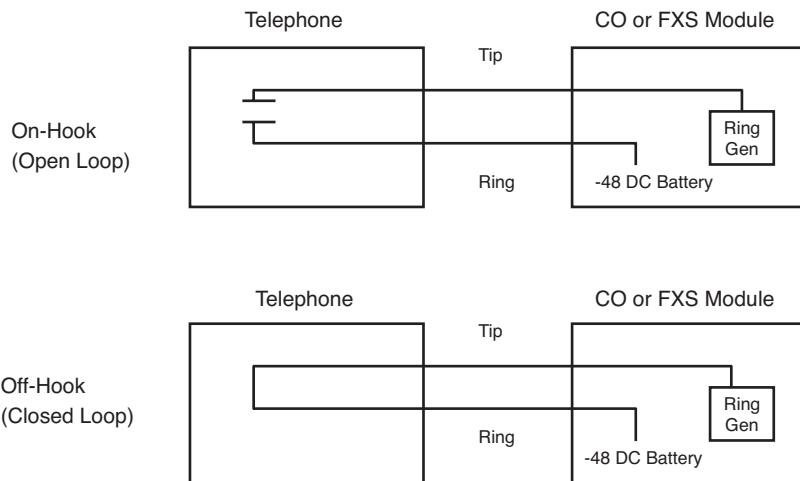
- Loop start (CO to phone) is an analog signaling type commonly found in residential applications. The circuit is “started” when the loop is closed (connected) completing the circuit.
- start. Ground start allows for signaling between switches that allows one switch to

signal to the other that it is fixing to go off-hook by “grounding” the line. This helps in preventing both sides from trying to seize access at the same time (called glare).

- E&M (PBX to PBX) is another analog switch-to-switch (PSTN-to-PBX or PBX-to-PBX) signaling type that provides additional signaling capability and can be a two-wire or four-wire implementation.
- CAS T1/E1 circuits get their name from the fact that switch to switch signaling (dialed digits, caller ID, and so on) occurs in band along on each individual channel with the voice traffic.
- CCS ISDN PRI circuits set aside one channel specifically for carrying signaling information for all the other channels.
- Q Signaling (Q.SIG).
- SS7 interswitch PSTN signaling.

### Loop-Start Signaling

Loop-start signaling is an analog signaling technique used to indicate on-hook and off-hook conditions in the network. It is commonly used between the telephone set and the CO, PBX, or FXS module. As shown in Figure 14-3, with loop start, the local loop is open when the phone is on-hook. When the phone is taken off-hook, a -48 direct current (DC) voltage loops from the CO through the phone and back. Loop-start signaling is used for residential lines.



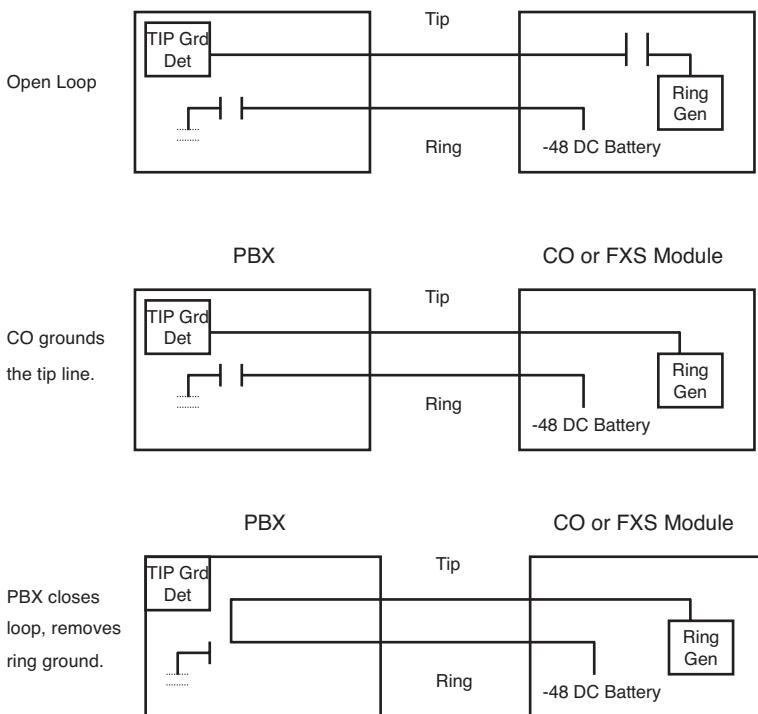
**Figure 14-3** Loop-Start Signaling

### Ground-Start Signaling

Ground-start signaling is an analog signaling technique used to indicate on-hook and off-

difference between ground start and loop start is that ground start requires the closing of the loop at both locations. Ground start is commonly used by PBXs.

The standard way to transport voice between two telephone sets is to use tip and ring lines. Tip and ring lines are the twisted pair of wires that connect to your phone via an RJ-11 connector. As shown in Figure 14-4, the CO switch grounds the tip line. The PBX detects that the tip line is grounded and closes the loop by removing ground from the ring line.



**Figure 14-4** Ground-Start Signaling

### E&M Signaling

E&M is an analog signaling technique often used in PBX-to-PBX tie lines. E&M is receive and transmit, or more commonly called Ear and Mouth. Cisco routers support four E&M signal types: Type I, Type II, Type III, and Type V. Types I and II are most popular on the American continents. Type V is common outside North America.

There are also three forms of E&M dial supervision signaling to seize the E&M trunk:

- **Immediate start:** This is the most basic protocol. In this technique, the originating switch goes off-hook, waits for a finite period of time (for example, 200 ms), and then sends the dial digits without regard for the far end.
- **Wink start:**

(which is interpreted as an indication to proceed), and then sends the dial digits.

- **Delay dial:** In this technique, the originating side goes off-hook, waits for about 200 ms, and then checks whether the far end is on-hook. If the far end is on-hook, it outputs dial digits. If the far end is off-hook, it waits until it goes on-hook and then outputs dial digits.



## CAS and CCS Signaling

Digital signaling has two major forms: Channel Associated Signaling (CAS) and Common Channel Signaling (CCS). The major difference is that with CAS the signaling is included in the same channel as the voice call. With CCS, the signaling is provided in a separate channel. Table 14-2 shows the common types of CAS and CCS. They are covered in the following sections.

**Table 14-2** Common CAS and CCS Signaling Types

Signaling	Signaling/Circuit Type
CAS	T1 or E1 signaling
CCS	ISDN PRI or BRI
	QSIG
	SS7

**T1/E1 CAS** Digital T1 CAS uses selected bits within each channel to transmit signaling information. CAS is also called robbed-bit signaling or in-band signaling in the T1 implementation. Robbed-bit CAS works with digital voice because losing an occasional voice sample does not affect the voice quality. The disadvantage of robbed-bit CAS is that it cannot be used on channels that might carry voice or data without reducing the data rate to 56 Kbps to ensure that signaling changes do not damage the data stream. Because of the implementation of signaling via a limited number of bits, CAS signaling is limited in signaling feature support.

E1 CAS uses a separate channel in the shared medium for CAS, so it does not have this disadvantage. The E1 signaling bits are channel associated, but they are not in-band.

**CCS** CCS circuits set aside one channel specifically for carrying signaling information for all the other channels. This architecture allows for CCS circuits to provide a more robust feature set between switches. ISDN PRI uses CCS signaling and is the preferred connection type for PSTN-to-PBX or PBX-to-PBX connections.

**ISDN PRI/BRI** ISDN T1 PRI provides 23 64-kbps B (bearer) channels for voice, with a separate 64-kbps D (data signaling) channel for signaling. The ISDN E1 PRI provides 30 B channels. The use of messages in a separate channel, rather than preassigned bits, is also called Common Channel Signaling. ISDN provides the advantage of not changing bits in the channels and thus is useful for data traffic in addition to voice traffic.

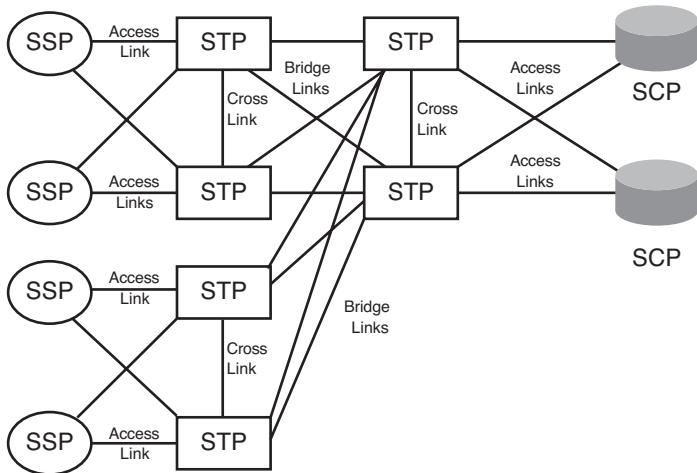
The ISDN BRI interface includes two 64-kbps B channels for voice or data and a separate 16-kbps D channel that provides signaling for the interface.

**Q.SIG** Q.SIG is the preferred signaling protocol used between PBX switches. It is a

services. It is feature transparent between PBXs. It is interoperable with public and private ISDN networks and imposes no restrictions on private dial plans. QSIG is also used between Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) and enterprise PBXs in hybrid implementations. It is also used on Cisco IOS voice gateways for PBX integration.

**SS7** SS7 is a global ITU standard for telecommunications control that allows voice-network calls to be routed and controlled by call control centers. SS7 is used between PSTN switches. SS7 implements call setup, routing, and control, ensuring that intermediate and far-end switches are available when a call is placed. With SS7, telephone companies can implement modern consumer telephone services such as caller ID, toll-free numbers, call forwarding, and so on.

SS7 provides mechanisms for exchanging control, status, and routing messages on public telephone networks. SS7 messages pass over a separate channel than that used for voice communication. SS7 is a CCS technology. CCS7 controls call signaling, routing, and connections between CO, interexchange carrier, and competitive local-exchange carrier switches. Figure 14-5 shows the connectivity between SS7 components.



**Figure 14-5 SS7 Signaling Components**

As shown in Figure 14-5, SS7 has the following system components:

- **Signaling Control Point (SCP):** Databases that provide the necessary information for special call processing and routing, including 800 and 900 call services, credit card calls, local number portability, cellular roaming services, and advanced call center applications.
- **Signaling Transfer Point (STP):** Receives and routes incoming signaling messages toward their destinations. STPs are deployed in mated pairs and share the traffic between them.
- **Signaling Switching Point (SSP):** and signaling links. Each SSP is connected to both STPs in a mated pair.

**Addressing Digit Signaling** There are two methods for submitting analog address digits to place a call:

- Pulse or rotary dialing
- Dual-tone multifrequency (DTMF) dialing

Pulse dialing uses the opening and closing of a switch at the telephone set. A rotary register at the CO detects the opening and closing of the loop. When the number 5 is dialed on a rotary phone, the dial mechanism opens and closes five times, each one-tenth of a second apart.

DTMF uses two tones simultaneously to indicate the dialed number. Table 14-3 shows the phone keypad and the frequencies used. For example, when the number 5 is dialed, the frequencies 770 Hz and 1336 Hz are sent to the CO.

**Table 14-3 DTMF Frequencies**

Frequency	1209 Hz	1336 Hz	1477 Hz
697 Hz	1	ABC	DEF
		2	3
770 Hz	GHI	JKL	MNO
	4	5	6
852 Hz	PRS	TUV	WXY
	7	8	9
941 Hz	*	OPER	#
		0	

### PSTN Numbering Plan

The PSTN uses the ITU E.164 standard for public network addressing. The E.164 standard uses a maximum of 15 digits and makes each phone unique in the PSTN. Examples of E.164 addresses are the residential, business, IP phones, and cell phones that you use every day. Each country is assigned a country code to identify it. The country codes can be one to three digits in length. Table 14-4 shows some examples of country codes.

**Table 14-4 E.164 Country Codes**

Country Code	Country
1	United States, Canada
1-787, 1-939	Puerto Rico
55	Brazil
39	Italy

**Table 14-4 E.164 Country Codes**

<b>Country Code</b>	<b>Country</b>
86	China
20	Egypt
91	India
49	Germany
380	Ukraine
44	United Kingdom
81	Japan
52	Mexico
966	Saudi Arabia

The ITU website that lists country codes is located at [www.itu.int/itudoctitu-t/ob-lists/icc/e164\\_763.html](http://www.itu.int/itudoctitu-t/ob-lists/icc/e164_763.html).

Each country divides its network into area codes that identify a geographic region or city. The United States uses the North American Numbering Plan (NANP). NANP has the address format of NXX-NXX-XXXX, where N is any number from 2 to 9 and X is any number from 0 to 9. The first three digits are the area code. The address is further divided into the office code (also known as prefix) and line number. The prefix is three digits, and the line number is four digits. The line number identifies the phone.

An example of a PSTN address in the United States is 1-713-781-0300. The 1 identifies the United States; the 713 identifies an area code in the Houston, Texas, geographical region. The 781 identifies a CO in west Houston. The 0300 identifies the phone.

Another example of a PSTN address is 52-55-8452-1110. The country code 52 identifies the country of Mexico. The area code 55 identifies the geographic area of Mexico City. The office code 8452 and line number 1110 follow.

## Other PSTN Services

The PSTN provides a suite of services in addition to call setup and routing:

- Centrex
- Voice mail
- Database services
- Interactive voice response (IVR)
- Automatic call distribution (ACD)

## Centrex Services

Companies can use the local phone company to handle all their internal and external calls from the CO. In this voice model, the CO acts as the company's voice switch, with PBX features such as four-digit extension dialing, voice mail, and call holds and transfers. The Centrex service gives the company the appearance of having its own PBX network.

## Voice Mail

PSTN service providers can enable voice messaging for customers that request the service. Voice mail provides automated call answering and message recording. Users can then retrieve the message and forward it to other extensions.

## Database Services

The PSTN must keep call detail records (CDR) in the database systems. CDR information includes all types of call information, such as called party, caller, time, duration, locations, and user service plans. This information is used for billing and reporting.

## IVR

IVR systems connect incoming calls to an audio playback system. IVR queues the calls, provides prerecorded announcements, prompts the caller for key options, provides the caller with information, and transfers the call to another switch extension or agent. IVR is used in customer call centers run by companies in all industries to gather and provide information to the customers before transferring them to agents.

## ACD

ACD routes calls to a group of agents. ACD keeps statistics on each agent, such as the number of calls and their duration. Based on the statistics, the ACD system then can evenly distribute the calls to the agents or to the appropriate agent skill group. ACD is used by airline reservation systems, customer service departments, and other call centers.

## Voice Engineering Terminology

You must consider voice traffic requirements when designing a network. The CCDA must be familiar with the following voice engineering terms.



### Grade of Service

Grade of service (GoS) is the probability that a call will be blocked by a voice gateway when attempting to seize a circuit during the busiest hour. If it is determined that a network has a P.02 GoS, the probability is that 2 percent of all attempted calls will be blocked. A P.01 GoS indicates a 1 percent probability of callers being blocked.

### Erlangs

An Erlang is a theoretical unit of measurement used to define the trunking (voice path) utilization in a voice application or environment. Erlangs values are used in Erlang formula-

aggregate trunk usage for a system and do not apply to any specific trunk or call. The hour used for the Erlang calculation should be the busiest hour (peak hour) in the day.

If a group of users makes/receives 20 calls in the average busiest hour and each call lasts an average of 10 minutes, the Erlangs are calculated as follows:

$$20 \text{ calls per hour} * 10 \text{ minutes per call} = 200 \text{ minutes per hour}$$

$$\text{Traffic volume} = (200 \text{ minutes per hour}) / (60 \text{ minutes per hour}) = 3.33 \text{ Erlangs}$$

The name Erlang came from the inventor, Agner Krarup Erlang, a Danish telecom engineer and mathematician who defined many formulas still used today in the design of voice systems. The most commonly used formulas are known as Erlang B, Extended Erlang B, and Erlang C.

There are three common Erlang models:

- **Erlang B** is a formula that estimates the amount of trunking capacity required given an Erlang value (busy-hour traffic) and a desired Grade of Service (also known as blocking percentage). It is the most common model used. Extending the previous example, 3.33 Erlangs (BHT) and a GoS of 1 percent results in an Erlang B value of nine trunks required. An Erlang B calculator can be found at [www.erlang.com/calculator/erlb/](http://www.erlang.com/calculator/erlb/)
- **Extended Erlang B** adds a “retry” percentage to the Erlang B model. It assumes that some blocked or failed calls will be reattempted, and therefore additional load is added.
- **Erlang C** queues excess calls instead of blocking them. This model is used to calculate the number of agents required in a call center environment. It is based on measurements of handling time, expected call volumes, and the amount of time a caller spends with an agent. This model is used in call centers where calls are queued for service.

### Centum Call Second

A call second is equivalent to a single call lasting 1 second. A Centum call second (CCS) represents one call occupying a channel for 100 seconds. It is the equivalent of 1/36th of an Erlang. In other words, 36 CCS equals 1 Erlang (3600 seconds). The typical range is around 6 to 12 CCS per port.

### Busy Hour

The busy hour is the specific hour within a 24-hour period in which the highest traffic load occurs. Most calls are placed and are of longer durations during this hour. It is also called peak hour.

### Busy-Hour Traffic

Busy-hour traffic (BHT) is the amount of voice traffic that occurs in the busy hour, expressed in Erlangs. It is calculated by multiplying the average call duration by the number of calls in the hour and then dividing that by 3600.

For example, if 300 calls occurred during the busy hour, with an average duration of 150 seconds, the BHT is calculated as follows:

$$\text{BHT} = (150 \text{ seconds} * 300 \text{ calls per hour}) / (3600 \text{ seconds per hour})$$

$$\text{BHT} = 12.5 \text{ Erlangs}$$

### Blocking Probability

In voice environments, it is nearly impossible or at least cost-ineffective to provision capacity so that no calls are ever blocked. Therefore, planning for a target GoS is an important aspect in voice networks. The term *blocking* refers to those calls that cannot be completed due to capacity constraints, usually during peak periods or call spikes.

The blocking probability is the probability that a call will be blocked. Blocking probability is described as a percentage of calls. For example, a blocking probability of 0.02 means that 2 percent of the calls will be blocked, or 20 per every 1000 calls.

### Call Detail Records

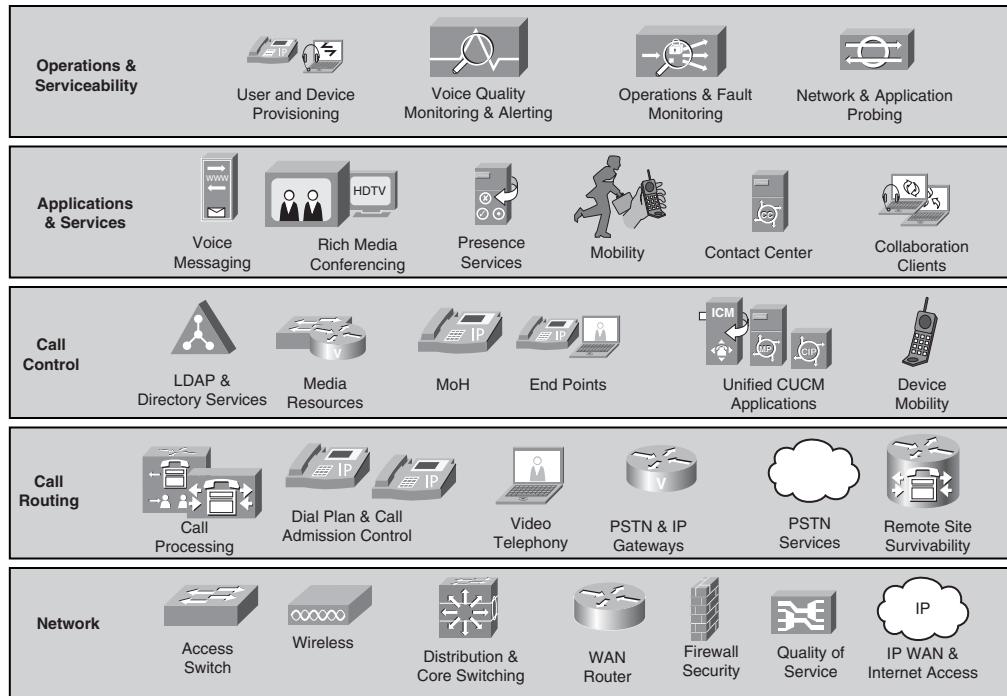
Call detail records include statistical and other information related to all calls placed. Information included in CDRs includes call time, call duration, source phone number, dialed (destination) phone number, and the amount billed. For VoIP networks, the CDR may also include source and destination IP addresses.

## Converged Multiservice Networks

The introduction of packetized voice technology allows the convergence of data and voice networks. This lets companies save toll charges on voice telephone calls. It also reduces companies' total cost of ownership by not having to build and operate separate networks for voice, video, and data. Figure 14-6 shows an example of a Cisco Unified Communications network. The network provides a resilient and redundant foundation with QoS enabled to support the voice and video streams and Unified Communication applications. Call admission control is a QoS mechanism for identifying capacity issues as part of the call routing process. *Call processing* is the term used to define the logical operations of a phone system.

The dial plan is used to define call routing (the physical/network paths that voice calls can take to connect two endpoints). It is responsible for defining what gateways, phone circuits, PSTN providers, or network paths should be taken to connect a call end to end based on goals such as cost, reliability, utilization, and redundancy.

Packetized voice systems allow for applications and services including voice mail and email combinations (unified messaging), multiparty calls (conferencing), integration of a user's availability status (presence), mobility, call centers, and collaboration applications such as integrated instant messaging, web meetings, and other rich communication applications.



**Figure 14-6 Cisco Unified Network**

In multiservice networks, digitized (coded) voice is packaged into packets, cells, or frames; sent as data throughout the networks; and converted back to analog voice. The underlying protocols used for these converged services are

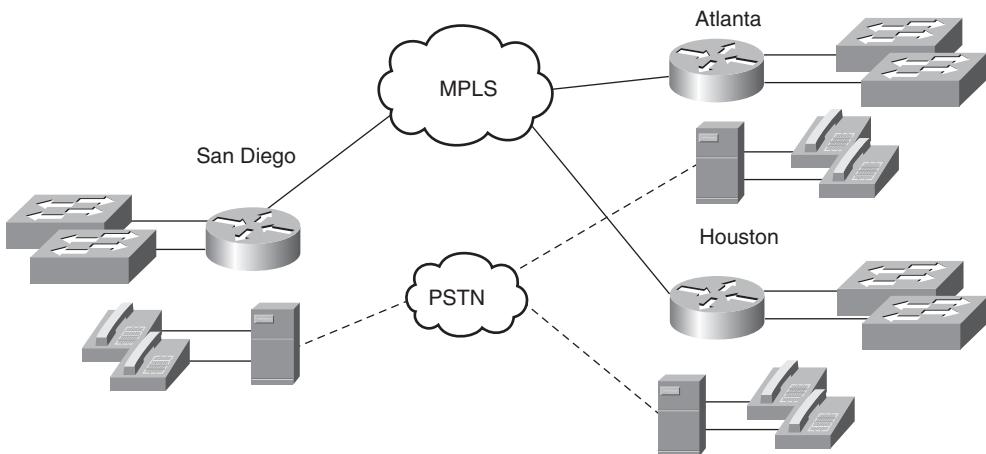
- Voice over Frame Relay (VoFR)
- Voice over Asynchronous Transfer Mode (VoATM)
- Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP)

Initially, VoFR and VoATM were used but lost ground to VoIP solutions. VoFR and VoATM are no longer exam topics for the CCDA and are not covered further. VoIP is also referred to as IP telephony (IPT) when it is integrated with IP-based signaling and call control. Most new phone system deployments are IPT systems.

## VoIP

VoIP provides transport of voice over the IP protocol family. IP makes voice globally available regardless of the data-link protocol in use (Ethernet, ATM, Frame Relay). With VoIP, enterprises do not have to build separate voice and data networks. Integrating voice and data into a single converged network eliminates duplicate infrastructure, management, and costs.

Figure 14-7 shows a company that has separate voice and data networks. Phones connect to local PBXs, and the PBXs are connected using TDM trunks. Off-net calls are routed to the PSTN. The data network uses LAN switches connected to WAN routers. The WAN for data uses Frame Relay. Separate operations and management systems are required for these networks. Each system has its corresponding monthly WAN charges and personnel, resulting in additional costs. With separate voice and data networks,



**Figure 14-7 Separate Voice and Data Networks**

- Data is primary traffic on many voice service provider networks.
- Companies want to reduce WAN costs.
- PSTN architecture is not flexible enough to accommodate data.
- PSTN cannot integrate voice, data, and video.

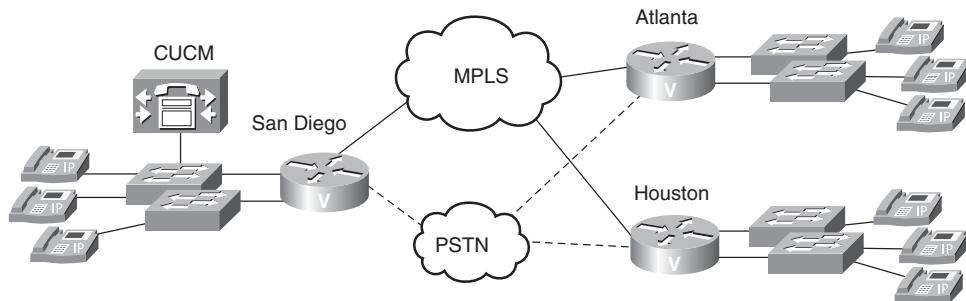
With IP telephony, you can reduce the number of systems, circuits, and support personnel. Figure 14-8 shows a converged IP telephony network that employs Ethernet-based phones with server-based call processing and integrated service gateway routers. Survivable Remote Site Telephony (SRST) is used for failover or backup call processing if WAN failure occurs. On-net calls travel through the Frame Relay network, and off-net calls are forwarded to the PSTN. The PSTN link is also used if voice overflow or congestion occurs on the WAN network. Calls are then routed to the PSTN.

## IPT Components

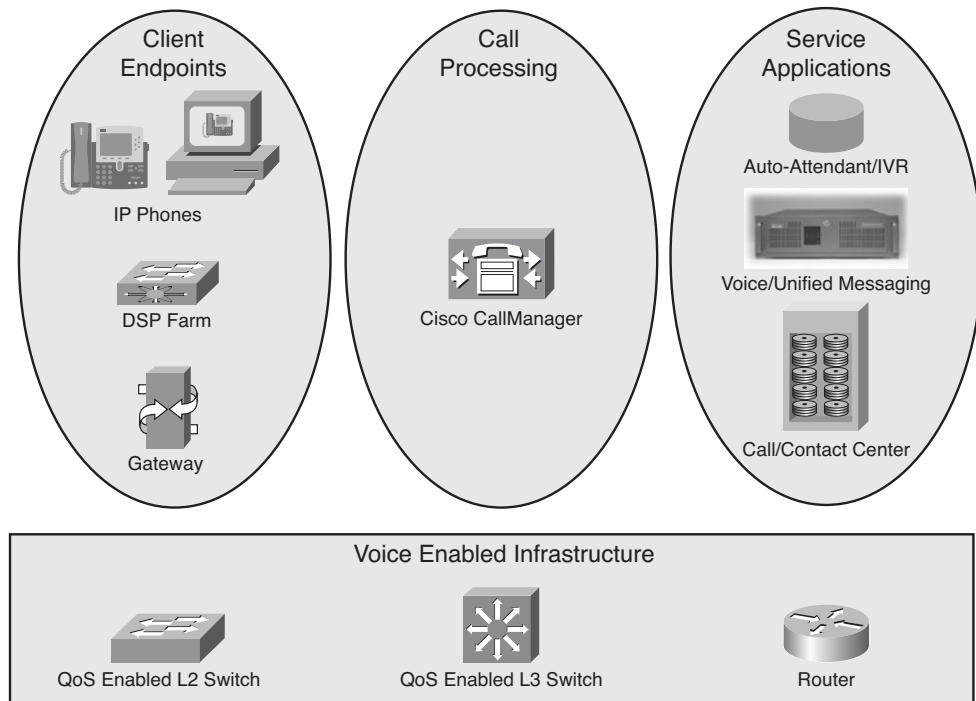
The Cisco IPT architecture divides voice system architectures into four major VoIP components, as shown in Figure 14-9:

- Client endpoints
- Call processing
- Service applications
- Voice-enabled infrastructure





**Figure 14-8** Converged VoIP Network



**Figure 14-9** Cisco IPT Functional Areas

Client endpoints include the IP phones, analog and digital gateways, digital signal processor (DSP) farms, and software applications. Included here is Cisco's IP Communicator, which is the software-based IP phone that runs on a PC or laptop. Gateways are transitional devices that bridge two different systems and connection types. They can provide

connections between VoIP/IPT systems and analog or digital circuits. This allows VoIP/IPT systems to integrate with the PSTN, PBXs, and analog endpoints.

The Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) fulfills the role of call processing. The CUCM servers are the “brains” of the voice dial plan and are used to establish IPT calls between IP phones. It provides a scalable and distributable VoIP call processing solution. CUCM performs the functions similar to traditional PBXs on older voice networks.

Service applications include IVR, Auto Attendant, and Unified Messaging (voice mail). Cisco IP Contact Center (IPCC) is used for enterprise call center applications. In addition, a standards-based Telephony Application Programming Interface (TAPI) allows third-party companies to develop applications for CUCM.

The voice-enabled infrastructure provides services to support IPT voice, including Power over Ethernet (PoE) and QoS. PoE allows a switch to detect a phone and provide it with power so that power does not have to be provided everywhere that phones are present. With this model, backup/redundant power can be provided from a centralized location. In addition, when a switch detects a phone, it can put that phone in a separate VLAN from other endpoints and allow QoS signaling from the phones. LAN switches and WAN routers work together to provide queuing of data and end-to-end prioritization of VoIP over other types of network traffic during times of congestion.

Table 14-5 summarizes the IPT functional areas.

**Table 14-5** *IPT Functional Areas*

IPT Functional Area	Description
Service applications	Unity, IVR, TAPI interface
Call processing	Cisco CUCM
Client endpoints	IP phones, digital and analog gateways
Voice-enabled infrastructure	Layer 2 and Layer 3 switches and routers

### Design Goals of IP Telephony

The overall goal of IP telephony is to replace the traditional, highly complex, expensive, and isolated TDM-based telephone systems and the required duplicate infrastructure with simpler, more cost-effective IPT components using existing data infrastructure and leveraging integration to provide flexibility and cost savings along with robust features and functionality. IPT also allows third-party software providers to develop new applications for IP phones.

The following summarizes the design goals for a VoIP network:

- To use end-to-end VoIP between sites
- To make VoIP widely usable
- 



- To make VoIP cost-effective
- To provide the same reliability and high availability traditionally associated with older voice technologies
- To offer lower cost of ownership than traditional telephony
- To offer greater flexibility than traditional telephony (remote worker, mobility)
- To leverage integration to provide new applications (presence, IVR, contact centers)
- To improve remote worker, agent, and work-at-home staff productivity
- To facilitate data and telephony network consolidation
- To ensure backward compatibility with traditional systems and endpoints such as PBXs, faxes, and the PSTN

## IPT Deployment Models

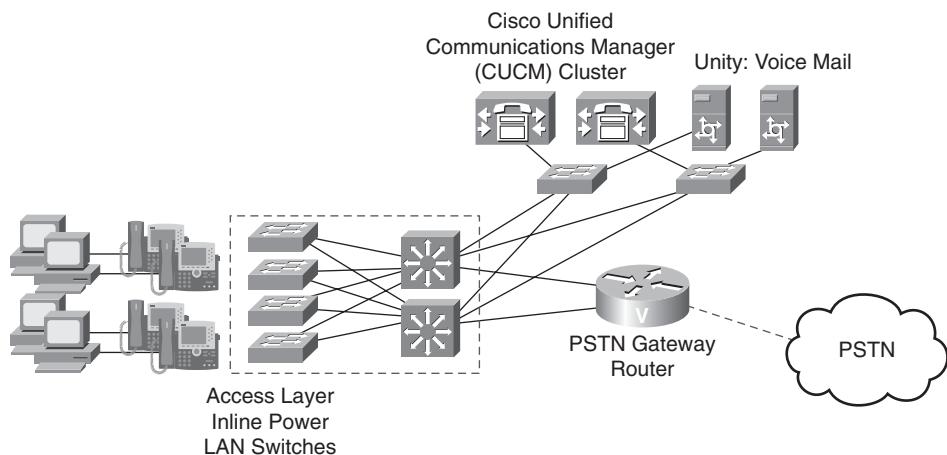
This section covers the Cisco IPT call processing deployment models:



- Single-site deployment
- Multisite WAN with centralized call processing
- Multisite WAN with distributed call processing
- CallManager Express deployment

### Single-Site Deployment

The single-site deployment model, shown in Figure 14-10, is a solution for enterprises located in a single large building or campus area with no voice on the WAN links. There are no remote sites.

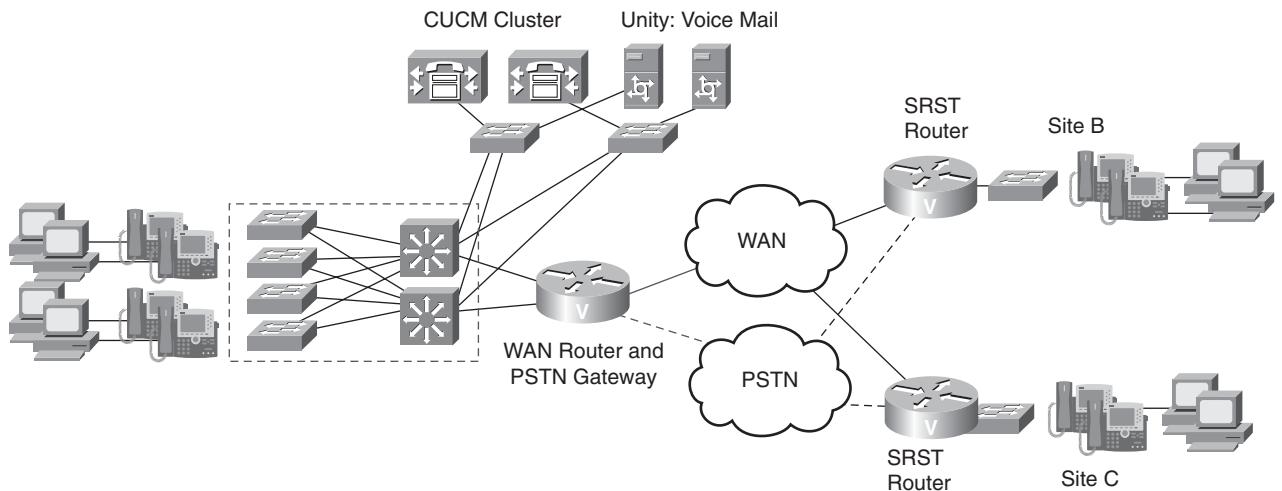


**Figure 14-10** Single-Site Deployment Model

A single cluster of CUCM servers is deployed for redundancy in the server farm. IP phones are deployed on PoE- and QoS-enabled LAN switches. The CUCM cluster supports up to 30,000 IP devices in a cluster. Gateway routers are configured with PRI cards to legacy PBXs and the PSTN. A single cluster of Unity or Unity Connection servers support voice-mail and unified messaging requirements. IP phones are deployed on PoE inline power LAN switches.

### Multisite WAN with Centralized Call Processing Model

The centralized WAN call processing model is a solution for medium enterprises with one large location and many remote sites. Figure 14-11 shows the centralized call processing model. A CUCM cluster with multiple servers is deployed for redundancy at the large site. Call processing and voice-mail servers are located only at the main site. Remote-site IP phones register to the CUCM cluster located in the main site. PoE switches are used to power all IP phones. Remote sites use voice-enabled gateway routers with SRST for call processing redundancy in the event of a WAN failure.



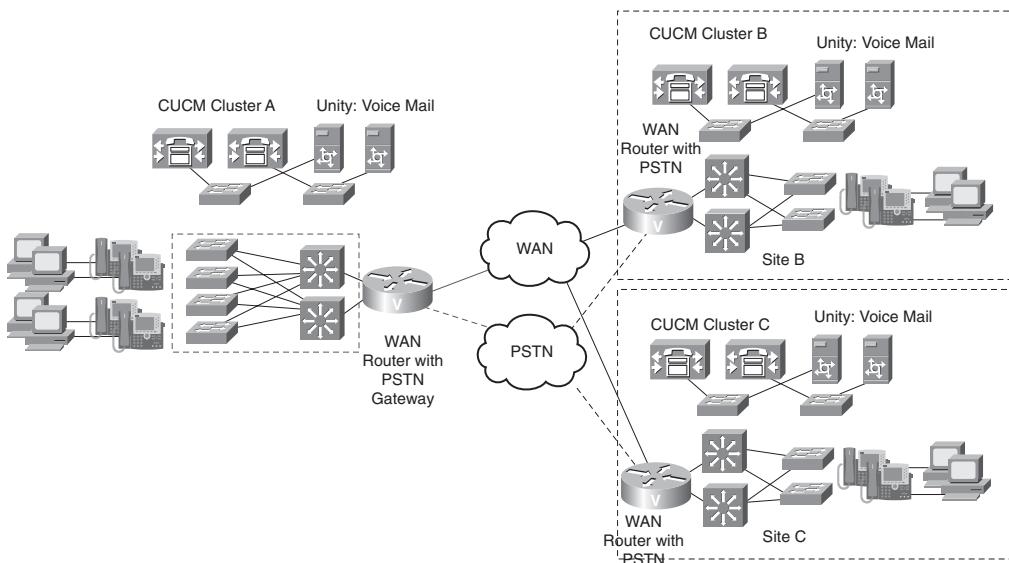
**Figure 14-11** Multisite WAN with Centralized CM Deployment Model

On the WAN, QoS features are configured to prioritize the VoIP packets over other packet types. In the event of WAN failure, SRST-configured routers forward calls through the PSTN. The PSTN circuit can be used for local inbound and outbound calls at the remote site. In this model, call admission control (CAC) is configured to impose a limit on the number of on-net calls permitted between sites.

### Multisite WAN with Distributed Call Processing Model

The multisite WAN with distributed call processing is a solution for large enterprises with several large locations. Figure 14-12 shows the distributed WAN model. Up to 30,000

redundancy, and Unity servers are used for messaging. Intercluster trucks are created to establish communication between clusters. IP phones are deployed on PoE LAN switches.



**Figure 14-12** Multisite WAN with Distributed CM Deployment Model

This model also supports remote sites to be distributed off the large sites. Cisco gatekeepers (special software feature on IOS routers) can be deployed to support a unified dial plan and enforce CAC.

### Unified CallManager Express Deployments

Cisco provides express versions of its CallManager and Unity solutions integrated in its Integrated Services Routers (ISR). CallManager Express (CME) provides the call processing capabilities on a router. Unity Express provides voice-mail and auto-attendant functions on special modules that can be installed in a router. CME deployments support up to 450 Cisco IP phones (hardware dependent, based on 3945 ISR G2). It is a distributed, lower-cost solution for small branch offices.

### Video Deployment Considerations

There has been an increase in the amount of video over IP traffic on data networks. In the workplace, the use of desktop video conferencing, video broadcasts, IP video surveillance are increasingly being seen on the network. Video surveillance requires high bandwidth

and low loss and delay between the camera source and the storage device to produce the best video. We also see traffic from “unmanaged” sources from the Internet, such as video from news sites, YouTube, and TV programming shows. Video traffic is more susceptible to QoS issues than VoIP or data traffic, although end users are used to some intermediate chop in video as long as the audio going with it does not skip. Table 14-6 shows the packet-loss target for each traffic category.



**Table 14-6** Data, Voice, and Video Sensitivities to Packet Loss

Traffic Type	Sensitivity to Multisecond Interruption	Packet-Loss Target
Data	Tolerant	1 % to 2 %
Voice	Less tolerant	< 1 %
Video	Intolerant	< 0.05 %

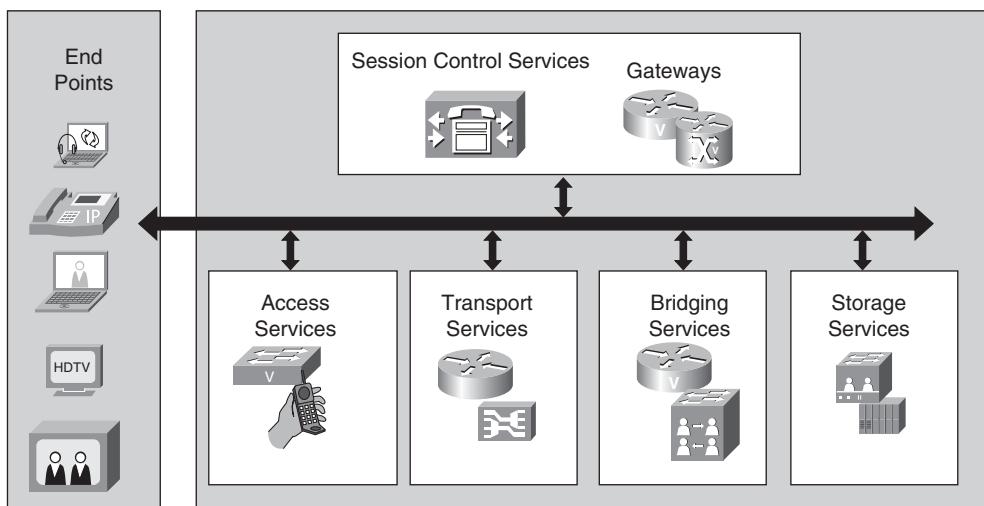
The network designer should be aware that different video applications behave differently and place different requirements on the network. Table 14-7 shows characteristics of video media application models.

**Table 14-7** Video Media Application Models

Tool	Model	Flow Direction	Traffic Trends
TelePresence	Many to many	Client ↔ Client MCU ↔ Client	4 Mbps to 12 Mbps for high-def video.
Desktop video conferencing	Many to many	Client ↔ Client MCU ↔ Client	Collaboration across geographies. Growing peer-to-peer model.
Video surveillance	Many to few	Source → Storage Storage → Client Source → Client	Up to 3 Mbps to 4 Mbps per camera based on video quality and frame rates.
Desktop streaming media	Few to many	Storage → Client Source → Client	Increase in application driving more streams. Higher-quality video adds more bandwidth.

An architecture framework for media services supports different models of video models. As shown in Figure 14-13, the network provides service to video media in the Media Services Framework. Those services are access services, transport services, bridging services, storage servers, and session control services, which are provided to endpoints.

- **Access services** provide identity of end devices, mobility, and location services.
- **Transport services** provide QoS for reliable packet delivery.
- **Bridging services** provide transcoding, conferencing, and recording services of media streams.
- **Storage services** provide capture and storage of media streams and content management and distribution.
- **Session control services** provide session signaling and control and gateway services.



**Figure 14-13** Media Services Architectural Framework

### Codecs

Because speech is an analog signal, it must be converted into digital signals for transmission over digital systems. The first basic modulation and coding technique was pulse-code modulation (PCM). The international standard for PCM is G.711. With PCM, analog speech is sampled 8000 times a second. Each speech sample is mapped onto 8 bits. Thus, PCM produces  $(8000 \text{ samples per second}) * (8 \text{ bits per sample}) = 64,000 \text{ bits per second} = 64\text{-kbps}$  coded bit rate. Other coding schemes have been developed to further compress the data representation of speech. G.711 is used as the primary with IPT over LANs where high bandwidth is available.

## Analog-to-Digital Signal Conversion

For clear voice communications, analog speech is converted into digital format. Digitized voice can travel longer distances than analog voice. The steps involved to convert voice from analog into digital format are

**Step 1.** Filtering

**Step 2.** Sampling

**Step 3.** Digitizing

Most of the spoken language ranges from 300 Hz to approximately 3400 Hz. In the first step, codecs are configured to filter signals over 4000 Hz out of the analog signal.

In the second step, the signal is sampled at 8000 times per second using pulse-amplitude modulation (PAM). It is sampled 8000 times a second because that is twice the highest frequency of the filtered voice stream at 4000 Hz. This produces a sample every 125 microseconds.

Third, the amplitude samples are converted to a binary code. This is process where PCM occurs. The difference between PCM and PAM is that PCM does the additional step of encoding each analog sample into binary.

The digitizing process is divided further into two subprocesses:

- **Companding:** This term comes from “compressing and expanding.” The analog samples are compressed into logarithmic segments. Then each segment is quantized and coded, which is the next subprocess.
- **Quantization and coding:** This process converts the analog value into a distinct value that is assigned a digital value. The standard word size is 8 bits, which allows for 256 distinct quantization intervals. The rate then becomes the sampling rate times the size of the codeword ( $2 * 4\text{kHz} * 8 \text{ bits} = 64 \text{ kbps}$ ).

## Codec Standards

Codecs transform analog signals into a digital bit stream and digital signals back into analog signals. Figure 14-14 shows that an analog signal is digitized with a coder for digital transport. The decoder converts the digital signal into analog form.



**Figure 14-14** *Codec*

Each codec provides a certain quality of speech. Each codec provides a certain level of fidelity to the original audio, or quality of speech. The term *mean opinion score* (MOS) is used to rate the fidelity for a codec. A MOS score is not a scientific measure. Instead, it is

used to rate the fidelity from 1 (bad) to 5 (best). The scores are then averaged to provide the MOS for

each codec. For example, the established MOS score for G.711 is 4.1, and G.729 is 3.92. The default codec setting for VoIP dial peers in Cisco IOS software is G.729 (g729r8), but this can be configured with several other options, including G.711. Other codec standards are shown in Table 14-8. An explanation of the compression techniques is beyond the scope of the CCDA test.

**Table 14-8** *Codec Standards*

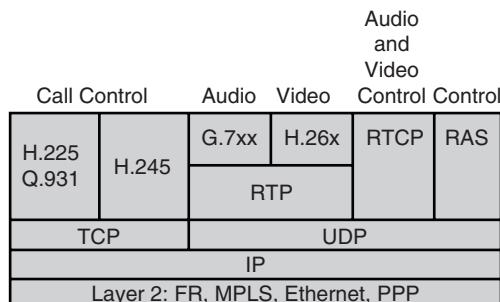
Codec	Bit Rate	MOS	Description
G.711u	64 kbps	4.1	PCM. Mu-law version used in North America and Japan. Samples speech 8000 times per second, represented in 8 bits.
G.711a	64 kbps	4.1	PCM. A-law used in Europe and international systems.
G.726	16/24/32/40 kbps	3.85	Adaptive differential pulse-code modulation (AD-PCM).
G.728	16 kbps	3.61	Low-Delay CELP (LDCELP).
G.729	8 kbps	3.92	Conjugate Structure Acelp (Cs-Acelp).
G.723.1	6.3 kbps	3.9	Multipulse Excitation—Maximum Likelihood Quantization (MPE-MLQ).
G.723.1	5.3 kbps	3.65	Algebraic Code—Excited Linear Prediction (ACELP).

Key Topic

### VoIP Control and Transport Protocols

A number of different protocols are used in a VoIP environment for call control, device provisioning, and addressing.

Figure 14-15 shows those protocols focused on VoIP control and transport.



Key Topic

**Figure 14-15** *VoIP Control and Transport Protocols*

Some of the most significant protocols are

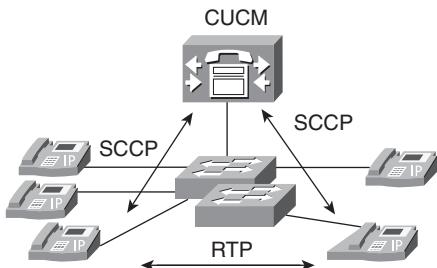
- **Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP):** Used to provide device configuration parameters such as IP configuration (address, subnet mask, default gateway) and TFTP servers (via DHCP option 150).
- **TFTP:** To obtain ring tones, backgrounds, configuration files, and firmware files.
- **Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP):** Used for call control for Cisco IP phones (Cisco proprietary).
- **Real-time Transport Protocol (RTP):** For voice stream (VoIP) station-to-station traffic in an active call.
- **Real-time Transport Control Protocol (RTCP):** For RTP control and reporting (accompanying stream to RTP between endpoints).
- **Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP):** A client/server protocol for control of endpoints and gateways. In the MGCP model, intelligence resides on the call agent (server), and the device is controlled by the agent.
- **H.323:** An ITU standard for VoIP networks that is a peer-to-peer system (call processing logic is local to each device) used for gateways and endpoints.
- **Session Initiation Protocol (SIP):** A standard for VoIP networks defined by the IETF and used for gateways and endpoints. SIP is feature rich (native IM, presence, and video support), lightweight, and designed for easy troubleshooting (ASCII-based messages).

### DHCP, DNS, and TFTP

IP phones use DHCP to obtain their IP addressing information: IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. DHCP also provides the IP address of the DNS servers and the name or IP address of the TFTP server. You use TFTP to download the IP phone operating system and configuration. Both DHCP and TFTP run over UDP. These protocols are covered in detail in Chapter 8, “Internet Protocol Version 4.”

### SCCP

SCCP is a Cisco proprietary client/server signaling protocol for call setup and control. SCCP runs over TCP. SCCP is called a “skinny” protocol because it uses less overhead than the call-setup protocols used by H.323. IP phones typically use SCCP to register with CUCM and to establish calls. SCCP can also be used by the call agent to communicate with gateways and control analog endpoints such as FXS ports. It is also used to manage resources such as DSPs on voice gateways. SCCP is used for VoIP call signaling and for features such as message-waiting indicators. As shown in Figure14-16, IP phones communicate with the CUCM server using SCCP, but RTP is the protocol used for voice media streams between IP phones.



**Figure 14-16** SCCP

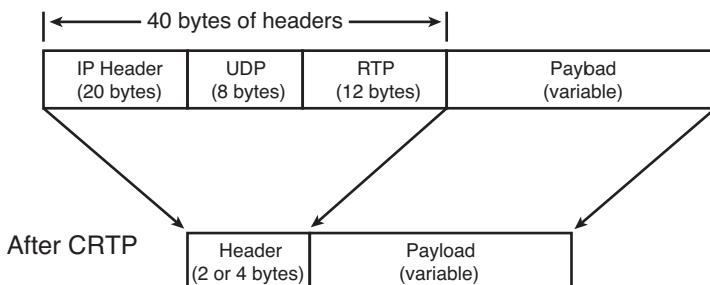
### RTP and RTCP

In VoIP, RTP transports audio streams. RTP is a transport layer protocol that carries digitized voice in its payload. RTP was initially defined in RFC 1889, and the current RFC is 3550. RTP runs over UDP, which has lower delay than TCP. Because of the time sensitivity of voice traffic and the delay incurred in retransmissions, UDP is used rather than TCP. Real-time traffic is carried over UDP ports ranging from 16,384 to 32767. The only requirement is that the RTP data be transported on an even port and that the RTCP data be carried on the next odd port. RTCP is also defined in RFC 3550. RTCP is a session layer protocol that monitors the delivery of data and provides control and identification functions. Figure 14-17 shows a VoIP packet with the IP, UDP, and RTP headers. Notice that the sum of the header lengths is  $20 + 8 + 12 = 40$  bytes.



**Figure 14-17** IP, UDP, and RTP Headers of a VoIP Packet

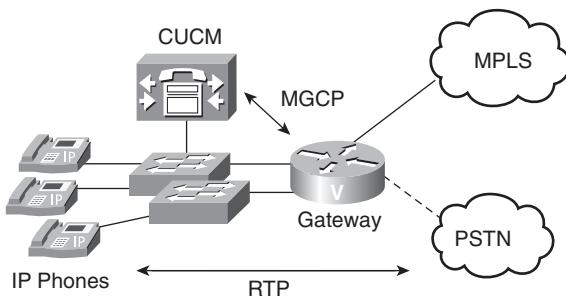
WAN links use RTP header compression to reduce the size of voice packets. This is also called Compressed RTP (cRTP), which is defined in RFC 2508. As shown in Figure 14-18, cRTP reduces the IP/UDP/RTP header from 40 bytes to 2 or 4 bytes (a significant decrease in overhead). cRTP happens on a hop-by-hop basis, with compression and decompression occurring on every link. It must be configured on both ends of the link. It is recommended for slow links up to 768 kbps. cRTP is not used much anymore because slow WAN link bandwidths are seen less. Higher speed links are not recommended because of the high CPU requirements and they reduce call quality.



**Figure 14-18** cRTP

## MGCP

MGCP is a client/server signaling protocol that is used to allow centralized call processing agents (such as CUCM) to control gateways in VoIP networks. MGCP is defined in RFC 3661. MGCP's primary advantage is centralized device and dial plan configuration. Figure 14-19 shows a network where MGCP is used by the CUCM to control a voice gateway. MGCP gateways handle transition between TDM and IP voice network. MGCP is also used to provide enhanced functionality such as QSIG trunking, which is not supported in H.323 or SIP IOS gateways, and gateway failover and load balancing.



**Figure 14-19 MGCP**

MGCP defines two components: call agents and endpoints. In MGCP networks, endpoints cannot function without communication and control from the call agent. Call agents such as CUCM control the gateways. An endpoint is any gateway interface, such as a PRI trunk or analog interface.

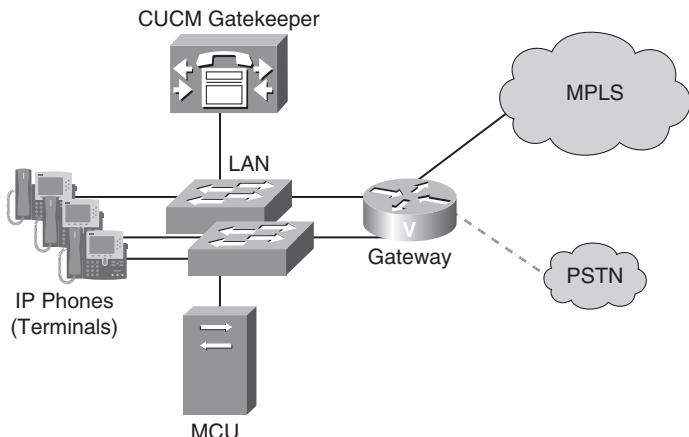
## H.323

H.323 is a standard published by the ITU that works as a framework document for multi-media protocols, including voice, video, and data conferencing, for use over packet-switched networks. H.323 standards describe terminal (endpoints), gateway, gatekeeper, and multipoint control unit (MCU) devices to be used in a multimedia network.

As shown in Figure 14-20, H.323 includes the following elements:

- **Terminals:** Telephones, video phones, and voice-mail systems (devices that provide real-time two-way voice).
- **MCUs:** An MCU is a device used for joining together multiple audio/video streams into a single bridge, or conference. The MCU is responsible for taking streams from the different conference participants, mixing the streams together, and then sending the combined stream back to the participants.
- **Gateways:** A device that provides transitional services from one network type to another such as connecting a VoIP network to a TDM network such as the PSTN (analog/T1 PRI). Gateways also provide translation services between H.323 endpoints and non-H.323 devices.

- **Gatekeepers:** Provide dial plan unification, CAC, device registration, and call routing services to the VoIP network and are often used to unify multiple different VoIP networks as a single call routing hub. Gatekeepers are recommended when interconnecting more than two CUCM networks, to reduce dial plan and call routing configuration and provide centralized CAC.



**Figure 14-20** H.323 Components

**Gatekeeper Use for Scalability** By definition, H.323 networks are peer-to-peer, autonomous systems. This means that configuration is required on each device about all other devices in the network with which it needs to communicate (a mesh configuration), including network addressing, call routing, CAC, and other configuration parameters (a logical connection). As a network grows, the number of logical connections required grows exponentially. For example, if a gatekeeper is not used, logical connections need to be configured on each gateway to connect to every single other gateway on the network.

The number of logical connections is represented by the following formula:

$$L = (N * (N - 1)) / 2$$

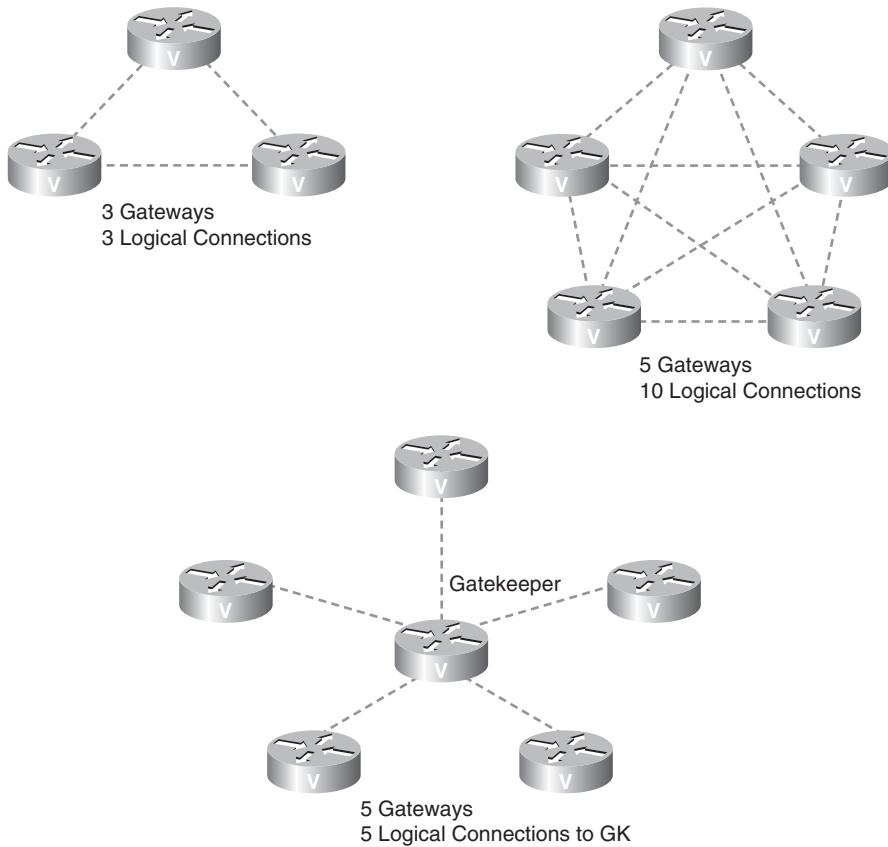
where  $N$  is the number of devices in the network.

For example, in a network with 7 devices, 21 logical connections must be configured to ensure that each device can communicate with every other device.

Alternatively, this configuration can be consolidated into a centralized system called a gatekeeper. In a gatekeeper-controlled system, each device needs to be configured with only a logical connection to the gatekeeper. In this fashion, the number of configurations required is exponentially reduced, and administration can be done from a central point.

Going back to the earlier configuration example, only 7 logical connections need to be configured in a gatekeeper-controlled environment as opposed to the 21 that have to be configured without it. In a larger network of 100 devices, it is 100 versus 4950 connections!

As shown in Figure 14-21, for three gateways the number of logical connections is only three but grows to ten connections when there are only five gateways. With a gatekeeper, each gateway contains a simpler dial plan and connects only to the gatekeeper.



**Figure 14-21** A Gatekeeper Reduces the Number of Logical Gateway Connections

H.323 terminals must support the following standards:

- H.245 call capability control
- Q.931 call setup signaling
- H.225 call signaling
- RTP/RTCP voice streams

H.245 specifies messages for opening and closing channels for media streams and other commands, requests, and indications. It is a control channel protocol.

Q.931 is a standard for call signaling used by H.323 within the context of H.225. It is also used by PRI links.

H.225 performs registration, admission, and status (RAS) signaling for H.323 sessions.

RTP is the transport layer protocol used to transport VoIP packets. RTCP is also a transport layer protocol.

H.323 includes a series of protocols for multimedia, as shown in Table 14-9.

**Table 14-9** *H.323 Protocols*

	<b>Video</b>	<b>Audio</b>	<b>Data</b>	<b>Transport</b>
H.323 protocol	H.261	G.711	T.122	RTP
	H.263	G.722	T.124	H.225
	H.264	G.723.1	T.125	H.235
		G.728	T.126	H.245
		G.729	T.127	H.450.1
				H.450.2
				H.450.3
				X.224.0

### H.264

H.264 is an ITU-T standard that defines video compression algorithm. It is identical to ISO/IEC MPEG-4 Part 10 and also called Advanced Video Coding (AVC). It is an upgrade from the H.263 standard that is found in Flash, YouTube, and Google video today. H.264 also handles encoding of pixel blocks more effectively, thus reducing the pixilation seen on video conferences when motion occurs. H.264 encodes and transmits two interlaced fields for each frame: 30 frames per second and 60 fields per second. H.263 only does 30 fields per second.

Table 14-10 provides typical bandwidth requirements of H.264 video sources.

**Table 14-10** *H.264 Video Bandwidth*

<b>Video Source</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Typical Load</b>
TelePresence 3000	1080p	12.3 Mbps
TelePresence 3000	720p	6.75
TelePresence 1000	1080p	4.1 Mbps
TelePresence 1000	720p	2.25 Mbps
Cisco 4500 Video Surveillance	1080p	4–6 Mbps
Cisco DMS – Digital Sign SD	720x480	1.5–2.5 Mbps
Cisco DMS – Digital Sign HD	1080p	8–12 Mbps
Cisco Video Advantage	CIF	768 kbps
YouTube HD	720p	2 Mbps

## SIP

SIP is a protocol defined by the IETF and specified in RFC 2543. It is an alternative multi-media framework to H.323, developed specifically for IP telephony. It is meant to be a simple lightweight replacement to H.323. Cisco now supports SIP on CUCM, IP phones, and gateways.

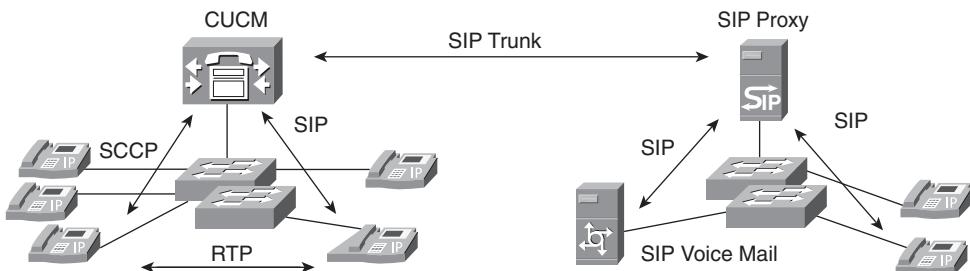
SIP is an application layer control (signaling) protocol for creating, modifying, and terminating IP multimedia conferences, Internet telephone calls, and multimedia distribution. Communication between members of a session can be via a multicast, a unicast mesh, or a combination.

SIP is designed as part of the overall IETF multimedia data and control architecture that incorporates protocols such as the following:

- Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) (RFC 2205) for reserving network bandwidth and priority (low-latency) queuing
- RTP and RTCP (RFC 3550) for transporting real-time data and providing QoS feedback
- Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP) (RFC 2326) for controlling delivery of streaming media
- Session Announcement Protocol (SAP) (RFC 2974) for advertising multimedia sessions via multicast
- Session Description Protocol (SDP) (RFC 2327) for describing multimedia sessions

SIP supports user mobility by using proxy and redirect servers to redirect requests to the user's current location. Users can register their current locations, and SIP location services provide the location of user agents.

Figure 14-22 shows SIP components.



**Figure 14-22** SIP Architecture

SIP uses a modular architecture that includes the following components:

- **SIP user agent (UA):** These endpoints create and terminate sessions, SIP phones, SIP PC clients, or gateways. A UA client (UAC) initiates a SIP request. A UA server

CUCM can act as both a server and a client.

- **SIP proxy server:** Routes messages between SIP UAs. It acts as an intermediate that receives SIP requests from a client and forwards the requests on behalf of the client. SIP proxy servers perform authentication, authorization, routing, reliable request re-transmission, and security.
- **SIP redirect server:** Call control device used to provide routing information to user agents. It provides information about the next hop or hops that a message should take.
- **SIP registrar server:** Stores the location of all user agents in the domain or subdomain. It processes requests from UACs for registration of their current locations. SIP proxy servers or redirect servers can contain registrar servers.
- **SIP location services:** Provide logical location of UAs; used by the proxy, redirect, and registrar servers.
- **Back-to-back user agent:** Call control device that divides a voice call into two call legs.

Table 14-11 summarizes protocols used in VoIP networks.

**Table 14-11** *Significant Protocols in VoIP Networks*

Protocol	Description
DHCP	Dynamic Host Control Protocol. Provides IP address, mask, gateway, DNS address, and TFTP address.
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol. Provides the IP phone configuration and operating system.
SCCP	Skinny Client Control Protocol. Establishes calls between IP phones and CUCM.
RTP	Real-time Transport Protocol. Used for the transmission of real time traffic such as voice and video.
RTCP	Real-time Transport Control Protocol. Provides out of band statistics and control information for RTP streams.
H.323	An ITU standard for VoIP networks. H.323 is older and more stable than SIP, but is also more process intensive and is limited to traditional voice and video functionality.
SIP	Session Initiation Protocol. An IETF standard for VoIP networks. Newer and less mature than H.323, but also less process intensive and has support for new features such as IM and presence.

## IPT Design

This section covers network design issues and solutions that a designer needs to be aware of when designing a network for IPT. Topics such as bandwidth requirements, delay, and QoS schemes should be considered.

## Bandwidth

VoIP calls need to meet bandwidth and delay parameters. The amount of bandwidth required depends on the codec used, the Layer 2 protocol, and whether voice-activity detection (VAD) is enabled. For the purpose of call control, you can use the following bandwidth requirements (minimum values) for VoIP design:

- G.729 calls use 26 kbps.
- G.711 calls use 80 kbps.

When you're designing for VoIP networks, the total bandwidth for voice, data, and video should not exceed 75 percent sustained of the provisioned link capacity during peak times. Best practice is to provision/plan for no more than one-third of any links for the priority queue/real time traffic. Use the following formula to provision interface speeds:

$$\text{Link capacity} = [\text{required bandwidth for voice}] + [\text{required bandwidth for video}] + [\text{required bandwidth for data}]$$

The remaining bandwidth is used by routing, multicast, and management protocols.

## VAD

As we listen and pause between sentences, typical voice conversations can contain up to 60 percent silence in each direction. In circuit-switched telephone networks, all voice calls use fixed-bandwidth 64-kbps links regardless of how much of the conversation is speech and how much is silence. In multiservice networks, all conversation and silence is packetized. Using VAD, you can suppress packets of silence. Silence suppression at the source IP telephone or VoIP gateway increases the number of calls or data volumes that can be carried over the links, more effectively utilizing network bandwidth. Bandwidth savings are at least 35 percent in conservative estimates. VAD is enabled by default for all VoIP calls. In real-world practice, it is suggested that VAD be avoided because it creates quality issues and breaks applications such as fax and modem transmissions.

Table 14-12 shows how much bandwidth is required based on different parameters. Notice that for G.729 bandwidth is reduced from 26.4 kbps to 17.2 kbps with VAD and to 7.3 kbps with VAD and cRTP enabled.

**Table 14-12** VoIP Bandwidth Requirements with cRTP and VAD

Technique Codec Bit Rate (kbps)	Payload Size (Bytes)	Bandwidth Multilink PPP (MLP) or FRF.12 (kbps)	Bandwidth with VAD MLP or FRF.12 (kbps)	Bandwidth with cRTP and VAD MLP or FRF.12 (kbps)
G.711 (64)	240	76	50	43
G.711 (64)	160 (default)	83	54	44
G.726 (32)	120	44	34	29
G.726 (32)	80 (default)	50	35	33
				22
				23

**Table 14-12** VoIP Bandwidth Requirements with cRTP and VAD

Technique Codec Bit Rate (kbps)	Payload Size (Bytes)	Bandwidth Multilink PPP (MLP) or FRF.12 (kbps)		Bandwidth with VAD MLP or FRF.12 (kbps)	Bandwidth with cRTP and VAD MLP or FRF.12 (kbps)
G.726 (24)	80	38	27	25	17
G.726 (24)	60 (default)	42	27	27	18
G.728 (16)	80	25	18	17	12
G.728 (16)	40 (default)	35	19	23	13
G.729 (8)	40	17.2	9.6	11.2	6.3
G.729 (8)	20 (default)	26.4	11.2	17.2	7.3
G.723.1 (6.3)	48	12.3	7.4	8.0	4.8
G.723.1 (6.3)	24 (default)	18.4	8.4	12.0	5.5
G.723.1 (5.3)	40	11.4	6.4	7.4	4.1
G.723.1 (5.3)	20 (default)	17.5	7.4	11.4	4.8

### Calculating Voice Bandwidth

The CCDA test expects the designer to be able to calculate some basic voice bandwidth estimates. Use the following assumptions when calculating voice bandwidth:

- IP/UDP/RTP header uses 40 bytes.
- cRTP reduces the IP/UDP/RTP header to 2 or 4 bytes.
- The WAN Layer 2 header adds 6 bytes on a point-to-point circuit.
- Voice packet size = (Layer 2 header) + (IP/UDP/RTP header) + (voice payload).
- Voice packets per second (pps) = codec bit rate / voice payload size.
- Voice bandwidth (bps) = (voice packet size) \* (pps).

As an example, calculate the WAN bandwidth used at a site that will have 10 concurrent G.729 calls with cRTP and a default voice payload of 20 bytes.

From this description, we obtain the following:

- G.729 codec is used: 8 kbps codec bit rate.
- cRTP = 2-byte IP/UDP/RTP header.

- Default voice payload= 20 bytes \* (8 bits/bytes) = 160 bits.
- WAN header = 6 bytes.
- Voice packet size = 6 bytes + 2 bytes + 20 bytes = 28 bytes \* (8 bits/byte) = 224 bits.
- PPS = 8 kbps / 160 bits = 8000/160 = 50 pps.
- BW per call = 224 (bits/packet) \* 50 (pps) = 11200 bps = 11.2 kbps.
- BW for 10 calls = 11.2kbps \* 10 = 112 kbps.

Here is a second example: Calculate the WAN bandwidth used by a G.711 calls with no cRTP and a default voice payload.

From this description, we obtain the following:

- G.711 codec is used: 64 kbps codec bit rate
- IP/UDP/RTP header = 40 bytes
- Default voice payload= 160 bytes \* (8 bits/bytes) = 1280 bits
- WAN header = 6 bytes
- Voice packet size = 6 bytes + 40 bytes + 160 bytes = 206 bytes \* (8 bits/byte) = 1648 bits
- PPS = 64 kbps / 1280 bits = 64,000/1280 = 50 pps
- BW per call = 1648 (bits/packet) \* 50 (pps) = 82400 bps = 82.4 kbps

Cisco has developed a tool, available on its website, that you can use to obtain accurate estimates for IPT design. The tool is the Voice Codec Bandwidth Calculator, and it is available at <http://tools.cisco.com/Support/VBC/do/CodecCalc1.do>.

## Delay Components in VoIP Networks



The ITU's G.114 recommendation specifies that the one-way delay between endpoints should not exceed 150 ms to be acceptable, commercial voice quality. In private networks, somewhat longer delays might be acceptable for economic reasons. The ITU G.114 recommendation specifies that 151-ms to 400-ms one-way delay might be acceptable provided that organizations are aware that the transmission time will affect the quality of user applications. One-way delays of above 400 ms are unacceptable for general network planning purposes.

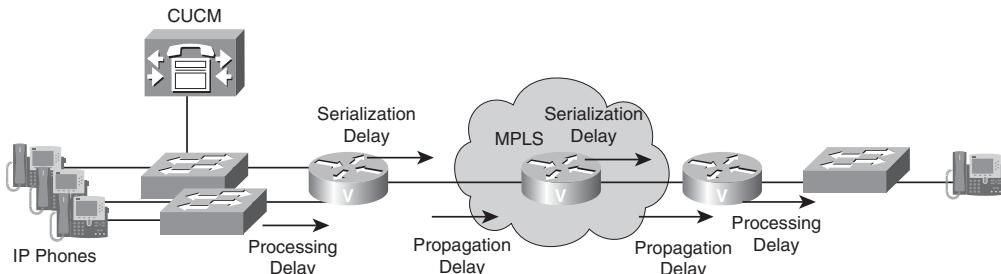
Delay components are one of two major types: fixed delay and variable delay.

As shown in Figure 14-23, fixed delay includes the following types.

- Propagation delay
- Processing delay (and packetization)
- Serialization delay

Propagation delay is how long it takes a packet to travel between two points. It is based on the distance between the two endpoints. You cannot overcome this delay component. The

speed of light is the theoretical limit. A reasonable planning figure is approximately 10 ms per 1000 miles, or 6 ms per 1000 m (6 ms per km). This figure allows for media degradation and devices internal to the transport network. Propagation delay is noticeable on satellite links.



**Figure 14-23** Fixed Delays

Processing delay includes coding, compression, decoding, and decompression delays. G.729 has a delay of 15 ms, and G.711 PCM has a delay of 0.75 ms. The delay created by packetization is also a processing delay. Packetization delay occurs in the process of waiting for a number of digital voice samples before sending out a packet. Packetization delay is the time taken to fill a packet payload with encoded/compressed speech. This delay is a function of the sample block size required by the coder and the number of blocks placed in a single frame.

Serialization delay is how long it takes to place bits on the circuit. Faster circuits have less serialization delay. Serialization delay is calculated with the following formula:

$$\text{Serialization delay} = \text{frame size in bits} / \text{link bandwidth in bps}$$

A 1500-byte packet takes  $(1500 * 8) / 64,000 = 187$  ms of serialization delay on a 64 Kbps circuit. If the circuit is increased to 512 kbps, the serialization delay changes to  $(1500 * 8) / 512,000 = 23.4$  ms. Data-link fragmentation using link fragmentation and interleaving (LFI) or FRI12 mechanisms reduces the serialization delay by reducing the size of the larger data packets. This arrangement reduces the delay experienced by voice packets as data packet fragments are serialized and voice packets are interleaved between the fragments. A reasonable design goal is to keep the serialization delay experienced by the largest packets or fragments on the order of 10 ms at any interface.

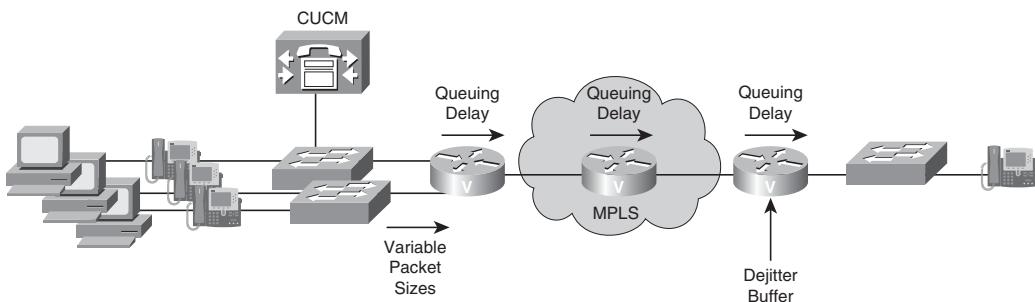
Variable delays are

- Queuing delay
- Jitter buffer delay

As packets cross a network, they pass through several devices. At every output port of these devices, it is possible that other voice and data traffic is sharing the link. Queuing

transmission on a link. It is the sum of the serialization delays of all the packets scheduled ahead of delayed packets. LFI is used as a solution for queuing delay issues. LFI is covered in the next section.

Figure 14-24 shows variable delays.



**Figure 14-24** Variable Delays

Packets might not arrive at a constant rate because they take different paths and have perhaps experienced congestion in the network. This variable delay is called jitter. The receiving end uses dejitter buffers to smooth out the variable delay of received VoIP packets. Dejitter buffers change the variable delay to fixed delay.

As the traffic load on a network increases, both the probability of delay and the length of the probable delay increase. The actual queuing delay depends on the number of queues, queue lengths, and queue algorithms. Queuing effects in VoIP networks are covered in the next section.

Table 14-13 summarizes the fixed and variable network delays, descriptions, and possible solutions.

**Table 14-13** Network Delays

Fixed Delay	Description
Propagation delay	6 ms per km. No solution.
Serialization delay	Frame length/bit rate. A faster link and smaller packets help reduce.
Processing delay	Depends on codec used: coding, compression, and packetization. Add hardware DSPs.
Queuing delay	Variable packet sizes and number of packets. Use LLQ, CBWFQ, LFI.
Jitter	Caused by variable delay. Use dejitter buffers to make delay constant; design as much as possible for an uncongested network.

## Packet Loss

Packet loss is another item that affects voice and video quality. It causes voice and video clipping and skips. It is caused by several factors: congested links, improper QoS configuration, bad packet buffer management, and routing issues. Packet loss is also caused by packets received outside of the dejitter buffer range, which are packets that are discarded.

Cisco VoIP uses 20-ms samples of voice payload per VoIP packet. Codec algorithms can then correct up to 30 ms of lost voice. For the codec correction to be effective, only 1 packet can be lost during any given time. When this occurs, the DSP interpolates the conversation with what it thinks the audio should be.

## Echo Cancellation

In phone calls, sometimes speech is echoed back to the speaker. This is usually caused by an impedance mismatch. Echo cancellation involves first recognizing the originally transmitted signal that reappears, with some delay, in the transmitted or received signal. Once the echo is recognized, it can be removed by subtracting it from the transmitted or received signal. ITU-T defines that echo delays more than 15 ms should be suppressed with echo cancellers. Echo delays up to 15 ms do not need to be suppressed.

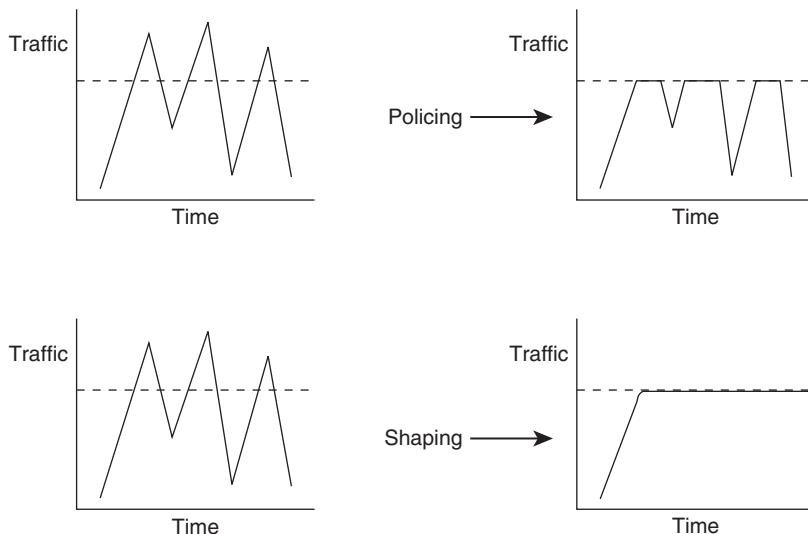
## QoS and Bandwidth Mechanisms for VoIP and Video Networks

Cisco provides different QoS tools that you should use on edge and backbone routers to support VoIP networks. First, the CCDA should understand the different categories of QoS mechanisms:



- **Classification:** Process that identifies the class or group a packet belongs to. Matches are based on protocol, input port, IP precedence, DSCP, or 802.1P class of service (CoS). Classification is accomplished using class maps, access lists, and route maps.
- **Marking:** Process of marking packets with differentiated service codepoint (DSCP) values for QoS.
- **Congestion avoidance:** Mechanism that seeks to avoid congestion by preemptively dropping packets to signal traffic flows to slow sending rates. Examples are Weighted Random Early Discard (WRED) and Distributed WRED (DWRED).
- **Traffic conditioners:** These are of two types: traffic shaper and policer. The shaper delays excessive traffic by using a buffer or queuing mechanism and shape the flow of traffic. Traffic policing drops traffic or reclassifies excessive traffic to a lower priority. Frame Relay Traffic Shaping and Committed Access Rate (CAR) are examples. Figure 14-25 shows the differences.

- **Congestion management:** These queuing algorithms segregate traffic and use a determined method to prioritize traffic. Examples are weighted fair queuing (WFQ), priority queuing (PQ), custom queuing (CQ), class-based WFQ (CBWFQ), and low-latency queuing (LLQ).
- **Link efficiency:** Tools used to improve QoS characteristics on specific links within a network. Examples are Compressed RTP and LFI.



**Figure 14-25** Policing and Shaping of Traffic

Several QoS and bandwidth management mechanisms are used on VoIP networks:

- cRTP
- IEEE 802.1Q/P
- RSVP
- LFI
- LLQ
- Auto QoS

### cRTP

cRTP was covered in an earlier section. It compresses the IP/UDP/RTP headers from 40 bytes to 2 or 4 bytes. It is configured on a link-to-link basis. Cisco recommends using cRTP for links lower than 768 kbps. Do not configure cRTP if the router CPU is above 75 percent utilization.

### IEEE 802.1P

The IEEE 802.1P signaling technique is an OSI Layer 2 standard for prioritizing network traffic at the data link/MAC sublayer. It can also be defined as best-effort QoS at Layer 2.

IEEE 802.1P traffic is simply classified and sent to the destination; no bandwidth reservations are established.

IEEE 802.1P is a spin-off of the 802.1Q VLAN trunking standard. The 802.1Q standard specifies a tag that appends to a MAC frame. The VLAN tag carries VLAN information. The VLAN tag has two parts: the VLAN ID (12 bit) and Prioritization (3 bit). The Prioritization field was never defined in the VLAN standard. The 802.1P implementation defines this Prioritization field.

802.1P establishes eight levels (3 bits) of priority similar to IP precedence. Network adapters and switches route traffic based on the priority level. Using Layer 3 switches allows you to map 802.1P prioritization to IP precedence before forwarding to routers.

### Resource Reservation Protocol

Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) is a signaling protocol that enables end stations or applications to obtain special QoS for their data flows. Basically, RSVP reserves bandwidth for the application. RSVP does not transport application data but is rather an Internet control protocol, like Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP), Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), or routing protocols. RSVP is also known as Resource Reservation Setup Protocol. You can find the IETF charter at [www.ietf.org/html.charters/rsvp-charter.html](http://www.ietf.org/html.charters/rsvp-charter.html). The first “standards” version of the protocol can be found in RFC 2205.

RSVP is used by a host to request specific QoS from the network for particular application data streams or flows. RSVP requests generally result in resources being reserved in each node along the data path.

### LFI

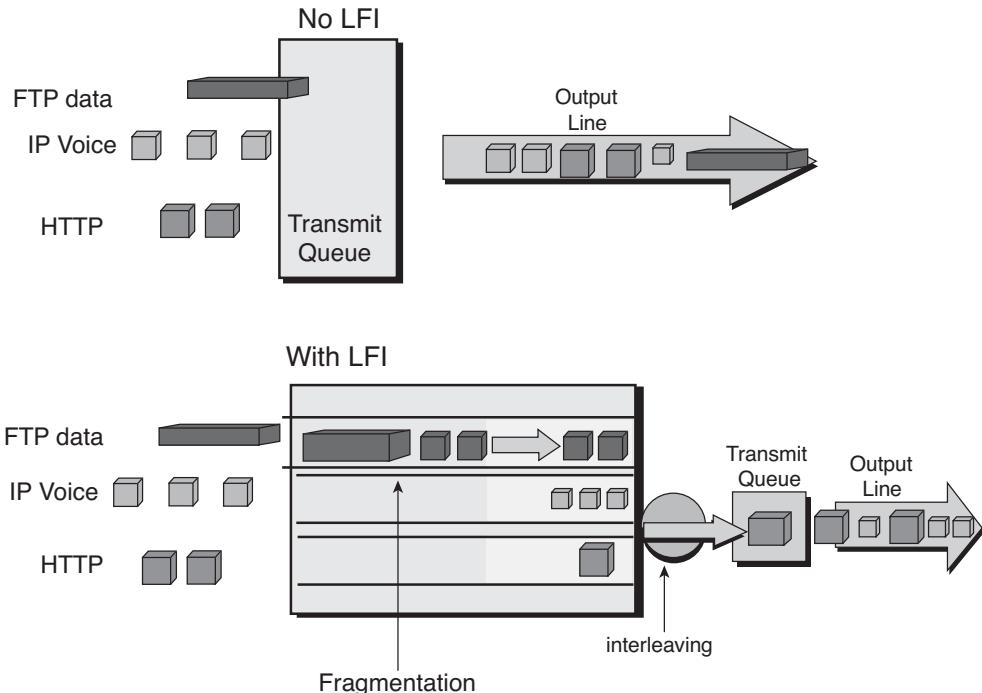
LFI is a QoS mechanism used to reduce the serialization delay. In a multiservice network, small VoIP packets have to compete with large data traffic packets for outbound interfaces. If the large data packet arrives at the interface first, the VoIP packet has to wait until the large data packet has been serialized. When the large packet is fragmented into smaller packets, the VoIP packets can be interleaved between the data packets. Figure 14-26 shows how LFI works. With no LFI, all VoIP packets and other small packets must wait for the FTP data to be transmitted. With LFI, the FTP data packet is fragmented. The queuing mechanism then can interleave the VoIP packets with the other packets and send them out the interface.

FRF.12 is a fragmentation and interleaving mechanism specific to Frame Relay networks. It is configured on Frame Relay permanent virtual circuits (PVC) to fragment large data packets into smaller packets and interleave them with VoIP packets. This process reduces the serialization delay caused by larger packets.

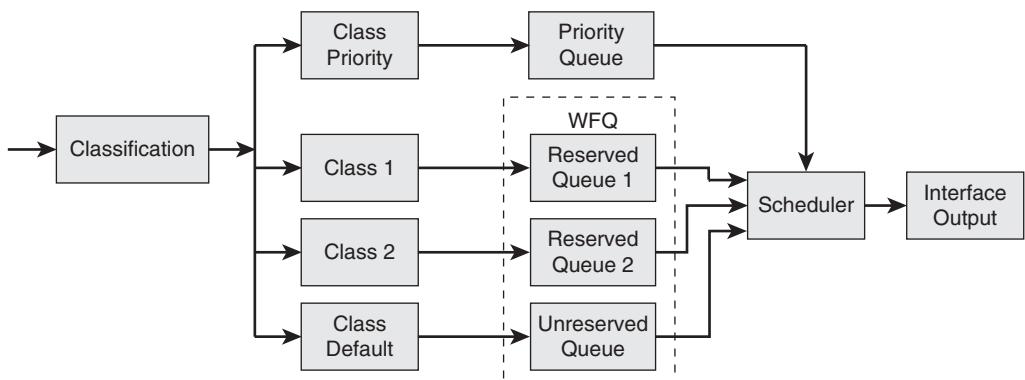
### LLQ

As shown in Figure 14-27, LLQ provides a strict-priority queue for VoIP traffic. LLQ then is configured with multiple queues to guarantee bandwidth for different classes of traffic. Other traffic is WFQ'd based on its classification. With LLQ, all voice call traffic is as-

class. It also reduces jitter for voice and video streams because it gives priority to those traffic types. With LLQ for Frame Relay, queues are set up on a per-PVC basis. Each PVC has a PQ to support voice traffic. This congestion management method is considered the most optimal for voice.



**Figure 14-26** LFI



**Figure 14-27** LLQ

If multiple classes are configured for LLQ, they share a single queue but are allocated bandwidth and policed individually. It is recommended that you place only voice in the priority queue, because voice traffic typically is well behaved, requiring fixed maximum amounts of bandwidth per call. The voice traffic is identified by IP precedence bits set to a value of 5 or a DSCP of Expedited Forwarding (EF) with values of 101xxx. Introducing video or other variable-rate, real-time or non-real-time traffic types could cause unacceptable jitter for the voice traffic. Video traffic normally is set to AF41 (100010). And signaling normally is set to an IP precedence of 3 or a DSCP of 011xxx.

### Auto QoS

Auto QoS is a Cisco IOS feature that uses a simpler command-line interface (CLI) to enable QoS for VoIP in WAN and LAN environments. Auto QoS significantly reduces the number of configuration lines necessary to support VoIP in the network.

For the WAN, Auto QoS provides the following capabilities:

- Automatically classifies RTP and VoIP control packets
- Builds VoIP Modular QoS in the Cisco IOS software
- Provides LLQ for VoIP bearer traffic
- Provides minimum-bandwidth guarantees by using CBWFQ for VoIP control traffic

For the LAN, Auto QoS provides the following capabilities:

- Enforces a trust boundary at the Cisco IP phone
- Enforces a trust boundary on the Catalyst switch access and uplink and downlink ports
- Enables strict-priority queuing and weighted round robin for voice and data traffic
- Modifies queue admission criteria by performing CoS-to-queue mapping
- Modifies queue sizes and queue weights where required
- Modifies CoS-to-DSCP and IP precedence-to-DSCP mappings

AutoQoS is beneficial for small and medium-size businesses that need to deploy IPT quickly but lack the experience and staffing to plan and deploy IP QoS services.

AutoQoS also benefits large customer enterprises that need to deploy Cisco IPT on a large scale while reducing the costs, complexity, and timeframe for deployment and ensuring that the appropriate QoS for voice applications is being set consistently.

Table 14-14 summarizes QoS schemes used with IPT.

**Table 14-14** *QoS Scheme Summary*

<b>QoS Scheme</b>	<b>Description</b>
cRTP	bytes.

**Table 14-14 QoS Scheme Summary**

<b>QoS Scheme</b>	<b>Description</b>
LFI	Link fragmentation and interleaving. Fragments large data packets and interleaves VoIP packets between them.
LLC	Uses a single strict queue for RTP traffic. Differentiated QoS available for all other traffic.
AutoQoS	AutoQoS is a Cisco IOS feature that enables QoS for VoIP in WAN and LAN environments. AutoQoS significantly reduces the number of configuration lines necessary to support VoIP in the network.

### IPT Design Recommendations

The following are some best-practice recommendations when implementing IPT:



- Use separate VLANs and IP subnets for IP phones and data to provide ease of management and simplified QoS configuration.
- Use private IP addresses for IP phones subnets to allow for more security to voice devices.
- Place CallManager and Unity servers on filtered VLAN/IP subnets in the server access in the data center.
- Use IEEE 802.1Q trunking and 802.1P to allow for prioritization at Layer 2.
- Extend QoS trust boundaries to voice devices but not to PCs and other data devices.
- In the access layer, use multiple egress queues to provide priority queuing of RTP voice streams.
- Use DSCP for classification and marking.
- Use LLQ on WAN links.
- Use LFI on WAN links less than 768 kbps.
- Use CAC to avoid oversubscription of circuits.

IEEE 802.1Q should be configured on the PoE LAN switch ports to allow a voice VLAN for the IP phone and a data VLAN for the PC connected to the IP phone. These VLANs should be on separate IP subnets, and the IP phone should be an RFC 1918 private address subnet. Furthermore, the CallManager servers should be placed on a separate IP subnet in the data center. This lets you restrict access to the IPT environment.

IPT voice packets should be marked with a DSCP of EF (IP precedence 5), and signaling packets should be marked with AF31 (IP precedence 3). This allows QoS schemes to give precedence to the marked packets. LLQ takes the EF marked packets and places them in the strict-priority queue, guaranteeing bandwidth for voice. LFI should be configured on

packets. LFI and LLQ also reduce jitter in IPT conversations.

CAC should be used to keep excess voice traffic from the network by ensuring that there is enough bandwidth for new calls. Call admission control (CAC) is used to control the number of calls to reduce the WAN bandwidth for a site that has IPT. CAC is configured for the site on the CUCM servers. A maximum bandwidth or maximum number of calls is provisioned for the site. CAC enforces a maximum number of calls between two locations to ensure that call quality will not be degraded by allowing more calls than a network can support. CAC causes excessive calls between two locations to be refused. The IPT system must then either reroute the call to different available path, such as the PSTN, or deny the call.

### Service Class Recommendations

RFC 4594, *Configuration Guidelines for DiffServ Services Classes* (updated by RFC 5865), provides guidelines for specifying services. Six of these are specific for voice or video traffic. The 12 service classes are as follows:

- **Network Control:** For routing and network control functions
- **Operations, Administration, and Management (OAM):** For network configuration and management functions
- **Telephony:** Includes VoIP and circuit emulation
- **Signaling:** For peer-to-peer and client/server signaling, such as SIP, MGCP, H.323, and H.248
- **Multimedia Conferencing:** For applications that can change their encoding rate, such as H.323/V2
- **Real-Time Interactive:** For RTP/UDP streams for video conferencing applications that cannot change the encoding rate
- **Multimedia Streaming:** For variable-rate elastic streaming media applications and webcasts
- **Broadcast Video:** For inelastic streaming media with low jitter and low packet loss, such as broadcast TV, video surveillance, and security
- **Low-Latency Data:** For data processing applications, such as web-based ordering
- **High-Throughput Data:** For store-and-forward applications, such as FTP
- **Standard:** For traffic that has not been identified for any preferential treatment
- **Low-Priority Data:** For traffic types that do not require any bandwidth assurance

Cisco modified some of the DSCP per-hop behavior (PHB) recommendations (switched broadcast video and call signaling, for example) from the RFC and added queuing and dropping recommendations for MediaNetworks. Table 14-15 summarizes these.

**Table 14-15 Cisco Service Class PHB Recommendations**

<b>Application Class</b>	<b>DSCP PHB</b>	<b>Queuing and Dropping</b>	<b>Applications</b>
Network Control	CS6	BW queue	Network routing, EIGRP, OSPF, BGP, HSRP, IKE
Telephony	EF	PQ	IPT bearer traffic, VoIP, G.711, G.729
Broadcast Video	CS5	PQ (optional)	Cisco IP video surveillance
Multimedia Conferencing	AF4	BW queue + DSCP WRED	H.323/V2 video conferencing; Cisco Unified Personal Communicator
Real-Time Interactive	CS4	PQ (optional)	Video conferencing and interactive gaming; TelePresence
Multimedia Streaming	AF3	BW queue + DSCP WRED	Streaming video and audio on demand; Cisco Digital Media System (VoD)
Call Signaling	CS3	BW queue	IPT signaling, H.323, SCCP, SIP
Low-Latency Transactional Data	AF2	BW queue + DSCP WRED	Client/server, web-based ordering, Webex, MeetingPlace, ERP apps
Operations, Administration, Management (OAM)	CS2	BW queue	OAM&P, SNMP, SSH, syslog
High-Throughput Bulk Data	AF1	BW queue + DSCP WRED	Store-and-forward apps, email, FTP, backup
Low-Priority Scavenger Data	CS1	Minimum BW queue	Flows with no bandwidth assurance, YouTube, BitTorrent, Xbox
Standard Best Effort	CS0	Default queue + WRED	Default class

## References and Recommended Readings

RFC 3435, Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) Version 1.0 [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 2705, Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) Version 1.0 [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 1890, RTP Profile for Audio and Video Conferences with Minimal Control, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 1889, RTP: A Transport Protocol for Real-Time Applications, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 2543, SIP: Session Initiation Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

Keagy, S. *Integrating Voice and Data Networks*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2000.

Kotha, S. "Deploying H.323 Applications in Cisco Networks" (white paper), [www.cisco.com/warp/public/cc/pd/iosw/ioft/mmcn/tech/h323\\_wp.htm](http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/cc/pd/iosw/ioft/mmcn/tech/h323_wp.htm)

Lovell, D. *Cisco IP Telephony*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2002.

McQuerry, S., K. McGrew, S. Foy, *Cisco Voice over Frame Relay, ATM, and IP*. Indianapolis: Cisco Press, 2001.

Reference Guide, Packet Voice Networking [www.cisco.com/warp/public/cc/pd/rt/mc3810/prodlit/pvnet\\_in.htm](http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/cc/pd/rt/mc3810/prodlit/pvnet_in.htm).

Tech Notes: Voice Network Signaling and Control, [www.cisco.com/warp/public/788/signalling/net\\_signal\\_control.html](http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/788/signalling/net_signal_control.html).

Voice over IP: Per Call Bandwidth Consumption, [www.cisco.com/warp/public/788/pkt-voice-general/bwidth\\_consume.htm](http://www.cisco.com/warp/public/788/pkt-voice-general/bwidth_consume.htm).

Cisco Recommendations for MediaNets, [www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Video/qosmrn.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/solutions/Enterprise/Video/qosmrn.html).

[www.erlang.com/](http://www.erlang.com/)

RFC 3261, SIP: Session Initiation Protocol, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

RFC 3262, Reliability of Provisional Responses in the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 3263, Session Initiation Protocol (SIP): Locating SIP Servers, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 3264, An Offer/Answer Model with the Session Description Protocol (SDP), [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 3265, Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)-Specific Event Notification, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 4594, Configuration Guidelines for Diffserv Service Classes, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 2508, Compressing IP/UDP/RTP Headers for Low-Speed Serial Links, [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topic icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 14-16 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 14-16 Key Topics**

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
List	Ports	520
Summary	CAS and CCS signaling	524
Summary	Voice engineering terminology	528
List	IPT components	532
Summary	Design goals for IPT	534
List	IPT deployment models	535
Table 14-6	Data, voice, and video sensitivities to packet loss	538
Table 14-8	Codec standards	541
Summary	VoIP control and transport protocols	541
Summary	Delay components	552
List	QoS mechanisms	555
List	IPT design recommendations	560

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

## Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

ACD, BHT, CAC, CCS, CDR, CO, Centrex, codec, companding, crTP, CUCM, Erlang, E&M, FXS, FXO, gatekeeper, gateway, GoS, H.323, LLQ, MGCP, MOS, OAM, PSTN, PBX, RSVP, RTP, RTCP, SCCP, SIP, SS7, VAD

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** True or false: LLQ is recommended for VoIP networks.
- 2.** True or false: H.323 is an IETF standard, and SIP is an ITU standard for multimedia protocols.
- 3.** True or false: An Erlang is a unit that describes the number of calls in an hour.
- 4.** What do you implement to stop packets from being transmitted when there is silence in a voice conversation?
- 5.** The variable delay of received VoIP packets is corrected with what kind of buffers?
- 6.** True or false: Common Channel Signaling uses a separate channel for signaling.
- 7.** True or false: FXO ports are used for phones, and FXS ports connect to the PSTN.
- 8.** True or false: SS7 provides mechanisms for exchanging control and routing messages in the PSTN.
- 9.** An organization uses what kind of system to gather and provide information for the customer before transferring her to an agent?
- 10.** An organization uses what kind of system to route calls to agents based on the agent skill group or call statistics?
- 11.** In addition to codec selection, both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ can be used to reduce the bandwidth of VoIP calls.
- 12.** Label each of the following delays as fixed or variable:
  - a.** Processing
  - b.** Dejitter buffer
  - c.** Serialization
  - d.** Queuing
  - e.** Propagation
- 13.** How can you reduce serialization delay?
- 14.**

- 15.** True or false: The maximum one-way delay in the G.114 recommendation for acceptable voice is 200 ms.
- 16.** True or false: FRF.12 is an LFI standard used in networks with VoFR and VoIP over Frame Relay.
- 17.** An assessment of a network determines that the average round-trip time between two sites is 250 ms. Can an IPT solution be implemented between the sites?
- 18.** Match each protocol with its description:
  - i. DHCP
  - ii. SCCP
  - iii. RTP
  - iv. H.323
  - v. TFTP
  - a. Transports coded voice streams
  - b. Controls Cisco IOS gateways
  - c. Provides call signaling between Cisco IP phones and CUCM
  - d. Provides IP address
  - e. Provides phone configuration
- 19.** Match each CM deployment model with its description:
  - i. Single-site deployment
  - ii. Multisite WAN with distributed call processing
  - iii. Multisite WAN with centralized call processing
  - a. Single CUCM cluster with SRST at remote sites
  - b. Single CUCM cluster implemented in a large building
  - c. Multiple CUCM clusters
- 20.** Match each component with its Cisco IPT functional area:
  - i. CUCM
  - ii. Layer 3 switch
  - iii. Digital gateway
  - iv. Unity
  - a. Service applications
  - b. Call processing
  - c. Client endpoint
  - d. Infrastructure

- 21.** Which protocol is preferred for inter-PBX trunks?
- a. SS7
  - b. RTP
  - c. Q.SIG
  - d. DTMF
- 22.** cRTP compresses the IP/UDP/RTP header to what size?
- a. 2 or 4 bytes
  - b. 2 or 5 bytes
  - c. 40 bytes
  - d. It compresses the RTP header only.
- 23.** The steps of converting an analog signal to digital format occur in which order?
- a. Sampling, filtering, digitizing
  - b. Filtering, sampling, digitizing
  - c. Digitizing, filtering, sampling
  - d. Sampling, digitizing, filtering
- 24.** Digitizing is divided into which two processes?
- a. Filtering and sampling
  - b. Expanding and filtering
  - c. Companding, and quantizing and coding
  - d. Sampling, and quantizing and coding
- 25.** Which of the following are goals of IP telephony?
- a. Use the existing IP infrastructure
  - b. Provide lower cost of ownership
  - c. Provide greater flexibility in voice communications
  - d. All of the above
- 26.** An analysis of a 384-kbps WAN link shows complaints of voice quality issues between two sites when large file transfers take place. The circuit is running at 45 percent utilization. What QoS schemes should be implemented to alleviate this?
- a. CQ and cRTP
  - b. LFI and cRTP
  - c. LLQ
  - d. All of the above

**27.** Which codec is recommended for use in WAN links?

- a.** G.711
- b.** G.723
- c.** G.726
- d.** G.729

**28.** Which technology reduces the amount of bandwidth used? (Select all that apply.)

- a.** QoS
- b.** LFI
- c.** cRTP
- d.** VAD

**29.** Which of the following statements is true?

- a.** CAC prevents voice calls from affecting other voice calls.
- b.** CAC prevents voice calls from affecting data bandwidth.
- c.** CAC prevents data from affecting voice calls.
- d.** CAC prevents data from affecting other data traffic.

**30.** What IPT component contains the dial plan and is used to register IP phones?

- a.** Gateway
- b.** Unity server
- c.** Gatekeeper
- d.** Cisco Unified CallManager

**31.** Which are drivers for Unified Communications?

- a.** Better quality
- b.** Reduce WAN costs
- c.** Flexibility to carry data, voice and video
- d.** Efficient integration with legacy PSTN infrastructure
- e.** Improvement of QoS on the network

**32.** Match the H.323 component with its description.

- a.** Gateway
- b.** Gatekeeper
- c.** MCU
- d.** Terminal

- i. IP phone
- ii. Manages multipoint conferences
- iii. Call control and signaling
- iv. Provides translation services between H.323 endpoints

**33.** Which IPT component provides the call processing component?

- a. Cisco Call Processing Manager
- b. Cisco Gateway Manager
- c. Cisco Unified Communications Manager
- d. Cisco IP Contact Center

**34.** Which protocol is used for communications between two IP endpoints?

- a. SCCP
- b. SIP
- c. H.323
- d. MGCP
- e. RSVP
- f. CAC
- g. CUCM
- h. RTP

**35.** Which protocol is an IETF-defined application layer control protocol used to establish and terminate calls between two or more endpoints?

- a. SCCP
- b. SIP
- c. H.323
- d. MGCP
- e. RSVP
- f. CAC
- g. CUCM
- h. RTP

- 36.** Which protocol is defined in RFC 3661 and used by CUCM to control gateways?
- a.** SCCP
  - b.** SIP
  - c.** H.323
  - d.** MGCP
  - e.** RSVP
  - f.** CAC
  - g.** CUCM
  - h.** RTP
- 37.** Which services from the Media Services Framework provide capture of media streams?
- a.** Access services
  - b.** Transport services
  - c.** Bridging services
  - d.** Storage services
  - e.** Session control services
  - f.** Application services
  - g.** Endpoint services
  - h.** Reliable services
- 38.** Which services from the Media Services Framework provide transcoding?
- a.** Access services
  - b.** Transport services
  - c.** Bridging services
  - d.** Storage services
  - e.** Session control services
  - f.** Application services
  - g.** Endpoint services
  - h.** Reliable services
- 39.** Which traffic type is recommended for AF4 PHB?
- a.** Network control
  - b.** Telephony

- c. Broadcast video
  - d. Multimedia conferencing
  - e. Real time
  - f. OAM
  - g. FTP
  - h. YouTube
- 40.** Which traffic type is recommended for CS2 PHB?
- a. Network control
  - b. Telephony
  - c. Broadcast video
  - d. Multimedia conferencing
  - e. Real time
  - f. OAM
  - g. FTP
  - h. YouTube
- 41.** Which traffic type is recommended for CS4 PHB?
- a. Network control
  - b. Telephony
  - c. Broadcast video
  - d. Multimedia conferencing
  - e. Real time
  - f. OAM
  - g. FTP
  - h. YouTube
- 42.** Which CODEC generates an 8-kbps bit rate?
- a. G.711
  - b. G.726
  - c. G.728
  - d. G.729
  - e. G.723

**43.** Which CODEC generates a 64-kbps bit rate?

- a.** G.711
- b.** G.726
- c.** G.728
- d.** G.729
- e.** G.723

**44.** Which is the recommended QoS mechanism for VoIP networks?

- a.** WRED
- b.** PQ
- c.** WFQ
- d.** LLQ
- e.** DSCP

**45.** How much bandwidth is generated by Cisco TelePresence 3000 at 1080p?

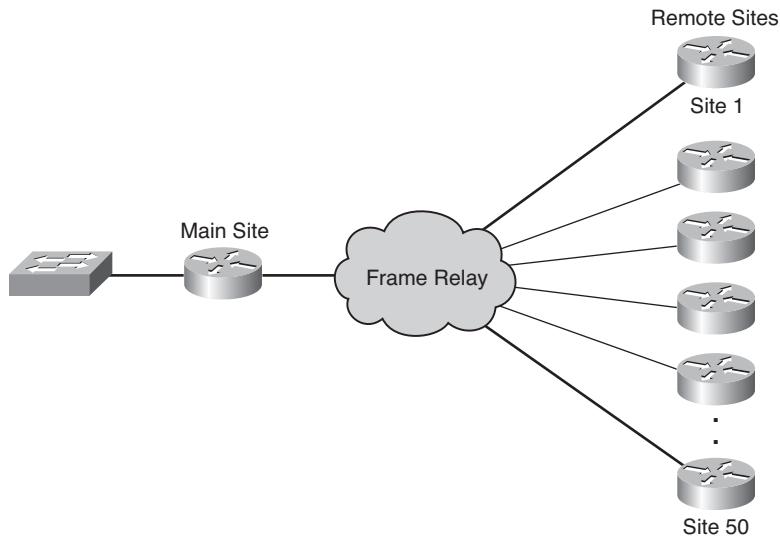
- a.** 12.3 Mbps
- b.** 4.1 Mbps
- c.** 6 Mbps
- d.** 768 kbps
- e.** 2 Mbps

**46.** How much bandwidth is generated by VT Advantage?

- a.** 12.3 Mbps
- b.** 4.1 Mbps
- c.** 6 Mbps
- d.** 768 kbps
- e.** 2 Mbps

Use both the scenario described in the following paragraph and Figure 14-28 to answer the following questions.

The client has an existing Frame Relay network, as shown in Figure 14-28. The network has a large site and 50 small remote sites. The client wants a design for a VoIP network. The client wants to provide differentiated CoS for the voice, Systems Network Architecture (SNA), FTP, and other traffic.



**Figure 14-28 Client's Current Frame Relay Network**

47. Based on the current network diagram, which Cisco IPT deployment model should you recommend?
48. What feature should you recommend to provide call processing in the event of a WAN failure?
49. Which queuing technique should you recommend?
50. For Site 1, the current data traffic is 512 kbps, and video traffic is 0. What is the minimum bandwidth required to support four concurrent VoIP G.729 calls plus the data traffic to the site?
51. Should you implement a multisite WAN with centralized call processing CUCM cluster?
52. What feature can you use to reduce bandwidth over the WAN links?
53. Which LFI technique should you use to reduce the serialization delay?



---

This chapter covers the following subjects:

- Simple Network Management Protocol
- Other Network Management Technologies

## Network Management Protocols

---

This chapter introduces the following network management protocols and components: Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Management Information Base (MIB), Remote Monitoring (RMON) protocol, Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), and the use of NetFlow and system logging (syslog).

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

The “Do I Know This Already?” quiz helps you identify your strengths and deficiencies in this chapter’s topics.

The ten-question quiz, derived from the major sections in the “Foundation Topics” portion of the chapter, helps you determine how to spend your limited study time.

Table 15-1 outlines the major topics discussed in this chapter and the “Do I Know This Already?” quiz questions that correspond to those topics.

**Table 15-1** “Do I Know This Already?” Foundation Topics Section-to-Question Mapping

Foundation Topics Section	Questions Covered in This Section
Simple Network Management Protocol	1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8
Other Network Management Technologies	5, 7, 9, 10

- 1.** Which version of SNMP introduces security extensions for authentication and encryption?
  - a.** SNMPv1
  - b.** SNMPv2
  - c.** SNMPv3
  - d.** SNMPv4
  
- 2.** SNMP runs over which protocol?
  - a.** TCP
  - b.** UDP
  - c.** IP
  - d.** MIB

- 3.** Which SNMP component contains an agent?
  - a.** Managed device
  - b.** Agent
  - c.** NMS manager
  - d.** MIB
- 4.** Which SNMP component is a collection of information that is stored on the local agent?
  - a.** Managed device
  - b.** Agent
  - c.** NMS manager
  - d.** MIB
- 5.** CDP is an acronym for which Cisco function?
  - a.** Collection Device Protocol
  - b.** Cisco Device Protocol
  - c.** Campus Discovery Protocol
  - d.** Cisco Discovery Protocol
- 6.** Which SNMP operation obtains full table information from an agent?
  - a.** Get
  - b.** GetNext
  - c.** GetBulk
  - d.** Inform
- 7.** RMON1 provides information at what levels of the OSI model?
  - a.** Data link and physical
  - b.** Network, data link, physical
  - c.** Transport and network
  - d.** Application to network
- 8.** Which of the following is not an SNMP operation?
  - a.** Get
  - b.** Community
  - c.** Set
  - d.** Trap

- 9.** Which solution gathers information that can be used for accounting and billing applications?
- a.** RMON
  - b.** NetFlow
  - c.** CDP
  - d.** Syslog
- 10.** What is CDP?
- a.** Client/server protocol
  - b.** Hello-based protocol
  - c.** Network management agent
  - d.** Request-response protocol

## Foundation Topics

---

After a new network is designed, installed, and configured, it must be managed by the operations team. Network management tools are used to gather operating statistics and to manage devices. Statistics are gathered on WAN bandwidth utilization, router CPU and memory utilization, and interface counters. Configuration changes are also made through network management tools such as CiscoWorks. The ISO defines five types of network management processes that are commonly known as FCAPS. These processes are as follows:

- **Fault management:** Refers to detecting and correcting network fault problems
- **Configuration management:** Refers to baselining, modifying, and tracking configuration changes
- **Accounting management:** Refers to keeping track of circuits for billing of services
- **Performance management:** Measures the network's effectiveness at delivering packets
- **Security management:** Tracks the authentication and authorization information

Network management is supported by the elements listed in Table 15-2.

**Table 15-2** *Network Management Elements*

Network Management Element	Description
NMS	Network management systems run the applications that manage and monitor managed devices.
Network management protocols and standards	These are used to exchange management information between the NMS and the managed devices. The key protocols and standards are SNMP, MIB, and RMON.
Managed devices	These are the devices managed by the NMS.
Management agents	Reside in the managed devices and include SNMP agents and RMON agents.

The protocols and tools described in this chapter perform some of these functions. SNMP is the underlying protocol used for network management. Agents are configured in managed devices (routers) that allow the NMS to manage the device. RMON is used for advanced monitoring of routers and switches. CDP is a Cisco proprietary protocol that allows the discovery of Cisco devices. NetFlow is a network monitoring solution that allows for greater scalability than RMON. Syslog allows system messages and error events to be gathered for review.

## Simple Network Management Protocol



Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an IP application layer protocol that has become the standard for the exchange of management information between network devices. SNMP was initially described in RFC 1157. It is a simple solution that requires little code to implement, which allows vendors to build SNMP agents on their products.

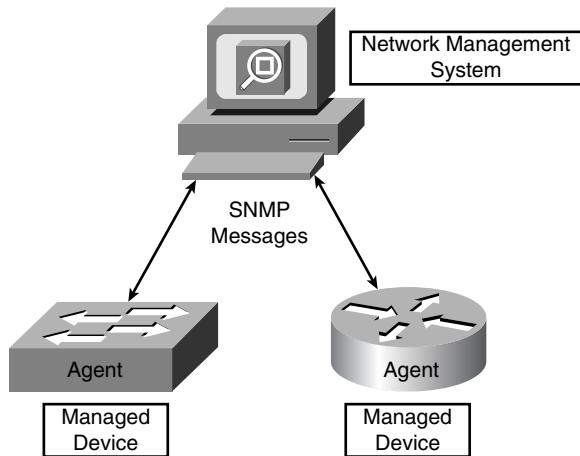
SNMP runs over User Datagram Protocol (UDP) and therefore does not inherently provide for sequencing and acknowledgment of packets, but it still reduces the amount of overhead used for management information.

### SNMP Components

SNMP has three network-managed components:

- The managed devices
- The agent that resides on the managed device
- The NMS

Figure 15-1 shows the relationship between these components.



**Figure 15-1** SNMP Components

A managed device is a router or LAN switch or any other device that contains an SNMP agent. These devices collect and store management information and make this information available to the NMS. SNMP community strings (passwords) are configured on routers and switches to allow for SNMP management.

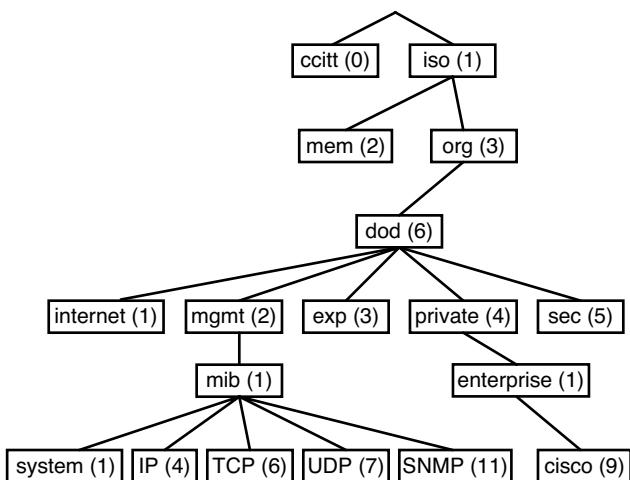
The agent is the network management software that resides in the managed device. The agent gathers the information and puts it in SNMP format. It responds to the manager's request for information and also generates traps.

for network management. It polls agents on the network and correlates and displays the management information.

## MIB

A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of information that is stored on the local agent of the managed device. MIBs are organized hierarchically and are accessed by the NMS. MIBs are databases of objects organized in a tree-like structure, with each branch containing similar objects. Each object has a unique object identifier (number) that uniquely identifies the managed object of the MIB hierarchy. Read and write community strings are used to control access to MIB information.

The top-level MIB object IDs belong to different standards organizations, and lower-level object IDs are allocated to associated organizations. Standard MIBs are defined by RFCs. Vendors define private branches that include managed objects for their products. Figure 15-2 shows a portion of the MIB tree structure. RFC 1213 describes the MIBs for TCP/IP. Cisco defines the MIBs under the Cisco head object. For example, a Cisco MIB can be uniquely identified by either the object name, iso.org.dod.private.enterprise.cisco, or the equivalent object descriptor, 1.3.6.1.4.1.9.



**Figure 15-2 MIB Tree Structure**

Each individual manageable feature in the MIB is called a MIB variable. The MIB module is a document that describes each manageable feature that is contained in an agent. The MIB module is written in Abstract Syntax Notation 1 (ASN.1). Three ASN.1 data types are required: name, syntax, and encoding. The name serves as the object identifier. The syntax defines the object's data type (integer or string). The encoding data describes how information associated with a managed object is formatted as a series of data items for transmission on the network. Some examples of standard managed objects that can be obtained from the MIB tree are as follows:

- Interfaces
- Buffers

- Memory
- Standard protocols

From the Cisco private tree, you can obtain additional information such as the following:

- Small, medium, large buffers
- Primary and secondary memory
- Proprietary protocols (Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol [EIGRP]), for example)

You can find more specific information about Cisco MIBs at [www.cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml).

### SNMP Message Versions

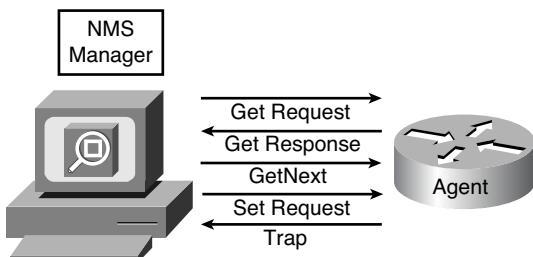
SNMPv1 was initially defined by RFC 1157. Since then, SNMP has evolved with a second and third version, each adding new message types. The CCDA should understand each message type and the version associated with each.

#### SNMPv1

SNMPv1 is defined by RFC 1157. It is a simple request-and-response protocol. The NMS manager issues a request, and managed devices return responses. The date types are limited to 32-bit values. SNMPv1 uses four protocol operations, with five message types to carry out the communication:

- **Get request:** Retrieves the value of a specific MIB variable.
- **GetNext request:** Retrieves the next instance of the MIB variable.
- **Get response:** Contains the values of the requested variable.
- **Set request:** This is a request from the manager to the agent to set a MIB variable. It can be used to modify the agent's configuration.
- **Trap:** Transmits an unsolicited alarm condition.

Figure 15-3 shows the SNMPv1 message types.



**Figure 15-3** SNMPv1 Message Types

The NMS manager uses the Get operation to retrieve the value-specific MIB variable from an agent. The GetNext operation is used to retrieve the next object instance in a table or list within an agent. The Get Response contains the value of the requested variable.

The NMS manager uses the Set operation to set values of the object instance within an agent. For example, the Set operation can be used to set an IP address on an interface or to bring an interface up or down. Agents use the Trap operation to inform the NMS manager of a significant alarm event. For example, a trap is generated when a WAN circuit goes down.

### SNMPv2

SNMPv2 is an evolution of the initial SNMPv1 and is defined in RFCs 1901 and 1902. SNMPv2 offers improvements to SNMPv1, including additional protocol operations. The Get, GetNext, and Set operations used in SNMPv1 are exactly the same as those used in SNMPv1. The SNMP Trap operation serves the same function as in SNMPv1, but it uses a different message format.

SNMPv2 defines two new protocol operations:

- **GetBulk:** Reduces repetitive requests for MIB variables
- **Inform request:** Alerts an SNMP manager of specific conditions with confirmation

The NMS manager uses the GetBulk operation to retrieve large blocks of data, such as multiple rows in a table. This is more efficient than repeating GetNext commands. If the agent responding to the GetBulk operation cannot provide values for all the variables in a list, it provides partial results. The Inform operation allows one NMS manager to send trap information to other NMS managers and to receive information. Another improvement is that data type values can be 64 bits.

Table 15-3 summarizes SNMP message types.

**Table 15-3** *SNMP Message Types*

SNMP Message	Description
Get request	Retrieves the value of a specific MIB variable
GetNext request	Retrieves the next issuance of the MIB variable
Get response	Contains the values of the requested variable
Set request	Modifies the value of a MIB variable
Trap	Transmits an unsolicited alarm condition
GetBulk	Reduces repetitive requests for MIB variables
Inform request	Alerts an SNMP manager of specific conditions with confirmation

### SNMPv3

SNMPv3 was developed to correct several deficiencies in the earlier versions of security being a primary reason. SNMPv3 is defined in RFCs 3410 through 3415. SNMPv3

provides authentication and privacy by using usernames and access control by using key management. Security levels are implemented to determine which devices a user can read, write, or create. SNMPv3 also verifies each message to ensure that it has not been modified during transmission. SNMPv3 removes the use of community-based authentication strings, which were sent in clear text over the network. It is recommended that SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 be used only for read-only access, while SNMPv3 be used with read-write access.

SNMPv3 introduces three levels of security:

- **noAuthNoPriv:** No authentication and no encryption
- **authNoPriv:** Authentication and no encryption
- **authPriv:** Authentication and encryption

The noAuthNoPriv level provides no authentication and no privacy (encryption). At the authNoPriv level, authentication is provided but not encryption. The authPriv level provides authentication and encryption.

Authentication for SNMPv3 is based on Hash-based Message Authentication Code – message digest 5 (HMAC-MD5) or HMAC – Secure Hash (HMAC-SHA) algorithms. The Cipher Block Chaining-Data Encryption Standard (CBC-DES) standard is used for encryption.

Table 15-4 summarizes SNMP security levels.

**Table 15-4** *SNMP Security Levels*

Version	Level	Authentication	Encryption
SNMPv1	NoAuthNoPriv	Community String	None
SNMPv2	NoAuthNoPriv	Community String	None
SNMPv3	NoAuthNoPriv	Username	None
SNMPv3	AuthNoPriv	MD5 or SHA	None
SNMPv3	AuthPriv	MD5 or SHA	DES, 3DES, AES

## Other Network Management Technologies

This section covers RMON, NetFlow, CDP, and syslog technologies used to gather network information.

### RMON

RMON is a standard monitoring specification that enables network monitoring devices

**Key**

needed. RMON looks at MAC-layer data and provides aggregate information on the statistics and LAN traffic.

Enterprise networks deploy network probes on several network segments; these probes report back to the RMON console. RMON allows network statistics to be collected even if a failure occurs between the probe and the RMON console. RMON1 is defined by RFCs 1757 and 2819, and additions for RMON2 are defined by RFC 2021.

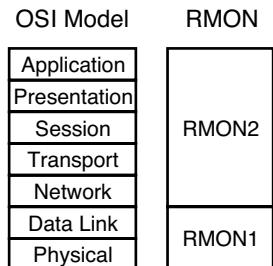
The RMON MIB is located at iso.org.dod.internet.mgt.mib.rmon or by the equivalent object descriptor, 1.3.6.1.2.1.16. RMON1 defines nine monitoring groups; each group provides specific sets of data. One more group is defined for Token Ring. Each group is optional, so vendors do not need to support all the groups in the MIB. Table 15-5 shows the RMON1 groups.

**Table 15-5 RMON1 Groups**

ID	Name	Description
1	Statistics	Contains real-time statistics for interfaces: packets sent, bytes, cyclic redundancy check (CRC) errors, fragments.
2	History	Stores periodic statistic samples for later retrieval.
3	Alarm	An alarm event is generated if a statistic sample crosses a threshold.
4	Host	Host-specific statistics.
5	HostTopN	Most active hosts.
6	Matrix	Stores statistics for conversations between two hosts.
7	Filters	Allows packets to be filtered.
8	Packet Capture	Allows packets to be captured for subsequent analysis.
9	Events	Generates notification of events.

## RMON2

RMON1 is focused on the data link and physical layers of the OSI model. As shown in Figure 15-4, RMON2 provides an extension for monitoring upper-layer protocols.



**Figure 15-4 RMON1 and RMON2 Compared to the OSI Model**

Defined by RFC 2021, RMON2 extends the RMON group with the MIB groups listed in Table 15-6.

**Table 15-6 RMON2 Groups**

ID	Name	Description
11	Protocol Directory	Lists the protocols the device supports
12	Protocol Distribution	Traffic statistics for each protocol
13	Address Mapping	Contains network-to-MAC layer address mapping (IP to MAC)
14	Network Layer Host	Contains statistics for traffic sent to or from network layer hosts
15	Network Layer Matrix	Contains statistics for conversations between two network layer hosts
16	Application Layer Host	Contains application layer statistics for traffic sent to or from each host
17	Application Layer Matrix	Contains application layer statistics for conversations between pairs of hosts
18	User History	Contains periodic samples of specified variables
19	Probe Configuration	Probes parameter configuration

## NetFlow

Cisco NetFlow allows the tracking of IP flows as they are passed through routers and multilayer switches. IP flows are a set of IP packets within a specific timeslot that share a number of properties, such as the same source address, destination address, type of service, and protocol number. NetFlow information is forwarded to a network data analyzer, network planning tools, RMON applications, or accounting and billing applications. NetFlow allows for network planning, traffic engineering, billing, accounting, and application monitoring. The most recent version of NetFlow is NetFlow Version 9, which is defined in RFC 3954. NetFlow consists of three major components:



- **NetFlow accounting:** Collects IP data flows entering router or switch interfaces and prepares data for export. It enables the accumulation of data on flows with unique characteristics, such as IP addresses, application, and class of service (CoS).
- **Flow collector engines:** Captures exported data from multiple routers and filters and aggregates the data according to customer policies, and then stores this summarized or aggregated data.
- **Network data analyzers:** Displays a graphical user interface (GUI) and analyzes NetFlow data collected from flow collector files. This allows users to complete near-real-time visualization or trending analysis of recorded and aggregated flow data. Users can specify the router and aggregation scheme and desired time interval.

devices aggregate data and export the information. Each unidirectional network flow is

identified by both source and destination IP addresses and transport layer port numbers. NetFlow can also identify flows based on IP protocol number, type of service, and input interface. NetFlow data record contains the following information:

- Source and destination IP address
- Source and destination TCP/UDP ports
- Type of service (ToS)
- Packet and byte counts
- Start and end timestamps
- Input and output interface numbers
- TCP flags and encapsulated protocol (TCP/UDP)
- Routing information (next-hop address, source and destination autonomous system number, destination prefix mask)
- Data analyzers

The NetFlow export or transport mechanism sends the NetFlow data to a collection engine or network management collector. Flow collector engines perform data collection and filtering. They aggregate data from several devices and store the information. Different NetFlow data analyzers can be used based on the intended purpose. NetFlow data can be analyzed for the following key applications:

- **Accounting and billing:** Used by service providers for charging based on bandwidth and application usage and quality of service (QoS).
- **Network planning and analysis:** Link and router capacity.
- **Network and security monitoring:** Visualize real-time traffic patterns.
- **Application monitoring and profiling:** Time-based view of application usage.
- **User monitoring and profiling:** Identifies customer and user network utilization and resource application.
- **NetFlow data warehousing and mining:** NetFlow data can be warehoused for later retrieval and analysis.

### NetFlow Compared to RMON and SNMP

NetFlow enables you to gather more statistical information than RMON with fewer resources. It provides greater detail of the collected data, with date and time stamping. NetFlow has greater scalability and does not require network probes. As compared with SNMP, NetFlow reports on traffic statistics and is push based, whereas SNMP reports primarily on device statistics and is poll-based.

NetFlow can be configured on individual Layer 3 interfaces on routers and Layer 3 switches. NetFlow provides detailed information on the following:

- Source and destination IP addresses
- Source and destination interface identifiers
- TCP/UDP source and destination port numbers
- Number of bytes and packets per flow
- Source and destination autonomous system numbers
- IP type of service (ToS)

## CDP

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is a Cisco-proprietary protocol that can be used to discover only Cisco network devices. CDP is media and protocol independent, so it works over Ethernet, Frame Relay, ATM, and other media. The requirement is that the media support Subnetwork Access Protocol (SNAP) encapsulation. CDP runs at the data link layer of the OSI model. CDP uses hello messages; packets are exchanged between neighbors, but CDP information is not forwarded. In addition to routers and switches, IP phones and Cisco Unified Communication Manager (CUCM) servers also advertise CDP information.



Being protocol and media independent is CDP's biggest advantage over other network management technologies. CDP provides key information about neighbors, including platforms, capabilities, and IP addresses, which is significant for network discovery. It is useful when SNMP community strings are unknown when performing a network discovery.

When displaying CDP neighbors, you can obtain the following information:

- **Local interface:** Local interface that is connected to the discovered neighbor
- **Device ID:** Name of the neighbor device and MAC address or serial number
- **Device IP address:** IP address of the neighbor
- **Hold time:** How long (seconds) to hold the neighbor information
- **Device capabilities:** Type of device discovered: router, switch, transparent bridge, host, IGMP, repeater
- **Version:** IOS or switch OS version
- **Platform:** Router or switch model number
- **Port ID:** Interface of the neighboring device

Network management devices can obtain CDP information for data gathering. CDP should be disabled on untrusted interfaces, such as those that face the Internet, third-party networks, or other secure networks. CDP works only on Cisco devices.

**Note:** Disable CDP on interfaces for which you do not want devices to be discovered, such as Internet connections.

## Syslog

The syslog protocol is currently defined in RFC 3164. Syslog transmits event notification messages over the network. Network devices send the event messages to an event server for aggregation. Network devices include routers, servers, switches, firewalls, and network appliances. Syslog operates over UDP, so messages are not sequenced or acknowledged. The syslog messages are also stored on the device that generates the message and can be viewed locally.

Syslog messages are generated in many broad areas. These areas are called facilities. Cisco IOS has more than 500 facilities. Common facilities include

- IP
- CDP
- OSPF
- TCP
- Interface
- IPsec
- SYS operating system
- Security/authorization
- Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

Each syslog message has a level. The syslog level determines the event's criticality. Lower syslog levels are more important. Table 15-7 lists the syslog levels.

**Table 15-7** *Syslog Message Levels*

Syslog Level	Severity	Level
0	Emergency	System is unusable
1	Alert	Take action immediately
2	Critical	Critical conditions
3	Error	Error messages
4	Warning	Warning conditions
5	Notice	Normal but significant events
6	Informational	Informational messages
7	Debug	Debug level messages

Common syslog messages are interface up and down events. Access lists can also be configured on routers and switches to generate syslog messages when a match occurs. Each

syslog message includes a time stamp, level, and facility. Syslog messages have the following format:

mm/dd/yy:hh/mm/ss:FACILITY-LEVEL-mnemonic:description

Syslog messages can create large amounts of network bandwidth. It is important to enable only syslog facilities and levels that are of particular importance.

Table 15-8 summarizes some of the protocols just covered in this section.

**Table 15-8** NetFlow, CDP, and Syslog

Technology	Description
NetFlow	Collects network flow data for network planning, performance, accounting, and billing applications
CDP	Proprietary protocol for network discovery that provides information on neighboring devices
Syslog	Reports state information based on facility and severity levels
RMON	Remote Monitoring. Provides aggregate information of network statistics and LAN traffic

## References and Recommended Reading

NetFlow Performance Analysis, [www.cisco.com/en/US/tech/tk812/technologies\\_white\\_paper0900aecd802a0eb9.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/tech/tk812/technologies_white_paper0900aecd802a0eb9.shtml)

NetFlow Version 9, [www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6645/products-ios-protocol-option\\_home.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps6645/products-ios-protocol-option_home.html).

MIBs Supported by Product, [www.cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml](http://www.cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml).

RFC 1157, A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

RFC 1441, Introduction to Version 2 of the Internet-Standard Network Management Framework.

RFC 1757, Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base.

RFC 1901, Introduction to Community-Based SNMPv2.

RFC 1902, Structure of Management Information for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2).

RFC 2021, Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base Version 2 Using SMIv2.

RFC 2576, Coexistence Between Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3 of the Internet Standard Network Management Framework.

RFC 3164, The BSD Syslog Protocol.

RFC 3410, Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet Standard Management Framework.

RFC 3411, An Architecture for Describing Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Frameworks.

RFC 3412, Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

RFC 3414, User-Based Security Model (USM) for Version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3).

RFC 3415, View-Based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

RFC 3416, Protocol Operations for SNMPv2.

RFC 3418, Management Information Base for SNMPv2.

RFC 3954, Cisco Systems NetFlow Services Export Version 2.

---

## Exam Preparation Tasks

---

### Review All Key Topics

Review the most important topics in the chapter, noted with the Key Topics icon in the outer margin of the page. Table 15-9 lists a reference of these key topics and the page numbers on which each is found.

**Table 15-9** *Key Topics*

Key Topic Element	Description	Page
Summary	Simple Network Management Protocol. Standard for the exchange of management information between network devices.	579
Summary	Remote Monitoring. Provides aggregate information of network statistics and LAN traffic.	583
Summary	Tracks IP flows as they are passed through routers and multilayer switches.	585
Summary	Media- and protocol-independent Cisco protocol used to discover Cisco network devices.	587

### Complete Tables and Lists from Memory

Print a copy of Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” (found on the CD), or at least the section for this chapter, and complete the tables and lists from memory. Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” also on the CD, includes completed tables and lists to check your work.

### Define Key Terms

Define the following key terms from this chapter, and check your answers in the glossary:

Accounting management, CDP, configuration management, fault management, FCAPS, MIB, NetFlow, performance management, RMON, SNMP, syslog

## Q&A

The answers to these questions appear in Appendix A. For more practice with exam format questions, use the exam engine on the CD-ROM.

- 1.** What does the acronym FCAPS stand for?
- 2.** CDP runs at what layer of the OSI model?
- 3.** Syslog level 5 is what level of severity?
- 4.** True or false: RMON provides more scalability than NetFlow.
- 5.** True or false: NetFlow provides detailed information on the number of bytes and packets per conversation.
- 6.** What information can be obtained from a neighbor using CDP?
- 7.** What SNMP message is sent by an agent when an event occurs?
  - a.** Get
  - b.** Set
  - c.** GetResponse
  - d.** Trap
- 8.** What SNMP message is sent to an agent to obtain an instance of an object?
  - a.** Get
  - b.** Set
  - c.** GetResponse
  - d.** Trap
- 9.** What SNMP message is used to configure a managed device?
  - a.** Get
  - b.** Set
  - c.** GetResponse
  - d.** Trap
- 10.** About how many facilities are available for syslog in Cisco routers?
  - a.** 25
  - b.** 100
  - c.** 500
  - d.** 1000

**11.** Which SNMPv3 level provides authentication with no encryption?

- a.** authPriv
- b.** authNoPriv
- c.** noAuthNoPriv
- d.** noauthPriv

**12.** What encryption standard does SNMPv3 use?

- a.** 3DES
- b.** CBC-DES
- c.** HMAC-MD5
- d.** MD5

**13.** Which technologies can you use to assess a network and create documentation? (Select two.)

- a.** RMON
- b.** MIB
- c.** CDP
- d.** NetFlow

**14.** Which of the following are true about CDP? (Select three.)

- a.** It uses UDP.
- b.** It is a data-link protocol.
- c.** It provides information on neighboring routers and switches.
- d.** It is media and protocol independent.
- e.** It uses syslog and RMON.

**15.** RMON2 provides information at what levels of the OSI model?

- a.** Data link and physical
- b.** Network, data link, and physical
- c.** Transport and network only
- d.** Application to network

**16.** Which network management technology operates over TCP?

- a.** SNMP
- b.** RMON
- c.** NetFlow
- d.** None of the above

- 17.** Which statement is correct?
- a.** SNMPv1 uses GetBulk operations and 32-bit values.
  - b.** SNMPv2 uses 32-bit values, and SNMPv3 uses 64-bit values.
  - c.** SNMPv1 uses 32-bit values, and SNMPv2 uses 64-bit values.
  - d.** SNMPv1 uses GetBulk operations, and SNMPv2 uses Inform operations.
- 18.** Which SNMPv3 level provides authentication and privacy?
- a.** authPriv
  - b.** authNoPriv
  - c.** noAuthNoPriv
  - d.** noauthPriv
- 19.** Match the RMON group with its description.
- i. Statistics
  - ii. Matrix
  - iii. alHost
  - iv. protocoldir
- a.** Stores statistics for conversations between two hosts
  - b.** Lists the protocols that the device supports
  - c.** Contains real-time statistics for interfaces: packets sent, bytes, CRC errors, fragments
  - d.** Contains application layer statistics for traffic sent to or from each host
- 20.** What is the most critical syslog priority level?
- a.** 0
  - b.** 1
  - c.** 6
  - d.** 7
- 21.** Which management protocol will help a company concentrate on Layer 4 monitoring and gain information to assist in long-term trending analysis?
- a.** SNMPv3
  - b.** RMON2
  - c.** NetFlow
  - d.** CDP
  - e.** MIB

**22.** Which management protocol performs network traffic analysis?

- a.** SNMPv3
- b.** RMON2
- c.** NetFlow
- d.** CDP
- e.** MIB

**23.** What virtual information store is used by SNMP?

- a.** SNMPv3
- b.** RMON2
- c.** ASN.1
- d.** CDP
- e.** MIB

**24.** What standard language is used by SNMP?

- a.** SNMPv3
- b.** RMON2
- c.** ASN.1
- d.** CDP
- e.** MIB

**25.** Which SNMPv3 method provides authentication but no encryption?

- a.** noAuthNoPriv
- b.** authPriv
- c.** authNoPriv
- d.** noauthPriv

**26.** Which is not an SNMP operation?

- a.** GetNext
- b.** Trap
- c.** Inform Request
- d.** Community
- e.** GetBulk

**27.** Which protocol allows for vendor specific information?

- a.** SNMPv3
- b.** RMON2
- c.** ASN.1
- d.** CDP
- e.** MIB

*This page intentionally left blank*

# **Part V: Comprehensive Scenarios and Final Prep**

---

**Chapter 16: Comprehensive Scenarios**

**Chapter 17: Final Preparation**



---

This chapter covers four comprehensive scenarios that draw on several design topics covered in this book:

- Scenario One: Pearland Hospital
- Scenario Two: Big Oil and Gas
- Scenario Three: Beauty Things Store
- Scenario Four: Falcon Communications

## Comprehensive Scenarios

---

The case studies and questions in this chapter draw on your knowledge of CCDA exam topics. Use these exercises to help master the topics as well as to identify areas you still need to review for the exam.

Understand that each scenario presented encompasses several exam topics. Each scenario, however, does not necessarily encompass all the topics. Therefore, work through all the scenarios in this chapter to cover all the topics. Your CCDA exam will probably contain questions that require you to analyze a scenario. This chapter contains four case studies that are similar in style to the ones you might encounter on the CCDA exam. Read through each case study and answer the corresponding questions. You will find the answers to the case study questions at the end of each scenario. Sometimes more than one solution can satisfy the customer's requirements. In these cases, the answers presented represent recommended solutions developed using good design practices. An explanation accompanies the answer where necessary.

### Scenario One: Pearland Hospital

Mr. Robertson, the IT director at Pearland Hospital, is responsible for managing the network. Mr. Robertson has requested your help in proposing a network solution that will meet the hospital's requirements. The hospital is growing, and the management has released funds for network improvements.

The medical staff would like to be able to access medical systems using laptops from any of the patient rooms. Doctors and nurses should be able to access patient medical records, x-rays, prescriptions, and recent patient information. Mr. Robertson purchased new servers and placed them in the data center. The wireless LAN (WLAN) has approximately 30 laptops, and about 15 more are due in six months. The servers must have high availability.

Patient rooms are on floors 6 through 10 of the hospital building. Doctors should be able to roam and access the network from any of the floors. A wireless radio-frequency (RF) survey report mentions that a single access point located in each communication closet can reach all the rooms on each floor. The current network has ten segments that reach a single router that also serves the WAN. Only a single link is used from the floors to the core router. The router is running Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) Protocol, and they want to move to a routing protocol that is easier to manage. The back-end new servers are located in the same segment as those used on floor 1. Mr. Robertson mentions that users

addresses (see Table 16-1).

**Table 16-1** Current IP Addresses

<b>Floor</b>	<b>Servers</b>	<b>Clients</b>	<b>IP Network</b>
1	15	40	200.100.1.0/24
2	0	43	200.100.2.0/24
3	0	39	200.100.3.0/24
4	0	42	200.100.4.0/24
5	0	17	200.100.5.0/24
6	0	15	200.100.6.0/24
7	0	14	200.100.7.0/24
8	0	20	200.100.8.0/24
9	0	18	200.100.9.0/24
10	0	15	200.100.10.0/24

Mr. Robertson would like a proposal to upgrade the network with updated switches that support 1 Gigabit Ethernet copper, 10 Gigabit Ethernet fiber, and Power over Ethernet (PoE) and to provide 1 Gigabit Ethernet access to the servers. The proposal should also cover secure WLAN access on floors 6 through 10 with centralized management. Include an IP addressing scheme that reduces the number of Class C networks the hospital uses. Mr. Robertson wants to reduce the number of networks leased from the Internet service provider (ISP).

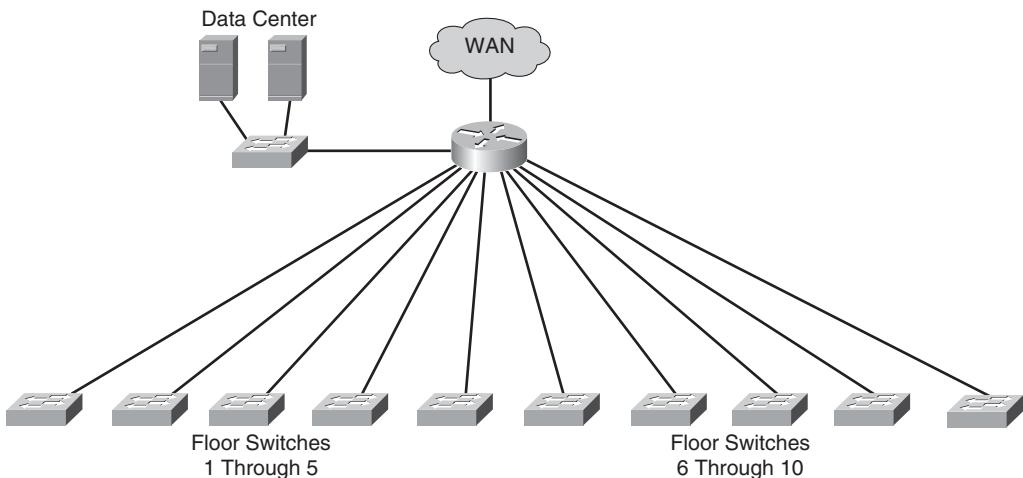
### Scenario One Questions

The following questions/directives refer to scenario one:

- 1.** What are Pearland Hospital's business requirements?
- 2.** Are there any business-cost constraints?
- 3.** What are the network's technical requirements?
- 4.** What are the network's technical constraints?
- 5.** Prepare a logical diagram of the current network.
- 6.** Does the hospital use IP addresses effectively?
- 7.** What do you recommend to improve the switching speed between floors?
- 8.** Based on the number of servers and clients provided, what IP addressing scheme would you propose?
- 9.** What routing protocols do you recommend?
- 10.** What solution do you recommend for WLAN access and the network upgrade?
- 11.** Draw the proposed network solution.

## Scenario One Answers

1. The hospital needs to provide access to patient records, prescriptions, and information from patient rooms.
2. No cost restrictions were discussed.
3. The technical requirements are as follows:
  - WLAN access from rooms on floors 6 through 10
  - Centralized WLAN management
  - Power over Ethernet (IEEE 802.3af)
  - Redundant access to servers in the data center
  - 10 Gigabit Ethernet switching between LAN segments
4. The technical constraint is as follows:
  - Servers must be located in the first floor data center rooms.
5. Figure 16-1 shows the logical diagram of the current network.



**Figure 16-1** Pearland Hospital Current Network

6. The hospital does not use IP addresses effectively. It uses public Class C networks on each floor. Each floor wastes more than 200 IP addresses, because each Class C network provides up to 254 IP addresses.
7. Recommend using a high-speed 10 Gigabit Ethernet Layer 3 switches for the building collapsed core/distribution layer. They can use the existing router for WAN access.
8. The primary recommendation is to use private addresses for the network. Using private addresses has been a best-practice policy for private internal networks since

to the ISP, retaining two for ISP connectivity. In addition, it allows for the parallel infrastructure to be built prior to migrating users to the new network.

With private addresses, the hospital can choose to use 172.16.0.0/16 for private addressing. The addressing scheme shown in Table 16-2 provides sufficient address space for each network.

**Table 16-2** IP Addressing Scheme Using Private Addresses

Floor	Servers	Clients	IP Network
1	15	0	172.16.0.0/24
1	0	40	172.16.1.0/24
2	0	43	172.16.2.0/24
3	0	39	172.16.3.0/24
4	0	42	172.16.4.0/24
5	0	17	172.16.5.0/24
6	0	15	172.16.6.0/24
7	0	14	172.16.7.0/24
8	0	20	172.16.8.0/24
9	0	18	172.16.9.0/24
10	0	15	172.16.10.0/24
WLAN: 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	0	40	172.16.20.0/24

Another solution is to retain the public addresses and use them in the internal network. This solution is less preferred than private addressing. Table 16-3 shows the recommended address scheme that would reduce the number of Class C networks.

**Table 16-3** IP Addressing Scheme Using Public Address Space

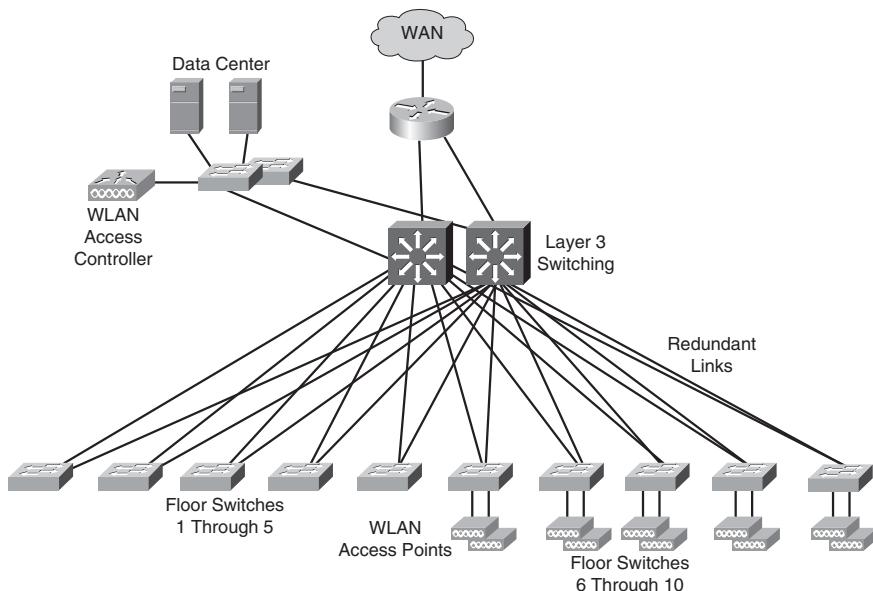
Floor	Servers	Clients	IP Network
1	0	40	200.100.1.0/26
1	15	N/A	200.100.1.64/26
2	0	43	200.100.1.128/26
3	0	39	200.100.1.192/26
4	0	42	200.100.2.0/26
5	0	17	200.100.2.64/26
6	0	15	200.100.2.128/26
7	0	14	200.100.2.192/26

**Table 16-3 IP Addressing Scheme Using Public Address Space**

Floor	Servers	Clients	IP Network
8	0	20	200.100.3.0/26
9	0	18	200.100.3.64/26
10	0	15	200.100.3.128/26
WLAN: 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	0	40	200.100.3.192/26

Each subnet has 62 IP addresses for host addressing. Based on the preceding IP addressing scheme, Pearland Hospital does not need networks 200.100.4.0/24 through 200.100.10.0/24.

9. Recommend routing protocols that support variable-length subnet masks (VLSM). The network is small. Recommend Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP). Do not recommend OSPF because of its configuration complexity.
10. Recommend using 1 wireless LAN controller (WLC) and two wireless access points (AP) on each floor for redundancy. Use a VLAN that spans floors 6 through 10. Change the router to a Layer 3 switch. Use the router for WAN access.
11. Figure 16-2 shows the diagram. The router is replaced by the L3 switch with 10 Gigabit Ethernet to provide high-speed switching between LANs. Dual links are used to provide redundancy between the access layer and the core/distribution layer. Each floor has an IP subnet plus a subnet for the WLAN and another for the data center. Each floor has two access points for redundancy and access switches with 10 Gigabit Ethernet Uplinks to the data center. Servers can connect using Gigabit Ethernet.

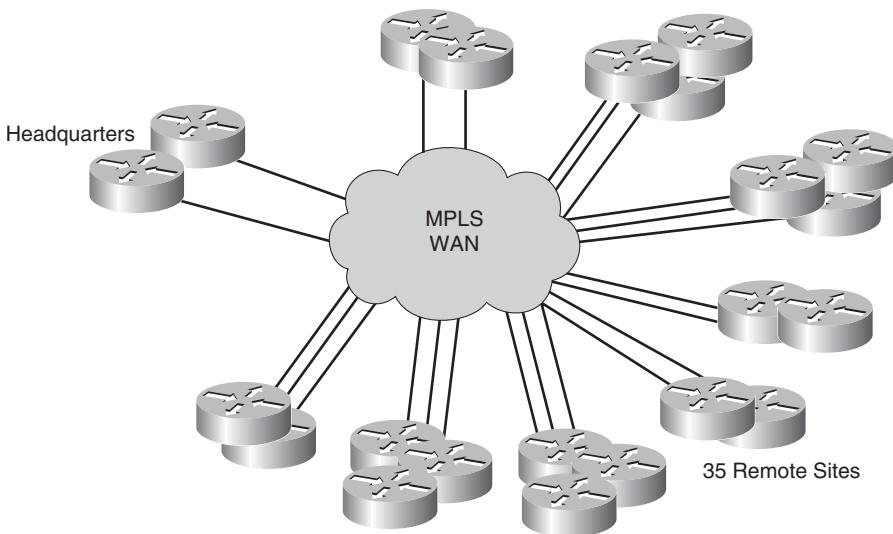
**Figure 16-2** Pearland Hospital Proposed Network Solution

## Scenario Two: Big Oil and Gas

Mr. Drew is an IT director at Big Oil and Gas, a medium-sized petrochemical company based in Houston. It also has operations in the Gulf of Mexico and in South America. Mr. Drew is in charge of the network infrastructure, including routers and switches. His group includes personnel who can install and configure Cisco routers and switches.

The Big Oil and Gas CIO wants to begin migrating from the voice network to an Unified Communications (UC) solution to reduce circuit and management costs. Existing data WAN circuits have 50 percent utilization or less but spike up to 80 percent when sporadic FTP transfers occur.

Mr. Drew hands you the diagram shown in Figure 16-3. The exiting data network includes 35 sites with approximately 30 people at each site. The network is Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) WAN, with approximately 200 people at the headquarters. The WAN links range from 384-kbps circuits to T1 speeds. Remote-site applications include statistical files and graphical-site diagrams that are transferred using FTP from remote sites to the headquarters.



**Figure 16-3** Big Oil and Gas Current Network

Mr. Drew wants a UC solution that manages the servers at headquarters but still provides redundancy or failover at the remote site. He mentions that he is concerned that the FTP traffic might impact the VoIP traffic. He wants to choose a site to implement a test before implementing UC at all sites.

### Scenario Two Questions

The following questions/directives refer to scenario two:

1. What are the business requirements for Big Oil and Gas?
2. Are there any business-cost constraints?

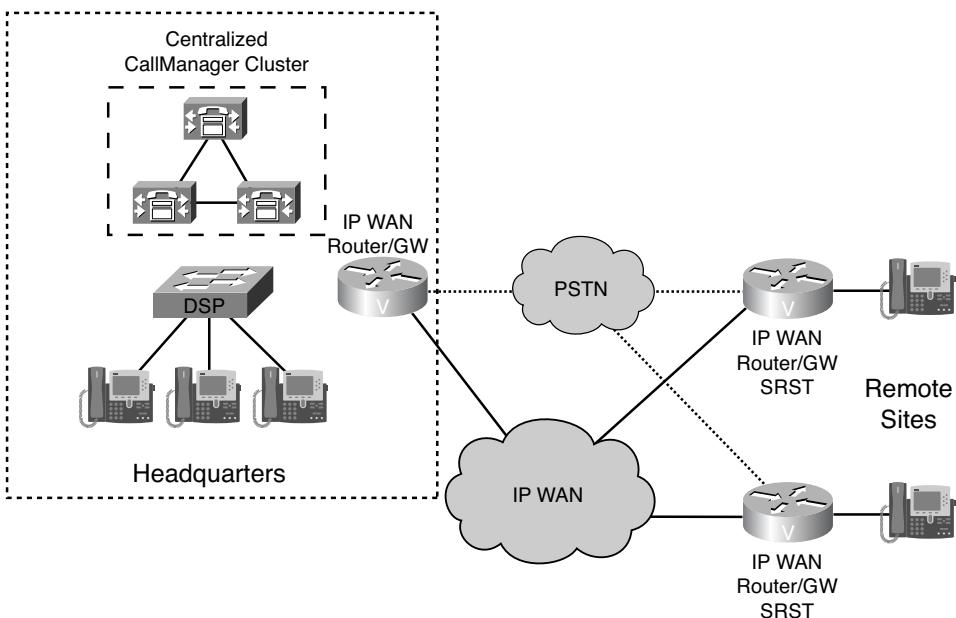
3. What are the network's technical requirements?
4. What are the network's technical constraints?
5. Approximately how many IP phones should the network support?
6. What type of UC architecture should you propose?
7. What quality of service (QoS) features would you propose for the WAN?
8. What PoE recommendations would you make?
9. Would you propose a prototype or a pilot?
10. What solution do you suggest for voice redundancy at the remote sites?
11. Diagram the proposed solution.

### Scenario Two Answers

1. The company wants to provide voice services in a converged network.
2. The solution should provide reduced costs over the existing separate voice and data networks.
3. The technical requirements are as follows:
  - Provide UC over the data network.
  - Provide voice redundancy or failover for the remote sites.
  - Prevent FTP traffic from impacting the voice traffic.
4. The technical constraint is as follows:

Call-processing servers need to be located at headquarters, and IP phones need to continue to work even if the WAN goes down or has limited bandwidth.
5. There are 200 IP phones at headquarters, and  $35 * 30 = 1050$  remote IP phones, for a total of 1250 IP phones.
6. Propose the WAN centralized call-processing architecture with a CallManager (CM) cluster at headquarters.
7. Use low-latency queuing (LLQ) on the WAN links to give the highest priority to voice traffic. Then define traffic classes for regular traffic and FTP traffic. Make bandwidth reservations for the voice traffic and maximum bandwidth restrictions for the FTP traffic. Call Admission Control (CAC) is recommended to limit the number of calls from and to a remote site. CAC should be used to reroute calls to the public switched telephone network (PSTN) if there is no available bandwidth to support a new call. For example, you can limit calls at sites with 384k links to only three calls via the WAN. Any additional call gets routed to the PSTN.
8. Recommend standard-based Power over Ethernet (PoE), also known as IEEE (802.3af) for the switches to provide power to the IP phones.

9. To prove that calls can run over the WAN links, implement a pilot site. The pilot would test the design's functionality over the WAN with or without FTP traffic.
10. Recommend the use of Survivable Remote Site Telephony (SRST) to provide voice services in the event of WAN failure, and reroute calls to the (PSTN).
11. Figure 16-4 shows the diagram, which shows headquarters and two remote sites for clarity. This architecture is duplicated for all remote sites. Each site uses a voice router that is connected to both the IP WAN and the PSTN. SRST provides voice survivability in the case of WAN failure. A CM cluster is implemented at the headquarters. The Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) servers are in the data center in a redundant network.



**Figure 16-4** Headquarters and Two Remote Sites

### Scenario Three: Beauty Things Store

Beauty Things is a chain of stores that sell beauty supplies. Its headquarters is in Houston, Texas, and more than 60 stores are located throughout the United States. The CIO tells you that they are in the middle of a WAN migration from Frame Relay to MPLS. It will be completed in two months. Most WAN links are less than 384 kbps.

After the WAN migration is complete, the CIO wants to use VoIP for voice calls between stores. Most of the traffic is from remote stores to the HQ locations. He wants to complete the VoIP project within the next six months and within the established budget. Each store will have five concurrent calls back to headquarters.

is assigned the differentiated services code point (DSCP) listed in Table 16-4.

**Table 16-4 DSCPs for Beauty Things**

<b>Priority Queue</b>	<b>DSCP</b>
Blue	AF31
Red	EF
Green	AF21
Yellow	Default

### Scenario Three Questions

The following questions refer to scenario three:

- 1.** What are the business constraints for this project?
- 2.** Is MPLS technology appropriate for VoIP?
- 3.** Assuming a g.729 codec, how much bandwidth must be allocated for VoIP packets per store?
- 4.** Assuming a g.729 codec, how much bandwidth must be reserved for VoIP traffic on the WAN link of the headquarters router?
- 5.** Which MPLS priority queue is assigned for VoIP traffic?
  - a.** Blue
  - b.** Red
  - c.** Green
  - d.** Yellow
- 6.** Which MPLS priority queue is assigned for FTP traffic?
  - a.** Blue
  - b.** Red
  - c.** Green
  - d.** Yellow
- 7.** What WAN interface solution must be used to prevent large file transfers from interfering and causing delays of VoIP packets?
  - a.** Priority queuing
  - b.** Policy routing
  - c.** Link fragmentation and interleaving
  - d.** Serialization delay

8. What is the recommended queuing technique for the WAN interfaces?
- a. PQ
  - b. Policy queuing
  - c. LLQ
  - d. Custom queuing

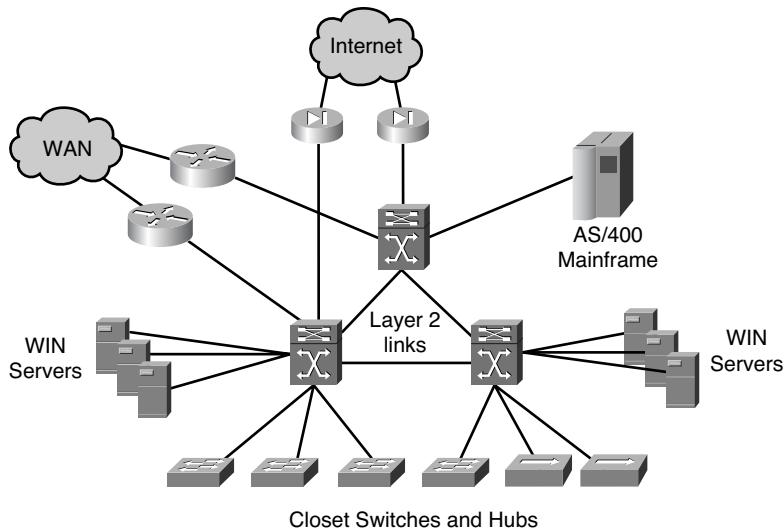
### Scenario Three Answers

1. The WAN project is to be completed in two months. The VoIP project is to be completed in six months and within budget.
2. Yes, MPLS technology is the preferred WAN technology to support VoIP packets. MPLS provides QoS prioritization and guarantees.
3. 130 kbps. This is calculated by taking five concurrent calls times 26 kbps per call.
4. 7.8 Mbps. This is the sum of VoIP traffic per store multiplied by 60 remote stores.
5. B. VoIP traffic is marked with DSCP expedited forwarding, which corresponds to the Red queue.
6. D. FTP traffic does not require prioritization and thus is assigned to the default Yellow queue.
7. C. LFI should be used on WAN links that are less than 768 kbps. It is used to reduce the serialization delay associated with the transmission of large packets on low speed links.
8. C. LLQ is the recommended queuing technique when VoIP packets are present on WAN links.

## Scenario Four: Falcon Communications

Falcon Communications has requested an assessment of its current network infrastructure. You are given the diagram shown in Figure 16-5. The current infrastructure contains three 6500 Catalyst switches connected using Layer 2 links. Building access switches, WAN routers, Internet firewalls, the mainframe, Windows, and VMware ESX servers all connect to the 6500 switches. There are more than 2000 users attached to the campus access switches, and some Fast Ethernet hubs are still used on the network.

The IT manager mentions that they experience sporadic network outages several times during the day, and users are complaining that the network is slow. The CIO states that they want to consolidate and virtualize the network as much as possible, because the company expects to double in size in three years. They also want to prepare the network for Unified Communications (UC).



**Figure 16-5** Falcon Communications Current Network

#### Scenario Four Questions

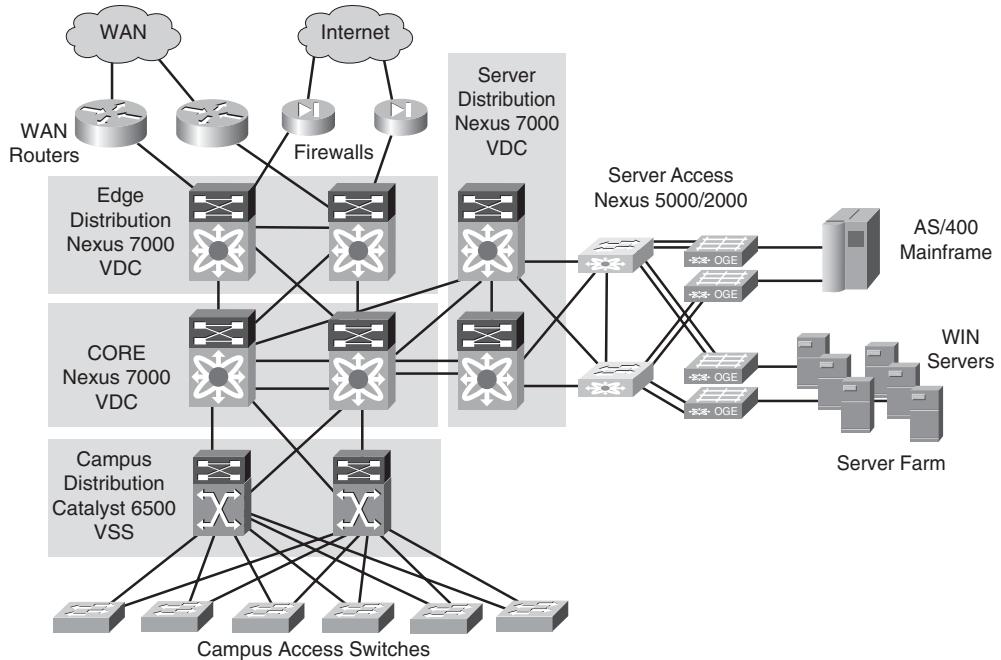
The following questions/directives refer to scenario four:

1. Is this network scalable?
2. What do you recommend for the core and distribution switches?
3. How would you incorporate network and device virtualization?
4. What changes are required in the closet switches and hubs?
5. What do you recommend for the WAN routers and Internet firewalls?
6. What do you recommend for the AS/400 and WIN server?
7. What is the role of the distribution layer in the architecture?
8. What do you recommend for IP addressing?
9. Falcon Communications has a VLAN with a /22 IP subnet that is experiencing network delays. What do you recommend?
10. Diagram your proposed solution.

#### Scenario Four Answers

1. No. The current Falcon network is not scalable. It is a flat network architecture using Layer 2 links in the core with no hierarchy. It does not have core, distribution, and access layers.

2. Recommend creating a hierarchy with core, distribution and access layers. Create Nexus 7000 VDC for the core layer. Use Layer 3 links rather than Layer 2 links to prevent spanning-tree loop broadcast storms.
3. Network virtualization would be implemented using VLANs and 6500 running in a Virtual Switching System (VSS) pair. Device virtualization is achieved using Nexus 7000 virtual device contexts (VDC) for the core, edge, and server distribution layers.
4. All hubs need to be replaced with switches. All switches should be replaced with PoE switches to provide power to future IP phones and wireless access points. All new switch purchases should be PoE-capable LAN switches.
5. Create an Nexus 7000 VDC enterprise edge layer that separates the campus LAN and the enterprise edge. Reuse the 6500s in a VSS pair for the campus distribution layer.
6. Create a Nexus 7000 VDC server distribution and Nexus 5000/Nexus 2000 access layer on which to place all servers with support for 1GE/10GE and the AS/400 mainframe. The Nexus 5000 also support Unified fabric for future Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) requirements.
7. The distribution layer has several functions:
  - Address summarization
  - Security access lists
  - Broadcast domain definition
  - VLAN routing
  - Media translation
8. Recommend allocating /30 subnets for the links between the core and distribution switches. Allocate separate IP subnets for the future IP phones and servers. This lets you apply security policies. Also allocate separate IP subnets for wireless LAN networks.
9. Recommend splitting the IP subnet into separate /24 IP subnets as needed with 30 percent for future growth.
10. The solution shown in Figure 16-6 is a hierarchical network with core, distribution, and access layers. Building access and separate server farms are used. Distribution switches are used to allocate security policies and route summarization. The solution is scalable and will support the growth plans of Falcon Communications. PoE switches are deployed to support the future UC deployment.



**Figure 16-6** Falcon Communications Proposed Network Solution



---

## Final Preparation

---

The first 16 chapters of this book cover the technologies, protocols, design concepts, and considerations required to be prepared to pass the 640-864 CCDA exam. While these chapters supply the detailed information, most people need more preparation than just reading the first 16 chapters of this book. This chapter details a set of tools and a study plan to help you complete your preparation for the exams.

This short chapter has two main sections. The first section lists the exam preparation tools useful at this point in the study process. The second section lists a suggested study plan now that you have completed all the earlier chapters in this book.

**Note:** Note that Appendix D, “Memory Tables,” and Appendix E, “Memory Tables Answer Key,” exist as soft-copy appendixes on the CD included in the back of this book.

---

### Tools for Final Preparation

---

This section lists some information about the available tools and how to access the tools.

#### Pearson Cert Practice Test Engine and Questions on the CD

The CD at the back of this book includes the Pearson Cert Practice Test engine (software that displays and grades a set of exam-realistic, multiple-choice questions). Using the Pearson Cert Practice Test, you can either study by going through the questions in Study mode or take a simulated (timed) CCDA exam.

The installation process requires two major steps. The CD at the back of this book has a recent copy of the Pearson Cert Practice Test engine. The practice exam—the database of CCDA exam questions—is not on the CD.

## Install the Software from the CD

The software installation process is routine compared with other software installation processes. To be complete, the following steps outline the installation process:

- Step 1.** Insert the CD into your PC.
- Step 2.** The software that automatically runs is the Cisco Press software to access and use all CD-based features, including the exam engine and the CD-only appendices. From the main menu, click the **Install the Exam Engine** option.
- Step 3.** Respond to window prompts as with any typical software installation process.

The installation process will give you the option to activate your exam with the activation code supplied on the paper in the CD sleeve. This process requires that you establish a Pearson website logon. You will need this logon to activate the exam, so please do register when prompted. If you already have a Pearson website logon, there is no need to register again. Just use your existing logon.

## Activate and Download the Practice Exam

Once the exam engine is installed, you should then activate the exam associated with this book (if you did not do so during the installation process), as follows:

- Step 1.** Start the Pearson Cert Practice Test (PCPT) software from the Windows Start menu or from your desktop shortcut icon.
- Step 2.** To activate and download the exam associated with this book, from the My Products or Tools tab, click the **Activate** button.
- Step 3.** At the next screen, enter the activation key from paper inside the cardboard CD holder at the back of the book. Then click the **Activate** button.
- Step 4.** The activation process downloads the practice exam. Click **Next**, and then click **Finish**.

When the activation process has completed, the My Products tab should list your new exam. If you do not see the exam, make sure you have selected the My Products tab on the menu. At this point, the software and practice exam are ready to use. Just select the exam and click the **Use** button.

To update a particular exam you have already activated and downloaded, simply select the Tools tab and click the **Update Products** button. Updating your exams ensures you have the latest changes and updates to the exam data.

If you want to check for updates to the Pearson Cert Practice Test engine software, select the Tools tab and click the **Update Application** button. Doing so ensures that you are running the latest version of the software engine.

## Activating Other Exams

The exam software installation process, and the registration process, only has to happen once. Then, for each new exam, only a few steps are required. For instance, if you buy another new Cisco Press Official Cert Guide or Pearson IT Certification Cert Guide, extract the activation code from the CD sleeve at the back of that book; you do not even need to CD at this point. From there, all you have to do is start the exam engine (if not still up and running), and perform steps 2 through 4 from the previous list.

## Premium Edition

In addition to the free practice exam provided on the CD-ROM, you can purchase additional exams with expanded functionality directly from Pearson IT Certification. The Premium Edition of this title contains an additional two full practice exams and an eBook (in both PDF and ePub format). In addition, the Premium Edition title also has remediation for each question to the specific part of the eBook that relates to that question.

Because you have purchased the print version of this title, you can purchase the Premium Edition at a deep discount. There is a coupon code in the CD sleeve that contains a one-time-use code and instructions for where you can purchase the Premium Edition.

To view the premium edition product page, go to [www.informit.com/title/9780132748339](http://www.informit.com/title/9780132748339).

## The Cisco Learning Network

Cisco provides a wide variety of CCDA preparation tools at a Cisco Systems website called the Cisco Learning Network. This site includes a large variety of exam preparation tools, including sample questions, forums on each Cisco exam, learning video games, and information about each exam.

To reach the Cisco Learning Network, go to [www.cisco.com/go/learnnetspace](http://www.cisco.com/go/learnnetspace), or just search for “Cisco Learning Network.” You must use the logon you created at Cisco.com. If you do not have such a logon, you can register for free. To register, simply go to Cisco.com, click Register at the top of the page, and supply some information.

## Memory Tables

Like most Official Cert Guides from Cisco Press, this book purposely organizes information into tables and lists for easier study and review. Rereading these tables can be very useful before the exam. However, it is easy to skim over the tables without paying attention to every detail, especially when you remember having seen the table’s contents when reading the chapter.

Instead of just reading the tables in the various chapters, this book’s Appendixes D and E give you another review tool. Appendix D lists partially completed versions of many of the tables from the book. You can open Appendix D (a PDF on the CD that comes with this book) and print the appendix. For review, you can attempt to complete the tables.

This exercise can help you focus on the review. It also exercises the memory connectors in your brain, plus it makes you think about the information without as much information, which forces a little more contemplation about the facts.

Appendix E, also a PDF located on the CD, lists the completed tables to check yourself. You can also just refer to the tables as printed in the book.

## Chapter-Ending Review Tools

Chapters 1 through 15 each have several features in the “Exam Preparation Tasks” and “Q&A” sections at the end of the chapter. You might have already worked through these in each chapter. It can also be useful to use these tools again as you make your final preparations for the exam.

---

## Suggested Plan for Final Review/Study

---

This section lists a suggested study plan from the point at which you finish reading through Chapter 16, until you take the 640-864 CCDA exam. Certainly, you can ignore this plan, use it as is, or just take suggestions from it.

The plan uses five steps:

- Step 1.** **Review key topics and DIKTA questions:** You can use the table that lists the key topics in each chapter, or just flip the pages looking for key topics. Also, reviewing the DIKTA questions from the beginning of the chapter can be helpful for review.
- Step 2.** **Complete memory tables:** Open Appendix D on the CD and print the entire thing, or print the tables by major part. Then complete the tables.
- Step 3.** **Review “Q&A” sections:** Go through the Q&A questions at the end of each chapter to identify areas you need more study.
- Step 4.** **Subnetting practice:** If you can no longer do subnetting well and quickly, without a subnetting calculator, take some time to get better and faster before going to take the 640-864 CCDA exam.
- Step 5.** **Use the Pearson Cert Practice Test engine to practice:** The Pearson Cert Practice Test engine on the CD can be used to study using a bank of unique exam-realistic questions available only with this book.

## Subnetting Practice

This book assumes that you have mastered subnetting and the related math. However, many people who progress through CCNA and move on to CCDA follow a path like this:

- Step 1.** Learn subnetting conceptually.
- Step 2.** Get really good at doing the math quickly.

**Step 3.** Pass the CCNA.

**Step 4.** Get a lot faster at doing the subnetting math.

**Step 5.** Study for the 640-864 CCDA exam.

Although subnetting should not be assessed as an end to itself on the 640-864 CCDA exam, many questions require that you understand subnetting math and be able to do that math just as quickly as you did when you passed the CCNA exam. If you are a little slow on doing subnetting math, before you go to the 640-864 CCDA exam, try some of the following exercises:

- Practice finding the subnet number, broadcast address, and range of addresses in a subnet. To do so, pick a number and mask, calculate the values, and use your favorite subnet calculator to check your work. Look at the Cisco Learning Network for a calculator if you do not have one already.
- Use the Cisco Subnet Game, also at the Cisco Learning Network.
- Practice choosing the best summary for a range of subnets. Pick three or four addresses/masks. Calculate the subnet number and range. Then, try to choose the summary (subnet number/mask) that includes those three or four subnets, without including any more subnets than what is required. You can also check your math with a subnet calculator.
- If you like using binary/decimal conversions when you work through these problems, but just need to go faster, check out the Cisco Binary Game, also at the Cisco Learning Network.

## Using the Exam Engine

The Pearson Cert Practice Test engine on the CD includes a database of questions created specifically for this book. The Pearson Cert Practice Test engine can be used either in Study mode or Practice Exam mode, as follows:

- **Study mode:** This mode is most useful when you want to use the questions for learning and practicing. In Study mode, you can select options like randomizing the order of the questions and answers, automatically viewing answers to the questions as you go, testing on specific topics, and many other options.
- **Practice Exam mode:** This mode presents questions in a timed environment, providing you with a more exam-realistic experience. It also restricts your ability to see your score as you progress through the exam and view answers to questions as you are taking the exam. These timed exams not only allow you to study for the actual 640-864 CCDA exam, they help you simulate the time pressure that can occur on the actual exam.

When doing your final preparation, you can use Study mode, Practice Exam mode, or both. However, after you have seen each question a couple of times, you will likely start to

remember the questions, and the usefulness of the exam database might diminish. So, consider the following options when using the exam engine:

- Use this question database for review. Use Study mode to study the questions by chapter, just as with the other final review steps listed in this chapter. Plan on getting another exam (possibly from the Premium Edition) if you want to take additional simulated exams.
- Save the question database, not using it for review during your review of each book part. Save it until the end, so you will not have seen the questions before. Then, use Practice Exam mode to simulate the exam.

Picking the correct mode from the exam engine's user interface is pretty obvious. The following steps show how to move to the screen from which to select study or practice exam mode:

- Step 1.** Click the **My Products** tab if you are not already at that screen.
- Step 2.** Select the exam you want to use from the list of available exams.
- Step 3.** Click the **Use** button.

The engine should then display a window from which you can choose Study mode or Practice Exam mode. When in Study mode, you can further choose the book chapters, limiting the questions to those explained in the specified chapters of the book.

---

## Summary

---

The tools and suggestions listed in this chapter have been designed with one goal in mind: to help you develop the skills required to pass the 640-864 CCDA exam. This book has been developed from the beginning to not just tell you the facts but to also help you learn how to apply the facts. No matter what your experience level leading up to when you take the exams, it is our hope that the broad range of preparation tools, and even the structure of the book, helps you pass the exam with ease. I hope you do well on the exam.

*This page intentionally left blank*

*This page intentionally left blank*

# **Part VI: Appendixes**

---

**Appendix A: Answers to “Do I Know This Already?” Quizzes and Q&A Questions**

**Appendix B: CCDA Exam Updates: Version 1.0**

**Appendix C: OSI Model, TCP/IP Architecture, and Numeric Conversion**



---

# Answers to the “Do I Know This Already?” Quizzes and Q&A Questions

---

## Chapter 1

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

1. B, D, and F. Collaboration, data center/virtualization, and borderless network are the three architectures for the enterprise.
2. A, B, C. Removal of borders, virtualization, and growth of applications are technology forces.
3. B. Network resiliency and control occurs in the Network Services layer.
4. B. Presence occurs under Collaboration Services.
5. A. The correct order is Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, Optimize.
6. A, B, C. The PPDIOO methodology has three steps.
7. D. The primary sources of network audits are existing documentation, management software, and new management tools.
8. D. The top-down design approach starts the design from the application layer.
9. B. The examples are organization constraints.
10. C. The examples are technical goals.

### Q&A

1. Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, Optimize.
2. E, F, G. Regulation, ROI, and competitiveness are business forces.
3. A. Identify customer requirements.
4. B, C, and E
5. i = D, ii = F, iii = C, iv = B, v = E, vi = A
6. C. The user services architecture provides mobility, performance, and security.
7. B, C, and D
8. i = D, ii = A, iii = E, iv = B, v = F, vi = C

- 9.** B. A pilot site is an actual live location for testing.
- 10.** A. A prototype network is a subset of the design in an isolated environment.
- 11.** B
- 12.** A. Monitoring commands are not SNMP tools.
- 13.** A and B
- 14.** C and D. The other answers are technical constraints.
- 15.** A, C, and E
- 16.** B, D, and F. The other answers are organizational goals.
- 17.** A, B, D, E. Answers C and F are not usually included in the design document.
- 18.** i = D, ii = C, iii = B, iv = F, v = E, vi = A, vii = G
- 19.** C. The network health analysis is based on statistics obtained from the existing network.
- 20.** C. WAN circuits with sustained utilization of more than 70 percent should have their provisioned bandwidth increased.
- 21.** A, B, C, D, E. All these items are included in a network audit report.
- 22.** B, C, and D
- 23.** B
- 24.** C, D, and E
- 25.** B, C, and D
- 26.** B
- 27.** (1) Identify customer requirements.  
(2) Define upper OSI layers.  
(3) Gather additional information.  
(4) Choose underlying technology.
- 28.** B, D, and E
- 29.** C-1, A-2, B-3, D-4. Taking a top-down approach the order of importance is security design, IP addressing (network layer) design, physical topology design, and then network modular design.
- 30.** C and D
- 31.** A, B, C, and D
- 32.** C
- 33.** A, B, and E

## Chapter 2

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

1. B. The core layer of the hierarchical model is responsible for fast transport.
2. C. The enterprise edge consists of e-commerce, Internet connectivity, VPN/remote access, and WAN modules. The enterprise edge modules connect to SPs.
3. C. The distribution layer of the hierarchical model is responsible for security filtering, address and area aggregation, and media translation.
4. D. HSRP and VRRP provide default gateway redundancy.
5. F. The network management module monitors all components and functions except the SP edge.
6. A. The SP edge includes Internet, PSTN, and WAN modules.
7. C. The server farm hosts campus servers including Cisco CallManager servers.
8. D. The access layer functions are high availability, port security, rate limiting, ARP inspection, virtual access lists, and trust classification.

### Q&A

1. False
2. True
3. The server farm.
4. True
5. The Internet submodule.
6. Enterprise campus, enterprise edge, enterprise WAN, enterprise branch, enterprise data center, and enterprise teleworker.
7. True
8. False. A full-mesh network increases costs.
9. Use  $n(n - 1)/2$ , where  $n = 6$ .  $6 * (6 - 1)/2 = (6 * 5)/2 = 30/2 = 15$
10. Option 1: Single router, dual links to one ISP  
Option 2: Single router, dual links to two ISPs  
Option 3: Dual routers, dual links to one ISP  
Option 4: Dual routers, dual links to two ISPs  
Option 4 provides the most redundancy, with dual local routers, dual links, and dual ISPs.
11. The SP edge Internet submodule connects to the enterprise edge Internet submodule.

- 12.** Cost savings, ease of understanding, easy network growth (scalability), and improved fault isolation.
- 13.** IP phones reside in the building access layer of the campus infrastructure. The CallManagers are placed in the server farm of the enterprise campus.
- 14.** i = C, ii = D, iii = B, iv = A
- 15.** False. Small campus networks can have collapsed core and distribution layers and implement a two-layer design. Medium campus networks can have two-tier or three-tier designs.
- 16.** Use the formula  $n(n - 1)/2$ , where  $n = 10$ .  $10(10 - 1)/2 = 90/2 = 45$  links.
- 17.** B. The distribution layer provides routing between VLANs and security filtering.
- 18.** E-commerce, Internet, VPN/remote access, and WAN.
- 19.** Internet services, WAN services, and PSTN services.
- 20.** Firewalls, Internet routers, FTP/HTTP servers, SMTP mail servers, and DNS servers.
- 21.** B. The VPN/remote access submodule contains firewalls, VPN concentrators, and ASAs.
- 22.** D and E. The access layer concentrates user access and provides PoE to IP phones.
- 23.** B and C. The distribution layer concentrates the network access switches and routers and applies network policies with access lists.
- 24.** A and F. The core layer provides high-speed data transport without manipulating the data.
- 25.** D. The Campus Core connects to the server farm, the Enterprise Edge, and the Building Distribution.
- 26.** E. The infrastructure at the remote site usually consists of a WAN router and a small LAN switch.
- 27.** A, B, and C. Web, application, and database servers are placed in the e-commerce submodule.
- 28.** Block 4.
- 29.** Block 1.
- 30.** Block 6.
- 31.** Block 2.
- 32.** Block 5.
- 33.** Block 3.
- 34.** C. The Cisco Virtual Office supports the teleworker with router, VPN, and IP telephony.
- 35.** A and C

- 36.** A, C, and E. The teleworker, branch, and data center modules are part of the enterprise remote modules.
- 37.** B, C, and E. Security, QoS, and high availability are borderless network infrastructure services.
- 38.** C. Servers are located in the server farm module of the enterprise campus area.
- 39.** B. Partial-mesh connectivity is best suited in the distribution layer.
- 40.** A and B. Wireless APs function as a hub to connect wireless end devices to the network.
- 41.** A and B
- 42.** A, B, and C
- 43.** B. VSS allows a Catalyst 6500 switch pair to act as a single logical switch.
- 44.** C
- 45.** C
- 46.** E, F, and G
- 47.** Access layer: A, D, E, F  
Distribution layer: A, C, E, F  
Core: B
- 48.** Only section B.
- 49.** Only section C.
- 50.** Sections A, D, and E belong to the access layer.

## Chapter 3

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** F. Routers and Layer 3 switches are Layer 3 devices that control and filter network broadcasts.
- 2.** C. The maximum distance of 100BASE-T is 100 meters.
- 3.** G. Every port of a Layer 2 switch, Layer 3 switch, or LAN port on a router is a collision domain.
- 4.** B. Routes are summarized at the distribution layer.
- 5.** B. Layer 3 switches are recommended for the backbone of campus networks.
- 6.** C. This is a peer-to-peer application.
- 7.** C. Multimode fiber provides a cost-effective solution for that distance. Single-mode fiber is more expensive. UTP cannot go more than 100 meters.

- 8.** B. Each port on a switch is a separate collision or bandwidth domain. All ports on a hub share the same bandwidth domain.

## Q&A

- 1.** False. Layer 2 switches limit only the collision domain.
- 2.** CGMP
- 3.** True
- 4.** True
- 5.** Inter-Switch Link (ISL) and IEEE 802.1p/802.1Q
- 6.** A. IP phone-to-IP phone communication is an example of peer-to-peer communication.
- 7.** A, C, and E. Network applications, infrastructure devices, and environmental characteristics affect network design.
- 8.** C. Multimode fiber provides the necessary connectivity at the required distance. UTP can reach only 100 m. Single-mode fiber is more expensive.
- 9.** B. The DC aggregation layer is similar to the campus distribution layer.
- 10.** C. Disabling trunking on host ports and using RPVST+ are best practices at the access layer.
- 11.** B. The use of HSRP and summarization of routes are best practices in the distribution layer.
- 12.** A. Best practices for the core is the use of triangle connections to reduce switch peering and use routing to prevent network loops.
- 13.** D. Load balancers, SSL offloading, firewalls, and intrusion detection devices are deployed in the DC aggregation layer.
- 14.** D. All are threats to the enterprise edge distribution.
- 15.** C. Create a server farm that allows the enforcement of security policies.
- 16.** B. These are design considerations for the distribution layer.
- 17.** D. All are server connectivity options.
- 18.** A. The core and the distribution should be connected using redundant Layer 3 triangular links.
- 19.** B. The building subnets are too large and should be further segmented to reduce the broadcast domain.
- 20.** B. Broadcasts are not forwarded by routers and are controlled by VLANs.
- 21.** i = C, ii = A, iii = B, iv = E, v = D
- 22.**

- 23.** i = A, ii = C, iii = B
- 24.** i = E, ii = A, iii = C, iv = D, v = B
- 25.** i = B, ii = A, iii = D, iv = C
- 26.** i = B, ii = D, iii = C, iv = A
- 27.** True. IP phones reclassify incoming frames from the PC. Switches can accept or reclassify incoming frames.
- 28.** CGMP and IGMP snooping control multicast traffic at Layer 2. The switch and local router exchange CGMP messages. With IGMP snooping, the switch listens to IGMP messages between the host and the router.
- 29.** ISL and IEEE 802.1p/Q are two methods for CoS. ISL was created by Cisco and uses an external tag that contains 3 bits for marking. IEEE 802.1p specifies 3 bits for marking that is carried in the internal tag of IEEE 802.1q. The IEEE 802.1p specification is not included in the IEEE 802.1D-1998 standard.
- 30.** False. You can configure the CGMP only if both the router and switch are Cisco devices. IGMP snooping can be configured in mixed environments.
- 31.** The campus backbone should have high-speed links. Recommend Gigabit Ethernet links.
- 32.** The IP phones should remap the workstation traffic to a value less than the value assigned to voice. Typically, it is recommended that you configure the IP phone to set the DSCP to EF for VoIP bearer traffic.
- 33.** Inspect them at the Layer 3 switches in Building A. Packets should be marked and accepted as close as possible to the source.
- 34.** No. There is no redundancy to the WAN module. A separate link to another building would provide that redundancy.
- 35.** No. There is no redundancy to the Internet module. A separate link from another building would provide that redundancy.
- 36.** Yes. The network uses Layer 2 switches at the building-access layer and Layer 3 switches at the building distribution and campus backbone layers.
- 37.** A, C, and E
- 38.** C
- 39.** B and C
- 40.** C
- 41.** D
- 42.** C
- 43.** A. Use redundant triangle topology between distribution and core layers.

**44.** B

**45.** A

**46.** A, B, G, and H

**47.** A, C, and E

**48.** C, D, F, and G

**49.** A, E, and G

## Chapter 4

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** B and C. Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) and Internet Small Computer Systems Interface (iSCSI) are two methods for implementing unified fabric in the data center over 10 Gigabit Ethernet.
- 2.** B. Data Center 3.0 architecture can be best described by consolidation, virtualization, and automation.
- 3.** A. Data center facility aspects such as space, load, power capacity, and cabling are architectural and mechanical specifications.
- 4.** D. Data center cooling requires the most power out of the overall power budget next to servers and storage.
- 5.** C. The data center access layer provides Layer 2/Layer 3 physical port density for servers in the data center.
- 6.** D. The Layer 4 security and application services in the data center aggregation layer include server load balancing, SSL Offloading, firewalling, and IPS services.
- 7.** D. Virtualization technologies allow a physical device to share its resources by acting as multiple versions of itself.
- 8.** A, B, and C. VRFs, VLANs, and VSANs are examples of network virtualization techniques where logical isolation is used.
- 9.** B and D. Cisco Adaptive Security Appliances (ASA) and Cisco Application Control Engines (ACE) use device virtualization or contexts.
- 10.** C. Path Isolation involves the creation of independent logical network paths over a shared network infrastructure.

### Q&A

- 1.** B. Data Center 2.0 brought client/server and distributed computing into the mainstream.
- 2.** ty and policy control for VMs.

3. A. Converged network adapters (CNAs) run at 10GE and support FCoE and are available from Emulex and QLogic.
4. D. Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS) is an innovative next-generation data center platform that converges computing, network, storage, and virtualization all together into one system.
5. A. Cisco Nexus 7000 series switches are the only switches that support VDCs.
6. B. The FWSM is an effective way to address policy enforcement in a Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switch, by providing firewall services for the data center.
7. D. As a result of server virtualization, many data center applications are no longer bound to bare-metal hardware resources.
8. C. Virtual Switching System (VSS) is a network virtualization technology that allows two physical Cisco Catalyst 6500 series switches to act as a single logical virtual switch.
9. A. Virtual Port Channel (vPC) enables the spanning-tree topology to appear loop-free although multiple redundant paths are present in the physical topology.
10. A and C. Low-latency switching, distributed forwarding architecture, 10GE, and scalable IP multicast support are all DC core layer characteristics.
11. B. The data center aggregation layer supports advanced application and security services and has a large STP processing load.
12. A, B, and D. 10 Gigabit Ethernet density, administrative domains and polices, and future growth are all drivers for the data center core layer.
13. C. The data center access layer provides benefits such as port density for server farms, high-performance low-latency Layer 2 switching, and a mix of oversubscription requirements.
14. B and C. Cable management and is affected by the number of connections and media selection.
15. B. The cabinets and racks should be arranged in the data center with an alternating pattern of “cold” and “hot” aisles.
16. C. Within the unified computing resources, the service profile defines the identity of the server. The identity contains many items such as memory, CPU, network cards, and boot image.

## Chapter 5

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

1. E. Both 802.11a and 802.11n use UNII frequencies.
2. B. The Industrial, Scientific, and Medical (ISM) band of frequencies provides 11 channels for WLANs.

3. D. CAPWAP is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard for control messaging for setup, authentication, and operations between access points (AP) and WLAN controllers (WLC).
4. B. The service-port interface is an optional interface that is statically configured for out-of-band management.
5. B. The Cisco Catalyst 3750 Integrated WLC supports up to 50 APs.
6. C. With N+N+1 redundancy, an equal number of controllers back up each other, as with N+N. Plus, a backup WLC is configured as the tertiary WLC for the access points.
7. B. The recommended best practice is up to 20 WLAN clients.
8. D. Mesh access points (MAP) connect to the RAP to connect to the wired network.

## Q&A

1. 54 Mbps
2. 200 Mbps
3. Having to configure SSIDs, frequency channels, and power settings on each individual APs.
4. Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
5. Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
  - Reduced TCO
  - Enhanced visibility and control
  - Dynamic RF management
  - WLAN security
  - Unified wired and wireless network
  - Enterprise mobility
  - Enhanced productivity and collaboration
6. False. With split-MAC, control and data traffic frames are split. LWAPs communicate with the WLCs with control messages over the wired network. LWAPP data messages are encapsulated and forwarded to and from wireless clients.
7. True. Controller MAC functions are association requests, resource reservation, and authentication and key management.
8. C. Layer 3 CAPWAP tunnels are the preferred solution.
9. B. Layer 2 intercontroller roaming is the preferred intercontroller roaming option.
10. B. The WLC places the user data on the appropriate VLAN and forwards the frame to the wired network.

11. C. Each 4400 series WLC supports 100 APs. 100 APs times 24 controllers in a mobility group equals 2400.
12. D. The recommended number of data devices per AP is 20.
13. B. The recommended number of voice over wireless devices per AP is seven for G.711 and eight for G.729.
14. C. Cisco Radio Resource Management controls AP radio frequency and power settings.
15. A. Typically, there is a 1- to 3-ms latency per hop.
16. D. The RTT between the AP and WLC should not exceed 300 ms.
17. D. Cisco recommends deterministic controller redundancy.
18. D. EoIP is the recommended method for guest services.
19. A. H-REAP with centralized controllers is recommended for branch WLAN design.
20. B and D. Recommended practices are minimizing intercontroller roaming and centralizing controller placement.
21. D. The Cisco 6500 WLC module supports 300 access points.
22. i = D, ii = E, iii = A, iv = F, v = B, vi = C
23. i = E, ii = D, iii = C, iv = B, v = A
24. i = B, ii = A, iii = C
25. i = B, ii = A, iii = G, iv = E, v = F, vi = C, vii = D
26. i = C, ii = D, iii = A, iv = B
27. B. For best performance, 20 MAP nodes or fewer is recommended per RAP.
28. D. Only answer D has the correct order.
29. B. Radio Resource Management (RRM) functions include radio resource monitoring, dynamic channel assignment, interference detection and avoidance, dynamic transmit power control, coverage hole detection and correction, and client and network load balancing.
30. B. Channels 1, 6, and 11 of the ISM frequencies do not overlap.
31. A. Only answer A is correct.
32. C. H-LEAP uses mutual authentication between the client and the network server and uses IEEE 802.1X for 802.11 authentication messaging. H-LEAP uses a RADIUS server to manage user information.
33. C
34. A and E. DHCP and DNS can be used to find the WLAN controller.

- 35.** B and D
- 36.** C and D
- 37.** A and B
- 38.** A, C, and E
- 39.** B and E
- 40.** C. The service set identifier identifies the WLAN network.
- 41.** C
- 42.** A and B
- 43.** A, B, C, and D
- 44.** B, C, and E
- 45.** C and D

## Chapter 6

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** C. DMZ/E-commerce, Internet, remote-access VPN, and WAN/MAN are all network modules found in the enterprise edge.
- 2.** B Metro Ethernet bandwidths can range from 10 Mbps to 1 Gbps, and even higher in some cases.
- 3.** D. A TDM T1 circuit provides 1.5.44 Mbps of bandwidth.
- 4.** C. The Cisco PPDOIO methodology is used when designing the enterprise edge.
- 5.** C. The architecture of SONET/SDH is circuit based and delivers high-speed services over an optical network.
- 6.** D. MPLS is technology for the delivery of IP services using labels (numbers) to forward packets.
- 7.** C. GSM, GPRS, and UMTS are all part of mobile wireless technologies.
- 8.** D. Frame Relay technology supports full mesh configurations when connecting multiple sites together.
- 9.** D. The window size defines the upper limit of frames that can be transmitted without getting a return acknowledgment.
- 10.** A. Low-latency queuing (LLQ) adds a strict-priority queue to CBWFQ.

## Q&A

1. D. After analyzing the customer requirements, the next step is to characterize the existing network.
2. B. The enterprise edge modules connect to the enterprise campus via the campus core module.
3. D. The high speeds and relatively low cost of DSL make this a popular Internet access technology for the enterprise telecommuter.
4. C and D. DMZ/E-commerce, Internet, remote-access VPN, and WAN/MAN are modules that are found in the enterprise edge.
5. A. The window size defines the upper limit of frames that can be transmitted without getting a return acknowledgement. A larger window size uses a smaller number of acknowledgements than smaller window sizes.
6. B. WFQ is the default QoS mechanism on interfaces below 2.0 Mbps.
7. A, B, and D. The PPDIOO design methodology includes the process of analyzing network requirements, characterizing the existing network, and designing the topology.
8. D. DMZ/e-commerce, Internet, remote-access VPN, and WAN/MAN are modules that are found in the enterprise edge.
9. C and D. DMZ/e-commerce and Internet are modules that are found in the enterprise edge.
10. A. The remote-access/VPN module connects to PSTN-type connectivity.
11. B. WAN/MAN modules are used to connect to Frame Relay and ATM networks in the enterprise edge.
12. B. After you analyze the network requirements and characterize the existing network, the design of the topology occurs, which includes the implementation planning.
13. D. The WAN/MAN functional area or module provides connectivity to the remote sites via Frame Relay, TDM, ATM, or MPLS services.
14. D. The framing for dark fiber is determined by the enterprise not the provider.
15. D. Low-latency queuing (LLQ) adds a strict priority queue to CBWFQ.
16. 24 timeslots are used in a T1.
17. C. Wireless bridges are used to connect two separate wireless networks together, typically located in two separate buildings.
18. DWDM maximizes the use of the installed base of fiber used by service providers and is a critical component of optical networks.
19. CMTS. The equipment used on the remote access side is the cable modem, which connects to the Cable Modem Termination System or (CMTS) on the Internet service provider side.

20. A. The WAN/MAN module provides connectivity to the remote sites via Frame Relay, TDM, ATM, or SONET network services.
21. DOCSIS. The Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications (DOCSIS) protocol defines the cable procedures that the equipment need to support.
22. C. ISDN falls into the circuit-switched WAN category.
23. D. SLA defines what level of service, offered by the provider such as bandwidth, allowed latency, and loss.
24. B. WANs that occasionally become congested is a good candidate for queuing solutions.

## Chapter 7

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

1. A. Frame Relay and ATM are commonly used to connect to WAN services in the enterprise edge.
2. A, B, and C. Typical remote-access requirements include best-effort interactive traffic patterns.
3. C. Extranet VPN infrastructure uses private and public networks, which are used to support business partner connectivity.
4. D. DMVPN. In enterprise environments, DMVPN is used on routers with NHRP and mGRE.
5. B. Secondary WAN links offer both backup and load-sharing capabilities.
6. C. The goal of high availability is to remove the single points of failure in the design, either by software, hardware, or power. Redundancy is critical in providing high levels of availability.
7. C. SP MPLS MPLS/IP VPN has excellent growth support and high-availability services.
8. B. Cisco IOS S Releases 12.2SB and 12.2SR are designed for the enterprise and SP edge networks.
9. A, B, and D. Common components used when designing enterprise branch architectures include routers, switches, and IP phones.
10. B. The medium branch design is recommended for branch offices of 50 to 100 users, with an additional access router in the WAN edge allowing for redundancy services.

### Q&A

1. B. Leased lines are dedicated network connections provided by the service provider.
2. A. A major disadvantage of the hub and spoke topology is that the hub router represents a single point of failure.

3. B. Full-mesh topologies require that each site has a connection to all other sites in the WAN cloud.
4. B and D. WAN backup over the Internet is best effort and provides redundancy for the primary WAN connection.
5. C. Access VPN connections give users connectivity over shared networks such as the Internet to their corporate intranets.
6. B, C, and D. Full mesh, partial mesh, and hub and spoke are all WAN topologies used with Cisco enterprise architectures in the WAN.
7. B. With peer-to-peer VPNs, the server provider plays an active role in enterprise routing.
8. B. Service providers can offer shadow PVCs, which provide additional permanent virtual circuits (PVC) for use if needed.
9. C. A secondary WAN links provide advantages that include backup WAN services and load sharing.
10. D. Medium branches use dual routers and dual external L2 switches.
11. C. Large branches support between 100 and 1000 users.
12. A and C. IPSec and GRE are methods that exist for tunneling private networks over a public IP network.
13. C. Factors for WAN architecture selection include ongoing expenses, ease of management, and high availability.
14. A. GRE provides simple Layer 3 tunneling for basic IP VPNs without using encryption.
15. D. Implementing the WAN is not part of the design process.
16. B. ISP service uses Internet-based site-to-site VPNs.
17. C. The shadow PVC uses private WAN Frame Relay services.
18. C. The large branch uses dual router and dual ASA firewalls.
19. B. A private WAN with self-deployed MPLS is usually reserved for large enterprises that are willing to make substantial investments in equipment and training to build out the MPLS network.
20. i = A, ii = D, iii = B, iv = C

## Chapter 8

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

1. C. IPv4 private addresses are contained within 10.0.0.0/8, 172.16.0.0/12, and 192.168.0.0/16.
2. B. There are 5 host bits:  $2^5 - 2 = 30$  hosts.

3. D. Loopback addresses should have a /32 mask so that address space is not wasted.
4. C. The precedence bits are located in the Type of Service field of the IPv4 header.
5. B. Multicast addresses range from 224.0.0.1 to 239.255.255.255.
6. D. The summary route summarizes subnetworks from 150.10.192.0/24 to 150.10.198.0/24. Answer c is the only answer that includes them.
7. D. Point-to-point links need only two host addresses; use a /30 mask, which provides  $2^2 - 2 = 2$  host addresses.
8. C. DHCP assigns IP addresses dynamically.
9. C. Static NAT is used to statically translate public IP addresses to private IP addresses.
10. C. The DS field allocates 6 bits in the ToS field, thus making it capable of 64 distinct codepoints.

## Q&A

1. 10/8, 172.16/12 (172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255), and 192.168/16
2. True. You can use DHCP to specify several host IP configuration parameters, including IP address, mask, default gateway, DNS servers, and TFTP server.
3. False. The bit-number representation of 255.255.255.248 is /29. /28 is the same mask as 255.255.255.240.
4. True
5. 20 (bytes)
6. DSCP uses 6 bits, which provides 64 levels of classification.
7. True
8. False. The header checksum field only includes a checksum of the IP header; it does not check the data portion.
9. The subnet is 172.56.4.0/22, the address range is from 172.56.4.1 to 172.56.7.254, and the subnet broadcast is 172.56.7.255.
10. The IP layer in the destination host.
11. B. DHCP configures the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and other optional parameters.
12. C. Class B networks have 16 bits for host addresses with the default mask:  $2^{16} - 2 = 65,534$ .
13. B. A /26 mask has 26 network bits and 6 host bits.
14. C. Network 192.170.20.16 with a prefix of /29 summarizes addresses from 192.170.20.16 to 192.170.20.23.
- 15.

- 16.** A. IPv4 packets can be fragmented by the sending host and routers.
- 17.** B. Multicast addresses are received to a set of hosts subscribed to the multicast group.
- 18.** B, D, and E. The three types of IPv4 address are unicast, broadcast, and multicast.
- 19.** A, C, and D. End-user workstations, Cisco IP phones, and mobile devices should have their IP addresses assigned dynamically.
- 20.** B. Dynamic name resolution reduces administrative overhead. Name-to-IP address tables do not need to be configured.
- 21.** B. There are 4 bits to determine number of host addresses:  $24-2 = 16 - 2=14$ .
- 22.** B. Answer B allows up to 6 hosts. Answer A allows only 2 hosts, which is too small. Answer C allows 14 hosts, which is larger than answer b.
- 23.** B. The networks in answer B provide 126 addresses for hosts in each LAN at Site B.
- 24.** A. Network 192.168.15.0/25 provides 126 addresses for LAN 1, network 192.168.15.128/26 provides 62 addresses for LAN 2, and network 192.168.15.192/27 provides 30 addresses for LAN 3.
- 25.** D. You need only two addresses for the WAN link, and the /30 mask provides only two.
- 26.** A. Private addresses are not announced to Internet service providers.
- 27.** B. NAT translates internal private addresses to public addresses.
- 28.** D. VLSM provides the ability to use different masks throughout the network.

## Chapter 9

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** C. IPv6 uses 128 bits for addresses, and IPv4 uses 32 bits. The difference is 96.
- 2.** C. The IPv6 header is 40 bytes in length.
- 3.** C. The defining first hexadecimal digits for link-local addresses are FE8.
- 4.** D. IPv6 addresses can be unicast, anycast, or multicast.
- 5.** B. Answers A and C are incorrect because you cannot use the double colons (::) twice. Answers C and D are also incorrect because you cannot reduce b100 to b1.
- 6.** C. NAT-PT translates between IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
- 7.** B. The IPv6 multicast address type handles broadcasts.
- 8.** B. The IPv6 loopback address is ::1.
- 9.** A. IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses have the format ::d.d.d.d.
- 10.** records.

- 11.** B. IPv6 increases the address space, which allows globally unique IP addresses. Broadcasts are no longer used.
- 12.** C
- 13.** D. All answers are correct.

## Q&A

- 1.** False. OSPFv3 supports IPv6. OSPFv2 is used in IPv4 networks.
- 2.** True
- 3.** ARP
- 4.** 16
- 5.** 0110. The first field of the IPv6 header is the version field. It is set to binary 0110 (6).
- 6.** False
- 7.** 0xFF (1111 1111 binary)
- 8.** FE8/10
- 9.** True
- 10.** Version, Traffic Class, Flow Label, Payload Length, Next Header, Hop Limit, IPv6 Source Address, IPv6 Destination Address
- 11.** B. IPv6 address types are unicast, anycast, and multicast.
- 12.** True. Both compressed representations are valid.
- 13.** 2001:1:0:ab0::/64
- 14.** 32
- 15.** It is a multicast address. All IPv6 multicast addresses begin with hexadecimal FF.
- 16.** C. Answers A, B, and D are incorrect because 0100 does not compact to 01. Answer B is also incorrect because 0010 does not compact to 001.
- 17.** A. The dual-stack backbone routers handle packets between IPv4 hosts and IPv6 hosts.
- 18.** B. DNS indicates which stack to use. DNS A records return IPv4 addresses. DNS AAAA records return IPv6 addresses.
- 19.** B
- 20.** A and D
- 21.** D. IPv4 packets can be fragmented by the sending host and routers. IPv6 packets are fragmented by the sending host only.
- 22.** A. Anycast addresses reach the nearest destination in a group of hosts.

- 23.** D
- 24.** D
- 25.** C and D
- 26.** A
- 27.** D
- 28.** C. Running dual-stack IPv4 and IPv6 on hosts and routers allows for full flexibility for communications for the corporation internally, with partners, and with the Internet.
- 29.** B
- 30.** B
- 31.** A and C
- 32.** A
- 33.** C
- 34.** A
- 35.** D
- 36.** Implement a dual-stack backbone, or implement IPv4 tunnels between the sites.
- 37.** NAT-PT is required to provide network address translation and protocol translation between IPv6 and IPv4 hosts.
- 38.** If a dual-stack backbone is implemented, only the WAN routers require an IPv6-IPv4 dual stack. End hosts do not need a dual stack.
- 39.** No. All WAN routers still run the IPv4 stack, with two exceptions: the WAN routers at Sites A and B. These routers speak IPv6 within their sites and speak IPv4 to the WAN.

## Chapter 10

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** D. Only RIPv1 is a classful routing protocol. EIGRP, OSPF, IS-IS, and RIPv2 are classless routing protocols.
- 2.** C. You use an exterior gateway protocol (EGP) to receive Internet routes from a service provider.
- 3.** A. RIPv2 is a classless distance-vector routing protocol.
- 4.** B. Distance-vector routing protocols send periodic updates.
- 5.** B. RIPng is a distance-vector routing protocol that is used in IPv6 networks.
- 6.** B. If bandwidth is used, the path with the highest bandwidth is selected. If cost is used, the path with the lowest cost is selected.

7. B. OSPF has an administrative distance of 110. EIGRP has an administrative distance of 90. The route with the lower administrative distance is selected: EIGRP.
8. D. EIGRP, RIPv2, IS-IS, and OSPF are all classless routing protocols.
9. B. The default metrics for EIGRP are bandwidth and delay.
10. C. EIGRP implements DUAL.

## Q&A

1. False. Distance-vector routing protocols send periodic routing updates.
2. False. RIPng is used with IPv6 networks.
3. True
4. True. The higher value for reliability is preferred.
5. False. The link with the lower load is preferred.
6. The EIGRP route. EIGRP routes have an administrative distance of 90, and OSPF routes have an administrative distance of 100. The lower administrative distance is preferred.
7. The IS-IS route. IS-IS routes have an administrative distance of 115, and RIP routes have an administrative distance of 120. The lower administrative distance is preferred.
8. The OSPF route, because it has a more specific route.
9. A. The best reliability is 255/255 (100 percent), and the best load is 1/255 (~0 percent).
10. G. IS-IS and OSPF permit an explicit hierarchical topology.
11. Delay measures the amount of time a packet takes to travel from one end to another in the internetwork.
12. The metric is  $10^8/\text{BW}$ . If  $\text{BW} = 100 \text{ Mb/s} = 10^8$ , the metric =  $10^8/10^8 = 1$ .
13. i = C, ii = A, iii = D, iv = B
14. True
15. B, D, E, and F
16. B. OSPFv3 is the only standards-based routing protocol in the list that supports large networks. RIPng has limited scalability.
17. C, D, and E. Link-state routing protocols plus EIGRP's hybrid characteristics converge faster.
18. C. EIGRP supports large networks and does not require a hierarchical network.
19. B, C, D, and E. RIPv1 does not support VLSMs.
20. F. BGP is used to connect to ISPs.
21. C. EIGRP is supported only on Cisco routers.

- 22.** D. OSPFv3 is the only correct answer. RIPv2 is for IPv4 networks. EIGRP is not standards based. BGPv6 and RIPv3 do not exist.
- 23.** B, C, and E
- 24.** B and C. IGPs converge faster than EGPs.
- 25.** C. Faster routing convergence means more accurate information.
- 26.** A. Classless network have less routing overhead.
- 27.** B and C. EIGRP uses DUAL for fast convergence and supports VLSMs.
- 28.** i = D, ii = B, iii = A, iv = C
- 29.** C. To reduce broadcast traffic, use EIGRP for IPv4 as the routing protocol for the network. RIPng and EIGRPv6 are for IPv6 networks.
- 30.** i = B, ii = D, iii = A, iv = C
- 31.** i = C, ii = A, iii = D, iv = B
- 32.** B. EIGRP route has a lower administrative distance.
- 33.** C. EIGRP provides fast convergence and unequal load balancing.
- 34.** B and C
- 35.** A is EIGRP for IPv6, B is OSPFv2, C is RIPv2, D is EIGRP for IPv4, E is OSPFv3.
- 36.** A. The minimum bandwidth via Route 1 is 384 kb/s. The minimum bandwidth via Route 2 is 128 kbps. The route with the higher minimum bandwidth is preferred, so the router chooses Route 1.
- 37.** B. Route 2 has fewer router hops than Route 1.
- 38.** A. Route 2 has a higher cost than Route 1. The Route 2 cost is  $108/128 \text{ kbps} = 781.25$ . The Route 1 cost is  $108/512 \text{ kbps} + 108/384 \text{ kbps} + 108/512 \text{ kbps} = 195.31 + 260.41 + 195.31 = 651.03$ . Route 1 is preferred.
- 39.** A. Path 1 has a lower hop count metric.
- 40.** A. Path 1 has a lower hop count metric.
- 41.** B. Path 2 has greater bandwidth.
- 42.** C. Load sharing is enabled with the variance command.
- 43.** B. By default, path 2 has higher bandwidth thus has the better metric.

## Chapter 11

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** B. OSPF defines ABRs that connect areas to the OSPF backbone.
- 2.** G. EIGRP, OSPF, and IS-IS support VLSMs.

3. B. OSPF defines the ASBR as the router that injects external routes into the OSPF autonomous system.
4. E. OSPFv2 Type 5 LSAs are autonomous system external LSAs.
5. C. OSPFv2 routers use 224.0.0.6 to communicate with DRs.
6. A. Type 1 LSAs (router LSAs) are forwarded to all routers within an OSPF area.
7. D. Intra-area-prefix LSAs carry IPv6 prefixes associated with a router, a stub network, or an associated transit network segment.
8. B. You use External Border Gateway Protocol (eBGP) to exchange routes between autonomous systems.
9. B. It is a best practice to summarize routes on the distribution routers toward the core.
10. B. You use IGMP between hosts and local routers to register with multicast groups.
11. B. The lower 23 bits of the IP multicast address are mapped to the last 23 bits of the Layer 2 MAC address.
12. A. The administrative distance of eBGP routes is 20. The administrative distance of Internal BGP (iBGP) routes is 200.
13. D. CIDR provides the capability to forward packets based on IP prefixes only, with no concern for IP address class boundaries.

## Q&A

1. False. A router with one or more interfaces in Area 0 is considered an OSPF backbone router.
2. True
3. 224.0.0.5 for ALLSPFRouters and 224.0.0.6 for ALDRouters.
4. FF02::5 for ALLSPFRouters and FF02::6 for ALDRouters.
5. The administrative distance of OSPF is 110.
6. OSPF ABRs generate the Type 3 summary LSA for ABRs.
7. OSPF DRs generate Type 2 network LSAs.
8. Included are the router's links, interfaces, state of links, and cost.
9. False. The router with the highest priority is selected as the OSPF designated router.
10. False. You use eBGP to exchange routes between different autonomous systems.
11. False. BGPv4 added support for classless interdomain routing (CIDR), which provides the capability of forwarding packets based on IP prefixes only, with no concern for the address class.
12. True
13. 20, 200

- 14.** True
- 15.** False. PIM does not have a hop-count limit. DVMRP has a hop-count limit of 32.
- 16.** True
- 17.** False. BGP uses several attributes in the BGP decision process.
- 18.** RIPv2, OSPF, and EIGRP.
- 19.** FF02::A
- 20.** i = C, ii = B, iii = A, iv = D
- 21.** Cost is calculated as  $10^8 / \text{BW}$ , and  $\text{BW} = 100 \text{ Mbps} = 10^8 \text{ bps}$  for Fast Ethernet. Cost =  $10^8 / 10^8 = 1$ .
- 22.** OSPF. Although RIPv2 and EIGRP support VLSMs, RIPv2 is no longer recommended. EIGRP is not supported on non-Cisco routers.
- 23.** You do not need to flood external LSAs into the stub area, which reduces LSA traffic.
- 24.** All traffic from one area must travel through Area 0 (the backbone) to get to another area.
- 25.** OSPFv3 is identified as IPv6 Next Header 89.
- 26.** F. EIGRP and OSPFv2 are recommended for large enterprise networks.
- 27.** C. Link LSAs are flooded to the local link.
- 28.** F. RIPv1 does not support VLSMs.
- 29.** E. EIGRP and OSPFv2 have fast convergence.
- 30.** F. EIGRP for IPv6 and OSPFv3 have fast convergence for IPv6 networks.
- 31.** H. RIPv1 and RIPv2 generate periodic routing traffic. IS-IS is used in SP networks. BGP is used for external networks.
- 32.** B. OSPFv3 is used in IPv6 networks.
- 33.** B. From Router A, the OSPF cost for Path 1 is  $108 / 256 \text{ kbps} = 390$ . The OSPF cost for Path 2 is  $(108 / 1536 \text{ kbps}) + (108 / 1024 \text{ kbps}) + (108 / 768 \text{ kbps}) = 65 + 97 + 130 = 292$ . OSPF selects Path 2 because it has a lower cost.
- 34.** Router A = Internal; Router B = ABR; Router C = Backbone; Router D = ASBR; Router E = ABR; Router F = Internal.
- 35.** i = D, ii = B, iii = A, iv = C
- 36.** i = B, ii = C, iii = D, iv = A
- 37.** Weight. Weight is configured locally and not exchanged in BGP updates. On the other hand, the local preference attribute is exchanged between iBGP peers and is configured at the gateway router.
- 38.** Route reflectors reduce the number of iBGP logical mesh connections.

- 39.** External peers see the confederation ID. The internal private autonomous system numbers are used within the confederation.
- 40.** BGP confederations, route reflectors.
- 41.** B. Only answer B has the correct order of BGP path selection, which is weight, local preference, autonomous system path, origin, MED, and lowest IP.
- 42.** CIDR was first implemented in BGPv4.
- 43.** C
- 44.** i = E, ii = C, iii = A, iv = B, v = D
- 45.** B
- 46.** C
- 47.** B. BGP should be configured between autonomous system 100 and autonomous system 500.
- 48.** C. Both Routers A and B perform the redistribution with route filters to prevent route feedback.
- 49.** B. The OSPF routes are redistributed into EIGRP. Then you can redistribute EIGRP routes into BGP.
- 50.** D. You should use filters on all routers performing redistribution.

## Chapter 12

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** D. Payment Card Industry Data Security Standards (PCI DSS) is a security standard that defines standards to protect credit card holder data.
- 2.** B. Reconnaissance is used to gather information from the hosts attached to the network.
- 3.** A. DoS attacks aim to overwhelm resources such as memory, CPU, and bandwidth, and thus impact the target system and denying legitimate user's access.
- 4.** C. When attackers change sensitive data without the proper authorization, this is called an integrity violation.
- 5.** B. Incident-handling policies define the processes and procedures for managing security incidents, including the handling of emergency-type scenarios.
- 6.** D. All of these fall into the two main reasons for having a security policy by providing a framework for the security implementation and creating a security baseline of the current security posture.
- 7.** D. Authentication of the identity can be based on any of the attributes or a combination thereof.

8. D. Cisco DMVPN provides encrypted point-to-point GRE tunnels. GRE-based VPNs do not use encryption.
9. A, B, and C. Evaluating security breaches, using locks or alarms, and assessing the impact of stolen resources are all physical security guidelines to consider for a secure infrastructure.
10. B. Security management solutions provide ways to provision network security policies for ease of deployment.

## Q&A

1. C. Encryption can protect data transported between sites over the Internet.
2. A. Firewalls have the capabilities to protect database servers in DMZ segments.
3. D. Encryption is a security technique for protecting the data confidentiality of information.
4. A and B. The use of ACLs and rate limiting can alleviate the effects of a DoS attack being performed.
5. A and D. DoS, reconnaissance, and gaining unauthorized access are security threats.
6. True. IPsec can ensure data integrity and confidentiality across the Internet.
7. C. SOX focuses on the accuracy and controls imposed on a company’s financial records.
8. A, B, and C. Managing the security infrastructure has components that include the overall security management policy, incident-handling policy, and network access control policy.
9. C. EU Data Protection Directive calls for the protection of the people’s right to privacy with respect to the processing of personal data.
10. D. Attackers can use password-cracking utilities, capture network traffic, and use social engineering to obtain sensitive information.
11. D. Data integrity allows only authorized users to modify data, ensuring that the data is authentic.
12. B. Accounting provides an audit trail of activities by logging the actions of the user.
13. DHCP snooping authenticates valid DHCP servers, thereby preventing rogue DHCP servers from interfering with real production servers.
14. The security policy contains the organization’s procedures, guidelines, and standards.
15. D. Access control can be enforced by restricting access using VLANs, OS-based controls, and encryption techniques.
16. An acceptable-use policy describes roles and responsibilities.
- 17.

**18.** D

**19.** i = B, ii = C, iii = A, iv = D

**20.** D. The foundation of security solutions is a security policy.

**21.** C. AH and ESP are part of IP security.

**22.** C. Secure connectivity has requirements of confidentiality, integrity, and authenticity when using the Internet as a transport.

**23.** B. Threat defense integrates security into routers, switches, and appliances to ward off attacks.

**24.** C. Secure connectivity has requirements of encryption and authentication to provide secure transport access public networks.

## Chapter 13

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** A, B, and C. SAFE Architecture does not provide self-healing of network devices.
- 2.** C. The Cisco ASAs provide high-performance firewall, IPS, antivirus, IPsec, and VPN services.
- 3.** B. 802.1x is an IEEE media-level access control standard that permits and denies admission to the network and applies traffic policy based on identity.
- 4.** A. Network Access Control (NAC) protects the network from security threats by enforcing security compliance on all devices attempting to access the network.
- 5.** A and C. The Cisco FWSM and ASA security appliances all support firewall filtering with ACLs.
- 6.** B. IronPort ESA is a firewall and threat-monitoring appliance for SMTP (TCP port 25)-based traffic.
- 7.** A. Cisco Security Manager (CSM) is an integrated solution for configuration management of firewall, VPN, router, switch module, and IPS devices.
- 8.** B and C. Cisco IOS IPS and ASA can be used to integrate security into the network.
- 9.** B. NetFlow provides information for detecting and mitigating threats.
- 10.** C. Cisco ACS is a security management platform for controlling administrative access for Cisco devices and security applications.

### Q&A

- 1.** B. Integrated Services Router (ISR) combines IOS firewall, VPN, and IPS services.
- 2.** C. The 802.1X protocol is a standards-based protocol for authenticating network clients by permitting or denying access to the network.

3. D. The Cisco NAC Appliance is an integrated solution led by Cisco that incorporates the network infrastructure and third-party software to impose security policies on the attached endpoints.
4. A. Cisco Security MARS (CS-MARS) is an appliance-based solution for network security administrators to monitor, identify, isolate, and respond to security threats.
5. A, B, and C. Cisco IOS Trust and Identity is a set of services that include AAA, SSH, SSL, 802.1X, and PKI.
6. B. Cisco IOS IPsec offers data encryption at the IP packet level using a set of standards-based protocols.
7. D. High-Performance Advanced Integration Module (AIM) is a hardware module for terminating large numbers of VPN tunnels.
8. C and D. Built-In Hardware VPN Acceleration is hardware-based encryption that offloads VPN processing from the router’s internal CPU to improve VPN throughput. High-Performance Advanced Integration Module (AIM) is a hardware module for terminating large numbers of VPN tunnels.
9. D. Cisco NAC can restrict access to noncompliant devices but permit access to trusted wired or wireless endpoints such as desktops, laptops, PDAs, and servers.
10. A and B. Cisco Catalyst 6500 switches support FWSM and IDSM2 service modules.
11. B. The Anomaly Guard Module provides attack responses by blocking malicious traffic at Gbps line rates.
12. A, B, and C. Some identity and access control protocols include 802.1X, ACLs, and NAC. NetFlow collects stats on packets flowing through the router.
13. A and C. Cisco Security MARS and ACS are two Cisco security management tools.
14. True. NetFlow is used for threat detection and mitigation.
15. True. Cisco ASAs, PIX security appliances, FWSM, and IOS firewall are part of infection containment.
16. D. The IOS Intrusion Prevention System (IPS) offers inline deep packet inspection to successfully diminish a wide range of network attacks.
17. IPS. The Cisco 4200 IPS sensor appliances can identify, analyze, and block unwanted traffic on the network.
18. B. Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS) provides centralized control for administrative access to Cisco devices and security applications.
19. False. IPS 4255 delivers 650 Mbps of performance and can be used to protect partially utilized gigabit-connected subnets.
20. i = D, ii = C, iii = B, iv = A

## Chapter 14

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

1. C. H.323 is the ITU standard that provides a framework for the transport of voice, video, and data over packet-switched networks.
2. D. The default codec in Cisco VoIP dial peers is G.729, which has an 8 kbps bit rate.
3. C. RTP operates at the transport layer of the OSI model.
4. C. The H.225 standard defines the procedures for call setup and signaling.
5. B. An Erlang is a unit that describes the number of calls in an hour.
6. B. VAD reduces traffic by not transmitting packets when there is silence in voice conversations.
7. C. cRTP compresses the RTP, UDP, and IP headers.
8. B. LLQ is recommended for VoIP networks.
9. A. The local loop is located between the traditional phone and the CO switch.
10. C. Jitter is the variance in the amount of per-packet delay incurred during the transport of packets across the network, such as packets in an IP telephony voice call.

### Q&A

1. True. Cisco recommends low-latency queuing for VoIP networks.
2. False. H.323 is an ITU standard, and SIP is an IETF standard for multimedia.
3. True. An Erlang is a telecommunications traffic unit of measurement representing the continuous use of one voice path for 1 hour.
4. VAD. Voice-activity detection suppresses packets when there is silence.
5. Dejitter buffers are used at the receiving end to smooth out the variable delay of received packets.
6. True. With CCS, a separate channel (from the bearer channels) is used for signaling.
7. False. You use FXS ports to connect to phones and FXO ports to connect to the PSTN.
8. True. SS7 implements call setup, routing, and control, ensuring that intermediate and far-end switches are available when a call is placed.
9. Interactive voice response (IVR) system. IVR systems connect incoming calls to an audio playback system that queues the calls, provides prerecorded announcements, prompts the caller for key options, provides the caller with information, and transfers the call to another switch extension or agent.
10. customer service departments, and other call centers.

- 11.** cRTP and VAD. Both cRTP and VAD reduce the amount of bandwidth used by VoIP calls. G.729 calls can be reduced from 26.4 kbps to 11.2 with cRTP and to 7.3 with cRTP and VAD.
- 12.** A, B, C, and E are fixed; D is variable. Fixed-delay components include processing, serialization, dejitter, and propagation delays. Variable-delay components include only queuing delays.
- 13.** You reduce the frame size with fragmentation or increase the link bandwidth. The formula is serialization delay = frame size/link bandwidth.
- 14.** PQ-WFQ and LLQ. Both of these queuing techniques use a strict-priority queue. LLQ also provides class-based differentiated services.
- 15.** False. The G.114 recommendation specifies a 150-ms one-way maximum delay.
- 16.** True. FRF.12 specifies LFI for Frame Relay networks.
- 17.** Yes. An RTT of 250 ms means that the average one-way delay is 125 ms, which is less than the recommended maximum of 150 ms.
- 18.** i = D, ii = C, iii = A, iv = B, v = E
- 19.** i = B, ii = C, iii = A
- 20.** i = B, ii = D, iii = C, iv = A
- 21.** C. Q.SIG is the preferred protocol for inter-PBX trunks.
- 22.** A. cRTP compresses the IP/UDP/RTP headers from 40 bytes to 2 or 4 bytes.
- 23.** B. The analog signal is filtered and then sampled, and then samples are digitized.
- 24.** C. The digitizing process is divided into companding, and quantization and coding.
- 25.** D. All answers are correct.
- 26.** B. LFI and cRTP should be implemented to help with the serialization delay on slow-speed WAN circuits. LLQ will not help because the circuit has no congestion.
- 27.** D. The G.729 codec is recommended on WAN links because of its lower bandwidth requirements and relatively high MOS.
- 28.** C and D. cRTP and VAD reduce the amount of IP bandwidth used in IPT calls.
- 29.** A. CAC prevents new voice calls from affecting existing voice calls.
- 30.** D. The Cisco Unified CallManager performs the call processing functions of the Cisco IPT solution.
- 31.** B and C
- 32.** A = iv, B = iii, C = ii, D = i.
- 33.** C
- 34.** H. RTP is used to transport voice streams between two endpoints.

- 35.** B. SIP is defined in RFC 2453 and is used to establish, maintain, and terminate calls.
- 36.** D. MGCP is used to control gateways.
- 37.** D. Storage services provide capture and storage of media streams.
- 38.** C. Bridging services provide transcoding and recording services of media streams.
- 39.** D. Multimedia conferencing should be provisioned on DSCP AF4 PHB.
- 40.** F. OAM should be provisioned on DSCP CS2 PHB.
- 41.** D. Real-time interactive media should be provisioned on DSCP CS4 PHB.
- 42.** D. G.729 generates an 8-kbps bit rate.
- 43.** A. G.711 generates a 64-kbps bit rate.
- 44.** C. LLQ is recommended for most VoIP networks.
- 45.** A. Cisco TelePresence 3000 generates 12.3Mbps worth of traffic at 1080p.
- 46.** D. Cisco Video Advantage generates 768 kbps worth of CIF traffic.
- 47.** Multisite WAN with centralized call processing with a CM cluster at the main site and SRST routers at the remote sites.
- 48.** SRST enables the remote routers to provide call-handling support for IP phones when they lose connectivity to the CallManagers because of a WAN failure.
- 49.** LLQ provides a strict queue for RTP (VoIP) traffic and differentiated class of service for all other traffic.
- 50.** The minimum bandwidth is approximately 640 kbps. Each call is 30 kbps times four, which equals 120 kbps. The exiting 512 kbps of data traffic equals 640 kbps. The circuit should be provisioned at a higher speed to prevent the sustained peak utilization from being higher than 70 percent.
- 51.** Yes, a CUCM cluster should be implemented at the main site.
- 52.** cRTP compresses the RTP/UDP/IP headers from 40 bytes to 2 to 4 bytes.
- 53.** FRF.12 is the link and fragmentation technique used in Frame Relay networks.

## Chapter 15

### “Do I Know This Already?” Quiz

- 1.** C. SNMPv3 introduces authentication and encryption for SNMP.
- 2.** B. SNMP runs over UDP.
- 3.** A. Managed devices contain SNMP agents.
- 4.** D. A MIB is a collection of information that is stored on the local agent of the managed device.

5. D. CDP is Cisco Discovery Protocol.
6. C. The NMS manager uses the GetBulk operation to retrieve large blocks of data, such as multiple rows in a table.
7. A. RMON1 is focused on the data link and physical layers of the OSI model.
8. B. Community is not an SNMP operation.
9. B. NetFlow allows for network planning, traffic engineering, billing, accounting, and application monitoring.
10. B. CDP is a hello-based protocol.

## Q&A

1. Fault management, configuration management, accounting management, performance management, and security management.
2. Data link layer
3. Notice level
4. False
5. True
6. Device ID, IP address, capabilities, OS version, model number, port ID.
7. D. A trap message is sent by the agent when a significant event occurs.
8. A. The NMS manager uses the Get operation to retrieve the value-specific MIB variable from an agent.
9. B. The NMS manager uses the Set operation to set values of the object instance within an agent.
10. C. More than 500 syslog facilities can be configured on Cisco IOS.
11. B. At the authNoPriv level, authentication is provided, but not encryption.
12. B. CBC-DES is the encryption algorithm used by SNMPv3.
13. C and D. Both CDP and NetFlow can be used to discover and document a network.
14. B, C, and D
15. D. RMON2 provides monitoring information from the network to the application layers.
16. D. All work over UDP.
17. C
18. A. The authPriv level provides authentication and encryption.
19. i = C, ii = A, iii = D, iv = B
- 20.

- 21.** A. RMON2 allows for Layer 4 monitoring. NetFlow is not a long-term trending solution.
- 22.** C. NetFlow does network traffic analysis.
- 23.** E. MIB is the database that stores information.
- 24.** C. ASN.1 is used to define information being stored.
- 25.** C. authNoPriv provides authentication and no encryption.
- 26.** D. Community is not an SNMP operation.
- 27.** E. Private MIBs can be used for vendor specific information.

*This page intentionally left blank*



---

# CCDA Exam Updates: Version 1.0

---

Over time, reader feedback allows Cisco Press to gauge which topics give our readers the most problems when taking the exams. To assist readers with those topics, the authors might create new materials clarifying and expanding upon those troublesome exam topics. The additional content about the exam will be contained in a PDF document on this book's companion website ([www.ciscopress.com/title/9781587142574](http://www.ciscopress.com/title/9781587142574)).

This appendix provides you with updated information if Cisco makes minor modifications to the exam version upon which this book is based. When Cisco releases an entirely new exam version, the changes are usually too extensive to provide in a simple update appendix. In those cases, you might need to consult the new edition of the book for the updated content.

This appendix fills the void that occurs with any print book. In particular, this appendix does the following:

- Mentions technical items that might not have been mentioned elsewhere in the book
- Covers new topics if Cisco adds new content to the exam over time
- Provides a way to get up-to-the-minute current information about content for the exam

## Always Get the Latest at the Companion Website

You are reading the version of this appendix that was available when your book was printed. However, given that the main purpose of this appendix is to be a living, changing document, it is important that you look for the latest version online at the book's companion website, as follows:

- Step 1.** Browse to [www.ciscopress.com/title/9781587142574](http://www.ciscopress.com/title/9781587142574).
- Step 2.** Select the Appendix option under the More Information box.
- Step 3.** Download the latest Appendix B document.

**Note:** The downloaded document has a version number. Comparing the version of this print Appendix B (Version 1.0) with the latest online version of this appendix, you should do the following:

**Same version:** Ignore the PDF that you downloaded from the companion website.

**Website has a later version:** Ignore this Appendix B in your book and read only the latest version that you downloaded from the companion website.

## Technical Content

The current version of this appendix does not contain any additional technical coverage.

*This page intentionally left blank*



---

# OSI Model, TCP/IP Architecture, and Numeric Conversion

---

The Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) model is a mandatory topic in any internetworking book. The CCDA candidate should understand the OSI model and identify which OSI layers host the different networking protocols. The OSI model provides a framework for understanding internetworking. This appendix provides an overview and general understanding of the OSI reference model.

The Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) architecture provides the practical implementation of a layered model. This appendix provides an overview of the TCP/IP layers and how they map to the OSI model.

Also covered in this appendix is the numeric conversion of binary, decimal, and hexadecimal numbers. The ability to convert between binary, decimal, and hexadecimal numbers helps you manipulate IP addresses in binary and dotted-decimal format. Quickly converting these numbers will help you answer test questions.

## OSI Model Overview

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) developed the OSI model in 1984, and revisited it in 1994, to coordinate standards development for interconnected information-processing systems. The model describes seven layers that start with the physical connection and end with the application. As shown in Figure C-1, the seven layers are physical, data link, network, transport, session, presentation, and application.

The OSI model divides the tasks involved in moving data into seven smaller, more manageable layers. Each layer provides services to the layer above, performs at least the functions specified by the model, and expects the defined services from the layer below. The model does not define the precise nature of the interface between layers or the protocol used between peers at the same layer in different instantiations of a protocol stack. The model's design encourages each layer to be implemented independently. For example, you can run an application over IP (Layer 3), Fast Ethernet (Layer 2), Frame Relay (Layer 2), or Gigabit Ethernet (Layer 2). As the packets route through the Internet, the Layer 2 media change independently from the upper-layer protocols. The OSI model helps standardize discussion of the design and construction of networks for developers and hardware manufacturers. It also provides network engineers and analysts with a framework useful in understanding internetworking.

Layer Number	OSI Layer Name
7	Application
6	Presentation
5	Session
4	Transport
3	Network
2	Data Link
1	Physical

**Figure C-1** Seven-Layer OSI Model

Layered implementations of internetworking technologies do not necessarily map directly to the OSI model. For example, the TCP/IP architecture model describes only four layers, with the upper layer mapping to the three upper layers of the OSI model (application, presentation, and session). The development of IP predates the OSI model. For a more thorough discussion of the TCP/IP model, see Chapter 8, “Internet Protocol Version 4.”

The following sections describe and provide sample protocols for each OSI layer.

### Physical Layer (OSI Layer 1)

The physical layer describes the transportation of raw bits over physical media. It defines signaling specifications and media types and interfaces. It also describes voltage levels, physical data rates, and maximum transmission distances. In summary, it deals with the electrical, mechanical, functional, and procedural specifications for links between networked systems.

Examples of physical layer specifications are

- EIA/TIA-232 (Electronic Industries Association/ Telecommunications Industry Association)
- EIA/TIA-449
- V.35
- IEEE 802 LAN and metropolitan-area network (MAN) standards
- Physical layer (PHY) groups Synchronous Optical Network/Synchronous Digital Hierarchy (SONET/SDH)
- Maximum cable distances of the Ethernet standards

## Data Link Layer (OSI Layer 2)

The data link layer is concerned with the reliable transport of data across a physical link. Data at this layer is formatted into frames. Data link specifications include frame sequencing, flow control, synchronization, error notification, physical network topology, and physical addressing. This layer converts frames into bits when sending information and converts bits into frames when receiving information from the physical media. Bridges and switches operate at the data link layer.

Because of the complexity of this OSI layer, the IEEE subdivides the data link layer into three sublayers for LANs. Figure C-2 shows how Layer 2 is subdivided. The upper layer is the logical link sublayer, which manages communications between devices. The bridging layer, defined by IEEE 802.1, is the middle layer. The lowest layer is the Media Access Control (MAC) sublayer, which manages the protocol access to the physical layer and ultimately the actual media. Systems attached to a common data link layer have a unique address on that data link layer. Be aware that you might find some references describing this layer as having two sublayers: the Logical Link Control (LLC) sublayer and the MAC sublayer.

OSI Model	IEEE 802 Specifications
Data Link Layer	802.2 Logical Link
	802.1 Bridging
	Media Access Control

**Figure C-2 IEEE Data Link Sublayers**

Examples of data link layer technologies are

- Frame Relay
- ATM
- Synchronous Data Link Control (SDLC)
- High-Level Data Link Control (HDLC)
- Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)
- Ethernet implementations (IEEE 802.3)
- Wireless LAN (IEEE 802.11)

## Network Layer (OSI Layer 3)

The network layer is concerned with routing information and methods to determine paths to a destination. Information at this layer is called packets. Specifications include routing protocols, logical network addressing, and packet fragmentation. Routers operate at this layer.

Examples of network layer specifications are

- Protocols
  - IPv4, IPv6
  - ICMP
  - ARP
  - Connectionless Network Protocol (CLNP)
- Routing protocols
  - Routing Information Protocol (RIP)
  - Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
  - Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP)
  - Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (IS-IS)

### Transport Layer (OSI Layer 4)

The transport layer provides reliable, transparent transport of data segments from upper layers. It provides end-to-end error checking and recovery, multiplexing, virtual circuit management, and flow control. Messages are assigned a sequence number at the transmission end. At the receiving end, the packets are reassembled, checked for errors, and acknowledged. Flow control manages the data transmission to ensure that the transmitting device does not send more data than the receiving device can process.

Examples of transport layer specifications are

- Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)
- Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP)
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

**Note:** Although UDP operates in the transport layer, it does not perform the reliable error-checking functions that other transport layer protocols do.

### Session Layer (OSI Layer 5)

The session layer provides a control structure for communication between applications. It establishes, manages, and terminates communication connections called sessions. Communication sessions consist of service requests and responses that occur between applications on different devices.

Examples of specifications that operate at the session layer are

- DECnet's Session Control Protocol (SCP)
- H.245 and H.225

## Presentation Layer (OSI Layer 6)

The presentation layer provides application layer entities with services to ensure that information is preserved during transfer. Knowledge of the syntax selected at the application layer allows selection of compatible transfer syntax if a change is required. This layer provides conversion of character-representation formats, as might be required for reliable transfer. Voice coding schemes are specified at this layer. Furthermore, compression and encryption can occur at this layer.

An example of a specification that operates at the presentation layer is Abstract Syntax Notation 1 (ASN.1).

## Application Layer (OSI Layer 7)

The application layer gives the user or operating system access to the network services. It interacts with software applications by identifying communication resources, determining network availability, and distributing information services. It also provides synchronization between the peer applications residing on separate systems.

Examples of application layer specifications are

- Telnet
- File Transfer Protocol (FTP)
- Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)
- Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)
- Network File System (NFS)
- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)

## TCP/IP Architecture

The suite of TCP/IP protocols was developed for use by the U.S. government and research universities. The suite is identified by its most widely known protocols: TCP and IP. As mentioned, the ISO published the OSI model in 1984. However, the TCP/IP protocols had been developed by the Department of Defense's Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) since 1969. The TCP/IP uses only four layers (as described in RFC 791) versus the seven layers used by OSI. The TCP/IP layers are

- Application
- Host-to-host transport
- Internet
- Network interface

Figure C-3 shows how the TCP/IP layers map to the OSI model.

OSI Model	TCP/IP Architecture	TCP/IP Protocols
Application	Application	Telnet, SMTP, SNMP, FTP, TFTP, HTTPS, DNS
Presentation		
Session		
Transport	Host-to-Host Transport	TCP, UDP
Network	Internet	IP, ARP, OSPF, ICMP
Data Link	Network Interface	Use of lower layer protocols such as Ethernet and Frame Relay.
Physical		

**Figure C-3** *The TCP/IP Architecture and the OSI Model*

### Network Interface Layer

The TCP/IP network interface layer (also known as network access layer) maps to the OSI data link and physical layers. TCP/IP uses the lower-layer protocols for transport.

### Internet Layer

The Internet layer is where IP resides. IP packets exist at this layer. It directly maps to the network layer of the OSI model. Other TCP/IP protocols at this layer are Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP), Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), and Reverse ARP (RARP).

### Host-to-Host Transport Layer

The host-to-host transport layer of TCP/IP provides two connection services: TCP and UDP. TCP provides reliable transport of IP packets, and UDP provides transport of IP packets without verification of delivery. This layer maps to the OSI transport layer, but the OSI model only defines reliable delivery at this layer.

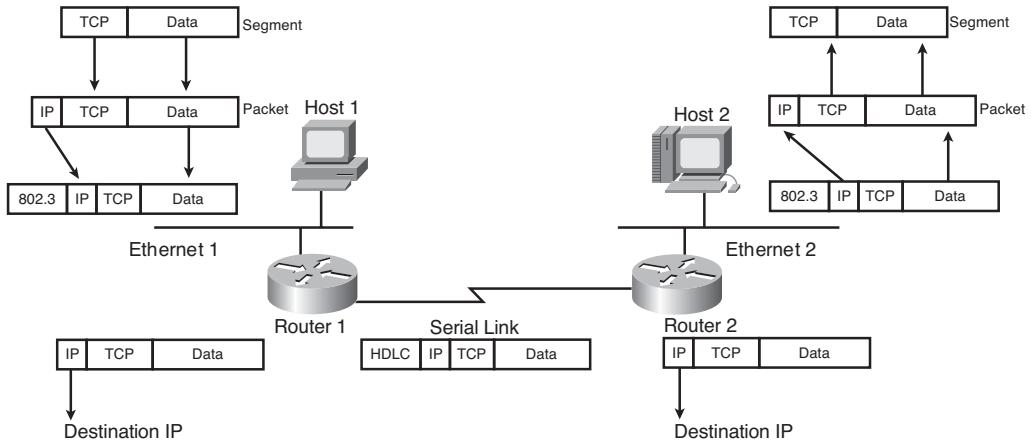
### Application Layer

The TCP/IP application layer maps to the top three layers of the OSI model: application, presentation, and session. This layer interfaces with the end user and provides for authentication, compression, and formatting. The application protocol determines the data's format and how the session is controlled. Examples of TCP/IP application protocols are Telnet, FTP, BGP, and Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS).

### Example of Layered Communication

Suppose that you use a Telnet application. Telnet maps to the top three layers of the OSI model. In Figure C-4, a user on Host 1 enables the Telnet application to access a remote host (Host 2). The Telnet application provides a user interface (application layer) to network services. As defined in RFC 854, ASCII is the default code format. No session layer

(transport layer). The TCP segment is placed in an IP packet (network layer) with a destination IP address of Host 2. The IP packet is placed in an Ethernet frame (data link layer), which is converted into bits and sent onto the wire (physical layer).



**Figure C-4 Telnet Example**

When the frame arrives at Router 1, it converts the bits into a frame; removes the frame headers (data link); checks the destination IP address (network); places a serial link header on the packet, making it a serial frame; and forwards the frame to the serial link (data link), which sends it as bits.

Router 2 receives the bits and converts them into a frame; removes the serial encapsulation headers; checks the destination IP address (network); adds an Ethernet header to the packet, making it a frame; and places the frame on Ethernet 2 (data link). Host 2 receives bits (physical) from the Ethernet cable and converts the bits into a frame (data link). Then, the IP protocol is examined and the packet data is forwarded to TCP, which checks the segment number for errors and then forwards the segment to TCP port 23 (Telnet), which is the application.

## Numeric Conversion

This section focuses on the techniques for converting between decimal, binary, and hexadecimal numbers. Although the exam might not have a specific question about converting a binary number to decimal, you need to know how to convert these numbers to do problems on the test. An IPv4 address could be shown as binary or in traditional dotted-decimal format. MAC addresses and IPv6 addresses are represented in hexadecimal. Some show commands have output information in hexadecimal or binary formats.

### Hexadecimal Numbers

The hexadecimal numeric system uses 16 digits instead of the 10 digits used by the decimal system. Table C-1

**Table C-1** Hexadecimal Digits

Hexadecimal Digit	Decimal Value
0	0
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
9	9
A	10
B	11
C	12
D	13
E	14
F	15
10	16
11	17
12	18
13	19
14	20

### Hexadecimal Representation

It is common to represent a hexadecimal number with 0x before the number so that it is not confused with a decimal number. The hexadecimal number of decimal 16 is written as 0x10, not 10. Another method is to put a subscript h to the right of the number, such as 10<sub>h</sub>. It is also common to use the term *hex* when speaking of hexadecimal. Much of the following text uses hex.

### Converting Decimal to Hexadecimal

First things first: Memorize Table C-1. There are two ways to convert larger numbers. The

method is to divide the decimal number by 16—the residual is the rightmost hexadecimal digit—and then keep dividing until the number is not divisible anymore. For the first method, use the schemes described in later sections. For the second method, follow the examples described here.

First, divide the decimal number by 16. The remainder of the division is the least-significant (first) hexadecimal digit. Continue to divide the quotients (answer) of the divisions by 16 until the quotient is 0. The remainder value of each later division is converted to a hexadecimal digit and prepended to the previous value. The final remainder is the most-significant digit of the hexadecimal equivalent. For large numbers, you might have to divide many times. The following examples make the process clearer.

Divide by 16:

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \\ 16 \overline{)26} \\ -16 \\ \hline 10 = A_h \end{array}$$

Answer: **1Ah**

#### **Conversion Example C-1** Convert 26 to Its Hex Equivalent

Not divisible by 256; divide by 16:

$$\begin{array}{r} 6 \\ 16 \overline{)96} \\ -96 \\ \hline 0 = 0_h \end{array}$$

Answer: **60h**

#### **Conversion Example C-2** Convert 96 to Its Hex Equivalent

Divide by 16 first:

$$\begin{array}{r} 23 \\ 16 \overline{)375} \\ -32 \\ \hline 55 \\ -48 \\ \hline 7 \end{array}$$

Now divide 23 by 16:

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \\ 16 \overline{)23} \\ -16 \\ \hline 7 \end{array}$$

Now take the residual from the first division (7) and concatenate it with the residual from the second division (7), plus the result of the second division (1), and the answer is **177h**.

#### **Conversion Example C-3** Convert 375 to Its Hex Equivalent

Divide by 16:

$$\begin{array}{r} 13 = D_h \\ 16 \overline{)218} \\ -16 \\ \hline 58 \\ -48 \\ \hline 10 = A_h \end{array}$$

Answer: **DAh**

#### **Conversion Example C-4** Convert 218 to Its Hex Equivalent

##### Converting Hexadecimal to Decimal

To convert a hex number to decimal, take the rightmost digit and convert it to decimal (for example,  $0xC = 12$ ). Then add this number to the second rightmost digit times 16 and the third rightmost digit times 256. Do not expect to convert numbers larger than 255 on the CCDA exam, because the upper limit of IP addresses in dotted-decimal format is 255 (although Token Ring numbers reach 4096). Some examples follow.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \times 256 = 256 \\ 7 \times 16 = 112 \\ 7 \times 1 = \underline{\quad 7} \\ \hline 375_d \end{array}$$

#### **Conversion Example C-5** Convert 177<sub>b</sub> to Decimal

$$\begin{array}{r} 6 \times 16 = 96 \\ 0 \times 1 = \underline{\quad 0} \\ \hline 96_d \end{array}$$

#### **Conversion Example C-6** Convert 60<sub>b</sub> to Decimal

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \times 256 = 256 \\ 0 \times 16 = 0 \\ 0 \times 1 = \underline{\quad 0} \\ \hline 256_d \end{array}$$

#### **Conversion Example C-7** Convert 100<sub>b</sub> to Decimal

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \times 256 = 256 \\ 13 \times 16 = 208 \\ 10 \times 1 = \underline{\quad 10} \\ \hline 474_d \end{array}$$

#### **Conversion Example C-8** Convert 1DAh to Decimal

##### Alternative Method for Converting from Hexadecimal to Decimal

Following sections discuss converting from binary to decimal.

## Binary Numbers

The binary number system uses two digits: 1 and 0. Computer systems use binary numbers. IP addresses and MAC addresses are represented by binary numbers. The number of binary 1s or 0s is the number of *bits*, short for binary digits. For example, 01101010 is a binary number with 8 bits. An IP address has 32 bits, and a MAC address has 48 bits. As shown in Table C-2, IPv4 addresses are usually represented in dotted-decimal format; therefore, it is helpful to know how to convert between binary and decimal numbers. MAC addresses are usually represented in hexadecimal numbers; therefore, it is helpful to know how to convert between binary and hexadecimal.

The CCDA candidate should memorize Table C-3, which shows numbers from 0 to 16 in decimal, binary, and hexadecimal formats.

**Table C-2** *Binary Representation of IP and MAC Addresses*

IPv4 Address in Binary	IPv4 Address in Dotted Decimal
00101000 10001010 01010101 10101010	= 40.138.85.170
MAC Address in Binary	MAC Address in Hexadecimal
00001100 10100001 10010111 01010001 00000001 10010001	= 0C:A1:97:51:01:91

**Table C-3** *Decimal, Binary, and Hexadecimal Numbers*

Decimal Value	Hexadecimal	Binary
0	0	0000
1	1	0001
2	2	0010
3	3	0011
4	4	0100
5	5	0101
6	6	0110
7	7	0111
8	8	1000
9	9	1001
10	A	1010
11	B	1011
12	C	1100

**Table C-3** Decimal, Binary, and Hexadecimal Numbers

Decimal Value	Hexadecimal	Binary
13	D	1101
14	E	1110
15	F	1111
16	10	10000

### Converting Binary to Hexadecimal

To convert binary numbers to hex, put the bits in groups of 4, starting with the right-justified bits. Groups of 4 bits are often called *nibbles*. Each nibble can be represented by a single hexadecimal digit. A group of two nibbles is an octet, 8 bits. Examples follow.

Group the bits:

00 1001 1101

Answer: **09D<sub>h</sub>**

### Conversion Example C-9 Convert 0010011101 to Hex

Group the bits:

0010 1010 0101 1001 0000 1011 0001

Answer: **2A590B1<sub>h</sub>**

### Conversion Example C-10 Convert 00101010010111001000010110001 to Hex

### Converting Hexadecimal to Binary

This procedure is also easy. Just change the hex digits into their 4-bit equivalents. Examples follow.

Hex: 0 D E A D 0

Binary: 0000 1101 1110 1010 1101 0000

Answer: **000011011110101011010000**

### Conversion Example C-11 Convert 0DEAD0 to Hex

Hex: A A 0 1 0 1

Binary: 1010 1010 0000 0001 0000 0001

Answer: **101010100000000100000001**

### Conversion Example C-12 Convert AA0101 to Hex

## Converting Binary to Decimal

To convert a binary number to decimal, multiply each instance of 0 or 1 by the power of 2 associated with the position of the bit in the binary number. The first bit, starting from the right, is associated with  $2^0 = 1$ . The value of the exponent increases by 1 as each bit is processed, working leftward. As shown in Table C-4, each bit in the binary number 10101010 has a decimal equivalent from 0 to 128 based on the value of the bit multiplied by a power of 2 associated with the bit position. This is similar to decimal numbers, in which the numbers are based on powers of 10: 1s, 10s, 100s, and so on. In decimal, the number 111 is  $(1*100) + (1*10) + (1*1)$ . In binary, the number 11111111 is the sum of  $(1*2^7) + (1*2^6) + (1*2^5) + (1*2^4) + (1*2^3) + (1*2^2) + (1*2^1) + (1*2^0) = 128 + 64 + 32 + 16 + 8 + 4 + 2 + 1 = 255$ . For 10101010, the result is  $128 + 0 + 32 + 0 + 8 + 0 + 2 + 0 = 170$ . Examples follow.

**Table C-4** *Decimal Values of Bits in a Binary Number*

Power of 2	$2^7 = 128$	$2^6 = 64$	$2^5 = 32$	$2^4 = 16$	$2^3 = 8$	$2^2 = 4$	$2^1 = 2$	$2^0 = 1$
Binary	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

**Note:** Just memorize 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, and 128. Use it as you read a binary number from right to left. This technique should be helpful in fast conversions.

Sum:  $128 + 0 + 32 + 16 + 0 + 4 + 2 + 1$

Answer = **183**

### Conversion Example C-13 Convert 10110111 to Decimal

Sum:  $16 + 8 + 0 + 2 + 1$

Answer = **27**

### Conversion Example C-14 Convert 00011011 to Decimal

Sum:  $128 + 64 + 32 + 16 + 8 + 4 + 2 + 1$

Answer = **255**

### Conversion Example C-15 Convert 11111111 to Decimal

## Converting Decimal to Binary Numbers

This procedure is similar to converting from hex to decimal (by dividing), but now you divide the decimal number by 2. You use each residual to build the binary number by prepending each residual bit to the previous bit, starting on the right. Repeat the procedure until you cannot divide anymore. The only problem is that for large numbers, you might have to divide many times. You can reduce the number of divisions by first converting the decimal value to a hexadecimal value and then converting the intermediate result to the binary representation. After the following example, you will read about an alternate

a single octet.

$$\begin{array}{r} 13 \\ 2 \overline{)26} \\ -26 \\ \hline 0 \end{array}$$

The first bit is 0; now divide 13 by 2. [0]

$$\begin{array}{r} 6 \\ 2 \overline{)13} \\ -12 \\ \hline 1 \end{array}$$

The second bit is 1; now divide 6 by 2. [10]

$$\begin{array}{r} 3 \\ 2 \overline{)6} \\ -6 \\ \hline 0 \end{array}$$

The third bit is 0; now divide 3 by 2. [010]

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 \\ 2 \overline{)3} \\ -2 \\ \hline 1 \end{array}$$

The fourth bit is 1; the leftmost bit is the division result at the top, which is one. [11010]

Answer: **11010**

### Conversion Example C-16 Convert 26 to Binary

#### Alternative Method for Converting from Decimal to Binary

The dividing procedure just described works; it just takes a lot of time. Another way is to remember the bit position values within a byte—128, 64, 32, 16, 8, 4, 2, 1—and play with the bits until the sum adds up to the desired number. This method works when you convert integer values between 0 and 255, inclusive. Table C-5 shows these binary numbers and their decimal values.

**Table C-5 Bit Values**

Binary Number	Decimal Value
10000000	128
01000000	64
00100000	32
00010000	16
00001000	8
00000100	4
00000010	2
00000001	1

For example, to convert 26, you know that it is a number smaller than 128, 64, and 32, so those 3 bits are 0 (000?????). Now you need to find a combination of 16, 8, 4, 2, and 1 that adds up to 26. This method involves using subtraction to compute the remaining number. Start with the largest number, and make the bit at 16 a 1 (0001????). The differ-

fore, the answer is 00011010. You might think this method involves too much guesswork, but it becomes second nature after some practice.

The number is larger than 128; enable that bit. [1??????]

How far is 137 from 128: 9; enable the remaining bits for a value of 9 [1???1001].

The answer is 10001001.

#### **Conversion Example C-17 Convert 137 to Binary**

The number is larger than 128; enable that bit. [1??????]

Because 211–128 is greater than 64, enable that bit. [11?????] (Remember that

$$11000000 = 192.)$$

Because  $211 - 192 = 19$ , enable bits 16, 2, and 1. [11?1??11]

The answer is 11010011.

#### **Conversion Example C-18 Convert 211 to Binary**

In addition to remembering the bit-position values (128, 64, 32, 16, 8, 4, 2, 1), it helps to remember network subnet mask values. Remembering them makes it easier to figure out whether you need to enable a bit. Table C-6 summarizes the binary subnet mask numbers and their decimal values.

**Table C-6 Binary Masks and Their Decimal Values**

Binary Mask	Decimal
10000000	128
11000000	192
11100000	224
11110000	240
11111000	248
11111100	252
11111110	254

## **References and Recommended Readings**

ISO/IEC 7498-1: 1994. “Information Processing Systems - OSI Reference Model - The Basic Model.”

RFC 791, Internet Protocol. [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc)

RFC 793, Transmission Control Protocol. [www.ietf.org/rfc](http://www.ietf.org/rfc).



---

# Glossary

---

**100BASE-TX** IEEE specification for Fast Ethernet over UTP media.

**802.1X** An IEEE media-level access control standard that permits and denies access to the network and applies traffic policy based on identity.

**ABR** Area Border Router. Routers that connect to more than one OSPF area.

**acceptable-use policy** A document that defines the roles and responsibilities within risk management and should have clear explanations to avoid confusion.

**access control** Ensures that users and devices are identified and authorized for entry to their assigned network segment.

**access control lists (ACL)** Control what traffic is allowed on the network. ACLs are used on routers, switches, and firewalls to control access.

**access layer** Provides workgroup and user access to the network. Provides user access to local segments on the network. It is characterized by switched LAN segments in a campus environment.

**access VPN** These VPN connections give users connectivity over shared networks such as the Internet to the corporate intranet.

**accounting** Provides an audit trail of activities by logging the actions of the user.

**accounting management** Refers to keeping track of circuits for billing of services.

**ACD** Automatic call distribution systems route calls to a group of agents.

**Adaptive Security Appliance (ASA)** A high-performance firewall appliance with intrusion prevention system, antivirus, IPsec, and SSL VPN technologies integrated into a single unified architecture.

**administrative distance** Rating of the trustworthiness of a routing information source. An administrative distance value is assigned to each routing protocol, static, or connected routes on Cisco routers.

**AGI** Application programming interfaces.

**ALG** Application layer gateways.

**AP** Access point.

**ARP** Address Resolution Protocol.

**ASBR** Autonomous System Boundary Router. Connects the OSPF backbone to external networks. Routers that inject external LSAs into the OSPF database (redistribution).

**authentication** Establishes the user's identity and access to the network resources.

**authorization** Describes what can be done and what can be accessed.

**accounting** Provides an audit trail of activities by logging the actions of the user.

**BGP** Border Gateway Protocol. Routing protocol used to exchange routing information between autonomous systems.

**BHT** Busy-hour traffic. Expressed in Erlangs.

**broadband cable** A technology used to transport data using a coaxial cable medium over cable distribution systems.

**BW** Bandwidth. Metric used to determine the best path to a destination network. The highest bandwidth is preferred.

**cabling in the data center** The cabling in the data center is known as the passive infrastructure.

**CAC** Call admission control. Used to control the bandwidth or number of calls from a site.

**CAPWAP** Control and Provisioning for Wireless Access Points.

**Catalyst switch** Combines firewall, IPS, SSL VPN, IPsec VPN, DoS mitigation, and virtual services to build in to security zones.

**CCS** Centum Call Second. One call on a channel for 100 seconds.

**CDP** Cisco Discovery Protocol. Cisco proprietary protocol that can be used to discover Cisco network devices. CDP is media and protocol independent, so it works over Ethernet, Frame Relay, ATM, and other media.

**CDR** Call Detail Record.

**Centrex** With Centrex services, the CO acts as the company's voice switch, giving the appearance that the company has its own PBX.

**circuit switched** Data connections that can be brought up when needed and terminated when finished.

**Cisco Adaptive Security Device Manager (ASDM)** A web-based tool for managing Cisco ASA 5500 series appliances, and Cisco Catalyst 6500 Firewall Services Modules (FWSM Version 3.1 or later).

**Cisco Catalyst switches** Include DoS and man-in-the-middle attack mitigations.

**Cisco Identity-Based Network Services (IBNS)** Based on several integrated Cisco solutions to enable authentication, access control, and user policies to secure network infrastructure and resources.

**Cisco Intrusion Prevention System Device Manager (IDM)** A web-based application that configures and manages IPS sensors.

**Cisco Nexus 1000V virtual switch for VMware ESX and ESXi** Helps deliver visibility and policy control for virtual machines (VM).

**Cisco Router and Security Device Manager (SDM)** A web-based tool for routers that supports a wide range of IOS software.

**Cisco Secure Access Control Server (ACS)** Provides centralized control for administrative access to Cisco devices and security applications.

**Cisco Security Manager (CSM)** An integrated solution for configuration management of firewall, VPN, router, switch module, and IPS devices.

**Cisco Security Monitoring, Analysis, and Response System (MARS)** An appliance-based solution for network security administrators to monitor, identify, isolate, and respond to security threats.

**Cisco Unified Computing System (UCS)** An innovated next-generation data center platform that converges computing, network, storage, and virtualization together into one system.

**CO** Central office.

**Codec** Coder-decoder. Transforms analog signals into digital bit streams.

**companding** Comes from “compressing and expanding.” The analog samples are compressed into logarithmic segments decoder.

**configuration management** Refers to baselining, modifying, and tracking configuration changes.

**core layer** Provides fast transport between distribution switches within the enterprise campus. Provides high-speed switching backbone with high reliability and redundancy.

**cRTP** Compressed RTP. Reduces header overhead from 40 bytes to 2 to 4 bytes.

**CSMA/CA** Carrier sense multiple access with collision avoidance.

**CSMA/CD** Carrier sense multiple access collision detection. Access protocol for Ethernet shared media.

**CUCM** Cisco Unified Communications Manager. The call processing server.

**data center access layer** The data center access layer’s main purpose is to provide Layer 2 and Layer 3 physical port density for various servers in the data center.

**data center aggregation (distribution) layer** Aggregates Layer 2/Layer 3 links from the access layer and connects with upstream links to the data center core.

**data center core** Connects the campus core to the data center aggregation layer using high speed Layer 3 links.

**data center space element** Defines the number of racks for servers and telecommunications equipment that can be installed.

**delay** Metric that refers to how long it takes a packet to reach the destination. Depends on many factors, such as link bandwidth, utilization, port queues, and physical distance traveled.

**denial-of-service (DoS) attack** Tries to overwhelm resources such as memory, CPU, and bandwidth, thus impacting the attacked system and denying legitimate users access.

**device virtualization** Allows for a single physical device to act like multiple copies of itself.

**DHCP** Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. Used to dynamically configure IP parameters on hosts on the network.

**DHCP snooping** Verifies DHCP transactions and prevents rogue DHCP servers from interfering with production traffic.

**DHCPv6** Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Version 6.

**dial backup** ISDN provides backup dialup services in the event of a failure of a primary WAN circuit.

**digital subscriber line (DSL)** A technology that provides high-speed Internet data services over ordinary copper telephone lines.

**distance vector** Routing protocols that advertise the entire routing table to its neighbors.

**distribution layer** Provides policy-based connectivity and aggregation of access layer devices. Isolation point between access and core layers. At this layer, security filtering, aggregation of wiring closets, QoS, and routing between VLANs occur.

**DNS** Domain Name Service. A distributed database system that returns the destination IP addresses given a domain name.

**DR** Designated router. OSPF router on multiaccess networks (Ethernet) that is selected to collect all LSAs for the multiaccess network.

**DSCP** Differentiated services code point. Uses 6 bits in the ToS field to support differentiated services.

**DSSS** Direct sequence spread spectrum.

**DUAL** Diffusing Update Algorithm. Used by EIGRP to select paths and guarantee freedom from routing loops.

**DWDM** Dense wavelength-division multiplexing. Increases fiber optics bandwidth capabilities by using different wavelengths of light called channels over the same fiber strand.

**Dynamic ARP inspection** Intercepts ARP packets and verifies that the packets have valid IP-to-MAC bindings.

**E&M** Ear and Mouth; analog trunk.

**EGP** Exterior gateway protocol. Used to communicate routing information with external networks.

**EIGRP** Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol. Cisco proprietary routing protocol paths and guarantee freedom from routing loops.

**enterprise campus module** Contains the campus core, building distribution, building access, and server farm/data center.

**enterprise data center module** Consists of using the network to enhance the server, storage, and application servers.

**enterprise edge** Contains the e-commerce, Internet connectivity and DMZ, VPN and remote-access, and enterprise WAN modules.

**enterprise remote branch module** Consists of remote offices, small offices, or sales offices. Rely on WAN for services.

**enterprise teleworker module** Supports mobile and home users providing access to corporate systems via VPN tunnels.

**enterprise WAN module** Provides MPLS or other WAN technologies.

**Erlang** Telecommunications traffic unit of measurement representing the continuous use of one voice path for one hour. Measure of total voice traffic volume in one hour. 1 Erlang = 36 CCS.

**EtherChannel** Ethernet Channel ports bundle multiple Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, or 10 Gigabit Ethernet links into a single Layer 2 or Layer 3 logical link.

**EU Data Protection Directive 95/46/EC** Calls for the protection of people's privacy with respect to the processing of personal data.

**extranet VPN** VPN infrastructure for business partner connectivity that also uses the Internet or a private infrastructure for access.

**fault management** Refers to detecting and correcting network problems.

**FCAPS** Fault, configuration, accounting, performance, and security management.

**FHSS** Frequency-hopping spread spectrum.

**Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) and Internet Small Computer Systems Interface (iSCSI)** FCoE and iSCSI are two methods for implementing Unified Fabric in the data center over 10 Gigabit Ethernet.

**firewall** A security device designed to permit or deny network traffic based on source address, destination address, protocol, and port.

**FQDN** Fully qualified domain name.

**Frame Relay** A packet-switched connection-oriented Layer 2 WAN protocol.

**full-mesh topology** Requires that each site be connected to every other site in the cloud.

**FXO** Foreign Exchange Office.

**FXS** Foreign Exchange Station.

**gatekeeper** Provides call control and signaling services to H.323 endpoints.

**gateway** Provides translation services between H.323 endpoints and non-H.323 devices.

**GLBP** Global Load Balancing Protocol. Similar to HSRP, but provides load balancing between redundant routers.

**GoS** Grade of service. The probability that a call will be blocked when attempting to seize a circuit.

**Gramm-Leach-Bliley Financial Services Modernization Act of 1999 (GLBA)** Provides protection against the sale of bank and account information that is regularly bought and sold by financial institutions.

**H.323** ITU framework for multimedia protocols. Used to control Cisco IOS gateways.

**hop count** Metric that counts the number of links between routers the packet must traverse to reach a destination.

**H-REAP** Hybrid Remote Edge Access Point. Protocol that provides authentication for remote APs.

**HSRP** Hot Standby Router Protocol. Provides a way for IP devices to keep communicating on the network even if the default gateway becomes unavailable by having an active and standby router on the network.

**hub-and-spoke (or star) topology** Provides a hub router with connections to the spoke routers through the WAN cloud.

**IANA** Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

**iBGP** Internal BGP: Used for peering between BGP neighbors in the same autonomous system. iBGP is used primarily in transit autonomous systems.

**ICMPv6** Internet Control Message Protocol Version 6.

**ID** Identifier.

**IEEE 802.1x** IEEE standard for port-based authentication.

**IEEE 802.3ab** IEEE standard that specifies the operation of Gigabit Ethernet over UTP.

**IGMP** Internet Group Management Protocol. Protocol used in multicast implementations between the end hosts and the local router. IP hosts use IGMP to report their multicast group memberships to routers.

**IGP** Interior Gateway Protocol. Meant for routing within an organization's administrative domain.

**improve** Security data analysis, reporting, and intelligent network security.

**incident-handling policy** Incident-handling policy defines the processes and procedures for managing incidents and even emergency-type scenarios.

**Integrated Services Router (ISR) G2** Combines IOS firewall, VPN, and IPS services across the router portfolio, which enables new security features on existing routers.

**intranet (site-to-site) VPN** Connect remote offices back to the headend office.

**IPsec** A security architecture that operates in a host to protect IP traffic. The IETF defined IPsec in RFC 4301. IPsec uses open standards and provides secure communication between peers to ensure data confidentiality, integrity, and authentication through network layer encryption.

**IPv4** Internet Protocol Version 4. The current version of the Internet protocol used today.

**ISATAP** Intra-Site Automatic Tunnel Addressing Protocol.

**Kismet** An 802.11 wireless sniffer and IDS that can collect traffic from 802.11a/b/g networks.

**LAG** Link aggregation.

**large branch design** Between 100 and 1000 users.

**Layer 3 switches** Layer 3 switches perform the functions of both data link layer switches and network layer routers.

**leased lines** A dedicated connection provided by the service provider.

**link-state protocols** Routing protocols that use the Dijkstra shortest path algorithm to calculate the best path.

**LLQ** Low-latency queuing. Class-based weighted fair queuing plus priority queue (CBWFQ+PQ). LLQ provides a single priority queue, it can also configure guaranteed bandwidth for different classes of traffic.

**load** Metric that measures the degree to which an interface link is busy.

**LSA** Link-state advertisement. Flooded throughout an area or the entire OSPF autonomous system.

**LWAPP** Lightweight Wireless Access Point Protocol.

**MAP** Mesh access point. Remote APs that provide access to clients and communicate with the RAP.

**medium branch design** Between 50 and 100 users.

**MGCP** Media Gateway Control Protocol. Used to control IOS gateways.

**MIB** Management Information Base. Collection of information that is stored on the local agent of the managed device.

**MIMO** Multiple input, multiple output.

**monitor** Intrusion and content-based detection and response.

**MOS** Mean Opinion Score. Measure used to describe the quality of speech.

**MP-BGP** Multiprotocol Border Gateway Protocol.

**MP-BGP** Multiprotocol BGP. Used to carry MPLS VPN information between all PE routers within a VPN community.

**MPLS** Multiprotocol Label Switching. A technology for the delivery of IP services using an efficient encapsulation mechanism. MPLS uses labels appended to IP packets or Layer 2 frames for the transport of data.

**MTU** Maximum transmission unit.

**N+1 redundancy** A single WLC acts as the backup for multiple WLCs.

**N+N redundancy** WLC redundancy scheme of overprovisioning of two controllers so that if either controller fails the wireless network is not impacted.

**N+N+1 redundancy** WLC redundancy the same as N+N with one additional WLC acting as a backup for multiple WLC pairs.

**NAT** Network Address Translation. NAT converts internal IP address into globally unique IP addresses.

**NAT-PT** Network Address Translation - Protocol Translation.

**NBAR** Network-Based Application Recognition. An intelligent classification engine.

**ND** Neighbor discovery.

**NetFlow** Gathers information on every flow in a network segment. Cisco's NetFlow allows the tracking of IP flows as they are passed through routers and multilayer switches.

**NetStumbler** Identifies wireless networks using 802.11a/b/g WLAN standards.

**network access control policy** A document that defines general access control principles used and how data is classified, such as confidential, top secret, or internal.

**Network Admission Control (NAC)** Protects the network from threats by enforcing security compliance on all devices attempting to access the network.

**network virtualization** Encompasses logical isolated network segments that share the same physical infrastructure.

**NMAP (Network Mapper)** NMAP scans large networks or one host. It is an open source utility used for network exploration/security audits.

**OAM** Operations, administration, and management. For network operations and management.

**OSPFv2** Open Short Path First Version 2. A link-state routing protocol that uses Dijkstra's shortest path first (SPF) algorithm to calculate paths to IPv4 destinations. Defined in RFC 2328.

**OSPFv3** Open Short Path First Version 3. A link-state routing protocol that uses Dijkstra's shortest path first (SPF) algorithm to calculate paths to IPv6 destinations.

**packet and cell switched** Connections that use virtual circuits (PVC/SVC) established by the service provider.

**partial-mesh topology** Has fewer virtual circuit connections than a full-mesh topology.

**PAT** Port Address Translation. Maps multiple unregistered or private IP addresses to a single registered IP address by using different ports.

**path isolation** Provides independent logical traffic paths over shared network.

**PBR** Policy-based routing. Commonly used to modify the next-hop IP address based on the source address.

**PBX** Private Branch Exchange. Legacy voice switch.

**performance management** Measures the network's effectiveness at delivering packets.

**PIM** Protocol Independent Multicast. Routing protocol for multicast destinations.

**PoE** Power over Ethernet.

**policy control** Policies are applied to all users and devices across the architecture.

**power in the data center facility** Used to power cooling devices, servers, storage equipment, network, and some lighting.

**PPDIOO** Prepare, Plan, Design, Implement, Operate, and Optimize. Life cycle of the network.

**PSTN** Public switched telephone network.

**QPPB** QoS Policy Propagation on BGP. Uses iBGP to spread common QoS parameters from one router to other routers in the network. It classifies packets using IP precedence bits based on BGP community lists, BGP autonomous system paths, and access lists.

**RAP** Rooftop AP. Connects the mesh to the wired network.

**rate limiting** Rate limiting controls the rate of bandwidth that incoming traffic is using, such as ARPs and DHCP requests.

**reconnaissance** Reconnaissance gathers as much information as possible about the target host/network.

**RF groups** Cluster of WLC devices that coordinate their RRM calculations.

**RIPng** Routing Information Protocol next generation. RIPng is a distance-vector routing protocol for IPv6 networks.

**RIPv2** Routing Information Protocol Version 2. RIPv2 is a distance-vector routing protocol for IPv4 networks that supports VLSMs, route authentication, and multicast of route updates.

**RMON** Remote Monitoring. Standard monitoring specification that enables network monitoring devices and console systems to exchange network monitoring data. RMON1 looks at data link layer data. RMON2 looks at network to application layer data.

**router** Routers consolidate IOS firewall, IPS, IPsec VPN, DMVPN, and SSL VPN into the routing platforms to secure the router if it is attacked.

**RRM** Radio Resource Management. Method to manage AP radio frequency channels and power configuration.

**RSVP** Signaling protocol that enables end stations or applications to obtain guaranteed bandwidth and low delays for their data flows.

**RTCP** RTP Control Protocol. Session layer protocol that monitors the delivery of data and provides control and identification functions.

**RTP** Real-time Transport Protocol. RTP is a transport layer protocol that carries digitized voice in its payload RTP operates over UDP.

**SCCP** Skinny Client Control Protocol. Cisco proprietary client/server signaling protocol for call setup and control. Also known as “skinny.”

**secondary WAN link** The addition of a secondary WAN link makes the network more fault tolerant.

**secure** Identification, authentication, ACLs, stateful packet inspection (SPI), encryption, and VPNs.

**security management policy** Security management policy explains how to manage the security infrastructure.

**service level agreement (SLA)-networked applications** SLA-networked applications rely on the underlying network between the client and server to provide its functions.

**services edge** Services edge ensures the right services are accessible the intended users, groups, or devices.

**shadow PVC** Service providers can offer shadow PVCs that provide an additional PVC for use if needed.

**SIP** Session Initiation Protocol. IETF framework for multimedia protocols.

**small branch design** Design for a site that has up to 50 users.

**SNMP** Simple Network Management Protocol. IP application layer protocol that has become the standard for the exchange of management information between network devices.

**SONET/SDH** SONET/SDH is circuit-based and delivers high-speed services over an optical network.

**split-MAC** AP mode that splits MAC functions between the WLC and the remote AP.

**SS7** Signaling 7. Allows voice calls to be routed and controlled by central call controllers. Permits modern consumer telephone services. Protocol used in the PSTN.

**SSID** Service set identifier.

**stub area** In a stub area, OSPF external LSAs (Type 5) are prevented from being flooded into that area. A default router is used instead.

**Superscan** Superscan (made for Windows) provides high-speed scanning, host detection, and Windows host enumeration and banner grabbing.

**syslog** Transmits event notification messages over the network. Network devices send the event messages to an event server for aggregation.

**test** Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing.

**time-division multiplexing (TDM)** A type of digital multiplexing in which multiple channels such as data, voice, and video are combined over one communication medium by interleaving pulses representing bits from different channels.

**ToS** Type of Service field. This field of the IPv4 packet header specifies QoS parameters.

**U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)** HIPAA applies to the protection of private health information that is used electronically.

**U.S. Public Company Accounting Reform and Investor Protection Act of 2002 (Sarbanes-Oxley or SOX)** SOX focuses on the accuracy and the controls imposed on a company's financial records.

**unauthorized access** Gaining unauthorized access is the act of attacking or exploiting the target host system.

**Unicast RPF** Prevents unknown source addresses from using the network as a transport mechanism to carry out attacks.

**VAD** Voice-activity detection. Used for detection and suppression of packets that do not contain actual speech content.

**VDC** Virtual Device Context. Used for device virtualization on the Cisco Nexus 7000 series switches.

**Virtual Private LAN Services (VPLS)** Defines an architecture that enables Ethernet Multipoint Service (EMS) over an MPLS network.

**VRF** Virtual routing and forwarding. A routing virtualization technology that creates multiple logical Layer 3 routing and forwarding instances (route tables) that can function on the same physical router.

**virtualization** Allows for the consolidation of servers and other network components and reduction of hardware infrastructure costs. It has gained popularity by industry leaders such as VMware.

**virtualization technologies** Virtualization technologies share a common theme in their ability to abstract logical elements from hardware (applications or operating systems) or networks (LANs and SANs) and run them in a virtual state.

**VLAN** Virtual LAN.

**VLSM** Variable-link subnet mask. VLSMs allow the dividing of the IP address space into subnets of different sizes.

**vPC** Virtual Port Channel (vPC) technology works by combining two Cisco Nexus 7000 series switches or two Cisco Nexus 5000 series switches with 10GE links, which are then represented to other switches as a single logical switch for port channeling purposes.

**VRRP** Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol. Similar to HSRP. Provides a way for IP devices to keep communicating on the network even if the default gateway becomes unavailable by having an master and backup router on the network.

**VSS** Virtual Switching System. Converts the distribution switching 6500 pair into a logical single switch.

**wireless** Wireless as a technology uses electromagnetic waves to carry the signal between endpoints. Everyday examples of wireless technology include cell phones, wireless LANs, cordless computer equipment, and global positioning systems (GPS).

**WLAN** Wireless local-area network.

**WLC** Wireless LAN controller.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Index

---

## Numerics

---

- 10 Gigabit Ethernet design rules, 88
- 10BASE-2 Ethernet, 83
- 10BASE-5 Ethernet, 83
- 10BASE-T Ethernet, 83
- 100BASE-FX Fast Ethernet, 85
- 100BASE-T Ethernet, 83, 85-86
- 100BASE-T4 Fast Ethernet, 84-85
- 100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet, 84
- 100-Mbps Fast Ethernet design rules, 84-86
- 1000BASE-CX Gigabit Ethernet over coaxial cable, 87
- 1000BASE-LX long-wavelength Gigabit Ethernet, 86-87
- 1000BASE-SX short-wavelength Gigabit Ethernet, 87
- 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet over UTP, 87

## A

---

- access control. *See also* unauthorized access
  - defined, 466
  - firewall ACLs, 487-488
  - identity and access control deployments, 489-490
  - in network virtualization design, 145
  - WLAN access control, 159-160

- access layer in hierarchical network models, 43-44
- campus LAN design best practices, 96
- enterprise data center design, 136-137
- access VPNs, 232
- ACD, 528
- address resolution protocol (ARP), 295
- addressing
  - in IPv4, 275-295
    - assignment and name resolution*, 290-295
    - classes*, 276-278
    - NAT (Network Address Translation)*, 279-282
    - private addresses*, 279
    - subnets*, 282-290
    - types of*, 278
  - in IPv6, 311-319
    - allocations*, 313-314
    - anycast addresses*, 316-317
    - assignment strategies*, 322-324
    - global aggregatable addresses*, 316
    - global unicast addresses*, 314-315
    - IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses*, 312, 316
    - link-local addresses*, 315
    - multicast addresses*, 317-319

*prefixes*, 312-313, 319  
*representation of addresses*, 311-313  
*unicast addresses*, 314-316  
*unique local addresses*, 315-316

addressing digit signaling (voice networks), 526

adjacencies in OSPFv2, 392-393

administrative distance, 355-356

aggregation layer. *See distribution layer in hierarchical network models*

aggregator attribute in BGP, 413

allocations of IPv6 addresses, 313-314

analog-to-digital signal conversion, 540

analyzing networks, tools for, 22

AND logical operation, 285

anycast addresses in IPv6, 316-317

AP controller equipment scaling, 171

AP modes in Cisco UWN, 164-166

application access, accelerating, 13

application layer (OSI model), 665

application layer (TCP/IP architecture), 666

application requirements in WAN design, 214

application types in campus LAN design, 94-95, 103

architectures. *See enterprise architectures*

areas

- in OSPFv2, 393
- in OSPFv3, 401

ARP (address resolution protocol), 59, 295

assessment. *See auditing networks, tools for*

assigning

- IPv4 addresses, 290-295
- BOOTP, 291
- DHCP, 291-292
  - static versus dynamic assignment*, 290-291

IPv6 addresses, 322-324

- DHCPv6, 324
  - globally unique addresses*, 323
  - link-local addresses*, 322-323

atomic aggregate attribute in BGP, 413

auditing networks, tools for, 18-21

authentication

- identity and access control deployments, 489-490
- IEEE 802.1X-2001 port-based authentication, 159

in RIPng, 365

in RIPv2, 362

WLANs (wireless LANs), 167-169

**Auto QoS in VoIP,559**

**autoconfiguration.** *See stateless autoconfiguration*

**autonomous system external path types in OSPFv2,** 397

**autonomous system path attribute in BGP,** 412

**auto-RP,** 429-430

**availability.** *See network availability, increasing*

**B**

**backups in WAN design,** 240-241. *See also high availability network services*

**balancing loads,** 62

**bandwidth comparisons**

in IPT design, 550-552

for routing protocols, 357

in WAN design, 215-216

**Beauty Things Store scenario,** 606-608

**best practices**

campus LAN design, 94-109

*access layer,* 96

*application type network requirements,* 103

*application types,* 94-95

*core layer,* 98-99

*distribution layer,* 96-98

*edge distribution,* 103

*enterprise campus LAN design,* 102-103

*enterprise data center module,* 105-106

*large-building LAN design,* 101-102

*medium-size LANs,* 103

*multicast traffic considerations,* 108-109

**QoS considerations,** 106-107

**server connectivity options,** 105

**server farms,** 104

**small and remote site LANs,** 103-104

**IPT design,** 560-561

**BGP (Border Gateway Protocol),** 404-416

administrative distance, 409

characteristics of, 415-416

confederations, 409

decision process, 414-415

eBGP, 406

iBGP, 406-407

neighbors, 405-406

path attributes, 410-413

route reflectors, 407-409

weight, 414

**BGP4 multiprotocol extensions for IPv6,** 326

**BHT (busy-hour traffic),** 529-530

**Big Oil and Gas scenario,** 604-606

**binary numbers**

converting decimal to, 673-675

converting hexadecimal to, 672-673

converting to decimal, 673

converting to hexadecimal, 672

decimal and hexadecimal equivalents of, 672

explained, 671

IP and MAC address representation, 671

subnet mask values for, 675

**bit masks for subnet masks,** 283

**blade servers in data center design,** 128

**blocking probability,** 530

**BOOTP,** 291

**routers,** 430

Border Gateway Protocol. *See BGP (Border Gateway Protocol)*  
 borderless network architecture, 9, 58  
 bottom-up approach to network design, comparison with top-down approach, 24  
 branch LAN design, 184-186  
   H-REAP, 184-185  
   local MAC support, 184  
   REAP, 184  
   UDP ports used in, 186  
 branch WAN design. *See enterprise branch architectures*  
 bridges, enterprise LAN design, 91  
 bridging layer (OSI model), 663  
 BTUs, wattage conversion, 133  
 business agility, improving, 12  
 busy hour, 529  
 busy-hour traffic (BHT), 529-530

## C

---

cabling  
   dark fiber cabling, 211-212  
   in data center design, 133-135  
   for WANs, 206-207  
 calculating voice bandwidth, 551-552  
 call detail records (CDR), 528, 530  
 call seconds, 529  
 CallManager Express deployment model for IP telephony networks, 537  
 campus LAN design. *See also enterprise LAN design*  
   best practices, 94-109  
     *access layer*, 96  
     *application type network requirements*, 103  
     *application types*, 94-95

*core layer*, 98-99  
*distribution layer*, 96-98  
*edge distribution*, 103  
*enterprise campus LAN design*, 102-103  
*enterprise data center module*, 105-106  
*large-building LAN design*, 101-102  
*medium-size LANs*, 103  
*multicast traffic considerations*, 108-109  
*QoS considerations*, 106-107  
*server connectivity options*, 105  
*server farms*, 104  
*small and remote site LANs*, 103-104  
   resources for information, 109  
   for wireless LANs, 183-184  
*campus media comparison chart*, 89  
*campus security*, 502-503  
*CAPWAP (Control and Provisioning for Wireless Access Point)*, 163  
*CAS signaling*, 524  
*case studies. See scenarios*  
*Catalyst 6500 service modules*, 500-502  
*CCDA exam updates*, 657-658  
*CCS (Centum call second)*, 529  
*CCS signaling*, 524  
*CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol)*, 587  
*CDR (call detail records)*, 528, 530  
*cell-switched WANs*, 230  
*Centrex services*, 528  
*Centum call second (CCS)*, 529  
*certificates*, defined, 465  
*CGMP (Cisco Group Management Protocol)*, 108, 426-427

- checklists, network checklist, 22-23
- circuit-switched WANs, 230
- Cisco 860 ISRs in enterprise teleworker architectures, 254
- Cisco 880 ISRs in enterprise teleworker architectures, 255
- Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), 587
- Cisco Easy VPN, 235
- Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 4758
  - e-commerce submodule, 50-51
  - enterprise campus module, 48-50
  - enterprise edge area, 5054
  - enterprise WAN submodule, 5354
  - hierarchical layers, 44-45
  - Internet connectivity submodule, 51-52
  - remote modules, 55-57
  - resources for information, 65
  - service provider edge module, 54-55
  - VPN/remote access submodule, 5253
- Cisco Enterprise MAN/WAN architecture, 243
- Cisco Group Management Protocol (CGMP), 108, 426-427
- Cisco Identity-Based Network Services (IBNS), 489
- Cisco IronPort ESA, 493-494
- Cisco IronPort WSA, 494
- Cisco NAC Appliance, 488
- Cisco Radio Resource Management (RRM), 178-179
- Cisco router/switch platform and software comparison, 247
- Cisco SAFE (Security Architecture for the Enterprise), 484-486, 496
- Cisco SCF (Security Control Framework), 486
- Cisco security appliances, 499-500
- Cisco UWN (Unified Wireless Network), 160-176
  - AP controller equipment scaling, 171
  - AP modes, 164-166
  - architectures, 160-161
  - authentication, 167-169
  - CAPWAP, 163
  - local MAC support, 164
  - LWAPP, 162
  - LWAPP discovery of WLC, 166-167
  - roaming, 173-176
  - split-MAC architecture, 163-164
  - WLC components, 169
  - WLC interface types, 169-171
- class A addresses (IPv4), 277
- class B addresses (IPv4), 277
- class C addresses (IPv4), 277
- class C networks, common bits within, 417
- class D addresses (IPv4), 277
- class E addresses (IPv4), 278
- class-based weighted fair queuing in WAN design, 218-219
- classes of IPv4 addresses, 276-278
- classful routing protocols, classless routing protocols versus, 353-354
- classification in WAN design, 218
- classless routing protocols, classful routing protocols versus, 353-354
- codecs, 539-541
  - analog-to-digital signal conversion, 540
  - standards, 540-541
- collaboration architecture, 9-10
- collision domains for 100BASE-T Ethernet, 85
- commands for manual network auditing, 19-21
  - example, 666-667

community attribute in BGP, 413  
 comprehensive scenarios. *See scenarios*  
 confederations in BGP, 409  
 confidentiality  
     breaches, 455-456  
     transmission confidentiality, 469  
 congestion management in WAN design, 218  
 connection modules for WANs, 203-204  
 connection security, 466-470  
     data integrity, 469-470  
     encryption, 466-467  
     transmission confidentiality, 469  
     VPN protocols, 467-469  
 continuous security, 461-462  
 contracts for WAN transport technologies, 212-213  
 Control and Provisioning for Wireless Access Point (CAPWAP), 163  
 converged multiservice networks.  
     *See IP telephony networks*  
 converting  
     binary to decimal numbers, 673  
     binary to hexadecimal numbers, 672  
     decimal to binary numbers, 673-675  
     decimal to hexadecimal numbers, 668-670  
     hexadecimal to binary numbers, 672-673  
     hexadecimal to decimal numbers, 670  
 cooling in data center design, 132-133  
 core layer in hierarchical network models, 41-42  
 campus LAN design best practices, 98-99  
 enterprise data center design, 139-140  
 cost for routing protocols, 358  
 cost of ownership, lowering, 12

counting to infinity (routing protocol loop prevention), 361  
 country codes, list of, 526-527  
 cRTP in VoIP, 556  
 custom queueing in WAN design, 218  
 customer requirements  
     for campus LAN application types, 95, 103  
     identifying, 15-17

## D

---

dark fiber cabling, 211-212  
 Data Center 3.0 components, 125-126  
 Data Center 3.0 topology components, 127  
 data center security, 503-504  
 data center/virtualization architecture, 10  
 data centers. *See enterprise data center design; enterprise data center module*  
 data integrity, 469-470  
 data link layer (OSI model), 663  
 decimal equivalents  
     of binary numbers, 672  
     of hexadecimal numbers, 668  
 decimal numbers  
     converting binary to, 673  
     converting hexadecimal to, 670  
     converting to binary, 673-675  
     converting to hexadecimal, 668-670  
 decision process in BGP, 414-415  
 default metric in route redistribution, 420-421  
 delay components in IP telephony networks, 552-554  
 delay for routing protocols, 359

dense multicast distribution, sparse multicast distribution versus, 427-428

dense wavelength-division multiplexing (DWDM), 212

deploying servers. *See server deployment challenges in data center design*

deployment models

of IP telephony networks, 535-537

*CallManager Express model*, 537

*multisite WAN with centralized call processing model*, 536

*multisite WAN with distributed call processing model*, 536-537

*single-site deployment*, 535-536

IPv4 to IPv6, 326-333

*comparison of*, 332

*dual-stack deployment model*, 329

*hybrid deployment model*, 330

*service block deployment model*, 330

design documents, 25-26

design goals of IP telephony networks, 534-535

design methodology in PPDIOO life cycle, 15. *See also network design*

design of IPv4 subnets, 283-284

Design phase (PPDIOO life cycle), 14

deterministic redundancy, dynamic redundancy versus, 176

device contexts in virtualization, 144

device virtualization, 142

DHCP, 291292

in VoIP, 542

DHCPv6, 324

digital subscriber line (DSL), 206

distance-vector routing protocols, 351-353

distribution layer in hierarchical network models, 42-43

campus LAN design best practices, 96-98

enterprise data center design, 138-139

distribution trees, 428

DMVPN, 236

DNS (Domain Name System), 292-294, 542

domains of trust, 463-464

DoS (denial of service) attacks, 450, 454-455

dotted-decimal format for subnet masks, 283

DRs in OSPFv2, 395396

DSCP AF packet-drop precedence values in IPv4 headers, 273

DSCP and IP precedence values in IPv4 headers, 273

DSCP values in IPv4 headers, 274

DSL (digital subscriber line), 206

DTMF frequencies, 526

DUAL, EIGRP and, 368-369

dual-stack deployment model, IPv4 to IPv6, 329

dual-stack transitions, IPv4 to IPv6, 326

DVMRP, 430

DWDM (dense wavelength-division multiplexing), 212

dynamic IP addressing, 290-291

dynamic redundancy, deterministic redundancy versus, 176

dynamic routes, static routes versus, 348-350

dynamic WEP keys, 159

## E

---

E&M signaling, 523-524

E.164 standard, 526

- eBGP, 406
- echo cancellation, 555
- e-commerce submodule in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 50-51
- edge distribution, campus LAN design best practices, 103
- EIGRP, 351-352, 367-375
  - characteristics of, 375
  - components of, 367
  - design, 372
  - DUAL and, 368-369
  - for IPv4, 373
  - for IPv6, 325, 373-374
  - metrics, 370-371
  - neighbor discovery and recovery, 368
  - packet types, 371-372
  - protocol-dependent modules, 368
  - RTP and, 368
  - timers, 369-370
- email threats, IronPort ESA (Email Security Appliances), 493-494
- encryption, 466-467
- endpoint security, 502
- enterprise architectures. *See also* Cisco Enterprise Architecture model
  - benefits of, 10-11
  - borderless network architecture, 9, 58
  - business forces affecting, 8
  - Cisco UWN (Unified Wireless Network), 160-161
  - collaboration architecture, 9-10
  - data center/virtualization architecture, 10, 124-127, 135-140
    - access layer*, 136-137
    - core layer*, 139-140
    - Data Center 3.0 components*, 125-126
    - Data Center 3.0 topology components*, 127
- distribution layer*, 138-139
- technology forces affecting, 8
- traditional voice architectures, 518-530
  - ACD, 528
  - blocking probability*, 530
  - busy hour*, 529
  - busy-hour traffic (BHT)*, 529-530
  - call detail records (CDR)*, 528, 530
  - Centrex services*, 528
  - Centum call second (CCS)*, 529
  - Erlangs*, 528-529
  - grade of service (GoS)*, 528
  - IVR systems*, 528
  - local loops and trunks*, 519-520
  - ports*, 520-521
  - PSTN, described, 518
  - PSTN numbering plan*, 526-527
  - PSTN versus PBX switches*, 518-519
  - signaling types*, 521-526
  - voice mail*, 528
- types of, 9
- enterprise branch architectures, 248-253
  - design rules, 248
  - ISR versus ISR G2 features, 249
  - large branch design, 252-253
  - medium branch design, 250-251
  - profiles, 248-249
  - small branch design, 250
- enterprise branch module in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 56
- enterprise campus LAN design, 102-103
- enterprise campus module in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 48-50
- enterprise data center design
  - architectures, 124-127, 135-140
  - core layer*, 139-140

- Data Center 3.0 components*, 125-126
- Data Center 3.0 topology components*, 127
- distribution layer*, 138-139
- resources for information, 145-146
- server deployment challenges, 127-135
  - cabling*, 133-135
  - cooling*, 132-133
  - facilities*, 128-129
  - power usage*, 131-132
  - space allotment*, 130
- virtualization, 141-145
  - benefits of*, 141-142
  - challenges*, 141
  - design considerations*, 144-145
  - technologies for*, 143-144
  - types of*, 142
- enterprise data center module**
  - campus LAN design best practices, 105-106
  - in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 56
- enterprise edge area**
  - in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 50-54
  - security for, 504-506
- enterprise LAN design.** *See also campus LAN design; wireless LAN design*
  - hardware, 89-94
    - bridges*, 91
    - device comparison chart*, 94
    - bubs*, 90-91
    - Layer 3 switches*, 93-94
    - repeaters*, 90
    - routers*, 92-93
    - switches*, 91-92
- LAN media, 82-89
  - 10 Gigabit Ethernet design rules*, 88
  - campus media comparison chart*, 89
  - EtherChannel*, 89
  - Ethernet design rules*, 83
  - Fast Ethernet design rules*, 84-86
  - Gigabit Ethernet design rules*, 86-87
- resources for information, 109
- enterprise security**, 502-506.
  - See also security*
  - campus security, 502-503
  - data center security, 503-504
  - enterprise edge and WAN security, 504-506
- enterprise teleworker architectures**, 254-255
- enterprise teleworker module in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model**, 56-57
- enterprise VPNs**
  - Cisco Easy VPN, 235
  - DMVPN, 236
  - GRE (generic routing encapsulation), 236
  - IPsec, 234
  - IPsec direct encapsulation, 234-235
  - IPsec VTI, 237
  - L2TPv3, 237
  - service provider VPNs versus, 233-239
- enterprise WAN architectures**, 241-244
  - Cisco Enterprise MAN/WAN architecture, 243
  - comparison of, 243-244
- enterprise WAN components**, 245-247
- enterprise WAN submodule in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model**, 53-54

EoIP tunnels in wireless LAN design, 181  
 Erlangs, 528-529  
 EtherChannel, 89  
 Ethernet, benefits of handoffs at customer edge, 238  
 Ethernet design rules, 83  
 EU Data Protection Directive 95/46/EC, 449  
 exam engine, 617-618  
 exams  
   study plan, 616-618  
   study tools, 613-616  
 existing network, characterizing, 17-23  
 explicit configuration, 59  
 exterior routing protocols, interior routing protocols versus, 350-351  
 extranet VPNs, 233

## F

---

facilities in data center design, 128-129  
 Falcon Communications scenarios, 608-610  
 Fast Ethernet design rules, 84-86  
 FCAPS (network management processes), 578  
 fields in IPv4 headers, 270-271  
 filtering routes, 421-422  
 firewall ACLs, 487-488  
 fixed delays in IP telephony networks, 552-553  
 flat routing protocols, hierarchical routing protocols versus, 353  
 fragmentation in IPv4 headers, 274-275  
 Frame Relay for WANs, 208-209  
 frequencies (WLANs), 156-157  
 full-mesh networks, 62  
 full-mesh topology in WAN design, 231

## G

---

gatekeepers, scalability with, 545-546  
 generic routing encapsulation (GRE), 236  
 Gigabit Ethernet design rules, 86-87  
 GLBA (Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act), 449  
 GLBP, 61  
 global aggregatable addresses in IPv6, 316  
 global unicast addresses in IPv6, 314-315  
 globally unique addresses in IPv6, assigning, 323  
 GoS (grade of service), 528  
 grade of service (GoS), 528  
 Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (GLBA), 449  
 GRE (generic routing encapsulation), 236  
 ground-start signaling, 522-523

## H

---

H.264 standard in VoIP, 547  
 H.323 standard in VoIP, 544-547  
 hardware  
   enterprise LAN design, 89-94  
     bridges, 91  
     device comparison chart, 94  
     hubs, 90-91  
     Layer 3 switches, 93-94  
     repeaters, 90  
     routers, 92-93  
     switches, 91-92  
   enterprise WAN design, 245-247  
   ISR G2 security hardware options, 499  
 headers  
   IPv4, 268-275  
     fields, 270-271  
     fragmentation, 274-275

- protocol numbers*, 270
  - ToS field*, 271-274
  - IPv6, 309-311
  - Hello timers in OSPFv2, 392-393
  - hexadecimal equivalents of binary numbers, 672
  - hexadecimal format for subnet masks, 283
  - hexadecimal numbers
    - converting binary to, 672
    - converting decimal to, 668-670
    - converting to binary, 672-673
    - converting to decimal, 670
    - decimal equivalents of, 668
    - representation of, 668
  - hierarchical network models, 40-46
    - access layer, 43-44
      - campus LAN design best practices*, 96
      - enterprise data center design*, 136-137
    - benefits of, 40-41
    - Cisco Enterprise Architecture model
      - hierarchical layers, 44-45
    - core layer, 41-42
      - campus LAN design best practices*, 98-99
      - enterprise data center design*, 139-140
    - distribution layer, 42-43
      - campus LAN design best practices*, 96-98
      - enterprise data center design*, 138-139
    - examples of, 45-46
    - resources for information, 65
    - route manipulation on, 422
  - hierarchical routing protocols, flat routing protocols versus, 353
  - high availability network services, 58-65
    - link media redundancy, 64-65
    - resources for information, 65
    - route redundancy, 62-63
    - server redundancy, 61-62
    - WAN design, 240-241
    - wireless LAN design, 176-178
    - workstation-to-router redundancy, 59-61
  - HIPAA (U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act), 449
  - hop count, 356-357
  - host-to-host transport layer (TCP/IP architecture), 666
  - H-REAP in branch LAN design, 184-185
  - HSRP, 60-61
  - hub-and-spoke topology in WAN design, 230-231
  - hubs, 90-91
  - hybrid deployment model, IPv4 to IPv6, 330
  - hybrid REAP in branch LAN design, 184-185
- 
- i
- iBGP, 406-407
  - ICMPv6, 320
  - identity, defined, 464
  - identity and access control deployments, 489-490
  - IEEE 802.1P networks, 556-557
  - IEEE 802.1X-2001 port-based authentication, 159
  - IEEE 802.3 networks, design rules, 83
  - IEEE 802.3ab-1999 networks, design rules, 86

- IEEE 802.3u-1995 networks, design rules, 84-86
- IEEE 802.3z-1998 networks, design rules, 86
- IEEE 802.11 wireless LAN standards, 155-156
- IEEE 802.11i networks, 158
- IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol), 108, 425-426
- IGMP snooping, 109, 427
- IGMPv1, 425
- IGMPv2, 425-426
- IGMPv3, 426
- Implement phase (PPDIOO life cycle), 14
- infrastructure protection, 471-472
- infrastructures. *See enterprise architectures*
- Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN), 205-206
- integrity
  - data integrity, 469-470
  - violations of, 455-456
- interface types for WLC (wireless LAN controller), 169-171
- interior routing protocols, exterior routing protocols versus, 350-351
- Internet, WAN backup over, 241
- Internet connectivity submodule in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 51-52
- Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), 108, 425-426
- Internet layer (TCP/IP architecture), 666
- intracontroller roaming in Cisco UWN, 173
- intranet VPNs, 233
- intrusion prevention, 500
- IOS security, 498
- IP addresses, binary representation of, 671
- IP DSCP values in IPv4 headers, 274
- IP precedence bit values in IPv4 headers, 272
- IP protocol numbers, 310
- IP telephony networks, 530-549
  - codecs, 539-541
    - analog-to-digital signal conversion*, 540
    - standards*, 540-541
  - components of, 532-534
  - deployment models of, 535-537
    - CallManager Express model*, 537
    - multisite WAN with centralized call processing model*, 536
    - multisite WAN with distributed call processing model*, 536-537
    - single-site deployment*, 535-536
  - design considerations, 549-562
    - bandwidth*, 550-552
    - best practices*, 560-561
    - delay components*, 552-554
    - echo cancellation*, 555
    - packet loss*, 555
    - QoS (quality of service) tools*, 555-560
    - service class recommendations*, 561-562
    - VAD*, 550-551
  - design goals of, 534-535
  - resources for information, 562-563
  - subnets for, 288
  - video deployment, 537-539
  - VoIP (voice over IP), 531-532
  - VoIP control and transport protocols, 541-549
    - DHCP, DNS, TFTP*, 542

- H.323 standard*, 544-547
- MGCP*, 544
- RTP and RTCP*, 543
- SCCP*, 542
- SIP*, 548-549
- IPsec**, 234
  - IPsec direct encapsulation**, 234-235
  - IPsec VTI**, 237
- IFT**. *See IP telephony networks*
- IPv4**
  - addressing, 275-295
    - assignment and name resolution*, 290-295
    - classes*, 276-278
    - NAT (Network Address Translation)*, 279-282
    - private addresses*, 279
    - subnets*, 282-290
    - types of*, 278
  - comparison with IPv6, 333-334
  - EIGRP**, 373
  - header, 268-275
    - fields*, 270-271
    - fragmentation*, 274-275
    - protocol numbers*, 270
    - ToS field*, 271-274
  - IPv4 to IPv6 transition and deployment, 326-333
    - comparison of*, 332
    - dual-stack deployment model*, 329
    - dual-stack transitions*, 326
    - hybrid deployment model*, 330
    - IPv6 over IPv4 tunnels*, 326-328
    - protocol translation*, 328-329
    - service block deployment model*, 330
  - multicast, 423-431
  - multicast addresses, 423-424
  - resources for information, 296
  - routing protocols, IPv6 routing protocols versus, 354
  - IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses**, 312, 316
  - IPv6**
    - addressing, 311-319
      - allocations*, 313-314
      - anycast addresses*, 316-317
      - assignment strategies*, 322-324
      - global aggregatable addresses*, 316
      - global unicast addresses*, 314-315
      - IPv4-compatible IPv6 addresses*, 312, 316
      - link-local addresses*, 315
      - loopback addresses*, 314
      - multicast addresses*, 317-319
      - prefixes*, 312-313, 319
      - representation of addresses*, 311-313
      - unicast addresses*, 314-316
      - unique local addresses*, 315-316
    - benefits of, 308-309
    - comparison with IPv4, 333-334
    - EIGRP, 373-374
    - header, 309-311
    - ICMPv6, 320
    - IPv4 to IPv6 transition and deployment, 326-333
      - comparison of*, 332
      - dual-stack deployment model*, 329
      - dual-stack transitions*, 326
      - hybrid deployment model*, 330
      - IPv6 over IPv4 tunnels*, 326-328
      - protocol translation*, 328-329
      - service block deployment model*, 330
    - multicast, 423-431

multicast addresses, 423-424, 430-431  
 name resolution, 321-322  
 ND (Neighbor Discovery) protocol, 320-321  
 path MTU discovery, 322  
 resources for information, 334-335  
 routing protocols, 325-326, 354  
 security, 324  
**IronPort ESA (Email Security Appliances), 493-494**  
**IronPort WSA (Web Security Appliances), 494**  
 ISDN (Integrated Services Digital Network), 205-206  
 ISDN BRI service, 205, 524  
 ISDN PRI service, 205-206, 524  
 IS-IS for IPv6, 325  
 ISM frequencies, 156-157  
 ISR G2 security hardware options, 499  
 ISR versus ISR G2 features, 249  
 IVR systems, 528

**J**

joining PIM-SM, 429

**K**

keys (encryption), 467

**L**

L2TPv3 (Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol Version 3), 237  
 LAN high availability protocols, 59-61  
 ARP, 59  
 explicit configuration, 59  
 GLBP, 61  
 HSRP, 60-61

RDP, 59  
 RIP, 59-60  
 VRRP, 61  
**LAN media in enterprise LAN design, 82-89**  
 10 Gigabit Ethernet design rules, 88  
 campus media comparison chart, 89  
 EtherChannel, 89  
 Ethernet design rules, 83  
 Fast Ethernet design rules, 84-86  
 Gigabit Ethernet design rules, 86-87  
**large branch design in enterprise branch architectures, 252-253**  
**large-building LAN design, 101-102**  
**Layer 2 access method in WLANs, 157**  
**Layer 2 intercontroller roaming in Cisco UWN, 173-174**  
**Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol Version 3 (L2TPv3), 237**  
**Layer 3 intercontroller roaming in Cisco UWN, 174**  
**Layer 3 switches, 93-94**  
**Layer 3-to-Layer 2 mapping of multicast addresses, 424**  
**layered communication example (TCP/IP architecture), 666-667**  
**LEAP, 159**  
**leased-line WANs, 230**  
**legislation concerning security, 448-449**  
**LFI in VoIP, 557**  
**Lightweight Access Point Protocol (LWAPP), 162, 166-167**  
**link characteristics in WAN design, 216-217**  
**link efficiency in WAN design, 220**  
**link media redundancy, 64-65**  
**link-local addresses in IPv6, 315, 322-323**

**LLQ in VoIP, 557559**  
**load balancing, 62, 240**  
**load for routing protocols, 358-359**  
**local loops in voice networks, 519-520**  
**local MAC support**  
  in branch LAN design, 184  
  in Cisco UWN, 164  
**local preference attribute in BGP, 411**  
**logical link sublayer (OSI model), 663**  
**loop prevention for routing protocols, 360-361**  
**loopback addresses, 288, 314**  
**loop-start signaling, 522**  
**low-latency queueing in WAN design, 219**  
**LSA types**  
  in OSPFv2, 396-397  
  in OSPFv3, 401-403  
**LWAPP (Lightweight Access Point Protocol), 162, 166-167**

## M

---

**MAC addresses, binary representation of, 671**  
**MAC sublayer (OSI model), 663**  
**Management Information Base (MIB), 580-581**  
**masks. See subnets (IPv4)**  
**maximum transmission unit (MTU), 360**  
**MD5 authentication in RIPv2, 362**  
**MED attribute in BGP, 412-413**  
**media. See LAN media in enterprise LAN design**  
**medium branch design in enterprise branch architectures, 250-251**  
**medium-size LANs, campus LAN design best practices, 103**

**memory tables**  
**10 Gigabit Ethernet media types, 88**  
**accelerating access to applications and services, 13**  
**AND logical operation, 285**  
**AP modes, 166**  
**campus LAN application type requirements, 95, 103**  
**campus LAN application types, 95**  
**campus layer design best practices, 100**  
**campus media comparison chart, 89**  
**campus security, 502-503**  
**CAS and CCS signaling types, 524**  
**characterizing the network, 23**  
**Cisco Enterprise Architecture model enterprise modules, 58**  
**Cisco Enterprise Architecture model hierarchical layers, 44-45**  
**Cisco IOS integrated security, 498**  
**Cisco router/switch platform and software comparison, 247**  
**Cisco UWN (Unified Wireless Network) architecture, 161**  
**codec standards, 541**  
**collision domains for 100BASE-T Ethernet, 85**  
**common bits within Class C networks, 417**  
**continuous security steps, 462**  
**country codes, list of, 526-527**  
**data center core drivers, 139**  
**data center facility considerations, 129**  
**data center security, 504**  
**default administrative distances for IP routes, 355**  
**default EIGRP values for bandwidth and delay, 371**  
**design document contents, 25**

- DHCP and DNS servers, 294
- distance-vector versus link-state routing protocols, 352
- DNS resource records, 294
- domains of trust, 464
- DoS (denial of service) attacks, managing, 454
- DSCP AF packet-drop precedence values, 273
- DSCP and IP precedence values in IPv4 headers, 273
- DTMF frequencies, 526
- EIGRP protocol characteristics, 375
- enterprise architectures, benefits of, 10-11
- enterprise edge security, 505
- Ethernet handoffs at customer edge, benefits of, 238
- H.264 video bandwidth, 547
- H.323 protocols, 547
- high-order bits of IPv4 address classes, 276
- IGP and EGP protocol selection, 351
- improving business agility, 12
- increasing network availability, 12
- IP address allocation for VoIP networks, 288
- IP DSCP values, 274
- IP precedence bit values, 272
- IP protocol numbers, 310
- IPT functional areas, 534
- IPv4 address classes, 278
- IPv4 address types, 278
- IPv4 and IPv6 routing protocols, 354
- IPv4 default network address masks, 282
- IPv4 private address space, 279
- IPv4 protocol numbers, 270
- IPv6 address autoconfiguration scheme, 324
- IPv6 address prefixes, 319
- IPv6 address types, 319
- IPv6 and IPv4 characteristics, 334
- IPv6 deployment model comparison, 332
- IPv6 deployment models, list of, 333
- IPv6 mechanisms, 324-325
- IPv6 prefix allocation, 314
- IronPort WSA modes, 494
- ISR versus ISR G2 features, 249
- LAN device comparison chart, 94
- link efficiency in WAN design, 220
- lowering cost of ownership, 12
- LSA header S2 S1 bits, 402
- major LSA types, 396-397
- major router types, 395
- multicast addresses, 424
- multicast scope assignments, 318
- NAT concepts, 282
- NetFlow output descriptions, 21
- network delays, 554
- network management elements, 578
- network management protocol comparison, 589
- network security life cycle, 457
- network virtualization design considerations, 145
- OSPF interface costs, 392
- OSPFv3 LSA types, 402-403
- packet loss sensitivities, 538
- PPDIOO life cycle phases, 15
- public versus private addresses (IPv4), 281
- QoS considerations, 217
- QoS scheme summary in IPT design, 560

- redundancy models, 65
- risk index calculation, 461
- RMON1 groups, 584
- RMON2 groups, 585
- routing protocol characteristics, 356
- routing protocols on hierarchical network infrastructure, 422
- scalability constraints for Gigabit Ethernet networks, 86
- scalability constraints for IEEE 802.3 networks, 83
- security legislation, 449
- security policy documents, 459
- security risks, 453
- security threats, 450
- service class recommendations, 562
- SNMP message types, 582
- SNMP security levels, 583
- subnet masks, 283
- summarization of networks, 418
- syslog message levels, 588
- top-down approach to network design, 24
- ToS field values, 272
- UDP ports used by WLAN protocols, 186
- video media application models, 538
- virtualization key drivers, 141
- VoIP bandwidth requirements, 550-551
- VoIP protocols, 549
- VPN protocols, 468-469
- WAN application requirements, 214
- WAN bandwidth comparisons, 215
- WAN link characteristics, 216
- WAN transport technology comparison, 205
- WAN/MAN architecture comparison, 243
- well-known IPv6 multicast addresses, 318-319, 431
- wireless mesh components, 182
- WLAN controller platforms, 167, 171
- WLAN design considerations, 183
- WLAN standards summary, 157
- WLC components, 169
- WLC interface types, 170-171
- WLC redundancy, 178
- message format**
  - in RIPng, 365-366
  - in RIPv2, 363-364
- message levels (syslog protocol), 588**
- message types (SNMP), 582**
- metrics**
  - default metric in route redistribution, 420-421
  - in EIGRP, 370-371
  - in OSPFv2, 391-392
  - for routing protocols, 356-361
    - bandwidth*, 357
    - cost*, 358
    - delay*, 359
    - hop count*, 356-357
    - load*, 358-359
    - loop prevention*, 360-361
    - MTU parameter*, 360
    - reliability*, 359
- Metro Ethernet, 209, 237-238**
- MGCP in VoIP, 544**
- MIB (Management Information Base), 580-581**
- mobility groups in Cisco UWN, 174-176**
- MPLS (multiprotocol label switching), 211, 238-239**
- MPLS Layer 3, 239**
- MPPP (Multilink Point-to-Point Protocol), 65**

- MTU (maximum transmission unit),** 360
- multicast addresses,** 423-424
- in IPv6, 317-319, 430-431
  - Layer 3-to-Layer 2 mapping, 424
- multicast distribution trees,** 428
- multicast traffic,** 423-431
- campus LAN design best practices, 108-109
  - CGMP (Cisco Group Management Protocol), 426-427
  - DVMRP, 430
  - IGMP, 425-426
  - IGMP snooping, 427
  - PIM, 428-430
  - sparse versus dense, 427-428
- Multilink Point-to-Point Protocol (MPPP),** 65
- multiprotocol label switching (MPLS),** 211, 238-239
- multiservice networks.** *See IP telephony networks*
- multisite WAN with centralized call processing deployment model for IP telephony networks,** 536
- multisite WAN with distributed call processing deployment model for IP telephony networks,** 536-537

## N

---

- N+1 WLC redundancy,** 176
- N+N WLC redundancy,** 177
- N+N+1 WLC redundancy,** 177
- name resolution**
- in IPv4, 290-295
  - ARP*, 295
  - DNS*, 292-294
  - in IPv6, 321-322
- NAT (Network Address Translation),** 279-282
- ND (Neighbor Discovery) protocol in IPv6,** 320-321
- neighbor discovery and recovery in EIGRP,** 368
- Neighbor Discovery (ND) protocol in IPv6,** 320-321
- neighbors in BGP,** 405-406
- NetFlow,** 21, 585587
- Network Address Translation (NAT),** 279-282
- network analysis tools,** 22
- network architectures.** *See enterprise architectures*
- network audit tools,** 18-21
- network availability, increasing,** 12, 62-63. *See also DoS (denial of service) attacks*
- network checklist,** 22-23
- network delays.** *See delay components in IP telephony networks*
- network design.** *See also campus LAN design; enterprise LAN design; WAN design*
- borderless network architecture, 58
  - Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 47-58
    - e-commerce submodule*, 50-51
    - enterprise campus module*, 48-50
    - enterprise edge area*, 50-54
    - enterprise WAN submodule*, 53-54
    - Internet connectivity submodule*, 51-52
    - remote modules*, 55-57
    - resources for information*, 65
    - service provider edge module*, 54-55

- customer requirements, identifying, 15-17
  - design document, 25-26
  - enterprise architectures.
    - See* enterprise architectures
  - existing network, characterizing, 17-23
  - hierarchical network models, 40-46
    - access layer*, 43-44
    - benefits of*, 40-41
    - Cisco Enterprise Architecture model hierarchical layers*, 44-45
    - core layer*, 41-42
    - distribution layer*, 42-43
    - examples of*, 45-46
    - resources for information*, 65
  - high availability network services, 58-65
    - link media redundancy*, 64-65
    - resources for information*, 65
    - route redundancy*, 62-63
    - server redundancy*, 61-62
    - workstation-to-router redundancy*, 59-61
  - PPDIOO life cycle.
    - See* PPDIOO life cycle
  - prototype and pilot tests, 24-25
  - resources for information, 26
  - security policies in, 462
  - top-down approach, 23-25
  - network devices, security integration with, 497-502
    - Catalyst 6500 service modules, 500-502
    - Cisco security appliances, 499-500
    - endpoint security, 502
    - intrusion prevention, 500
    - IOS security, 498
    - ISR G2 security hardware options, 499
  - network interface layer (TCP/IP architecture), 666
  - network layer (OSI model), 663-664
  - network life cycle. *See* PPDIOO life cycle
  - network management
    - CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol), 587
    - comparison of protocols, 589
    - elements of, 578
    - FCAPS, 578
    - NetFlow, 585-587
    - resources for information, 589-590
    - RMON1, 583-584
    - RMON2, 584-585
    - SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol), 579-583
      - components of*, 579-580
      - MIB (Management Information Base)*, 580-581
      - SNMPv1, 581-582
      - SNMPv2, 582
      - SNMPv3, 582-583
    - syslog protocol, 588-589
  - network portion of address, determining, 285
  - network requirements.
    - See* customer requirements
  - network security. *See* security
  - network virtualization, 142, 144-145
  - next-hop attribute in BGP, 411
  - nibbles, 672
  - NSSAs in OSPFv2, 398-399
  - numbering plan (PSTN), 526-527
- 
- ## O
- octets, 672
  - Open Shortest Path First. *See* OSPFv2; OSPFv3

**Open Systems Interconnection model.**  
*See OSI (Open Systems Interconnection) model*

**Operate phase (PPDIOO life cycle),** 14

**Optimize phase (PPDIOO life cycle),** 14

optional attributes in BGP, 411

ordering WAN transport technologies, 212-213

origin attribute in BGP, 411-412

**OSI (Open Systems Interconnection) model,** 661-665

- application layer, 665
- data link layer, 663
- layered communication example, 666-667
- network layer, 663-664
- physical layer, 662
- presentation layer, 665
- session layer, 664
- TCP/IP architecture mapping to, 665
- transport layer, 664

**OSPFv2,** 391-400

- adjacencies and Hello timers, 392-393
- areas, 393
- autonomous system external path types, 397
- characteristics of, 400
- DRs, 395-396
- LSA types, 396-397
- metrics, 391-392
- NSSAs, 398-399
- route redistribution, 421
- router authentication, 399
- router types, 394-395
- stub area types, 397-398
- virtual links, 399

**OSPFv3,** 325, 400-404

- areas and router types, 401
- changes from OSPFv2, 400-401

- characteristics of, 404
- LSA types, 401-403
- route redistribution, 421

**outdoor wireless with wireless mesh design,** 181-182

**output descriptions in NetFlow,** 21

overheating in data center design, 132-133

## P

---

- packet loss sensitivities,** 538, 555
- packet types in EIGRP,** 371-372
- packet-switched WANs,** 230
- partial-mesh networks,** 63
- partial-mesh topology in WAN design,** 231-232
- passwords, defined,** 464
- path attributes in BGP,** 410-413
- path isolation in network virtualization design,** 145
- path MTU discovery in IPv6,** 322
- Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS),** 449
- PBR (policy-based routing),** 416
- PBX, PSTN switches versus,** 518-519.  
*See also voice networks*
- PCI DSS (Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard),** 449
- Pearland Hospital scenario,** 599-604
- Pearson Cert Practice Test engine,** 617-618
- phases in PPDIOO life cycle,** 15
- physical layer (OSI model),** 662
- physical security,** 470-471
- pilot network tests,** 24-25
- PIM,** 428-430
- PIM DR,** 429
- PIM-SM,** 429

- PIMv2 bootstrap routers, 430
- Plan phase (PPDIOO life cycle), 14
- platforms
  - for network security, 485-486
  - for security management, 495-496
- poison reverse, 361
- policies. *See also* security policies
- policing in WAN design, 219
- policy-based routing (PBR), 416
- port scanning tools, 450-451
- ports in voice networks, 520-521
- power usage in data center design, 131-132
- PPDIOO life cycle, 1115
  - accelerating access to applications and services, 13
  - benefits of, 11
  - design methodology, 15
  - Design phase, 14
  - Implement phase, 14
  - improving business agility, 12
  - increasing network availability, 12
  - lowering cost of ownership, 12
  - Operate phase, 14
  - Optimize phase, 14
  - phases in, 15
  - Plan phase, 14
  - Prepare phase, 13
  - in WAN design, 213
- precedence bit values in IPv4 headers, 272
- prefixes in IPv6 addresses, 312-314, 319
- Prepare phase (PPDIOO life cycle), 13
- presentation layer (OSI model), 665
- priority queueing in WAN design, 218
- private addresses (IPv4), 279-282
- processing delay in IP telephony networks, 553
- profiles, enterprise branch architectures, 248-249
- propagation delay in IP telephony networks, 553
- protocol numbers, IPv4 headers, 270
- protocol translation, IPv4 to IPv6, 328-329
- protocol-dependent modules in EIGRP, 368
- protocols. *See also* routing protocols
  - VoIP control and transport protocols, 541-549
    - DHCP, DNS, TFTP, 542
    - H.264 standard, 547
    - H.323 standard, 544-547
    - MGCP, 544
    - RTP and RTCP, 543
    - SCCP, 542
    - SIP, 548-549
  - VPN protocols, 467-469
- prototype network tests, 24-25
- pruning PIM-SM, 429
- PSTN. *See also* voice networks
  - call detail records (CDR), 528
  - Centrex services, 528
  - described, 518
  - numbering plan, 526-527
  - PBX switches versus, 518-519
  - voice mail, 528
- public addresses (IPv4), private addresses (IPv4) versus, 280-282

## Q

---

QoS (quality of service)

in IPT design, 555-560  
*Auto QoS*, 559  
*cRTP*, 556  
*IEEE 802.1P*, 556557  
*LFI*, 557  
*LLQ*, 557-559  
*RSPV*, 557  
in WAN design, 217  
**Q.SIG signaling**, 524-525

## R

---

**rack servers in data center design**, 128  
**radio management in wireless LAN design**, 178-180  
RF groups, 179  
RF site surveys, 179-180  
**RDP**, 59  
**REAP in branch LAN design**, 184  
**reconnaissance**, 450  
port scanning tools, 450-451  
vulnerability scanning tools, 451-452  
**redistribution of routes**, 419-421  
default metric, 420-421  
OSPF redistribution, 421  
**redundancy**. *See high availability network services*  
**Regional Internet Registries (RIR)**, 276  
**reliability**  
for routing protocols, 359  
in WAN design, 215  
**remote modules in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model**, 55-57  
**remote-access network design**, 232  
**repeaters**  
100BASE-T Ethernet, 85-86  
enterprise LAN design, 90

**requirements, application requirements in WAN design**, 214  
**resource records (DNS)**, 294  
**Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) in VoIP**, 557  
**resources for information**  
campus LAN design, 109  
CCDA exam updates, 657-658  
Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 65  
enterprise data center design, 145-146  
enterprise LAN design, 109  
hierarchical network models, 65  
high availability network services, 65  
IP telephony networks, 562-563  
IPv4, 296  
IPv6, 334-335  
network design, 26  
network management, 589-590  
**OSI (Open Systems Interconnection) model**, 675  
routing protocols, 375-376, 431-432  
security, 473, 507  
TCP/IP architecture, 675  
voice networks, 562-563  
WAN design, 255  
WANs (wide area networks), 220  
**WLANS (wireless LANs)**, 186  
**response time in WAN design**, 214  
**RF groups in wireless LAN design**, 179  
**RF site surveys in wireless LAN design**, 179-180  
**RIP**, 59-60  
**RIPng**, 325, 362, 365-367  
authentication, 365  
characteristics of, 366-367  
design, 366  
message format, 365-366  
timers, 365

- RIPv2, 362
  - authentication, 362
  - characteristics of, 364-365
  - design, 364
  - message format, 363-364
  - routing database, 362
  - timers, 364
- RIR (Regional Internet Registries), 276
- risk assessments, 459-460
- risk index calculation, 460-461
- risks to security, 453
- RMON1, 583-584, 586587
- RMON2, 584587
- roaming in Cisco UWN, 173-176
- route manipulation, 416-422
  - filtering, 421-422
  - on hierarchical network infrastructure, 422
  - PBR (policy-based routing), 416
  - redistribution, 419-421
    - default metric*, 420-421
    - OSPF redistribution*, 421
    - summarization, 416-419
  - route redundancy, 62-63
  - route reflectors in BGP, 407409
  - router authentication in OSPFv2, 399
  - router types
    - in OSPFv2, 394-395
    - in OSPFv3, 401
  - routers in enterprise LAN design, 92-93
  - routing database in RIPv2, 362
  - routing protocols
    - administrative distance, 355-356
    - BGP, 404-416
      - administrative distance*, 409
      - characteristics of*, 415-416
    - confederations, 409
    - decision process, 414415
    - eBGP, 406
    - iBGP, 406-407
    - neighbors, 405-406
    - path attributes, 410-413
    - route reflectors, 407-409
      - weight*, 414
    - classless versus classful routing protocols, 353-354
    - design characteristics of, 348, 356
    - distance-vector routing protocols, 351-353
    - EIGRP, 351-352, 367375
      - characteristics of*, 375
      - components of*, 367
      - design*, 372
      - DUAL and*, 368-369
      - for IPv4*, 373
      - for IPv6*, 373-374
      - metrics*, 370-371
      - neighbor discovery and recovery*, 368
      - packet types*, 371-372
      - protocol-dependent modules*, 368
      - RTP and*, 368
      - timers*, 369-370
    - on hierarchical network infrastructure, 422
    - hierarchical versus flat routing protocols, 353
    - interior versus exterior protocols, 350-351
    - IPv4 versus IPv6 routing protocols, 354
    - in IPv6, 325-326
    - link-state routing protocols, 352353
    - list of, 349-350

metrics, 356-361  
*bandwidth*, 357  
*cost*, 358  
*delay*, 359  
*hop count*, 356-357  
*load*, 358-359  
*loop prevention*, 360-361  
*MTU parameter*, 360  
*reliability*, 359

OSPFv2, 391-400  
*adjacencies and Hello timers*, 392-393  
*areas*, 393  
*autonomous system external path types*, 397  
*characteristics of*, 400  
*DRs*, 395-396  
*LSA types*, 396-397  
*metrics*, 391-392  
*NSSAs*, 398-399  
*router authentication*, 399  
*router types*, 394-395  
*stub area types*, 397-398  
*virtual links*, 399

OSPFv3, 400-404  
*areas and router types*, 401  
*changes from OSPFv2*, 400-401  
*characteristics of*, 404  
*LSA types*, 401-403

resources for information, 375-376, 431-432

RIPng, 362, 365-367  
*authentication*, 365  
*characteristics of*, 366-367  
*design*, 366  
*message format*, 365-366  
*timers*, 365

RIPv2, 362  
*authentication*, 362  
*characteristics of*, 364-365  
*design*, 364  
*message format*, 363-364  
*routing database*, 362  
*timers*, 364

static versus dynamic assignment, 348-350

**RSVP (Resource Reservation Protocol in VoIP)**, 557

**RTCP in VoIP**, 543

**RTP**  
EIGRP and, 368  
in VoIP, 543

## S

---

**Sarbanes-Oxley (SOX)**, 449

**scalability constraints**  
for Gigabit Ethernet networks, 86  
for IEEE 802.3 networks, 83

**scalability with gatekeepers**, 545-546

**scanning tools**  
port scanning, 450-451  
vulnerability scanning, 451-452

**SCCP in VoIP**, 542

**scenarios**  
Beauty Things Store, 606-608  
Big Oil and Gas, 604-606  
Falcon Communications, 608-610  
Pearland Hospital, 599-604

**SCF (Security Control Framework)**, 486

**secure connectivity**, 466-470  
data integrity, 469-470  
encryption, 466-467

## security

Cisco SAFE (Security Architecture for the Enterprise), 484-486  
 Cisco SCF (Security Control Framework), 486  
 DoS (denial of service) attacks, 454-455  
 enterprise security, 502-506  
*campus security*, 502-503  
*data center security*, 503-504  
*enterprise edge and WAN security*, 504-506  
 integration with network devices, 497-502  
*Catalyst 6500 service modules*, 500-502  
*Cisco security appliances*, 499-500  
*endpoint security*, 502  
*intrusion prevention*, 500  
*IOS security*, 498  
*ISR G2 security hardware options*, 499  
 integrity violations and confidentiality breaches, 455-456  
 in IPv6, 324  
 legislation concerning, 448-449  
 management solutions, 472, 495-496  
 network security life cycle, 457  
 overview, 448  
 platforms for, 485-486  
 port scanning tools, 450-451  
 resources for information, 473, 507  
 risks, 453  
 secure connectivity, 466-470  
*data integrity*, 469-470  
*encryption*, 466-467  
*transmission confidentiality*, 469  
*VPN protocols*, 467-469

## security policies, 456-462

*components of*, 459  
*continuous security*, 461-462  
*creating*, 458  
*defined*, 457-458  
*in network design*, 462  
*purpose of*, 458  
*risk assessments*, 459-460  
*risk index calculation*, 460-461  
 targets, 453-454  
 threat defense, 470-472  
*infrastructure protection*, 471-472  
*physical security*, 470-471  
 threat detection and mitigation, 490-494  
 threat types, 450  
 trust and identity management, 462-466  
*access control*, 466  
*certificates*, 465  
*domains of trust*, 463-464  
*identity*, *defined*, 464  
*passwords*, 464  
*technologies for*, 486-490  
*tokens*, 464-465  
*trust*, *defined*, 463  
 unauthorized access, 452-453  
 vulnerability scanning tools, 451-452  
 in WLANs, 157-160  
**security appliances**, 499-500  
**Security Control Framework (SCF)**, 486  
**security levels (SNMP)**, 583  
**security policies**, 456-462  
*components of*, 459  
*continuous security*, 461-462  
*creating*, 458  
*defined*, 457-458  
*in network design*, 462

- purpose of, 458
- risk assessments, 459-460
- risk index calculation, 460-461
- serialization delay in IP telephony networks, 553**
- server connectivity options, campus LAN design best practices, 105**
- server deployment challenges in data center design, 127-135**
  - cabling, 133-135
  - cooling, 132-133
  - facilities, 128-129
  - power usage, 131-132
  - space allotment, 130
- server farms, campus LAN design best practices, 104**
- server redundancy, 61-62**
- server virtualization, 144**
- servers, WLAN access control, 159-160**
- service access, accelerating, 13**
- service block deployment model, IPv4 to IPv6, 330**
- service class recommendations in IPT design, 561-562**
- service provider edge module in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 54-55**
- service provider VPNs**
  - enterprise VPNs versus, 233-239
  - Metro Ethernet, 237-238
  - MPLS, 238-239
  - MPLS Layer 3, 239
  - VPLS, 238
- service set identifier (SSID), 157**
- services edge in network virtualization design, 145**
- session layer (OSI model), 664**
- shared distribution trees, 428**
- show version command, 20-21**
- signaling types in voice networks, 521-526**
  - addressing digit signaling, 526
  - CAS and CCS signaling, 524
  - E&M signaling, 523-524
  - ground-start signaling, 522-523
  - ISDN PRI/BRI service, 524
  - loop-start signaling, 522
  - Q.SIG signaling, 524-525
  - SS7 signaling, 525
  - T1/E1 CAS signaling, 524
- single-site deployment model for IP telephony networks, 535-536**
- SIP in VoIP, 548-549**
- small and remote site LANs, campus LAN design best practices, 103-104**
- small branch design in enterprise branch architectures, 250**
- SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol), 579-583**
  - components of, 579-580
  - MIB (Management Information Base), 580-581
  - NetFlow versus, 586-587
  - SNMPv1, 581-582
  - SNMPv2, 582
  - SNMPv3, 582-583
- SNMPv1, 581-582**
- SNMPv2, 582**
- SNMPv3, 582-583**
- software, enterprise WAN design, 245-247**
- SONET/SDH, 209-210**
- source distribution trees, 428**
- SOX (Sarbanes-Oxley), 449**
- space allotment in data center design, 130**

sparse multicast distribution, dense multicast distribution versus, 427-428

split horizon, 360

split-MAC architecture in Cisco UWN, 163-164

SS7 signaling, 525

SSID (service set identifier), 157

stateless autoconfiguration

- of globally unique IPv6 addresses, 323
- of link-local IPv6 addresses, 322-323

static IP addressing, 290-291

static routes, dynamic routes versus, 348-350

STP (Spanning Tree Protocol), 91

stub area types in OSPFv2, 397-398

study plan, 616-618

study tools, 613-616

subnet mask values for binary numbers, 675

subnets (IPv4), 282-290

- default network address masks, 282
- design, 283-284
- IP telephony networks, 288
- loopback addresses, 288
- network portion of address, determining, 285
- representation of, 283

variable-length subnet masks (VLSM), 286-288

subnetting practice, 616-617

summarization in routing protocols, 361, 416-419

switched hierarchical network designs, 45

switches

- enterprise LAN design, 91-92
- PSTN versus PBX, 518-519

syslog protocol, 588-589

# T

---

T1/E1 CAS signaling, 524

tables. *See memory tables*

targets of security threats, 453-454

TCP/IP architecture, 665-667

- application layer, 666
- host-to-host transport layer, 666
- Internet layer, 666
- layered communication example, 666-667
- network interface layer, 666
- OSI (Open Systems Interconnection) model mapping to, 665

TDM (time-division multiplexing), 209

teleworkers. *See enterprise teleworker architectures*

tests, prototype and pilot network tests, 24-25

TFTP in VoIP, 542

threats

- defense against, 470-472
- infrastructure protection*, 471-472
- physical security*, 470-471
- detection and mitigation, 490-494
- types of, 450

throughput in WAN design, 214-215

time-division multiplexing (TDM), 209

timers

- in EIGRP, 369-370
- in OSPFv2, 392-393
- in RIPng, 365
- in RIPv2, 364

tokens, defined, 464-465

tools

- network analysis tools, 22
- network audit tools, 18-21

- port scanning tools, 450-451
- vulnerability scanning tools, 451-452
- top-down approach to network design, 23-25**
- topologies**
  - Data Center 3.0 topology components, 127
  - WAN design, 230-232
    - full-mesh topology*, 231
    - hub-and-spoke topology*, 230-231
    - partial-mesh topology*, 231-232
- ToS field in IPv4 headers, 271-274**
  - DSCP AF packet-drop precedence values, 273
  - DSCP and IP precedence values, 273
  - IP DSCP values, 274
  - IP precedence bit values, 272
    - values, 272
- totally stubby areas in OSPFv2, 398**
- traditional voice architectures, 518-530**
  - ACD, 528
  - blocking probability, 530
  - busy hour, 529
  - busy-hour traffic (BHT), 529-530
  - call detail records (CDR), 528, 530
  - Centrex services, 528
  - Centum call second (CCS), 529
  - Erlangs, 528-529
  - grade of service (GoS), 528
  - IVR systems, 528
  - local loops and trunks, 519-520
  - ports, 520-521
  - PSTN
    - described*, 518
    - numbering plan*, 526-527
    - PBX switches versus*, 518-519
- signaling types, 521-526**
  - addressing digit signaling*, 526
  - CAS and CCS signaling*, 524
  - E&M signaling*, 523-524
  - ground-start signaling*, 522-523
  - ISDN PRI/BRI service*, 524
  - loop-start signaling*, 522
  - Q.SIG signaling*, 524-525
  - SS7 signaling*, 525
  - T1/E1 CAS signaling*, 524
- voice mail, 528
- traffic shaping in WAN design, 219**
- transition mechanisms, IPv4 to IPv6, 326-333**
  - dual-stack transitions, 326
  - IPv6 over IPv4 tunnels, 326-328
    - protocol translation, 328-329
- transmission confidentiality, 469**
- transport layer (OSI model), 664**
- transport technologies for WANs, 204-213**
  - cable, 206-207
  - comparison of, 205
  - dark fiber cabling, 211-212
  - DSL, 206
  - DWDM, 212
  - Frame Relay, 208-209
  - ISDN, 205-206
  - Metro Ethernet, 209
  - MPLS, 211
  - ordering, 212-213
  - SONET/SDH, 209-210
  - TDM, 209
  - wireless, 207-208
- triggered updates, 361**
- trunks in voice networks, 519-520**

**trust**

- defined, 463
- domains of, 463-464
- trust and identity management, 462-466**
  - access control, 466
  - certificates, 465
  - domains of trust, 463-464
  - identity, defined, 464
  - passwords, 464
  - technologies for, 486-490
  - tokens, 464-465
  - trust, defined, 463

**tunneling, IPv6 over IPv4 tunnels, 326-328. See also VPNs (virtual private networks)**

**U**

- UDP ports, WLAN protocols and, 186**
- unauthorized access, 158, 450, 452-453.**
  - See also access control*
- unicast addresses in IPv6, 314-316**
- unified computing as Data Center 3.0 component, 126**
- unified fabric as Data Center 3.0 component, 126**
- UNII frequencies, 156-157**
- unique local addresses in IPv6, 315-316**
- updates to CCDA exam, 657658**
- U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA), 449**

**V**

- VAD in IPT design, 550-551**
- variable delays in IP telephony networks, 553-554**
- variable-length subnet masks (VLSM), 286-288**
- video deployment over IP telephony networks, 537-539**
- virtual links in OSPFv2, 399**
- Virtual Port Channel (vPC), 143**
- Virtual Private LAN Services (VPLS), 238**
- virtual private networks. *See* VPNs (virtual private networks)**
- virtual routing and forwarding (VRF), 143**
- Virtual Switching System (VSS), 45-46, 98, 143**
- virtual tunnel interface (VTI), 237**
- virtualization, 141-145**
  - benefits of, 141-142
  - challenges, 141
  - as Data Center 3.0 component, 126
  - design considerations, 144-145
  - technologies for, 143-144
  - types of, 142
- VLSM (variable-length subnet masks), 286-288**
- voice bandwidth, calculating, 551-552**
- voice mail, 528**
- voice networks**
  - IP telephony networks, 530-549
    - codecs, 539-541*
    - components of, 532-534*
    - deployment models of, 535-537*
    - design considerations, 549-562*
    - design goals of, 534-535*
    - video deployment, 537-539*
    - VoIP (voice over IP), 531-532*
    - VoIP control and transport protocols, 541-549*
  - resources for information, 562-563
  - traditional voice architectures, 518-530
    - ACD, 528*
    - blocking probability, 530*

- busy hour*, 529
  - busy-hour traffic (BHT)*, 529-530
  - call detail records (CDR)*, 528, 530
  - Centrex services*, 528
  - Centum call second (CCS)*, 529
  - Erlangs*, 528-529
  - grade of service (GoS)*, 528
  - IVR systems*, 528
  - local loops and trunks*, 519-520
  - ports*, 520-521
  - PSTN, described*, 518
  - PSTN numbering plan*, 526-527
  - PSTN versus PBX switches*, 518-519
  - signaling types*, 521-526
  - voice mail*, 528
  - VoIP (voice over IP)**, 531-532
    - control and transport protocols, 541-549
      - DHCP, DNS, TFTP*, 542
      - H.264 standard*, 547
      - H.323 standard*, 544-547
      - MGCP*, 544
      - RTP and RTCP*, 543
      - SCCP*, 542
      - SIP*, 548-549
  - vPC (Virtual Port Channel)**, 143
  - VPLS (Virtual Private LAN Services)**, 238
  - VPN/remote access submodule in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model**, 52-53
  - VPNs (virtual private networks)**
    - benefits of, 239
    - Cisco Easy VPN, 235
    - DMVPN, 236
    - enterprise VPN versus service provider VPN, 233-239
    - GRE (generic routing encapsulation), 236
    - IPsec, 234
  - IPsec direct encapsulation, 234-235
  - IPsec VTI, 237
  - L2TPv3, 237
  - Metro Ethernet, 237-238
  - MPLS, 238-239
  - MPLS Layer 3, 239
  - network design, 232-233
  - protocols, 467-469
  - VPLS, 238
  - VRF (virtual routing and forwarding)**, 143
  - VRRP**, 61
  - VSS (Virtual Switching System)**, 45-46, 98, 143
  - vulnerability scanning tools, 451-452
- 
- ## W
- WAN design**, 202, 213-220
    - application requirements, 214
    - bandwidth comparisons, 215-216
    - class-based weighted fair queueing, 218-219
    - classification, 218
    - congestion management, 218
    - custom queueing, 218
    - enterprise branch architectures, 248-253
      - design rules*, 248
      - ISR versus ISR G2 features*, 249
      - large branch design*, 252-253
      - medium branch design*, 250-251
      - profiles*, 248-249
      - small branch design*, 250
    - enterprise teleworker architectures, 254-255
    - enterprise WAN architectures, 241-244
      - Cisco Enterprise MAN/WAN architecture*, 243

enterprise WAN components, 245-247  
link characteristics, 216-217  
link efficiency, 220  
low-latency queueing, 219  
priority queueing, 218  
QoS (quality of service), 217  
redundancy, 240-241  
reliability, 215  
remote-access network design, 232  
resources for information, 220, 255  
response time, 214  
throughput, 214-215  
topologies, 230-232

- full-mesh topology*, 231
- hub-and-spoke topology*, 230-231
- partial-mesh topology*, 231-232

traditional technologies for, 230-232  
traffic shaping and policing, 219  
VPNs (virtual private networks)

- benefits of*, 239
- Cisco Easy VPN*, 235
- DMVPN*, 236
- enterprise VPN versus service provider VPN*, 233-239
- GRE (generic routing encapsulation)*, 236
- IPsec*, 234
- IPsec direct encapsulation*, 234-235
- IPsec VTI*, 237
- L2TPv3*, 237
- Metro Ethernet*, 237-238
- MPLS*, 238-239
- MPLS Layer 3*, 239
- network design*, 232-233
- VPLS*, 238

weighted fair queueing, 218  
window size, 220

**WANs (wide area networks).**

*See also WAN design*  
connection modules, 203-204  
defined, 202  
enterprise WAN submodule in Cisco Enterprise Architecture model, 53-54  
resources for information, 220  
security for, 504-506  
transport technologies, 204-213

- cable*, 206-207
- comparison of*, 205
- dark fiber cabling*, 211-212
- DSL*, 206
- DWDM*, 212
- Frame Relay*, 208-209
- ISDN*, 205-206
- Metro Ethernet*, 209
- MPLS*, 211
- ordering*, 212-213
- SONET/SDH*, 209-210
- TDM*, 209
- wireless*, 207-208

watts, BTU conversion, 133  
Web sites, CCDA exam updates, 657  
weight in BGP, 414  
weighted fair queueing in WAN design, 218  
well-known attributes in BGP, 410  
well-known IPv6 multicast addresses, 318-319, 431  
wide area networks. *See* **WANs**  
(wide area networks)  
window size in WAN design, 220  
wireless LAN design, 176-186

- branch LAN design, 184-186
- H-REAP*, 184-185
- local MAC support*, 184

- REAP, 184*
- UDP ports used in, 186*
- campus LAN design, 183-184
- EoIP tunnels, 181
- outdoor wireless with wireless mesh design, 181-182
- radio management, 178-180
  - RF groups, 179*
  - RF site surveys, 179-180*
- resources for information, 186
- WLC redundancy design, 176-178
- wireless LANs (WLANs). *See WLANs (wireless LANs)***
  - wireless mesh for outdoor wireless, 181-182
  - wireless technologies for WANs, 207-208
- WLANs (wireless LANs).**  
*See also wireless LAN design*
  - Cisco UWN (Unified Wireless Network), 160-176
    - AP controller equipment scaling, 171*
    - AP modes, 164-166*
    - architectures, 160-161*
    - authentication, 167-169*
    - CAPWAP, 163*
    - local MAC support, 164*
    - LWAPP, 162*
    - LWAPP discovery of WLC, 166-167*
    - roaming, 173-176*
    - split-MAC architecture, 163-164*
    - WLC components, 169*
    - WLC interface types, 169-171*
  - controller platforms, 167,171
  - ISM and UNII frequencies, 156-157
  - Layer 2 access method, 157
- resources for information, 186
- security, 157-160
- SSID (service set identifier), 157
- standards, 155-157
- WLC (wireless LAN controller)**
  - components, 169
  - interface types, 169-171
  - LWAPP discovery of, 166-167
  - redundancy design, 176-178
- workstation-to-router redundancy, 59-61**
  - ARP, 59
  - explicit configuration, 59
  - GLBP, 61
  - HSRP, 60-61
  - RDP, 59
  - RIP, 59-60
  - VRRP, 61

*This page intentionally left blank*



---

## **APPENDIX D**

# Memory Tables

# Chapter 1

**Table 1-2** Benefits of Cisco Network Architectures

Benefit	Description
Functionality	Extensive feature set.
Scalability	Ability to handle increasing workloads.
Availability	High uptime and reliability.
Performance	Fast processing times.
Manageability	User-friendly interface and tools.
Efficiency	Cost-effective and resource-efficient.

**Table 1-3** Actions That Lower the Cost of Ownership

## **Actions That Lower the Cost of Ownership**

---

**Table 1-4** Actions That Increase Network Availability

## **Actions That Increase Network Availability**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Table 1-5** Actions That Improve Business Agility

## **Actions That Improve Business Agility**

---

---

---

---

---

---

**Table 1-6** Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services

## **Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services**

---

---

---

---

**Table 1-7** PPDIOO Network Life Cycle Phases

PPDIOO Phase	Description
Prepare	
Plan	
Design	
Implement	
Operate	
Optimize	

**Table 1-8** Netflow Output Description

Field	Description
Bytes	
Active	
Inactive	
Added	
Exporting flows	
Flows exported	
Protocol	

**Table 1-8** *Netflow Output Description*

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Total Flows	
Flows/sec	
Packets/flow	
Bytes/pkt	
Packets/sec	

**Table 1-9** *Characterizing the Network*

<b>Characteristic</b>	<b>Description</b>
Steps in gathering information	
Primary sources of network audit information	

**Table 1-10** *Top-Down Design Compared to Bottom-Up Design*

<b>Design Approach</b>	<b>Benefits</b>	<b>Disadvantages</b>
Top-down		
Bottom-up		

**Table 1-11** *Sections of the Design Document*

<b>Section</b>	<b>Description</b>
Introduction	
Design Requirements	
Existing Network Infrastructure	
Design	
Proof of Concept	
Implementation Plan	
Appendices	

## Chapter 2

**Table 2-2** *Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model*

<b>Hierarchical Layer</b>	<b>Description</b>
Core	

**Table 2-2** Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model

Hierarchical Layer	Description
Distribution	
Access	
Edge	

**Table 2-3** Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model

<b>Enterprise Area or Module</b>	<b>Description</b>
Enterprise campus area	
Enterprise edge area	
Enterprise WAN module	
Enterprise remote branch module	
Enterprise data center module	
Enterprise teleworker	

**Table 2-4** Redundancy Models

<b>Redundancy Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Workstation to router redundancy	
Server redundancy	
Route redundancy	
Link redundancy	

## Chapter 3

**Table 3-6** *Campus Transmission Media Comparison*

Specification	Copper/UTP	Multimode Fiber	Single-Mode Fiber	Wireless LAN
Bandwidth				
Distance				
Price				

**Table 3-7** *LAN Device Comparison*

Device	OSI Layer	Is Domain Protocol Transparent or Protocol Aware?	Boundary	What It Understands
Repeater				
Hub				
Bridge				
Switch				
Router				
Layer 3 switch				

**Table 3-8 Application Types**

<b>Application Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Peer to peer	
Client-local servers	
Client/server farms	
Client-enterprise edge servers	

**Table 3-9 Network Requirements for Application Types**

<b>Requirement</b>	<b>Peer to Peer</b>	<b>Client-Local Servers</b>	<b>Client/Server Farm</b>	<b>Client-Enterprise Edge Services</b>
Connectivity type				
Throughput required				
Availability				
Network costs				

**Table 3-10** *Campus Layer Design Best Practices*

<b>Campus Layer</b>	<b>Best Practices</b>
Access layer	
Distribution layer	
Core layer	

**Table 3-11** Network Requirements for Application Types

<b>Specification</b>	<b>Building Access</b>	<b>Distribution Layer</b>	<b>Campus Core</b>	<b>Server Farm</b>
Technology				
Scalability				
Availability				
Performance				
Cost per port				

## Chapter 4

**Table 4-2** Summary of Data Center Facility Considerations

<b>Data Center Facility Considerations</b>	<b>Description</b>
Architectural and mechanical specifications	
Environmental conditions	
Physical security	
Capacity limits	
Compliance and regulation	

**Table 4-3** *Data Center Core Drivers*

<b>Data Center Core Drivers</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Are there enough 10GE ports to connect campus core to multiple data center aggregation layers?
	Separate cores help to isolate campus distribution from DC aggregation for troubleshooting and quality of service/access control list (QoS/ACL) policies.
	The impact and downtime from implementing a core at a later date make it worthwhile to install sufficient core layers in the beginning.

**Table 4-4** *Virtualization Key Drivers*

<b>Virtualization Driving Forces</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Need to reduce rising cost of powering and cooling devices in the DC while getting more productivity
	DC consolidation of assets performing individual tasks
	Logical, separate user groups secured from other groups on the same network
	Eliminate underutilized hardware that exhibits poor performance/price ratio

**Table 4-5** *Network Virtualization Design Considerations*

<b>Network Virtualization Consideration</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Ensures users and devices are recognized, classified, and authorized for entry to their assigned network segments
	Provides independent logical traffic paths over shared network
	Ensures the right services are accessible to the intended users, groups, or devices

## Chapter 5

**Table 5-2 WLAN Standards Summary**

IEEE Protocol	Standard Release Date	Frequency	Typical Data Rate	Maximum Data Rate
Legacy				
802.11a				
802.11b				
802.11g				
802.11n				

**Table 5-3 Cisco UWN Architecture**

Cisco UWN Element	Description
Client devices	
Access points	
Network unification	
Network management	
Mobility services	

**Table 5-4 Access Point Modes**

AP Mode	Description
Local mode	
H-REAP mode	

**Table 5-4** Access Point Modes

<b>AP Mode</b>	<b>Description</b>
Monitor mode	
Rogue Detector mode	
Sniffer mode	
Bridge mode	

**Table 5-5** WLAN Controller Platforms

<b>Order</b>	<b>WLC</b>
First	
Second	
Third	
Fourth	
Fifth	

**Table 5-6** WLC Components

<b>WLC Component</b>	<b>Description</b>
WLAN	
Interface	
Port	

**Table 5-7** WLC Interface Types

<b>WLC Interface Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Management interface	
Service-port interface	

**Table 5-7** WLC Interface Types

<b>WLC Interface Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
AP manager interface	
Dynamic interface	
Virtual interface	

**Table 5-8** WLAN Controller Platforms

<b>Platform</b>	<b>Number of Supported Access Points</b>
Cisco 2100 series WLC	
Cisco WLC for ISRs	
Catalyst 3750 Integrated WLC	
Cisco 4400 series WLC	
Cisco 6500/7600 series WLC module	
Cisco 5500 series WLC	

**Table 5-9** WLC Redundancy

<b>WLC Redundancy</b>	<b>Description</b>
N+1	
N+N	
N+N+1	

**Table 5-10** *Wireless Mesh Components*

Wireless Mesh Component	Description
Wireless Control System (WCS)	
WLAN Controller (WLC)	
Rooftop AP (RAP)	
Mesh Access Point (MAP)	

**Table 5-11** *WLAN Design Considerations*

Design Item	Description
Number of APs	
Placement of APs	
Power for APs	
Number of WLCs	
Placement of WLCs	

**Table 5-13** UDP Ports Used by WLAN Protocols

<b>WLAN Protocol</b>	<b>UDP Port</b>
LWAPP control	
LWAPP data	
WLC exchange messages (unencrypted)	
WLC exchange messages (encrypted)	
RF group IEEE 802.11b/g	
RF group IEEE 802.11a	
CAPWAP control	
CAPWAP data	

## Chapter 6

**Table 6-2** WAN Comparison

<b>WAN Technology</b>	<b>Bandwidth</b>	<b>Reliability</b>	<b>Latency</b>	<b>Cost</b>
ISDN				
DSL				
Cable				
Wireless				
Frame Relay				
TDM				
Metro Ethernet				
SONET/SDH				
MPLS				
Dark fiber				
DWDM				

**Table 6-4** Physical Bandwidth Comparison

<b>Bandwidth</b>	<b>Less Than 2 Mbps</b>	<b>2 Mbps to 45 Mbps</b>	<b>45 Mbps to 100 Mbps</b>	<b>100 Mbps to 10 Gbps</b>
Copper				
Fiber				
Wireless				

**Table 6-5** WAN Link Characteristics

	<b>Use</b>	<b>Cost</b>	<b>Advantages</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Private	WAN to connect distant LANs	Owner must buy and configure network.  Expensive to maintain.	High security.  Transmission quality.	
Leased	WAN to connect distant LANs	High cost.  Equipment is leased or private.	Provider is responsible for maintenance.  Dedicated bandwidth.	
Shared	Shared-circuit or packet-switched WAN	Cost is fair.  Bandwidth is leased.  Equipment is leased or private.	Provider is responsible for maintenance.  Shared network for multiple sites.	

**Table 6-6** *QoS Considerations*

<b>QoS Category</b>	<b>Description</b>
Classification	
Congestion management	
Link-efficiency mechanisms	
Traffic shaping and policing	

**Table 6-7** *Link-Efficiency Mechanisms*

<b>Mechanisms</b>	<b>Description</b>
Link fragmentation and inter-leaving (LFI)	
Multilink PPP (MLP)	
Real-Time Transport (RTP) header compression	

## Chapter 7

**Table 7-2** Benefits of Ethernet Handoffs at the Customer Edge

Benefit	Description
Service-enabling solution	
Flexible architecture	
Seamless enterprise integration	

**Table 7-3** WAN/MAN Architecture Comparison

Characteristic	Private WAN	ISP Service	SP MPLS/IP VPN	Private MPLS
High availability				
Growth support				
Security				
Ongoing expenses				
Ease of management				
Voice/video support				
Effort to migrate from private WAN				
Multicast				

**Table 7-4 Cisco Router/Switch Platform and Software Comparison**

<b>Router/Switch Hardware</b>	<b>Software</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Cisco IOS T Releases 12.3, 12.4, 12.3T, and 12.4T	Access routing platforms supporting fast and scalable delivery of data for enterprise applications.
	Cisco IOS 15.0(1)	Delivers security, voice, and IP services with support for rich-media applications such as HD video and on-demand services
	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SB	Delivers midrange routing services for the enterprise and SP edge networks.
	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SR	Delivers high-end LAN switching for enterprise access, distribution, core, and data center. Also supports Metro Ethernet for the SP edge.
	Cisco IOS XR	High availability, providing large scalability and flexibility for the SP core and edge (takes advantage of highly distributed processing capabilities of the Cisco CRS-1 routing systems and the Cisco 12000).
	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SE	Provides low-end to mid-range LAN switching for enterprise access and distribution deployments.
	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SG	Provides mid-range LAN switching for enterprise access and distribution in the campus. Also supports Metro Ethernet.
	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SX	Delivers high-end LAN switching for enterprise access, distribution, core, and data center. Also supports Metro Ethernet for the SP edge.

**Table 7-5** *ISR Versus ISR G2 Feature Comparison*

<b>Cisco ISR</b>	<b>Cisco ISR G2</b>
WAN performance	Up to 45 Mbps with services
Network processor	Single
Service module performance and capacity	1X and 160 GB storage
Onboard DSPs	Voice only
Switch modules	Fast Ethernet with Power over Ethernet (PoE); based on Catalyst 3750
IOS image	Multiple images
Services delivery	Hardware-coupled
Redundancy	Single motherboard
Energy efficiency	EnergyWise

## Chapter 8

**Table 8-11** *IPv4 Address type*

<b>Description</b>	<b>IPv4 Address Type</b>
The IP address of an interface on a single host. It can be a source or destination address	
An IP address that reaches all hosts in an address range. It is only a destination address.	
An IP address that reaches a group of hosts. It is only a destination address	

**Table 8-12** IPv4 Private Address Space

<b>Class Type</b>	<b>Start Address</b>	<b>End Address</b>
Class A		
Class B		
Class C		

**Table 8-13** Public Versus Private IP Addresses

<b>Network Location</b>	<b>Public or Private Address</b>
E-commerce module	
Intranet website	
External DNS servers	
Remote-access/VPN module	
Inside global address	
Real IP address of WWW server located in internal network	

**Table 8-14** NAT Concepts

<b>Description</b>	<b>NAT Address Type</b>
Commonly used to assign a network device with internal private IP address an unique public address so that they can be accessed from the Internet.	
Dynamically maps an unregistered or private IP address to a registered IP address from a pool (group) of registered addresses.	
Maps multiple unregistered or private IP addresses to a single registered IP address by using different ports.	

**Table 8-14** NAT Concepts

Description	NAT Address Type
The real IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the stub domain.	
The translated IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the public network.	
The real IP address of a device that resides in the Internet, outside the stub domain.	
The translated IP address of the device that resides in the Internet. This address is used inside the stub domain.	

**Table 8-16** Subnet Masks

Dotted Decimal	Bit Mask	Hexadecimal
255.0.0.0		
255.192.0.0		
255.255.0.0		
255.255.224.0		
255.255.240.0		
255.255.255.0		
255.255.255.128		
255.255.255.192		
255.255.255.224		
255.255.255.240		
255.255.255.248		
255.255.255.252		
255.255.255.255		

**Table 8-27** *DHCP Allocation Mechanisms*

<b>Network Location</b>	<b>Address Allocation Mechanism</b>
This mechanism can reuse the IP address after the lease expires.	
Dispatches an IP address allocated to a specific MAC address.	
Allocations of IP addresses are permanently assigned to a host.	

**Table 8-29** *DHCP and DNS Servers*

<b>Network Location</b>	<b>Server Type</b>
Campus Data Center	
Enterprise Branch	
E-Commerce	
Internet	
SP Edge Premises	
Remote Enterprise Data Center	

## Chapter 9

**Table 9-2** *IP Protocol Numbers*

Protocol Number	Protocol
6	
17	
50	
51	
85	
59	
60	
88	
89	

**Table 9-5** *Well-Known IPv6 Multicast Addresses*

Multicast Address	Multicast Group
FF01::1	
FF02::1	
FF01::2	
FF02::2	
FF02::5	
FF02::6	
FF02::9	
FF02::A	
FF02::B	
FF02::C	
FF02::D	

**Table 9-5 Well-Known IPv6 Multicast Addresses**

Multicast Address	Multicast Group
FF05::1	
FF0x::FB	
FF02::1:2	
FF05::1:3	

**Table 9-6 IPv6 Address Types**

Description	IPv4 Address Type
The IP address of an interface on a single host. It can be a source or destination address.	
An IP address that identifies a set of devices within an area. It is only a destination address.	
An IP address that reaches a group of hosts identified by the address. It is only a destination address	

**Table 9-7 IPv6 Addresses Prefix**

Description	IPv4 Address Type
0000::0001	
0000::0000	
2000::/3	
FC00::/7	
FE80:/10	
FF00::/8	
FF02::5	
FF02::A	
FF02::C	

**Table 9-8** *IPv6 Address Autoconfiguration Scheme*

Description	IPv6 Address Configuration Scheme
Host sends a neighbor-solicitation message that includes the target IPv6 address that begins with FE80::.	
Combines the router prefix with the local MAC address	
Provides stateful address allocation	

**Table 9-9** *IPv6 Mechanisms*

Description	IPv6 Mechanism
Performs diagnostics and reachability information. Next header number of 58.	
Discovers all nodes in the same link and checks for duplicate addresses.	
DNS resource record for IPv6.	
Provides stateful IPv6 address assignment.	
Routing protocol that uses UDP port 521.	
Cisco routing protocol for IPv6.	
Link-state routing protocol for IPv6.	

**Table 9-10** *IPv6 Deployment Model Comparison*

<b>IPv6 Deployment Model</b>	<b>Advantages</b>	<b>Disadvantages</b>
Dual-stack model		
Hybrid model 1		
Hybrid model 2		
Server block model		

**Table 9-11** *IPv6 Deployment Models*

<b>Description</b>	<b>IPv6 Deployment Model</b>
All routers and hosts run IPv6 and IPv4.	
Uses ISATAP or manually configured tunnels to allow dual-stack clients to connect to dual-stack servers over a IPv4 core.	
Uses ISATAP and manually configured tunnels to a service module.	

**Table 9-12** *IPv6 and IPv4 Characteristics*

Characteristic	IPv6	IPv4
Address length		
Address representation		
Header length		
Upper-layer protocols		
Link address resolution		
Address configuration		
DNS (name-to-address resolution)		
Interior routing protocols		
Classification and marking		
Private addresses		
Fragmentation		
Loopback address		
Address scope types		

# Chapter 10

**Table 10-2** *IGP and EGP Protocol Selection*

Description	Routing Protocol
Used to connect to an ISP	
IGP used in enterprise networks, supports large network and multi-vendor	
IGP used in large enterprise networks with Cisco routers	

**Table 10-3** Distance-Vector Versus Link-State Routing Protocols

Characteristic	Distance Vector	Link State
Scalability	Medium	High
Convergence	Fast	Very fast
Routing overhead	Low	Medium
Implementation	Simple	Complex
Protocols	OSPF, BGP	IS-IS, OSPF, BGP

**Table 10-4** *IPv4 and IPv6 Routing Protocols*

IPv4 Routing Protocols	IPv6 Routing Protocols

**Table 10-5** Default Administrative Distances for IP Routes

IP Route	Administrative Distance
Connected interface	
Static route directed to a connected interface	
Static route directed to an IP address	
EIGRP summary route	
External BGP route	
Internal EIGRP route	
IGRP route	
OSPF route	
IS-IS route	
RIP route	
EGP route	
External EIGRP route	
Internal BGP route	
Route of unknown origin	

**Table 10-6** Routing Protocol Characteristics

Routing Protocol	Distance Vector or Link State	Interior or Exterior	Classful or Classless	Administrative Distance
RIPv2				
EIGRP				
OSPF				
IS-IS				
BGP				

**Table 10-8** EIGRP Protocol Characteristics

<b>Characteristic</b>	<b>EIGRP Support</b>
Distance vector or link state	
Convergence	
Classless or classful	
Scalability	
Multiprotocol support	
Multicast address for updates	

## Chapter 11

**Table 11-3** Major LSA Types

<b>Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Internal router	
ABR	
ASBR	
Backbone router	

**Table 11-4** Major LSA Types

Type Code	Type	Description
1	Router LSA	
2	Network LSA	
3	Summary LSA for ABRs	
4	Summary LSA for ASBRs	
5	Autonomous system external LSA	
7	Not-so-stubby area (NSSA) external LSA	

**Table 11-6** OSPFv3 LSA Types

LSA Name	LS Type	Description
Router LSA	0x2001	
Network LSA	0x2002	
Interarea-prefix LSA	0x2003	
Interarea-router LSA	0x2004	
Autonomous system external LSA	0x4005	

**Table 11-6** OSPFv3 LSA Types

<b>LSA Name</b>	<b>LS Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Group-membership LSA	0x2006	
NSSA Type 7 LSA	0x2007	
Link LSA	0x0008	
Intra-area-prefix LSA	0x2009	

**Table 11-9** Routing Protocols on the Hierarchical Network Infrastructure

<b>Network Module</b>	<b>Routing Protocols</b>
Campus core	
Campus distribution	
Enterprise edge	
Internet and VPN modules	

## Chapter 12

**Table 12-2** *Security Legislation*

Legislation Description	Legislation Abbreviation
Focuses on the accuracy and the controls imposed on a company's financial records	
Data security standard that defines how to protect credit card holder data	
Protection against the sale of bank and account information that is regularly bought and sold by financial institutions	
Protection of private health information that is used electronically	
Protection of people's privacy with respect to the processing of personal data	

**Table 12-3** *Security Threats*

Threat Description	Threat Category
Gathering information about a host/network segment	
Attacks aimed at overwhelming resources such as memory, CPU, and bandwidth of an attacked system	
Act of attacking or exploiting the target host system	

**Table 12-4** *Security Risks*

Risk Description	Risk Type
Ensure only legitimate users can view sensitive information to prevent theft, legal liabilities, and damage to the organization.	
Ensure only authorized users can change critical information and guarantee the authenticity of data.	
Allow uninterrupted access to critical network and computing resources to prevent business disruption and loss of productivity.	

**Table 12-5** Software Features to manage DoS attacks

Feature Description	Feature
Verifies DHCP transactions and prevents rogue DHCP servers from interfering with production traffic	
Intercepts Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) packets and verifies that the packets have valid IP-to-MAC bindings	
Prevents unknown source addresses from using the network as a transport mechanism to carry out attacks	
Controls what traffic is allowed on the network	
Controls the rate of bandwidth that incoming traffic, such as ARP packets and DHCP requests	

**Table 12-6** Key Network Security Elements of the Network Security Life Cycle

Security Consideration	Name
What are the business requirements?	
What is associated risk and cost?	
What policy governs the business requirements and risk?	
What are the recommended industry security best practices?	
What will the process be for incident, compliance, and change management?	

**Table 12-7** Security Policy Documents

Policy Description	Document Name
Defines the roles and responsibilities within risk management	
Defines general access control principles used and how data is classified, such as confidential, top secret, or internal	
Explains how to manage the security infrastructure	
Defines the processes and procedures for managing incidents	

**Table 12-9** *Steps for Continuous Security*

<b>Process Description</b>	<b>Process Name</b>
Identification, authentication, ACLs, stateful packet inspection (SPI), encryption, and VPNs	
Intrusion and content-based detection and response	
Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing	
Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing	

**Table 12-11** *VPN Protocols*

<b>VPN Description</b>	<b>VPN Name</b>
Use AH and ESP to secure data; requires endpoints have IPsec software	
Secure encrypted point-to-point GRE tunnels; on-demand spoke-to-spoke connectivity	
Simplifies hub-and-spoke VPNs; need to reduce VPN management	
Enables routing and multicast traffic across an IPsec VPN; non-IP protocol and QoS support	
Encryption integration on IP and MPLS WANs; simplifies encryption management using group keying; any-to-any connectivity	

## Chapter 13

**Table 13-2** *IronPort WSA Modes*

Cisco IronPort WSA Mode	Description
Explicit mode with proxy autoconfiguration (PAC) files	
Explicit mode without PAC files	
Transparent mode with Web Cache Communication Protocol (WCCP)	

**Table 13-3** *Integrated Security for Cisco IOS*

Cisco IOS Integrated Security	Description
Cisco IOS firewall	
Cisco IOS IPS	
Cisco IOS IPsec	
Cisco IOS Trust and Identity	

**Table 13-4** *Security in the Campus*

<b>Cisco Security Category</b>	<b>Security Solutions</b>
Identity and access control	
Threat detection and mitigation	
Infrastructure protection	
Security management	

**Table 13-5** *Security in the Data Center*

<b>Cisco Security Category</b>	<b>Security Solutions</b>
Identity and access control	
Threat detection and mitigation	
Infrastructure protection	
Security management	

**Table 13-6** *Security in the Enterprise Edge*

<b>Cisco Security Category</b>	<b>Security Solutions</b>
Identity and access control	
Threat detection and mitigation	
Infrastructure protection	
Security management	

## Chapter 14

**Table 14-5** *IPT Functional Areas*

IPT Functional Area	Description
Service applications	
Call processing	
Client endpoints	
Voice-enabled infrastructure	

**Table 14-6** *Data, Voice, and Video Sensitivities to Packet Loss*

Traffic Type	Sensitivity to Multisecond Interruption	Packet-Loss Target
Data		
Voice		
Video		

**Table 14-7** *Video Media Application Models*

Tool	Model	Flow Direction	Traffic Trends
TelePresence			
Desktop video conferencing			
Video surveillance			
Desktop streaming media			

**Table 14-8** *Codec Standards*

<b>Codec</b>	<b>Bit Rate</b>	<b>MOS</b>	<b>Description</b>
G.711u		4.1	
G.711a		4.1	
G.726		3.85	
G.728		3.61	
G.729		3.92	
G.723.1		3.9	
G.723.1		3.65	

**Table 14-10** *H.264 Video Bandwidth*

<b>Video Source</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Typical Load</b>
TelePresence 3000		
TelePresence 3000		
TelePresence 1000		
TelePresence 1000		
Cisco 4500 Video Surveillance		
Cisco DMS – Digital Sign SD		
Cisco DMS – Digital Sign HD		
Cisco Video Advantage		
YouTube HD		

**Table 14-11** *Significant Protocols in VoIP Networks*

<b>Protocol</b>	<b>Description</b>
DHCP	
TFTP	
SCCP	
RTP	
RTCP	
H.323	
SIP	

**Table 14-13** *Network Delays*

<b>Fixed Delay</b>	<b>Description</b>
Propagation delay	
Serialization delay	
Processing delay	
Queuing delay	
Jitter	

**Table 14-14** *QoS Scheme Summary*

<b>QoS Scheme</b>	<b>Description</b>
cRTP	
LFI	
LLC	
AutoQoS	

**Table 14-15** *Cisco Service Class PHB Recommendations*

<b>Application Class</b>	<b>DSCP PHB</b>	<b>Queuing and Dropping</b>	<b>Applications</b>
Network Control			
Telephony			
Broadcast Video			
Multimedia Conferencing			
Real-Time Interactive			
Multimedia Streaming			
Call Signaling			
Low-Latency Transactional data			

**Table 14-15** Cisco Service Class PHB Recommendations

Application Class	DSCP PHB	Queuing and Dropping	Applications
Operations, Administration, Management (OAM)			
High-Throughput Bulk Data			
Low-Priority Scavenger Data			
Standard Best Effort			

## Chapter 15

**Table 15-2** Network Management Elements

Network Management Element	Description
NMS	
Network management protocols and standards	
Managed devices	
Management agents	

**Table 15-3** SNMP Message Types

SNMP Message	Description
Get request	
GetNext request	

**Table 15-3** *SNMP Message Types*

<b>SNMP Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Get response	
Set request	
Trap	
GetBulk	
Inform request	

**Table 15-4** *SNMP Security Levels*

<b>Version</b>	<b>Level</b>	<b>Authentication</b>	<b>Encryption</b>
SNMPv1		NoAuthNoPriv	
SNMPv2		NoAuthNoPriv	
SNMPv3		NoAuthNoPriv	
SNMPv3		AuthNoPriv	
SNMPv3		AuthPriv	

**Table 15-5** *RMON1 Groups*

<b>ID</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
1	Statistics	
2	History	
3	Alarm	
4	Host	
5	HostTopN	

**Table 15-5 RMON1 Groups**

<b>ID</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
6	Matrix	
7	Filters	
8	Packet Capture	
9	Events	

**Table 15-6 RMON2 Groups**

<b>ID</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
11	Protocol Directory	
12	Protocol Distribution	
13	Address Mapping	
14	Network Layer Host	
15	Network Layer Matrix	
16	Application Layer Host	
17	Application Layer Matrix	
18	User History	
19	Probe Configuration	

**Table 15-7** *Syslog Message Levels*

Syslog Level	Severity	Level
0		
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		

**Table 15-8** *NetFlow, CDP, and Syslog*

Technology	Description
NetFlow	
CDP	
Syslog	
RMON	

*This page intentionally left blank*



---

# Memory Tables Answer Key

---

## Chapter 1

**Table 1-2** Benefits of Cisco Network Architectures

Benefit	Description
Functionality	Supports organizational requirements
Scalability	Supports growth and expansion of organizational tasks
Availability	Provides services reliability, anywhere and anytime
Performance	Provides responsiveness, throughput, and utilization on a per-application basis
Manageability	Provides control, performance monitoring, and fault detection
Efficiency	Provides network services and infrastructure with a reasonable operational costs and appropriate capital investment

**Table 1-3** Actions That Lower the Cost of Ownership

### Actions That Lower the Cost of Ownership

Identifying and validating technology requirements

Planning for infrastructure changes and resource requirements

Developing a sound network design aligned with technical requirements and business goals

Accelerating successful implementation

Improving the efficiency of the network and the staff that supports it

Reducing operating expenses by improving the efficiency of operation processes and tools

**Table 1-4** Actions That Increase Network Availability**Actions That Increase Network Availability**

Assessing the state of the network and its ability to support the proposed design

Specifying the correct set of hardware and software releases and keeping them current

Producing a sound operations design and validating network operation

Staging and testing the proposed system before deployment

Improving staff skills

Proactively monitoring the system and assessing availability trends and alerts

Proactively identifying security breaches and defining remediation plans

**Table 1-5** Actions That Improve Business Agility**Actions That Improve Business Agility**

Establishing business requirements and technology strategies

Readyng sites to support the system that will be implemented

Integrating technical requirements and business goals into a detailed design and demonstrating that the network is functioning as specified

Expertly installing, configuring, and integrating system components

Continually enhancing performance

**Table 1-6** Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services**Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services**

Accessing and improving operational preparedness to support current and planned network technologies and services

Improving service delivery efficiency and effectiveness by increasing availability, resource capacity, and performance

Improving the availability, reliability, and stability, of the network and the applications that run on it

**Table 1-6** Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services**Actions That Accelerate Access to Applications and Services**

Managing and resolving problems that affect the system and keeping software applications current

**Table 1-7** PPDIOO Network Life Cycle Phases

PPDIOO Phase	Description
Prepare	Establishes organization and business requirements, develops a network strategy, and proposes a high-level architecture
Plan	Identifies the network requirements by characterizing and assessing the network, performing a gap analysis
Design	Provides high availability, reliability, security, scalability, and performance
Implement	Installation and configuration of new equipment
Operate	Day-to-day network operations
Optimize	Proactive network management; modifications to the design

**Table 1-8** Netflow Output Description

Field	Description
Bytes	Number of bytes of memory that are used by the NetFlow cache
Active	Number of active flows
Inactive	Number of flow buffers that are allocated in the NetFlow cache
Added	Number of flows that have been created since the start of the summary
Exporting flows	IP address and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port number of the workstation to which flows are exported
Flows exported	Total number of flows export and the total number of UDP datagrams
Protocol	IP protocol and well-known port number

**Table 1-8** *Netflow Output Description*

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Total Flows	Number of flows for this protocol since the last time that statistics were cleared
Flows/sec	Average number of flows this protocol per second
Packets/flow	Average number of packets per flow per second
Bytes/pkt	Average number of bytes for this protocol
Packets/sec	Average number of packets for this protocol per second

**Table 1-9** *Characterizing the Network*

<b>Characteristic</b>	<b>Description</b>
Steps in gathering information	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Obtain existing information and documentation</li> <li>2. Network audit</li> <li>3. Traffic analysis</li> </ol>
Primary sources of network audit information	<p>Existing documentation</p> <p>Existing network management software</p> <p>New network management tools</p>

**Table 1-10** *Top-Down Design Compared to Bottom-Up Design*

<b>Design Approach</b>	<b>Benefits</b>	<b>Disadvantages</b>
Top-down	Incorporates the organization's requirements. Provides the big picture. The design meets current and future requirements.	More time-consuming.
Bottom-up	The design is based on previous experience and allows for a quick solution.	May result in inappropriate design. Organizational requirements are not included.

**Table 1-11** *Sections of the Design Document*

<b>Section</b>	<b>Description</b>
Introduction	Purpose and goals of the network design
Design Requirements	Organization requirements and constraints
Existing Network Infrastructure	Contains diagrams, hardware and software versions, and existing configurations
Design	New logical topology, design, and IP addressing
Proof of Concept	Results from pilot or prototype
Implementation Plan	Detailed steps for implementation
Appendices	Supporting information

## Chapter 2

**Table 2-2** *Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model*

<b>Hierarchical Layer</b>	<b>Description</b>
Core	Fast transport High reliability Redundancy Fault tolerance Low latency and good manageability Avoidance of slow packet manipulation caused by filters or other processes Limited and consistent diameter QoS

**Table 2-2** Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model

Hierarchical Layer	Description
Distribution	Policy-based connectivity Redundancy and load balancing Aggregation of LAN wiring closets Aggregation of WAN connections QoS Security filtering Address or area aggregation or summarization Departmental or workgroup access Broadcast or multicast domain definition Routing between VLANs Media translations (for example, between Ethernet and Token Ring) Redistribution between routing domains (for example, between two different routing protocols) Demarcation between static and dynamic routing protocols
Access	Layer 2 switching High availability Port security Broadcast suppression QoS Rate limiting ARP inspection VACLs Spanning tree Trust classification PoE and auxiliary VLANs for VoIP

**Table 2-3 Cisco Enterprise Architecture Model**

<b>Enterprise Area or Module</b>	<b>Description</b>
Enterprise campus area	The enterprise campus module includes the building access and building distribution components and the shared campus backbone component or campus core. Edge distribution provides connectivity to the enterprise edge. High availability is implemented in the server farm, and network management monitors the enterprise campus and enterprise edge.
Enterprise edge area	Consists of e-commerce, Internet, VPN/remote access, and WAN modules.
Enterprise WAN module	This module provides MPLS or other WAN technologies.
Enterprise remote branch module	The enterprise branch normally consists of remote offices, small offices, or sales offices. These branch offices rely on the WAN to use the services and applications provided in the main campus.
Enterprise data center module	The enterprise data center consists of using the network to enhance the server, storage, and application servers. The offsite data center provides disaster recovery and business continuity services for the enterprise.
Enterprise teleworker	The enterprise teleworker module supports a small office, mobile users, or home users providing access to corporate systems via VPN tunnels.

**Table 2-4 Redundancy Models**

<b>Redundancy Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Workstation to router redundancy	Use of HSRP, VRRP, and VSS
Server redundancy	Uses dual-attached NICs, FEC, or GEC port bundles
Route redundancy	Provides load balancing and high availability
Link redundancy	Use of multiple WAN links that provide primary and secondary failover for higher availability

## Chapter 3

**Table 3-6** Campus Transmission Media Comparison

Specification	Copper/UTP	Multimode Fiber	Single-Mode Fiber	Wireless LAN
Bandwidth	Up to 10 Gbps	Up to 10 Gbps	Up to 10 Gbps	Up to 300 Mbps
Distance	Up to 100 m	Up to 2 km (FE) Up to 550 m (GE) Up to 300 m (10GE)	Up to 80 km (FE) Up to 100 m (GE) Up to 80 km (10GE)	Up to 500 m at 1 Mbps
Price	Inexpensive	Moderate	Moderate to expensive	Moderate

**Table 3-7** LAN Device Comparison

Device	OSI Layer	Is Domain Protocol Transparent or Protocol Aware?	Boundary	What It Understands
Repeater	Layer 1: physical	Transparent	Amplify signal	Bits
Hub	Layer 1: physical	Transparent	Amplify signal	Bits
Bridge	Layer 2: data link	Transparent	Collision domain	Frames
Switch	Layer 2: data link	Transparent	Collision domain	Frames
Router	Layer 3: network	Aware	Broadcast domain	Packets
Layer 3 switch	Layer 3: network	Aware	Broadcast domain	Packets

**Table 3-8** Application Types

Application Type	Description
Peer to peer	Includes instant messaging, file sharing, IP phone calls, and video-conferencing.
Client-local servers	Servers are located in the same segment as the clients or close by, normally on the same LAN. With 80/20 workgroup rule, 80% of traffic is local, 20% not local.
Client/server farms	Mail, server, file, and database servers. Access is fast, reliable, and controlled.
Client-enterprise edge servers	External servers such as Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), web, public servers, and e-commerce.

**Table 3-9** Network Requirements for Application Types

Requirement	Peer to Peer	Client-Local Servers	Client/Server Farm	Client-Enterprise Edge Services
Connectivity type	Switched	Switched	Switched	Switched
Throughput required	Medium to high	Medium	High	Medium
Availability	Low to high	Medium	High	High
Network costs	Low to medium	Medium	High	Medium

**Table 3-10** Campus Layer Design Best Practices

Campus Layer	Best Practices
Access layer	<p>Limit VLANs to a single closet when possible to provide the most deterministic and highly available topology.</p> <p>Use RPVST+ if STP is required. It provides the best convergence.</p> <p>Set trunks to ON and ON with no-negotiate</p> <p>Manually prune unused VLANs to avoid broadcast propagation.</p> <p>Use VTP Transparent mode, because there is little need for a common VLAN database in hierarchical networks.</p> <p>Disable trunking on host ports, because it is not necessary. Doing so provides more security and speeds up PortFast.</p> <p>Consider implementing routing in the access layer to provide fast convergence and Layer 3 load balancing.</p> <p>Use Cisco STP Toolkit, which provides PortFast, Loop Guard, Root Guard, and BPDU Guard.</p>
Distribution layer	<p>Use first-hop redundancy protocols. Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) or Gateway Load Balancing Protocol (GLBP) should be used if you implement Layer 2 links between the access and distribution.</p> <p>Use Layer 3 links between the distribution and core switches to allow for fast convergence and load balancing.</p> <p>Build Layer 3 triangles, not squares.</p> <p>Use the distribution switches to connect Layer 2 VLANs that span multiple access layer switches.</p> <p>Summarize routes from the distribution to the core of the network to reduce routing overhead.</p> <p>Use VSS as an option described below to eliminate the use of STP.</p>
Core layer	<p>Reduce the switch peering by using redundant triangle connections between switches.</p> <p>Use routing that provides a topology with no spanning-tree loops.</p> <p>Use Layer 3 switches on the core that provide intelligent services that Layer 2 switches do not support.</p> <p>Use two equal-cost paths to every destination network.</p>

**Table 3-11** Network Requirements for Application Types

Specification	Building Access	Distribution Layer	Campus Core	Server Farm
Technology	Layer 2 and Layer 3 switches	Layer 3 switched	Layer 3 switches	Layer 3 switches
Scalability	High	Medium	Low	Medium
Availability	Medium	Medium	High	High
Performance	Medium	Medium	High	High
Cost per port	Low	Medium	High	High

## Chapter 4

**Table 4-2** Summary of Data Center Facility Considerations

Data Center Facility Considerations	Description
Architectural and mechanical specifications	Space available Load capacity Power and cooling capacity Cabling infrastructure
Environmental conditions	Operating temperature Humidity level
Physical security	Access to the site Fire suppression Security Alarms
Capacity limits	Space for employees
Compliance and regulation	Payment Card Industry (PCI), Sarbanes-Oxley (SOX), and Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA).

**Table 4-3 Data Center Core Drivers**

<b>Data Center Core Drivers</b>	<b>Description</b>
10 Gigabit Ethernet density	Are there enough 10GE ports to connect campus core to multiple data center aggregation layers?
Administrative domains and policies	Separate cores help to isolate campus distribution from DC aggregation for troubleshooting and quality of service/access control list (QoS/ACL) policies.
Future growth	The impact and downtime from implementing a core at a later date make it worthwhile to install sufficient core layers in the beginning.

**Table 4-4 Virtualization Key Drivers**

<b>Virtualization Driving Forces</b>	<b>Description</b>
Operational cost	Need to reduce rising cost of powering and cooling devices in the DC while getting more productivity
Reduce the number of physical devices	DC consolidation of assets performing individual tasks
Traffic isolation	Logical, separate user groups secured from other groups on the same network
Increased performance/price ratio	Eliminate underutilized hardware that exhibits poor performance/price ratio

**Table 4-5 Network Virtualization Design Considerations**

<b>Network Virtualization Consideration</b>	<b>Description</b>
Access control	Ensures users and devices are recognized, classified, and authorized for entry to their assigned network segments
Path isolation	Provides independent logical traffic paths over shared network
Services edge	Ensures the right services are accessible to the intended users, groups, or devices

## Chapter 5

**Table 5-2 WLAN Standards Summary**

IEEE Protocol	Standard Release Date	Frequency	Typical Data Rate	Maximum Data Rate
Legacy	1997	ISM	1 Mbps	2 Mbps
802.11a	1999	UNII	25 Mbps	54 Mbps
802.11b	1999	ISM	6.5 Mbps	11 Mbps
802.11g	2003	ISM	25 Mbps	54 Mbps
802.11n	2009	ISM or UNII	200 Mbps	600 Mbps

**Table 5-3 Cisco UWN Architecture**

Cisco UWN Element	Description
Client devices	These include laptops, workstations, IP phones, PDAs, and manufacturing devices to access the WLAN.
Access points	Provide access to the network.
Network unification	The WLAN system should be able to support wireless applications by providing security policies, QoS, intrusion prevention, RF management, and wireless controllers.
Network management	Cisco Wireless Control System (WCS) provides a central management tool that lets you design, control, and monitor wireless networks.
Mobility services	Include guest access, location services, voice services, and threat detection and mitigation.

**Table 5-4 Access Point Modes**

AP Mode	Description
Local mode	The default mode of operation.
H-REAP mode	For remote LWAP management across WAN links.

**Table 5-4** Access Point Modes

<b>AP Mode</b>	<b>Description</b>
Monitor mode	The APs exclude themselves from handling data traffic and dedicate themselves to location-based services (LBS).
Rogue Detector mode	Monitors for rogue APs.
Sniffer mode	Captures and forwards all packets of a remote sniffer.
Bridge mode	For point-to-point and point-to-multipoint solutions.

**Table 5-5** WLAN Controller Platforms

<b>Order</b>	<b>WLC</b>
First	Primary sysName (preconfigured)
Second	Second sysName (preconfigured)
Third	Tertiary sysName (preconfigured)
Fourth	Master controller
Fifth	WLC with greatest capacity for AP associations

**Table 5-6** WLC Components

<b>WLC Component</b>	<b>Description</b>
WLAN	Identified by a unique SSID and assigned to an interface
Interface	A logical connection that maps to a VLAN in the wired network
Port	A physical connection to the wired LAN

**Table 5-7** WLC Interface Types

<b>WLC Interface Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Management interface	For in-band management
Service-port interface	For out-of-band management

**Table 5-7** WLC Interface Types

<b>WLC Interface Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
AP manager interface	For Layer 3 discovery and association
Dynamic interface	Dedicated to WLAN client data; analogous to VLANs
Virtual interface	For Layer 3 authentication and mobility management

**Table 5-8** WLAN Controller Platforms

<b>Platform</b>	<b>Number of Supported Access Points</b>
Cisco 2100 series WLC	25
Cisco WLC for ISR	25
Catalyst 3750 Integrated WLC	50
Cisco 4400 series WLC	100
Cisco 6500/7600 series WLC module	300
Cisco 5500 series WLC	500

**Table 5-9** WLC Redundancy

<b>WLC Redundancy</b>	<b>Description</b>
N+1	A single WLC acts as the backup for multiple WLCs. The backup WLC is configured as the secondary on APs.
N+N	An equal number of controllers back up each other.
N+N+1	An equal number of controllers back up each other. The backup WLC is configured as the tertiary on APs.

**Table 5-10** Wireless Mesh Components

Wireless Mesh Component	Description
Wireless Control System (WCS)	The wireless mesh SNMP management system allows networkwide configuration and management.
WLAN Controller (WLC)	Links the mesh APs to the wired network and performs all the tasks previously described for a WLC such as management of multiple APs, mitigate radio interference, manage security, and provide Layer 3 mobility.
Rooftop AP (RAP)	Connects the mesh to the wired network and serves as the root. It also communicates with the MAPs. RAPs are typically located on rooftops or towers.
Mesh Access Point (MAP)	Remote APs that provide access to wireless clients. They communicate with the RAP to connect to the wired network. MAPs are typically located on top of a pole, such as a lamppost.

**Table 5-11** WLAN Design Considerations

Design Item	Description
Number of APs	The design should have enough APs to provide full RF coverage for wireless clients for all the expected locations in the enterprise. Cisco recommends 20 data devices per AP and 7 G.711 concurrent or 8 G.729 concurrent VoWLAN calls.
Placement of APs	APs are placed in a centralized location of the expected area for which they are to provide access. APs are placed in conference rooms to accommodate peak requirements.
Power for APs	Traditional wall power can be used, but the preferred solution is to use Power over Ethernet (PoE) to power APs and provide wired access.
Number of WLCs	The number of WLCs depends on the selected redundancy model based on the client's requirements. The number of controllers is also dependent on the number of required APs and the number of APs supported by the differing WLC models.
Placement of WLCs	WLCs are placed on secured wiring closets or in the data center. Deterministic redundancy is recommended, and intercontroller roaming should be minimized. WLCs can be placed in a central location or distributed in the campus distribution layer.

**Table 5-13** UDP Ports Used by WLAN Protocols

<b>WLAN Protocol</b>	<b>UDP Port</b>
LWAPP control	UDP 12223
LWAPP data	UDP 12222
WLC exchange messages (unencrypted)	UDP 16666
WLC exchange messages (encrypted)	UDP 16667
RF group IEEE 802.11b/g	UDP 12114
RF group IEEE 802.11a	UDP 12115
CAPWAP control	UDP 5246
CAPWAP data	UDP 5247

## Chapter 6

**Table 6-2** WAN Comparison

<b>WAN Technology</b>	<b>Bandwidth</b>	<b>Reliability</b>	<b>Latency</b>	<b>Cost</b>
ISDN	Low	Medium	Medium	Low
DSL	Low/medium	Low	Medium	Low
Cable	Low/Medium	Low	Medium	Low
Wireless	Low/Medium	Low	Medium	Medium
Frame Relay	Low/Medium	Medium	Low	Medium
TDM	Medium	High	Low	Medium
Metro Ethernet	Medium/high	High	Low	Medium
SONET/SDH	High	High	Low	High
MPLS	High	High	Low	High
Dark fiber	High	High	Low	High
DWDM	High	High	Low	High

**Table 6-4** Physical Bandwidth Comparison

<b>Bandwidth</b>	<b>Less Than 2 Mbps</b>	<b>2 Mbps to 45 Mbps</b>	<b>45 Mbps to 100 Mbps</b>	<b>100 Mbps to 10 Gbps</b>
Copper	Serial, ISDN, Frame Relay, TDM, ADSL	Frame Relay, Ethernet, ADSL, cable, T3	Fast Ethernet	Gigabit Ethernet, 10 Gigabit Ethernet (10GBASE-CX4)
Fiber	N/A	Ethernet	Fast Ethernet, ATM	Gigabit Ethernet, 10 Gigabit Ethernet, ATM, SONET/SDH, POS, dark fiber
Wireless	802.11b	802.11b, wireless WAN (varies)	802.11a/g	802.11n

**Table 6-5** WAN Link Characteristics

	<b>Use</b>	<b>Cost</b>	<b>Advantages</b>	<b>Examples</b>
Private	WAN to connect distant LANs	Owner must buy and configure network.  Expensive to maintain.	High security.  Transmission quality.	Metro Ethernet using dark fiber
Leased	WAN to connect distant LANs	High cost.  Equipment is leased or private.	Provider is responsible for maintenance.  Dedicated bandwidth.	TDM, SONET
Shared	Shared-circuit or packet-switched WAN	Cost is fair.  Bandwidth is leased.  Equipment is leased or private.	Provider is responsible for maintenance.  Shared network for multiple sites.	MPLS or Frame Relay

**Table 6-6** QoS Considerations

<b>QoS Category</b>	<b>Description</b>
Classification	Identifies and marks flow and provides priority to certain flows
Congestion management	Mechanism to handle traffic overflow using a queuing algorithm
Link-efficiency mechanisms	Reduce latency and jitter for network traffic on low-speed links
Traffic shaping and policing	Avoids congestion by policing ingress and egress flows

**Table 6-7** Link-Efficiency Mechanisms

<b>Mechanisms</b>	<b>Description</b>
Link fragmentation and interleaving (LFI)	Reduces delay and jitter on slower-speed links by breaking up large packet flows and inserting smaller data packets (Telnet, VoIP) in between them.
Multilink PPP (MLP)	Bonds multiple links together between two modes, which increases the available bandwidth. MLP can be used on analog or digital links and is based on RFC 1990.
Real-Time Transport (RTP) header compression	Provides increased efficiency for applications that take advantage of RTP on slow links. Compresses RTP/UDP/IP headers from 40 bytes down to 2 bytes to 5 bytes.

## Chapter 7

**Table 7-2** Benefits of Ethernet Handoffs at the Customer Edge

Benefit	Description
Service-enabling solution	Layering value added services in addition to the network
Flexible architecture	No need for truck roll for increasing port speeds No need for new customer premises equipment (CPE) Evolving existing Frame/ATM services to an IP-based solution
Seamless enterprise integration	Ease of integration with existing LAN network equipment

**Table 7-3** WAN/MAN Architecture Comparison

Characteristic	Private WAN	ISP Service	SP MPLS/IP VPN	Private MPLS
High availability	Excellent	Good	Excellent	Excellent
Growth support	Moderate	Good	Excellent	Excellent
Security	IPsec (optional)	IPsec (mandatory)	IPsec (optional)	IPsec (optional)
Ongoing expenses	High	Low	Moderate to high	Moderate to high
Ease of management	High	Medium	Medium	High
Voice/video support	Excellent	Low	Excellent	Excellent
Effort to migrate from private WAN	Low	Moderate	Moderate	High
Multicast	Good	Good	Good	Excellent

**Table 7-4 Cisco Router/Switch Platform and Software Comparison**

<b>Router/Switch Hardware</b>	<b>Software</b>	<b>Description</b>
800, 1800, 2800, 3800, 7200	Cisco IOS T Releases 12.3, 12.4, 12.3T, and 12.4T	Access routing platforms supporting fast and scalable delivery of data for enterprise applications.
800, 1900, 2900, 3900, 7200	Cisco IOS 15.0(1)	Delivers security, voice, and IP services with support for rich-media applications such as HD video and on-demand services
7x00, 10000	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SB	Delivers midrange routing services for the enterprise and SP edge networks.
7600	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SR	Delivers high-end LAN switching for enterprise access, distribution, core, and data center. Also supports Metro Ethernet for the SP edge.
12000, CRS-1	Cisco IOS XR	High availability, providing large scalability and flexibility for the SP core and edge (takes advantage of highly distributed processing capabilities of the Cisco CRS-1 routing systems and the Cisco 12000).
2970, 3560, 3750	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SE	Provides low-end to mid-range LAN switching for enterprise access and distribution deployments.
4500, 4900	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SG	Provides mid-range LAN switching for enterprise access and distribution in the campus. Also supports Metro Ethernet.
6500	Cisco IOS S Release 12.2SX	Delivers high-end LAN switching for enterprise access, distribution, core, and data center. Also supports Metro Ethernet for the SP edge.

**Table 7-5** *ISR Versus ISR G2 Feature Comparison*

	<b>Cisco ISR</b>	<b>Cisco ISR G2</b>
<b>WAN performance</b>	Up to 45 Mbps with services	Up to 350 Mbps with services
<b>Network processor</b>	Single	Multicore with future expandability
<b>Service module performance and capacity</b>	1X and 160 GB storage	Up to 7X with dual core and 1 TB storage
<b>Onboard DSPs</b>	Voice only	Voice- and video-ready DSPs
<b>Switch modules</b>	Fast Ethernet with Power over Ethernet (PoE); based on Catalyst 3750	Fast Ethernet/Gigabit Ethernet with POE+ based on Catalyst 3560E/2950
<b>IOS image</b>	Multiple images	Single universal IOS image
<b>Services delivery</b>	Hardware-coupled	Services on demand
<b>Redundancy</b>	Single motherboard	Field-upgradeable motherboard
<b>Energy efficiency</b>	EnergyWise	EnergyWise with slot based controls Real-time power reporting

## Chapter 8

**Table 8-11** *IPv4 Address type*

<b>Description</b>	<b>IPv4 Address Type</b>
The IP address of an interface on a single host. It can be a source or destination address	Unicast
An IP address that reaches all hosts in an address range. It is only a destination address.	Broadcast
An IP address that reaches a group of hosts. It is only a destination address	Multicast

**Table 8-12** IPv4 Private Address Space

<b>Class Type</b>	<b>Start Address</b>	<b>End Address</b>
Class A	10.0.0.0	10.255.255.255
Class B	172.16.0.0	172.31.255.255
Class C	192.168.0.0	192.168.255.255

**Table 8-13** Public Versus Private IP Addresses

<b>Network Location</b>	<b>Public or Private Address</b>
E-commerce module	Public
Intranet website	Private
External DNS servers	Public
Remote-access/VPN module	Public
Inside global address	Public
Real IP address of WWW server located in internal network	Private

**Table 8-14** NAT Concepts

<b>Description</b>	<b>NAT Address Type</b>
Commonly used to assign a network device with internal private IP address an unique public address so that they can be accessed from the Internet.	Static NAT
Dynamically maps an unregistered or private IP address to a registered IP address from a pool (group) of registered addresses.	Dynamic NAT
Maps multiple unregistered or private IP addresses to a single registered IP address by using different ports.	PAT

**Table 8-14** NAT Concepts

Description	NAT Address Type
The real IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the stub domain.	Inside local address
The translated IP address of the device that resides in the internal network. This address is used in the public network.	Inside global address
The real IP address of a device that resides in the Internet, outside the stub domain.	Outside Global address
The translated IP address of the device that resides in the Internet. This address is used inside the stub domain.	Outside local address

**Table 8-16** Subnet Masks

Dotted Decimal	Bit Mask	Hexadecimal
255.0.0.0	/8	FF000000
255.192.0.0	/10	FFC00000
255.255.0.0	/16	FFFF0000
255.255.224.0	/19	FFFFE000
255.255.240.0	/20	FFFFF000
255.255.255.0	/24	FFFFFF00
255.255.255.128	/25	FFFFFF80
255.255.255.192	/26	FFFFFFC0
255.255.255.224	/27	FFFFFFE0
255.255.255.240	/28	FFFFFFF0
255.255.255.248	/29	FFFFFFF8
255.255.255.252	/30	FFFFFFFC
255.255.255.255	/32	FFFFFFFF

**Table 8-27** *DHCP Allocation Mechanisms*

<b>Network Location</b>	<b>Address Allocation Mechanism</b>
This mechanism can reuse the IP address after the lease expires.	Dynamic
Dispatches an IP address allocated to a specific MAC address.	Manual
Allocations of IP addresses are permanently assigned to a host.	Automatic

**Table 8-29** *DHCP and DNS Servers*

<b>Network Location</b>	<b>Server Type</b>
Campus Data Center	DHCP and Internal DNS
Enterprise Branch	DHCP and Internal DNS
E-Commerce	External DNS
Internet	External DNS
SP Edge Premises	Internal DNS
Remote Enterprise Data Center	Internal and External DNS

## Chapter 9

**Table 9-2** IP Protocol Numbers

Protocol Number	Protocol
6	Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)
17	User Datagram Protocol (UDP)
50	Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)
51	Authentication Header (AH)
85	ICMP for IPv6
59	No Next Header for IPv6
60	Destination Options for IPv6
88	Enhanced IGRP (EIGRP)
89	Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)

**Table 9-5** Well-Known IPv6 Multicast Addresses

Multicast Address	Multicast Group
FF01::1	All nodes (node-local)
FF02::1	All nodes (link-local)
FF01::2	All routers (node-local)
FF02::2	All routers (link-local)
FF02::5	Open Shortest Path First Version 3 (OSPFv3)
FF02::6	OSPFv3 designated routers
FF02::9	Routing Information Protocol (RIPng)
FF02::A	EIGRP routers
FF02::B	Mobile agents
FF02::C	DHCP servers/relay agents
FF02::D	All Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) routers

**Table 9-5** Well-Known IPv6 Multicast Addresses

Multicast Address	Multicast Group
FF05::1	All nodes in the local network site
FF0x::FB	Multicast DNS
FF02::1:2	All DHCP and relay agents on the local network site (RFC 3313)
FF05::1:3	All DHCP servers on the local network site (RFC 3313)

**Table 9-6** IPv6 Address Types

Description	IPv4 Address Type
The IP address of an interface on a single host. It can be a source or destination address.	Unicast
An IP address that identifies a set of devices within an area. It is only a destination address.	Anycast
An IP address that reaches a group of hosts identified by the address. It is only a destination address	Multicast

**Table 9-7** IPv6 Addresses Prefix

Description	IPv4 Address Type
0000::0001	Loopback
0000::0000	Unspecified address
2000::/3	Global unicast address
FC00::/7	Unique local unicast
FE80::/10	Link-local unicast address
FF00::/8	Multicast address
FF02::5	OSPFv3
FF02::A	EIGRP routers
FF02::C	DHCP

**Table 9-8** *IPv6 Address Autoconfiguration Scheme*

Description	IPv6 Address Configuration Scheme
Host sends a neighbor-solicitation message that includes the target IPv6 address that begins with FE80::.	Stateless link-local
Combines the router prefix with the local MAC address	Stateless global unique
Provides stateful address allocation	DHCPv6

**Table 9-9** *IPv6 Mechanisms*

Description	IPv6 Mechanism
Performs diagnostics and reachability information. Next header number of 58.	ICMPv6
Discovers all nodes in the same link and checks for duplicate addresses.	IPv6 neighbor discovery
DNS resource record for IPv6.	AAAA
Provides stateful IPv6 address assignment.	DHCPv6
Routing protocol that uses UDP port 521.	RIPng
Cisco routing protocol for IPv6.	EIGRP for IPv6
Link-state routing protocol for IPv6.	OSPFv3

**Table 9-10** *IPv6 Deployment Model Comparison*

<b>IPv6 Deployment Model</b>	<b>Advantages</b>	<b>Disadvantages</b>
Dual-stack model	Tunneling not required. Better processing performance. IPv4 & IPv6 independent routing, QoS, security, and multicast policies.	Network equipment upgrades.
Hybrid model 1	Existing network can be leveraged with no upgrades.	IPv6 multicast not supported within ISATAP tunnels. Terminating ISATAP tunnels in core makes the core appear to be in IPv6 access layer.
Hybrid model 2	IPv4 and IPv6 have independent routing, QoS, security, and multicast policies.	Many static tunnels which makes it difficult to manage.
Server block model	Lesser impact on existing network. Flexible when controlling access to IPv6-enabled applications.	Large amounts of tunneling. Cost of additional equipment.

**Table 9-11** *IPv6 Deployment Models*

<b>Description</b>	<b>IPv6 Deployment Model</b>
All routers and hosts run IPv6 and IPv4.	Dual-stack model
Uses ISATAP or manually configured tunnels to allow dual-stack clients to connect to dual-stack servers over a IPv4 core.	Hybrid model
Uses ISATAP and manually configured tunnels to a service module.	Service block model

**Table 9-12** *IPv6 and IPv4 Characteristics*

<b>Characteristic</b>	<b>IPv6</b>	<b>IPv4</b>
Address length	128 bits	32 bits
Address representation	Hexadecimal	Dotted-decimal
Header length	Fixed (40 bytes)	Variable
Upper-layer protocols	Next header field	Protocol Type field
Link address resolution	ND	ARP
Address configuration	Stateless autoconfiguration or stateful DHCP	Stateful DHCP
DNS (name-to-address resolution)	AAAA records	A records
Interior routing protocols	EIGRPv6, OSPFv3, RIPng, IS-IS for IPv6	EIGRP, OSPFv2, RIPv2, IS-IS
Classification and marking	Traffic Class and Flow Label fields, differentiated services code point (DSCP)	IP Precedence bits, Type of Service field, DSCP
Private addresses	Unique-local addresses	RFC 1918 private address space
Fragmentation	Sending host only	Sending host and intermediate routers
Loopback address	0:0:0:0:0:0:1	127.0.0.1
Address scope types	Unicast, anycast, multicast	Unicast, multicast, broadcast

## Chapter 10

**Table 10-2 IGP and EGP Protocol Selection**

Description	Routing Protocol
Used to connect to an ISP	BGP
IGP used in enterprise networks, supports large network and multi-vendor	OSPF
IGP used in large enterprise networks with Cisco routers	EIGRP

**Table 10-3 Distance-Vector Versus Link-State Routing Protocols**

Characteristic	Distance Vector	Link State
Scalability	Limited	Good
Convergence	Slow	Fast
Routing overhead	More traffic	Less traffic
Implementation	Easy	More complex
Protocols	RIPv1, RIPv2, EIGRP, RIPng	OSPF, IS-IS, OSPFv3

**Table 10-4 IPv4 and IPv6 Routing Protocols**

IPv4 Routing Protocols	IPv6 Routing Protocols
RIPv2	RIPng
EIGRP	EIGRP for IPv6
OSPFv2	OSPFv3
IS-IS	IS-IS for IPv6
BGP	Multiprotocol BGP

**Table 10-5** Default Administrative Distances for IP Routes

<b>IP Route</b>	<b>Administrative Distance</b>
Connected interface	0
Static route directed to a connected interface	1
Static route directed to an IP address	1
EIGRP summary route	5
External BGP route	20
Internal EIGRP route	90
IGRP route	100
OSPF route	110
IS-IS route	115
RIP route	120
EGP route	140
External EIGRP route	170
Internal BGP route	200
Route of unknown origin	255

**Table 10-6** Routing Protocol Characteristics

<b>Routing Protocol</b>	<b>Distance Vector or Link State</b>	<b>Interior or Exterior</b>	<b>Classful or Classless</b>	<b>Administrative Distance</b>
RIPv2	DV	Interior	Classless	120
EIGRP	DV (hybrid)	Interior	Classless	90
OSPF	LS	Interior	Classless	110
IS-IS	LS	Interior	Classless	115
BGP	Path vector	Both	Classless	20

**Table 10-8** *EIGRP Protocol Characteristics*

<b>Characteristic</b>	<b>EIGRP Support</b>
Distance vector or link state	Hybrid: distance-vector routing protocol with link-state characteristics
Convergence	Fast convergence with DUAL for a loop-free topology
Classless or classful	Classless routing protocol, supports VLSMs
Scalability	Highly scalable, supports large networks
Multiprotocol support	Supports IPv4, IPv6, plus legacy protocols such as IPX and AppleTalk
Multicast address for updates	224.0.0.10 for IPv4; FF02::A for IPv6

## Chapter 11

**Table 11-3** *Major LSA Types*

<b>Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Internal router	Any router whose interfaces all belong to the same OSPF area. These routers keep only one link-state database.
ABR	Routers that are connected to more than one area. These routers maintain a link-state database for each area they belong to. These routers generate summary LSAs.
ASBR	Routers that inject external LSAs into the OSPF database (redistribution). These external routes are learned via either other routing protocols or static routes.
Backbone router	Routers with at least one interface attached to Area 0.

**Table 11-4 Major LSA Types**

Type Code	Type	Description
1	Router LSA	Produced by every router. Includes all the router's links, interfaces, state of links, and cost. This LSA type is flooded within a single area.
2	Network LSA	Produced by every DR on every broadcast or NBMA network. It lists all the routers in the multiaccess network. This LSA type is contained within an area.
3	Summary LSA for ABRs	Produced by ABRs. It is sent into an area to advertise destinations outside the area.
4	Summary LSA for ASBRs	Originated by ABRs. Sent into an area by the ABR to advertise the ASBRs.
5	Autonomous system external LSA	Originated by ASBRs. Advertises destinations external to the OSPF autonomous system, flooded throughout the whole OSPF autonomous system.
7	Not-so-stubby area (NSSA) external LSA	Originated by ASBRs in an NSSA. It is not flooded throughout the OSPF autonomous system, only to the NSSA. Similar to the Type 5 LSA.

**Table 11-6 OSPFv3 LSA Types**

LSA Name	LS Type	Description
Router LSA	0x2001	State of router interfaces
Network LSA	0x2002	Generated by DR routers in broadcast or NBMA networks
Interarea-prefix LSA	0x2003	Routes to prefixes in other areas
Interarea-router LSA	0x2004	Routes to routers in other areas
Autonomous system external LSA	0x4005	Routes to networks external to the autonomous system

**Table 11-6** OSPFv3 LSA Types

<b>LSA Name</b>	<b>LS Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
Group-membership LSA	0x2006	Networks that contain multicast groups
NSSA Type 7 LSA	0x2007	Routers to networks external to the autonomous system, injected into the NSSA
Link LSA	0x0008	Link-local addresses and list IPv6 prefixes associated with the link
Intra-area-prefix LSA	0x2009	IPv6 prefixes associated with a router, a stub network, or an associated transit network segment

**Table 11-9** Routing Protocols on the Hierarchical Network Infrastructure

<b>Network Module</b>	<b>Routing Protocols</b>
Campus core	EIGRP, OSPF
Campus distribution	EIGRP, OSPF
Enterprise edge	EIGRP, OSPF, BGP, Static
Internet and VPN modules	BGP, Static

## Chapter 12

**Table 12-2 Security Legislation**

Legislation Description	Legislation Abbreviation
Focuses on the accuracy and the controls imposed on a company's financial records	SOX
Data security standard that defines how to protect credit card holder data	PCI DSS
Protection against the sale of bank and account information that is regularly bought and sold by financial institutions	GLBA
Protection of private health information that is used electronically	HIPPA
Protection of people's privacy with respect to the processing of personal data	Directive 95/46/EC

**Table 12-3 Security Threats**

Threat Description	Threat Category
Gathering information about a host/network segment	Reconnaissance
Attacks aimed at overwhelming resources such as memory, CPU, and bandwidth of an attacked system	Denial of service (DoS)
Act of attacking or exploiting the target host system	Gaining unauthorized access

**Table 12-4 Security Risks**

Risk Description	Risk Type
Ensure only legitimate users can view sensitive information to prevent theft, legal liabilities, and damage to the organization.	Confidentiality of data
Ensure only authorized users can change critical information and guarantee the authenticity of data.	Integrity of data
Allow uninterrupted access to critical network and computing resources to prevent business disruption and loss of productivity.	System and data availability

**Table 12-5** Software Features to manage DoS attacks

Feature Description	Feature
Verifies DHCP transactions and prevents rogue DHCP servers from interfering with production traffic	DHCP snooping
Intercepts Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) packets and verifies that the packets have valid IP-to-MAC bindings	Dynamic ARP Inspection (DAI)
Prevents unknown source addresses from using the network as a transport mechanism to carry out attacks	Unicast Reverse Path Forwarding (uRPF)
Controls what traffic is allowed on the network	Access control lists (ACL)
Controls the rate of bandwidth that incoming traffic, such as ARP packets and DHCP requests	Rate limiting

**Table 12-6** Key Network Security Elements of the Network Security Life Cycle

Security Consideration	Name
What are the business requirements?	Business needs
What is associated risk and cost?	Risk analysis
What policy governs the business requirements and risk?	Security policy
What are the recommended industry security best practices?	Best practices
What will the process be for incident, compliance, and change management?	Security operations

**Table 12-7** Security Policy Documents

Policy Description	Document Name
Defines the roles and responsibilities within risk management	Acceptable-use policy
Defines general access control principles used and how data is classified, such as confidential, top secret, or internal	Network access control policy
Explains how to manage the security infrastructure	Security management policy
Defines the processes and procedures for managing incidents	Incident-handling policy

**Table 12-9** *Steps for Continuous Security*

<b>Process Description</b>	<b>Process Name</b>
Identification, authentication, ACLs, stateful packet inspection (SPI), encryption, and VPNs	Secure
Intrusion and content-based detection and response	Monitor
Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing	Test
Assessments, vulnerability scanning, and security auditing	Improve

**Table 12-11** *VPN Protocols*

<b>VPN Description</b>	<b>VPN Name</b>
Use AH and ESP to secure data; requires endpoints have IPsec software	Standard IPsec
Secure encrypted point-to-point GRE tunnels; on-demand spoke-to-spoke connectivity	Cisco DMVPN
Simplifies hub-and-spoke VPNs; need to reduce VPN management	Cisco Easy VPN
Enables routing and multicast traffic across an IPsec VPN; non-IP protocol and QoS support	Cisco GRE-based VPN
Encryption integration on IP and MPLS WANs; simplifies encryption management using group keying; any-to-any connectivity	Cisco GET VPN

## Chapter 13

**Table 13-2** *IronPort WSA Modes*

Cisco IronPort WSA Mode	Description
Explicit mode with proxy autoconfiguration (PAC) files	<p>Proxy information stores in PAC</p> <p>Automatic download of PAC to browser using DHCP/DNS</p> <p>Supports redundancy; multiple WSAs listed in PAC</p>
Explicit mode without PAC files	<p>Requires changes to every browser</p> <p>Configuration of browser to point to the WSA as its proxy</p> <p>Does not support redundancy</p>
Transparent mode with Web Cache Communication Protocol (WCCP)	<p>Web traffic transparently directed to WSA using WCCP redirection</p> <p>No changes to browser necessary</p> <p>Requires configuration of WCCP enabled FW/Router/L3 switch to point traffic to WSA</p> <p>Supports load sharing and redundancy</p>

**Table 13-3** *Integrated Security for Cisco IOS*

Cisco IOS Integrated Security	Description
Cisco IOS firewall	Stateful multiservice application-based filtering
Cisco IOS IPS	Inline deep packet inspection
Cisco IOS IPsec	Data encryption at the packet level
Cisco IOS Trust and Identity	AAA, PKI, SSH, SSL

**Table 13-4** Security in the Campus

Cisco Security Category	Security Solutions
Identity and access control	802.1X, NAC, ACLs, and firewalls
Threat detection and mitigation	NetFlow, Syslog, SNMP, RMON, CS-MARS, and NIPS
Infrastructure protection	AAA, TACACS, RADIUS, SSH, SNMPv3, IGP/EGP MD5, and Layer 2 security features
Security management	CSM, CS-MARS, ACS

**Table 13-5** Security in the Data Center

Cisco Security Category	Security Solutions
Identity and access control	802.1X, ACLs, and Firewalls (FWSM)
Threat detection and mitigation	NetFlow, syslog, SNMP, RMON, CS-MARS, and NIPS
Infrastructure protection	AAA, TACACS, RADIUS, SSH, SNMPv3, IGP/EGP MD5, and Layer 2 security features
Security management	CSM, CS-MARS, ACS

**Table 13-6** Security in the Enterprise Edge

Cisco Security Category	Security Solutions
Identity and access control	Firewalls, IPsec, SSL VPN, and ACLs
Threat detection and mitigation	NetFlow, Syslog, SNMP, RMON, IDS modules, CS-MARS, and NIPS
Infrastructure protection	AAA, CoPP, TACACS, RADIUS, SSH, SNMP v3, IGP/EGP MD5, RFC 2827 ingress filtering and Layer 2 security features
Security management	CSM, CS-MARS, ACS

## Chapter 14

**Table 14-5** *IPT Functional Areas*

IPT Functional Area	Description
Service applications	Unity, IVR, TAPI interface
Call processing	Cisco CUCM
Client endpoints	IP phones, digital and analog gateways
Voice-enabled infrastructure	Layer 2 and Layer 3 switches and routers

**Table 14-6** *Data, Voice, and Video Sensitivities to Packet Loss*

Traffic Type	Sensitivity to Multisecond Interruption	Packet-Loss Target
Data	Tolerant	1 % to 2 %
Voice	Less Tolerant	< 1 %
Video	Intolerant	< 0.05 %

**Table 14-7** *Video Media Application Models*

Tool	Model	Flow Direction	Traffic Trends
TelePresence	Many to many	Client ↔ Client MCU ↔ Client	4 Mbps to 12 Mbps for high-def video.
Desktop video conferencing	Many to many	Client ↔ Client MCU ↔ Client	Collaboration across geographies. Growing peer-to-peer model.
Video surveillance	Many to few	Source → Storage Storage → Client Source → Client	Up to 3 Mbps to 4 Mbps per camera based on video quality and frame rates.
Desktop streaming media	Few to many	Storage → Client Source → Client	Increase in application driving more streams. Higher-quality video adds more bandwidth.

**Table 14-8** *Codec Standards*

<b>Codec</b>	<b>Bit Rate</b>	<b>MOS</b>	<b>Description</b>
G.711u	64 kbps	4.1	PCM. Mu-law version used in North America and Japan. Samples speech 8000 times per second, represented in 8 bits.
G.711a	64 kbps	4.1	PCM. A-law used in Europe and international systems.
G.726	16/24/32/40 kbps	3.85	Adaptive differential pulse-code modulation (AD-PCM).
G.728	16 kbps	3.61	Low-Delay CELP (LDCELP).
G.729	8 kbps	3.92	Conjugate Structure Acelp (Cs-Acelp).
G.723.1	6.3 kbps	3.9	Multipulse Excitation–Maximum Likelihood Quantization (MPE-MLQ).
G.723.1	5.3 kbps	3.65	Algebraic Code–Excited Linear Prediction (ACELP).

**Table 14-10** *H.264 Video Bandwidth*

<b>Video Source</b>	<b>Resolution</b>	<b>Typical Load</b>
TelePresence 3000	1080p	12.3 Mbps
TelePresence 3000	720p	6.75
TelePresence 1000	1080p	4.1 Mbps
TelePresence 1000	720p	2.25 Mbps
Cisco 4500 Video Surveillance	1080p	4–6 Mbps
Cisco DMS – Digital Sign SD	720x480	1.5–2.5 Mbps
Cisco DMS – Digital Sign HD	1080p	8–12 Mbps
Cisco Video Advantage	CIF	768 kbps
YouTube HD	720p	2 Mbps

**Table 14-11** Significant Protocols in VoIP Networks

<b>Protocol</b>	<b>Description</b>
DHCP	Dynamic Host Control Protocol. Provides IP address, mask, gateway, DNS address, and TFTP address.
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol. Provides the IP phone configuration and operating system.
SCCP	Skinny Client Control Protocol. Establishes calls between IP phones and CUCM.
RTP	Real-time Transport Protocol. Used for the transmission of real time traffic such as voice and video.
RTCP	Real-time Transport Control Protocol. Provides out of band statistics and control information for RTP streams.
H.323	An ITU standard for VoIP networks. H.323 is older and more stable than SIP, but is also more process intensive and is limited to traditional voice and video functionality.
SIP	Session Initiation Protocol. An IETF standard for VoIP networks. Newer and less mature than H.323, but also less process intensive and has support for new features such as IM and presence.

**Table 14-13** Network Delays

<b>Fixed Delay</b>	<b>Description</b>
Propagation delay	6 ms per km. No solution
Serialization delay	Frame length/bit rate. A faster link and smaller packets help reduce.
Processing delay	Depends on codec used: coding, compression, and packetization. Add hardware DSPs.
Queuing delay	Variable packet sizes and number of packets. Use LLQ, CBWFQ, LFI.
Jitter	Caused by variable delay. Use dejitter buffers to make delay constant; design as much as possible for an uncongested network.

**Table 14-14** QoS Scheme Summary

<b>QoS Scheme</b>	<b>Description</b>
cRTP	RTP header compression. Reduces header overhead from 40 bytes to 2 to 4 bytes.
LFI	Link fragmentation and interleaving. Fragments large data packets and interleaves VoIP packets between them.
LLC	Uses a single strict queue for RTP traffic. Differentiated QoS available for all other traffic.
AutoQoS	AutoQoS is a Cisco IOS feature that enables QoS for VoIP in WAN and LAN environments. AutoQoS significantly reduces the number of configuration lines necessary to support VoIP in the network.

**Table 14-15** Cisco Service Class PHB Recommendations

<b>Application Class</b>	<b>DSCP PHB</b>	<b>Queuing and Dropping</b>	<b>Applications</b>
Network Control	CS6	BW queue	Network routing, EIGRP, OSPF, BGP, HSRP, IKE
Telephony	EF	PQ	IPT bearer traffic, VoIP, G.711, G.729
Broadcast Video	CS5	PQ (optional)	Cisco IP video surveillance
Multimedia Conferencing	AF4	BW queue + DSCP WRED	H.323/V2 video conferencing; Cisco Unified Personal Communicator
Real-Time Interactive	CS4	PQ (optional)	Video conferencing and interactive gaming; TelePresence
Multimedia Streaming	AF3	BW queue + DSCP WRED	Streaming video and audio on demand; Cisco Digital Media System (VoD)
Call Signaling	CS3	BW queue	IPT signaling, H.323, SCCP, SIP
Low-Latency Transactional data	AF2	BW queue + DSCP WRED	Client/server, web-based ordering, Webex, MeetingPlace, ERP apps

**Table 14-15** Cisco Service Class PHB Recommendations

Application Class	DSCP PHB	Queuing and Dropping	Applications
Operations, Administration, Management (OAM)	CS2	BW queue	OAM&P, SNMP, SSH, syslog
High-Throughput Bulk Data	AF1	BW queue + DSCP WRED	Store-and-forward apps, email, FTP, backup
Low-Priority Scavenger Data	CS1	Minimum BW queue	Flows with no bandwidth assurance, YouTube, BitTorrent, Xbox
Standard Best Effort	CS0	Default queue + WRED	Default class

## Chapter 15

**Table 15-2** Network Management Elements

Network Management Element	Description
NMS	Network management systems run the applications that manage and monitor managed devices.
Network management protocols and standards	These are used to exchange management information between the NMS and the managed devices. The key protocols and standards are: SNMP, MIB, RMON.
Managed devices	These are the devices managed by the NMS.
Management agents	Reside in the managed devices and include SNMP agents and RMON agents.

**Table 15-3** SNMP Message Types

SNMP Message	Description
Get request	Retrieves the value of a specific MIB variable
GetNext request	Retrieves the next issuance of the MIB variable

**Table 15-3** SNMP Message Types

<b>SNMP Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Get response	Contains the values of the requested variable
Set request	Modifies the value of a MIB variable
Trap	Transmits an unsolicited alarm condition
GetBulk	Reduces repetitive requests for MIB variables
Inform request	Alerts an SNMP manager of specific conditions with confirmation

**Table 15-4** SNMP Security Levels

<b>Version</b>	<b>Level</b>	<b>Authentication</b>	<b>Encryption</b>
SNMPv1	NoAuthNoPriv	Community String	None
SNMPv2	NoAuthNoPriv	Community String	None
SNMPv3	NoAuthNoPriv	Username	None
SNMPv3	AuthNoPriv	MD5 or SHA	None
SNMPv3	AuthPriv	MD5 or SHA	DES, 3DES, AES

**Table 15-5** RMON1 Groups

<b>ID</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
1	Statistics	Contains real-time statistics for interfaces: packets sent, bytes, cyclic redundancy check (CRC) errors, fragments
2	History	Stores periodic statistic samples for later retrieval
3	Alarm	An alarm event is generated if a statistic sample crosses a threshold
4	Host	Host-specific statistics
5	HostTopN	Most active hosts

**Table 15-5 RMON1 Groups**

<b>ID</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
6	Matrix	Stores statistics for conversations between two hosts
7	Filters	Allows packets to be filtered
8	Packet Capture	Allows packets to be captured for subsequent analysis
9	Events	Generates notification of events

**Table 15-6 RMON2 Groups**

<b>ID</b>	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
11	Protocol Directory	Lists the protocols the device supports
12	Protocol Distribution	Traffic statistics for each protocol
13	Address Mapping	Contains network-to-MAC layer address mapping (IP to MAC)
14	Network Layer Host	Contains statistics for traffic sent to or from network layer hosts
15	Network Layer Matrix	Contains statistics for conversations between two network layer hosts
16	Application Layer Host	Contains Application layer statistics for traffic sent to or from each host
17	Application Layer Matrix	Contains Application layer statistics for conversations between pairs of hosts
18	User History	Contains periodic samples of specified variables
19	Probe Configuration	Probe parameter configuration

**Table 15-7** *Syslog Message Levels*

<b>Syslog Level</b>	<b>Severity</b>	<b>Level</b>
0	Emergency	System is unusable
1	Alert	Take action immediately
2	Critical	Critical conditions
3	Error	Error messages
4	Warning	Warning conditions
5	Notice	Normal but significant events
6	Informational	Informational messages
7	Debug	Debug level messages

**Table 15-8** *NetFlow, CDP, and Syslog*

<b>Technology</b>	<b>Description</b>
NetFlow	Collects network flow data for network planning, performance, accounting, and billing applications
CDP	Proprietary protocol for network discovery that provides information on neighboring devices
Syslog	Reports state information based on facility and severity levels
RMON	Remote Monitoring. Provides aggregate information of network statistics and LAN traffic